ALLEN AND GREENOUGH'S

NEW

LATIN GRAMMAR

FOR

SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES

FOUND ON COMPARATIVE GRAMMAR

EDITED BY

J. B. GREENOUGH  G. L. KITTREDGE
A. A. HOWARD    BENJ. L. D'OOGEE

GINN & COMPANY

BOSTON • NEW YORK • CHICAGO • LONDON
Transfer
Army and Navy Club
March 3, 1931
PREFACE

The present book is a careful revision of the edition of 1888. This revision was planned and actually begun in the lifetime of Professor Greenough and has been carried out in accordance with principles that met with his full approval. The renumbering of the sections has made it possible to improve the arrangement of material in many particulars and to avoid a certain amount of repetition which was inevitable in the former edition. Thus, without increasing the size of the volume, the editors have been able to include such new matter as the advance in grammatical science has afforded. The study of historical and comparative syntax has been pursued with considerable vigor during the past fifteen years, and the well-established results of this study have been inserted in their appropriate places. In general, however, the principles and facts of Latin syntax, as set forth by Professor Greenough, have stood the test both of scientific criticism and of practical use in the class-room, and accordingly the many friends of Allen and Greenough’s Grammar will not find the new edition strange or unfamiliar in its method or its contents. The editors have seen no occasion to change long-settled nomenclature or to adopt novel classifications when the usual terms and categories have proved satisfactory. On the other hand, they have not hesitated to modify either doctrines or forms of statement whenever improvement seemed possible.

In the matter of “hidden quantity” the editors have been even more conservative than in the former revision. This subject is one of great difficulty, and the results of the most recent investigations are far from harmonious. In many instances the facts
are quite undiscoverable, and, in general, the phenomena are of comparatively slight interest except to special students of the arcana of philology. No vowel has been marked long unless the evidence seemed practically decisive.

The editors have been fortunate in securing the advice and assistance of Professor E. S. Sheldon, of Harvard University, for the first ten pages, dealing with phonetics and phonology. They are equally indebted to Professor E. P. Morris, of Yale University, who has had the kindness to revise the notes on historical and comparative syntax. Particular acknowledgment is also due to Mr. M. Grant Daniell, who has cooperated in the revision throughout, and whose accurate scholarship and long experience as a teacher have been of the greatest service at every point.

September 1, 1903.
## CONTENTS

### PART I — WORDS AND FORMS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Letters and Sounds</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Alphabet; Classification of Sounds</td>
<td>1-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orthography, Syllables, Pronunciation</td>
<td>3-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quantity and Accent</td>
<td>5-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Combinations; Phonetic Changes</td>
<td>7-10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Words and their Forms</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Parts of Speech</td>
<td>11-16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inflection; Root, Stem, and Base</td>
<td>12-14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gender, Number, and Case</td>
<td>14-16</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Declension of Nouns</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>General Rules of Declension</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>First Declension</td>
<td>18-20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Second Declension</td>
<td>20-24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Third Declension</td>
<td>24-37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mute Stems</td>
<td>25, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liquid and Nasal Stems</td>
<td>27, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pure i-Stems</td>
<td>29, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mixed i-Stems</td>
<td>30, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Irregular Nouns</td>
<td>33, 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greek Nouns</td>
<td>34-36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rules of Gender</td>
<td>36, 37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fourth Declension</td>
<td>37-39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fifth Declension</td>
<td>39, 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Defective and Variable Nouns</td>
<td>40-44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Names of Persons</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Inflection of Adjectives</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>First and Second Declensions</td>
<td>46-49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Third Declension</td>
<td>49-54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comparison</td>
<td>55-57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Numerals</td>
<td>58-62</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Inflection of Pronouns</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Personal, Reflexive, Possessive, Demonstrative</td>
<td>63-67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relative, Interrogative, Indefinite</td>
<td>68-71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Correlatives (Pronouns and Adverbs)</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conjugation of Verbs</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Inflection</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Signification: Voice, Mood, Tense</td>
<td>73-75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Personal Endings</td>
<td>76, 77</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Forms: Stem and Verb-Endings .................................................. 77-81
The Verb Sum ................................................................. 81-83
Regular Verbs ............................................................... 84-103
   The Four Conjugations; Principal Parts .......................... 84, 85
   Formation of the Three Stems ........................................ 85-89
   Synopsis of the Verb .................................................. 90
   Peculiarities of Conjugation ....................................... 91
   First Conjugation ..................................................... 92-95
   Second Conjugation ................................................... 96, 97
   Third Conjugation .................................................... 98, 99
   Fourth Conjugation .................................................... 100, 101
   Verbs in -î of the Third Conjugation .............................. 102, 103
Deponent Verbs ............................................................. 103-106
Periphrastic Conjugations .............................................. 106-108
Irregular Verbs ............................................................. 108-115
Defective Verbs ............................................................ 116-119
Impersonal Verbs .......................................................... 119, 120
Classified Lists of Verbs ............................................... 121-125

PARTICLES ................................................................. 126-139
   Adverbs .................................................................. 126-130
   Prepositions ............................................................ 130-136
   Conjunctions ............................................................. 137-139
   Interjections ................................................................ 139

FORMATION OF WORDS ...................................................... 140-162
   Roots and Stems ........................................................ 140, 141
   Suffixes: Primary; Significant Endings ......................... 141-143
   Derivation of Nouns ................................................... 143-148
   Derivation of Adjectives ............................................ 148-154
   Nouns with Adjective Suffixes; Irregular Derivatives ....... 154-156
   Derivation of Verbs .................................................... 156-159
   Compound Words ......................................................... 160-162

PART II — SYNTAX .............................................................. 163

INTRODUCTORY NOTE ....................................................... 163

THE SENTENCE ............................................................... 164-208
   Definitions: Subject and Predicate, Modification, etc. .... 164-168
   Agreement: the Four Concourses .................................... 168

NOUNS: Apposition; Predicate Agreement ..................................... 168-170

ADJECTIVES ................................................................. 170-175
   Rules of Agreement ................................................... 171, 172
   Special Uses .................................................................. 172-175

PRONOUNS ................................................................. 176-192
   Personal and Demonstrative ....................................... 176-180
   Reflexive ..................................................................... 180-183
   Possessive .................................................................. 183, 184
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONTENTS</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Relative</td>
<td>184–189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indefinite</td>
<td>189–191</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alius and alter</td>
<td>192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VERBS</td>
<td>193–195</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verb and Subject, Incomplete Sentences</td>
<td>193–195</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PARTICLES: Adverbs, Conjunctions, Negatives</td>
<td>196–204</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Questions</td>
<td>205–208</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Construction of Cases</td>
<td>209–275</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introductory Note</td>
<td>209</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOMINATIVE CASE</td>
<td>210</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VOCATIVE CASE</td>
<td>210</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GENITIVE CASE</td>
<td>210–224</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genitive with Nouns</td>
<td>211–216</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Possessive Genitive</td>
<td>211, 212</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genitive of Material, of Quality</td>
<td>213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Partitive Genitive</td>
<td>213–215</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Objective Genitive</td>
<td>215, 216</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genitive with Adjectives</td>
<td>216, 217</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genitive with Verbs</td>
<td>218–223</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verbs of Remembering and Forgetting</td>
<td>218, 219</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verbs of Reminding</td>
<td>219</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verbs of Accusing, Condemning, and Acquitting</td>
<td>220</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verbs of Feeling</td>
<td>221</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interest and réfert</td>
<td>221, 222</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verbs of Plenty and Want; Special Verbs</td>
<td>222, 223</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peculiar Genitives: Exclamatory, etc.</td>
<td>223, 224</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DATIVE CASE</td>
<td>224–239</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indirect Object with Transitives</td>
<td>225–227</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indirect Object with Intransitives</td>
<td>227–232</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dative of Possession</td>
<td>232, 233</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dative of the Agent</td>
<td>233, 234</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dative of Reference</td>
<td>234–236</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ethical Dative</td>
<td>236</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dative of Separation</td>
<td>236, 237</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dative of the Purpose or End</td>
<td>237</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dative with Adjectives</td>
<td>238, 239</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACCUSATIVE CASE</td>
<td>240–248</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Direct Object</td>
<td>240–242</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cognate Accusative</td>
<td>242–244</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Two Accusatives</td>
<td>244–246</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Idiomatic and Special Uses</td>
<td>247, 248</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ABLATIVE CASE</td>
<td>248–265</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uses of the Ablative Proper</td>
<td>249–255</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative of Separation</td>
<td>249, 250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative of Source and Material</td>
<td>250–252</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative of Cause</td>
<td>252, 253</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONTENTS</td>
<td>PAGE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative of Agent</td>
<td>253, 254</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative of Comparison</td>
<td>254, 255</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uses of the Ablative as Instrumental</td>
<td>256-256</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative of Means or Instrument</td>
<td>256-258</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative of Manner</td>
<td>258</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative of Accompaniment</td>
<td>258, 259</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative of Degree of Difference</td>
<td>259, 260</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative of Quality</td>
<td>260</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative of Price</td>
<td>261, 262</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative of Specification</td>
<td>262, 263</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative Absolute</td>
<td>263-265</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uses of the Ablative as Locative</td>
<td>266-273</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Time and Place</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Special Uses of Prepositions</strong></td>
<td>274, 275</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Syntax of the Verb</strong></td>
<td>276-386</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Moods</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introductory Note</td>
<td>276-293</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Indicative Mood</strong></td>
<td>277</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Subjunctive in Independent Sentences</strong></td>
<td>278-283</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hortatory Subjunctive</td>
<td>278, 279</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hortatory Subjunctive in Concessions</td>
<td>279</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optative Subjunctive</td>
<td>280, 281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deliberative Subjunctive</td>
<td>281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Potential Subjunctive</td>
<td>282, 283</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Imperative Mood</strong></td>
<td>283-285</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prohibition (Negative Command)</td>
<td>285</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Infinitive Mood</strong></td>
<td>286-292</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infinitive as Noun</td>
<td>286, 287</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infinitive with Impersonals</td>
<td>287, 288</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Complementary Infinitive</td>
<td>289, 290</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infinitive with Subject Accusative</td>
<td>290</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infinitive of Purpose ; Peculiar Infinitives</td>
<td>290, 291</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exclamatory Infinitive</td>
<td>292</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Historical Infinitive</td>
<td>292</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Tenses</strong></td>
<td>293-308</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introductory Note</td>
<td>293</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Tenses of the Indicative</strong></td>
<td>293-301</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present Tense</td>
<td>293-295</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperfect Tense</td>
<td>296-297</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future Tense</td>
<td>298</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perfect Tense</td>
<td>298-300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pluperfect Tense</td>
<td>300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future Perfect Tense</td>
<td>300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Epistolary Tenses</td>
<td>301</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Tenses of the Subjunctive</strong></td>
<td>301-306</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sequence of Tenses</td>
<td>302-306</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONTENTS</td>
<td>PAGE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------</td>
<td>--------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TENSES OF THE INFINITIVE</td>
<td>307, 308</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PARTICLES</td>
<td>309–316</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distinctions of Tense</td>
<td>309–311</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uses of Participles</td>
<td>311–314</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future Active Participle</td>
<td>314, 315</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gerundive (Future Passive Participle)</td>
<td>315, 316</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GERUND AND GERUNDIVE</td>
<td>316–319</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUPINE</td>
<td>320</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONDITIONAL SENTENCES</td>
<td>321–338</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introductory Note</td>
<td>321, 322</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protasis and Apodosis</td>
<td>322, 323</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Classification of Conditions</td>
<td>323–325</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Simple Present and Past Conditions</td>
<td>325, 326</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future Conditions</td>
<td>326–328</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conditions Contrary to Fact</td>
<td>328–330</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General Conditions</td>
<td>331</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conditional Relative Clauses</td>
<td>332, 333</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Condition Disguised</td>
<td>333, 334</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Condition Omitted</td>
<td>334, 335</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Complex Conditions</td>
<td>335</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clauses of Comparison (Conclusion Omitted)</td>
<td>336</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use of Si and its Compounds</td>
<td>337, 338</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONCESSIVE CLAUSES</td>
<td>338, 339</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLAUSES OF PROVISO</td>
<td>340</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLAUSES OF PURPOSE (FINAL CLAUSES)</td>
<td>340–343</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC</td>
<td>343–346</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLAUSES OF RESULT (CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES)</td>
<td>346–348</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CAUSAL CLAUSES</td>
<td>348–350</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TEMPORAL CLAUSES</td>
<td>350–359</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ubi, ut, cum, quandō, as Indefinite Relatives</td>
<td>350</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Postquam, ubi, ut, simul atque</td>
<td>351</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cum Temporal</td>
<td>352–354</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cum Causal or Concessive</td>
<td>354, 355</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antequam and priusquam</td>
<td>355, 356</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dum, dōne, and quod</td>
<td>357–359</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLAUSES WITH quin AND quominus</td>
<td>359–361</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES</td>
<td>362–384</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introductory Note</td>
<td>362</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Substantive Clauses of Purpose and Infinitive Clauses</td>
<td>362–367</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Substantive Clauses of Result (Consecutive Clauses)</td>
<td>367–369</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indicative with quod</td>
<td>369, 370</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indirect Questions</td>
<td>370–373</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INDIRECT DISCOURSE</td>
<td>373–384</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introductory Note</td>
<td>373, 374</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Declaratory Sentences</td>
<td>374–377</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subordinate Clauses</td>
<td>377, 378</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONTENTS</td>
<td>PAGE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tenses of the Infinitive</td>
<td>378,379</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tenses of the Subjunctive</td>
<td>379,380</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Questions in Indirect Discourse</td>
<td>380,381</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commands in Indirect Discourse</td>
<td>381</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conditions in Indirect Discourse</td>
<td>381–384</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Intermediate Clauses</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Informal Indirect Discourse</td>
<td>384–386</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subjunctive of Integral Part (Attraction)</td>
<td>385</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Important Rules of Syntax</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Order of Words</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General Rules</td>
<td>393–398</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Special Rules</td>
<td>398,399</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Structure of the Period</td>
<td>399,400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Prosody</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Quantity</strong></td>
<td>401–405</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Rhythm</strong></td>
<td>405–409</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introductory Note</td>
<td>405,406</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Measures of Rhythm; Feet</td>
<td>406–409</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Musical Accent; Cæsura; Diæresis</td>
<td>409</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Versification</strong></td>
<td>410–426</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Verse; Scansion and Elision</td>
<td>410,411</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dactylic Verse</td>
<td>411–414</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dactylic Hexameter</td>
<td>411,412</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elegiac Stanza; Other Dactylic Verses</td>
<td>413,414</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iambic Verse</td>
<td>414–416</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iambic Trimeter</td>
<td>414,415</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other Iambic Measures</td>
<td>416</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trochaic Verse</td>
<td>417</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mixed Measures</td>
<td>418</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Logaœdic Verse</td>
<td>418–421</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metres of Horace</td>
<td>421–425</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Index to the Metres of Horace</td>
<td>423–425</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other Lyric Poets</td>
<td>425</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Miscellaneous Measures</td>
<td>425,426</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Early Prosody</strong></td>
<td>426,427</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Miscellaneous</strong></td>
<td>428–431</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reckoning of Time</td>
<td>428,429</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Measures of Value, Length, and Capacity</td>
<td>429–431</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Glossary of Terms</strong></td>
<td>432–435</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Index of Verbs</strong></td>
<td>436–444</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Index of Words and Subjects</strong></td>
<td>445–475</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Latin Authors and their Works</strong></td>
<td>476,477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Parallel References</strong></td>
<td>479–490</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ALLEN AND GREENOUGH'S

NEW LATIN GRAMMAR
LATIN GRAMMAR

Latin Grammar is usually treated under three heads: 1. Words and Forms; 2. Syntax; 3. Prosody. Syntax treats of the function of words when joined together as parts of the sentence; Prosody of their arrangement in metrical composition.

PART FIRST—WORDS AND FORMS

THE ALPHABET

1. The Latin Alphabet is the same as the English (which is in fact borrowed from it) except that it does not contain J, U, and W.

Note 1.—The Latin alphabet was borrowed in very early times from a Greek alphabet (though not from that most familiar to us) and did not at first contain the letters G and Y. It consisted of capital letters only, and the small letters with which we are familiar did not come into general use until the close of the eighth century of our era.

Note 2.—The Latin names of the consonants were as follows:—B, be (pronounced bay); C, ce (pronounced kay); D, de (day); F, ef; G, ge (gay); H, ha; K, ka; L, el; M, em; N, en; P, pe (pay); Q, qu (koo); R, er; S, es; T, te (tay); X, ix; Z, zeta (the Greek name, pronounced dzayta). The sound of each vowel was used as its name.

a. The character C originally meant G, a value always retained in the abbreviations C. (for Gaius) and Cn. (for Gnaeus).

Note.—In early Latin C came also to be used for K, and K disappeared except before a in a few words, as Kal. (Kalendae), Karthago. Thus there was no distinction in writing between the sounds of g and k. Later this defect was remedied by forming (from C) the new character G. This took the alphabetic place formerly occupied by Z, which had gone out of use. In Cicero’s time (see N. D. ii. 93), Y (originally a form of V) and Z were introduced from the ordinary Greek alphabet to represent sounds in words derived from the Greek, and they were put at the end of the Latin alphabet.

b. I and V were used both as vowels and as consonants (see § 5).

Note.—V originally denoted the vowel sound u (oo), and F stood for the sound of our consonant w. When F acquired the value of our f, V came to be used for the sound of w as well as for the vowel u.

In this book i is used for both vowel and consonant i, u for vowel u, and v for consonant u:—iūs, vir, iuvenis
Classification of Sounds

2. The simple Vowels are a, e, i, o, u, y.

The Diphthongs are ae, au, ei, eu, oe, ui, and, in early Latin, ai, oi, ou. In the diphthongs both vowel sounds are heard, one following the other in the same syllable.

3. Consonants are either voiced (sonant) or voiceless (sord). Voiced consonants are pronounced with the same vocal murmur that is heard in vowels; voiceless consonants lack this murmur.

1. The voiced consonants are b, d, g, l, r, m, n, z, consonant i, v.

2. The voiceless consonants are p, t, c (k, q), f, h, s, x.

4. Consonants are further classified as in the following table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LABIALS</th>
<th>DENTALS</th>
<th>PALATALS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mutes</td>
<td>Voiceless (tenués)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voiced (mediae)</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voiceless (tenués)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aspirates</td>
<td>ph</td>
<td>th</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nasals</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liquids</td>
<td>l, r</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fricatives (Spirants)</td>
<td>f</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sibilants</td>
<td>s, z</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Semivowels</td>
<td>v</td>
<td>consonant i</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Double consonants are x (= cs) and z (= dz); h is merely a breathing.

1. Mutes are pronounced by blocking entirely, for an instant, the passage of the breath through the mouth, and then allowing it to escape with an explosion (distinctly heard before a following vowel). Between the explosion and the vowel there may be a slight puff of breath (h), as in the Aspirates (ph, th, ch).

2. Labials are pronounced with the lips, or lips and teeth.

3. Dentals (sometimes called Linguals) are pronounced with the tip of the tongue touching or approaching the upper front teeth.

4. Palatals are pronounced with a part of the upper surface of the tongue touching or approaching the palate.

5. Fricatives (or Spirants) are consonants in which the breath passes continuously through the mouth with audible friction.

6. Nasals are like voiced mutes, except that the mouth remains closed and the breath passes through the nose.

1 Strictly a labio-dental, pronounced with the under lip touching the upper teeth.

2 The aspirates are almost wholly confined to words borrowed from the Greek. In early Latin such borrowed sounds lost their aspiration and became simply p, t, c.

3 Palatals are often classed as (1) velars, pronounced with the tongue touching or rising toward the soft palate (in the back part of the mouth), and (2) palatals, in which the tongue touches or rises toward the hard palate (farther forward in the mouth). Compare the initial consonants in key and cool, whispering the two words, and it will be observed that before e and i the k is sounded farther forward in the mouth than before a, o, or u.
5. The vowels i and u serve as consonants when pronounced rapidly before a vowel so as to stand in the same syllable.\(^1\) Consonant i has the sound of English consonant y; consonant u (v) that of English consonant w.

Consonant i and u (v) are sometimes called Semivowels.

Note 1.—The Latin alphabet did not distinguish between the vowel and consonant sounds of i and u, but used each letter (I and V) with a double value. In modern books i and u are often used for the vowel sounds, j and v for the consonant sounds; but in printing in capitals J and U are avoided; — IVLIVS (Iulius). The characters J and U are only slight modifications of the characters I and V. The ordinary English sounds of j and v did not exist in classical Latin, but consonant u perhaps approached English v in the pronunciation of some persons.

Note 2.—In the combinations qu, gu, and sometimes su, u seems to be the consonant (w). Thus, aqua, anguis, consuetus (compare English quart, anguish, suave). In these combinations, however, u is reckoned neither as a vowel nor as a consonant.\(^2\)

ORTHOGRAPHY

6. Latin spelling varied somewhat with the changes in the language and was never absolutely settled in all details.

Thus, we find lubet, vortō, as earlier, and libet, vertō, as later forms. Other variations are optumus and optimus, gerundus and gerendus.

The spelling of the first century of our era, known chiefly from inscriptions, is tolerably uniform, and is commonly used in modern editions of the classics.

a. After v (consonant u), o was anciantly used instead of u (voltus, servos), and this spelling was not entirely given up until the middle of the first century of our era.

b. The older quo became cu in the Augustan period; in the second century of our era the spelling quiu established itself in some words: —

cum, older quom;\(^3\) equos, ecus, later equus; sequuntur, secuntur, later sequuntur; similarly exstinguont, exstingunt, later exstinguunt.

Note. — In most modern editions the spelling quiu is adopted, except in cum.

c. Between consonant i and a preceding a, e, o, or u, an i was developed as a transient sound, thus producing a diphthong ai, ei, etc., before the consonant i. In such cases but one i was written: as, ãiò (for ãai-ïo), màius (for ãmai-ïus), pêius (for ãpei-ïus).

\(^1\) Compare the English word Índian as pronounced in two syllables or in three.

\(^2\) In such words it is possible that the preceding consonant was labialized and that no distinct and separate consonant u was heard.

\(^3\) The spelling quum is very late and without authority.
**WORDS AND FORMS**

**d.** Similarly in compounds of *iaciō* but one *i* was written (as, *con-iciō*, not *con-iciō*); but the usual pronunciation probably showed consonant *i* followed by vowel *i* (see § 11. e).

*Note.* — Some variations are due to later changes in Latin itself, and these are not now recognized in classical texts.

1. Unaccented *t* and *c*, when followed by a vowel, came to be pronounced alike; hence *nuntiā* was later spelled with a *c* and *diciē*.

2. The sound of *h* was after a time lost and hence this letter was often omitted (as, *arena* for *harena*) or mistakenly written (as, *humor* for *umor*)

3. The diphthong *ae* early in the time of the Empire acquired the value of long open *e* (about like English *e* in *there*), and similarly *oe* after a time became a long close *e* (about like the English *ey* in *they*); and so both were often confused in spelling with *e*: as, *coena* or *caena* for the correct form *cena*.

**Syllables**

7. Every Latin word has as many syllables as it has vowels or diphthongs: —

- a-ei-e, mo-nē, fī-li-us, fe-rō-ci-tā-te.

*a.* In the division of words into syllables a single consonant (including consonant *i* and *v*) between two vowels is written and pronounced with the following vowel. Doubled consonants are separated: —


*Note 1.* — Some extend the rule for single consonants to any consonant group (as *sp, st, gn*) that can begin a word. In this book, *dī-xit, sa-xum* etc. are preferred to *di-xit, sa-xum*; the pronunciation was probably *dic-sit, sac-sum*.

*Note 2.* — A syllable ending with a vowel or diphthong is called *open*: all others are called *close*. Thus in *pa-ter* the first syllable is open, the second close.

*b.* In compounds the parts are separated: —

- ab-est, ob-lātus, dis-cernō, du-plex, dī-stō.

**Pronunciation**

8. The so-called Roman Pronunciation of Latin aims to represent approximately the pronunciation of classical times.

**Vowels:**

- **ā** as in *father*;  
- **ē** as *eh?* (prolonged), or *a* in *date*;  
- **ī** as in *machine*;  
- **ō** as in *holy*;  
- **ū** as *oo* in *boot*;  
- **y** between *u* and *i* (French *u* or German *ü*).

**Diphthongs:**

- **ae** like *ay*;  
- **ei** as in *eight*;  
- **oe** like *oy* in *boy*;  
- **eu** as *eh’oo*;  
- **au** like *ow* in *now*;  
- **ui** as *oo’ee*. 
Consonants are the same as in English, except that —

- c and g are as in come, get, never as in city, gem.
- s as in sea, lips, never as in ease.

Consonant i is like y in young; v (consonant u) like w in wing.

n in the combinations ns and nf probably indicates nasalization of the preceding vowel, which was also lengthened; and final m in an unaccented syllable probably had a similar nasalizing effect on the preceding vowel.

ph, th, ch, are properly like p, t, k, followed by h (which may, for convenience, be neglected); but ph probably became like (or nearly like) f soon after the classical period, and may be so pronounced to distinguish it from p.

z is as dz in adze.
bs is like ps; bt is like pt.

Note.—Latin is sometimes pronounced with the ordinary English sounds of the letters. The English pronunciation should be used in Roman names occurring in English (as, Julius Cæsar); and in familiar quotations, as, e pluribus unum; viva voce; vice versa; a fortiori; veni, vidi, vici, etc.

Quantity

9. The Quantity of a Vowel or a Syllable is the time occupied in pronouncing it. Two degrees of Quantity are recognized,—long and short.

- a. In syllables, quantity is measured from the beginning of the vowel or diphthong to the end of the syllable.

10. Vowels are either long or short by nature, and are pronounced accordingly (§ 8).

- a. A vowel before another vowel or h is short: as in via, nihil.
- b. A diphthong is long: as in ædēs, foëdus. So, also, a vowel derived from a diphthong: as in exclūdō (from fex-claudo).
- c. A vowel formed by contraction is long: as in nil (from nihil).
- d. A vowel before ns, nf, gn, is long: as in constāns, īnferō, māgnus.

Note.—But the quantity of the vowel before gn is not certain in all cases.

- e. A vowel before nd, nt, is regularly short: as in amandus, amant.

In this book all vowels known to be long are marked (ā, ē, etc.), and short vowels are left unmarked (a, e, etc.). Vowels marked with both signs at once (ā, ē, etc.) occur sometimes as long and sometimes as short.

Note.—The Romans sometimes marked vowel length by a stroke above the letter (called an apex), as, Ą; and sometimes the vowel was doubled to indicate length. An Ī made higher than the other letters was occasionally used for Ġ. But none of these devices came into general use.
11. The Quantity of the Syllable is important for the position of the accent and in versification.

a. A syllable containing a long vowel or a diphthong is said to be long by nature: as, mā-ter, aes, au-la.

b. A syllable containing a short vowel followed by two consonants (except a mute before l or r) or by a double consonant (x, z) is said to be long by position, but the vowel is pronounced short: as, est, ter-ra, sax-um, Me-zen-tius.

Note.—When a consonant is doubled the pronunciation should show this distinctly. Thus in mit-tō both t’s should be pronounced as in out-talk (not merely a single t as in better).

c. A syllable containing a short vowel followed by a mute before l or r is properly short, but may be used as long in verse. Such a syllable is said to be common.

Note 1.—In syllables long by position, but having a short vowel, the length is partly due to the first of the consonants, which stands in the same syllable with the vowel. In syllables of “common” quantity (as the first syllable of pat-rem) the ordinary pronunciation was pa-trem, but in verse pa-rem was allowed so that the syllable could become long.

Note 2.—In final syllables ending with a consonant, and containing a short vowel, the quantity in verse is determined by the following word: if this begins with a vowel the final consonant is joined to it in pronunciation; if it begins with a consonant the syllable is long by position.

Note 3.—In rules for quantity h is not counted as a consonant, nor is the apparently consonantal u in qu, gu, su (see § 5. n. 2).

da. A syllable whose vowel is a, e, o, or u, followed by consonant i, is long whether the vowel itself is long or short: as, ā-iō, mā-ior, pe-ius.

In such cases the length of the syllable is indicated in this book by a circumflex on the vowel.

Note.—The length of a syllable before consonant i is due to a transitional sound (vowel i) which forms a diphthong with the preceding vowel: as, ā-iō (for ūai-iō), mā-ior (for ūmai-ior). See § 6. c.

e. In some compounds of iaciō (as, in-iciō) the consonant i of the simple verb was probably pronounced (though not written). Thus the first syllable was long by position: as, in-iciō (for in-iciō). See § 6. d.

In such cases the length of the syllable is not indicated in this book by a circumflex on the vowel.

f. When a syllable is long by position the quantity of the vowel is not always determinable. The vowel should be pronounced short unless it is known to be long.

Note.—The quantity of a vowel under these circumstances is said to be hidden. It is often determined with a greater or less degree of certainty by inscriptional evidence (see § 10. n.) or by other means. In this book, the quantity of all such vowels known to be long is marked.
Accent

12. Words of two syllables are accented on the first syllable: as, Rō'ma, fi'dēs, tan'gō.

Words of more than two syllables are accented on the Penult if that is long (as, ami'cus, monē'tur, contin'git); otherwise on the Antepenult (as, do'mīnus, a'läcris, dissociā'bilis).

a. When an enclitic is joined to a word, the accent falls on the syllable next before the enclitic, whether long or short: as, de'a'que, amā're've, tībī'ne, itā'que (and... so), as distinguished from i'tāque (therefore). So (according to some) ex'inde, ec'quandō, etc.

Exceptions: 1. Certain apparent compounds of faciō retain the accent of the simple verb: as, benefā'cit, calefā'cit (see § 266. a).

Note.—These were not true compounds, but phrases.

2. In the second declension the genitive and vocative of nouns in -ius and the genitive of those in -ium retain the accent of the nominative: as, Cornē'lii, Vergi'lii, inge'ni (see § 49. c).

3. Certain words which have lost a final vowel retain the accent of the complete words: as, illī'c for illī'ce, prōdū'c for prōdūce, satī'n for satī'sne.

Combinations

13. In some cases adjacent words, being pronounced together, are written as one: —

ānusquisque (ānus quisque), sīquis (sī quis), quārē (quā rē), quamobrem (quam ob rem; cf. quās ob rēs), rēspūblīca (rēs pūblīca), iūsiūrandum (iūs iūrandum), paterfamilīās (pater familiās).

Note.—Sometimes a slight change in pronunciation resulted, as, especially in the old poets, before est in homōst (homō est), periculumst (periculum est), ausust (ausus est), quālist (quālis est). Similarly there occur vin', scīn' for visne, scīsne, sīs (sī vis), sōdēs (sī audēs), sūltis (sī vultis). Compare in English somebody, to breakfast; he's, I've, thou'rt.

Phonetic Changes

14. Latin, the language of the ancient Romans, was properly, as its name implies, the language spoken in the plain of Latium, lying south of the Tiber, which was the first territory occupied and governed by the Romans. It is a descendant of an early form of speech commonly called Indo-European (by some Indo-Germanic), from which are also descended most of the important languages now in use in Europe, including among others English, German, the Slavic and the Celtic languages, and further some now or formerly spoken in Asia, as Sanskrit, Persian, Armenian. Greek likewise

1 The Penult is the last syllable but one; the Antepenult, the last but two.
belongs to the same family. The Romance (or Romanic) languages, of which the
most important are Italian, French, Provençal, Spanish, Portuguese, and Roumanian,
are modern descendants of spoken Latin.

The earliest known forms of Latin are preserved in a few inscriptions. These in-
crease in number as we approach the time when the language began to be used in litera-
ture; that is, about B.C. 250. It is the comparatively stable language of the classical
period (B.C. 80–A.D. 14) that is ordinarily meant when we speak of Latin, and it is
mainly this that is described in this book.

15. Among the main features in the changes of Latin from
the earliest stages of the language as we know it up to the forms
of classical Latin may be mentioned the following: —

Vowel Changes

1. The old diphthong ai became the classical ae (aedilis for old aidilis),
old oi became oe or ū (ūnus for old oinos), and old ou became ū (ducō for
old doucō).

2. In compound verbs the vowel a of the simple verb often appears as i
or e, and ae similarly appears as iː —

faciō, factum, but cōnficiō, cōnfectum; caedō, but occidō, and similarly cecidi,
perfect of caedō (cf. cadō, occidō; cecidi, perfect of cadō).

Note. — This change is commonly ascribed to an accentuation on the first syl-
lable, which seems to have been the rule in Latin before the rule given above (see § 12)
became established. The original Indo-European accent, however, was not limited by
either of these principles; it was probably a musical accent so-called, consisting in a
change of pitch, and not merely in a more forcible utterance of the accented syllable.

3. Two vowels coming together are often contracted: —

cōgō for tco-agō; prōmō for tpro-emō; nīl for nihil; dēbeō for tā-d-hebeō
(tā-hebeō).

Consonant Changes

4. An old s regularly became r between two vowels (rhotacism), passing
first through the sound of (English) zː —

eram (cf. est); generis, genitive of genus.¹

Note. — Final s sometimes became r by analogy: as, honor (older honōs), from the
analogy of honōris, etc.

5. A dental (t, d) often became s, especially when standing next to t, d,
or s: as, equestris for tēquettris, cāsus for tcaditus (cf. 6, below).

6. Many instances of assimilation, partial or complete, are found: —
cessī for tced-sī; summus for tsummus; scriptus for scribtus (b unvoicing to
p before the voiceless t); and in compound verbs (see § 16).

¹ A similar change can be seen in English: as, were (cf. was), lorn (cf. lose).
Dissimilation, the opposite kind of change, prevented in some cases the repetition of the same sound in successive syllables:

Thus, parilia for palilia (from Palēs); meridiaēs for †medidiēs; nātūrālis with suffix -ālis (after r), but populāris with -āris (after l).

7. Final s was in early Latin not always pronounced: as, plēnu(s) fidēī. 

Note.—Traces of this pronunciation existed in Cicero's time. He speaks of the omission of final s before a word beginning with a consonant as "countrified" (subrūsticum).

8. A final consonant often disappears: as, virgō for †virgōn; lac for †lac; cor for †cord.

9. G, c, and h unite with a following s to form x: as, réx for †rēgs; dux for †duc; trāxi for †trahsi.1

10. G and h before t become c: as, rēctum for †regtum; āctum for †agtum; trāctum for †trahtum.2

11. Between m and s or m and t, a p is often developed: as, sūmpsī for †sūmsī; ēmptum for †ēmptum.

16. In compounds with prepositions the final consonant in the preposition was often assimilated to the following consonant, but usage varied considerably.

There is good authority for many complete or partial assimilations; as, for ad, acc-, agg-, app-, att-, instead of adv-, adg-, etc. Before a labial consonant we find com- (comb-, comp-, comm-), but con- is the form before c, d, f, g, cons. i, q, s, t, cons. v; we find conl- or coll-, corr- or corr-; có- in conexo, conveo, cōntor, cōnūbium. In usually changes to im- before p, b, m. Ob and sub may assimilate b to a following c, g, or p; before s and t the pronunciation of prepositions ending in b doubtless had p; surr-, summ-, occur for subr-, subm-. The inseparable amb- loses b before a consonant. Circum often loses its m before i. The s of dis becomes r before a vowel and is assimilated to a following f; sometimes this prefix appears as di-. Instead of ex we find ef- before f (also ecf-). The d of red and sēd is generally lost before a consonant. The preposition is better left unchanged in most other cases.

Vowel Variations

17. The parent language showed great variation in the vowel sounds of kindred words.3

a. This variation is often called by the German name Ablaut. It has left considerable traces in the forms of Latin words, appearing sometimes as a difference of quantity in the same vowel (as, u, ū; e, ē), sometimes as a difference in the vowel itself (as, e, o; i, ae):4

 tegō, I cover, toga, a robe; pendō, I weigh, pondus, weight; fādēs, faith, fidus, faithful, foedus, a treaty; miser, wretched, maestus, sad; dare, to give, dōnum, a gift; regō, I rule, rēx, a king; dux, a leader, dūcō (for older doucō), I lead. Compare English drive, drove (drave), driven; bind, bound, band; sing, sang, sung; etc.

1 Really for †tragisi. The h of trahō represents an older palatal sound (see § 19).

2 Really for †traghtum. These are cases of partial assimilation (cf. 6, above).

3 This variation was not without regularity, but was confined within definite limits.

4 In Greek, however, it is more extensively preserved.
Kindred Forms

18. Both Latin and English have gone through a series of phonetic changes, different in the two languages, but following definite laws in each. Hence both preserve traces of the older speech in some features of the vowel system, and both show certain correspondences in consonants in words which each language has inherited from the old common stock. Only a few of these correspondences can be mentioned here.

19. The most important correspondences in consonants between Latin and English, in cognate words, may be seen in the following table:—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LATIN</th>
<th>ENGLISH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>p: pater</td>
<td>f: father, earlier fader</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f from bh: fero, frater</td>
<td>b: to bear, brother</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b &quot; &quot; lubet, libet</td>
<td>v, f: love, lief</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t: tū, tenuis</td>
<td>th: thou, thin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d: duo, dent-</td>
<td>t: two, tooth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f from dh: faciō</td>
<td>d: do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d &quot; &quot; medius</td>
<td>d: mid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b &quot; &quot; ruber</td>
<td>d: red</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c: cord-, cornū</td>
<td>h: heart, horn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qu: quod</td>
<td>wh: what</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g: genus, gustus</td>
<td>c, k, ch: kin, choose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h (from gh): hortus, haedus</td>
<td>y, g: yard, goat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cons. i: iugum</td>
<td>y: yoke</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>v: ventus, ovis</td>
<td>w: wind, ewe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>v from gv: vivus (for †gvīvos), veniō (for †gvemiō).}</td>
<td>qu, c, k: quick, come</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note 1.—Sometimes a consonant lost in Latin is still represented in English: as, niv- (for †sniv-), Eng. snow; änser (for †hänser), Eng. goose.

Note 2.—From these cases of kindred words in Latin and English must be carefully distinguished those cases in which the Latin word has been taken into English either directly or through some one of the modern descendants of Latin, especially French. Thus faciō is kindred with Eng. do, but from the Latin participle (factum) of this verb comes Eng. fact, and from the French descendant (faî) of factum comes Eng. feat.

1 The Indo-European parent speech had among its consonants voiced aspirates (bh, dh, gh). All these suffered change in Latin, the most important results being, for bh, Latin f, b (English has b, v, or f); for dh, Latin f, b, d (English has d); for gh, Latin h, g (English has y, g). The other mutes suffered in Latin much less change, while in English, as in the other Germanic languages, they have all changed considerably in accordance with what has been called Grimm’s Law for the shifting of mutes.

2 The th in father is a late development. The older form fader seems to show an exception to the rule that English th corresponds to Latin t. The primitive Germanic form was doubtless in accordance with this rule, but, on account of the position of the accent, which in Germanic was not originally on the first syllable in this word, the consonant underwent a secondary change to d.

3 But to the group st of Latin corresponds also English st; as in Latin stō, English stand.
THE PARTS OF SPEECH

20. Words are divided into eight Parts of Speech: Nouns, Adjectives (including Participles), Pronouns, Verbs, Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, and Interjections.

a. A Noun is the name of a person, place, thing, or idea: as, Caesar; Rōma, Rome; domus, a house; virtūs, virtue.

Names of particular persons and places are called Proper Nouns; other nouns are called Common.

Note.—An Abstract Noun is the name of a quality or idea: as, audācia, boldness; senectūs, old age. A Collective Noun is the name of a group, class, or the like: as, turba, crowd; exercitus, army.

b. An Adjective is a word that attributes a quality: as, bonus, good; fortis, brave, strong.

Note 1.—A Participle is a word that attributes quality like an adjective, but, being derived from a verb, retains in some degree the power of the verb to assert: as,—Caesar cōnsul creātus, Caesar having been elected consul.

Note 2.—Etymologically there is no difference between a noun and an adjective, both being formed alike. So, too, all names originally attribute quality, and any common name can still be so used. Thus, King William distinguishes this William from other Williams, by the attribute of royalty expressed in the name king.

c. A Pronoun is a word used to distinguish a person, place, thing, or idea without either naming or describing it: as, is, he; qui, who; nōs, we.

Nouns and pronouns are often called Substantives.

d. A Verb is a word which is capable of asserting something: as, sum, I am; amat, he loves.

Note.—In all modern speech the verb is usually the only word that asserts anything, and a verb is therefore supposed to be necessary to complete an assertion. Strictly, however, any adjective or noun may, by attributing a quality or giving a name, make a complete assertion. In the infancy of language there could have been no other means of asserting, as the verb is of comparatively late development.

e. An Adverb is a word used to express the time, place, or manner of an assertion or attribute: as, splendīdē mendāx, gloriously false; hōdiē nātus est, he was born to-day.

Note.—These same functions are often performed by cases (see §§ 214–217) of nouns, pronouns, and adjectives, and by phrases or sentences. In fact, all adverbs were originally cases or phrases, but have become specialized by use.

f. A Preposition is a word which shows the relation between a noun or pronoun and some other word or words in the same sentence: as, per agrōs it, he goes over the fields; ē pluribus īnum, one out of many.

Note.—Most prepositions are specialized adverbs (cf. § 219). The relations expressed by prepositions were earlier expressed by case-endings.
A Conjunction is a word which connects words, or groups of words, without affecting their grammatical relations: *as, et, and; sed, but.*

*Note.*—Some adverbs are also used as connectives. These are called Adverbial Conjunctions or Conjunctive (Relative) Adverbs: *as, ubi, where; dōnec, until.*

Interjections are mere exclamations and are not strictly to be classed as parts of speech. Thus,—*heus, hallow! o, oh!*

*Note.*—Interjections sometimes express an emotion which affects a person or thing mentioned, and so have a grammatical connection like other words: *as, vae victis, woe to the conquered* (alas for the conquered)!  

**INFLECTION**

21. Latin is an *inflected language.*

Inflection is a change made in the form of a word to show its grammatical relations.

*ā*. Inflectional changes sometimes take place in the body of a word, or at the beginning, but oftener in its termination:—

*vōx, a voice; vōcis, of a voice; vocō, I call; vocat, he calls; vocet, let him call; vocāvit, he has called; tangit, he touches; tetigit, he touched.*

*b*. Terminations of inflection had originally independent meanings which are now obscured. They correspond nearly to the use of prepositions, auxiliaries, and personal pronouns in English.

Thus, in *vocat*, the termination is equivalent to *he or she*; in *vōcis*, to the preposition *of*; and in *vocet* the change of vowel signifies a change of mood.

*c*. Inflectional changes in the body of a verb usually denote relations of tense or mood, and often correspond to the use of auxiliary verbs in English:—

*frangit, he breaks or is breaking; frēgit, he broke or has broken; mordet, he bites; mōrdidit, he bit.*

22. The inflection of Nouns, Adjectives, Pronouns, and Participles to denote gender, number, and case is called Declension, and these parts of speech are said to be *declined.*

The inflection of Verbs to denote voice, mood, tense, number, and person is called Conjugation, and the verb is said to be *conjugated.*

*Note.*—Adjectives are often said to have inflections of *comparison.* These are, however, properly stem-formations made by derivation (p. 55, footnote).

1 The only *proper* inflections of verbs are those of the personal endings; and the changes here referred to are strictly changes of *stem,* but have become a part of the system of inflections.
23. Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, and Interjections are not inflected and are called Particles.  

Note.—The term Particle is sometimes limited to such words as num, -ne, an (interrogative), nōn, nē (negative), sī (conditional), etc., which are used simply to indicate the form or construction of a sentence.

Root, Stem, and Base

24. The body of a word, to which the terminations are attached, is called the Stem.

The Stem contains the idea of the word without relations; but, except in the first part of a compound (as, arti-fex, artificer), it cannot ordinarily be used without some termination to express them.¹

Thus the stem voc- denotes voice; with -s added it becomes vox, a voice or the voice, as the subject or agent of an action; with -is it becomes vocis, and signifies of a voice.

Note.—The stem is in many forms so united with the termination that a comparison with other forms is necessary to determine it.

25. A Root is the simplest form attainable by analysis of a word into its component parts.

Such a form contains the main idea of the word in a very general sense, and is common also to other words either in the same language or in kindred languages.²

Thus the root of the stem voc- is voc, which does not mean to call, or I call, or calling, but merely expresses vaguely the idea of calling, and cannot be used as a part of speech without terminations. With ā-it becomes vocā-, the stem of vocāre (to call); with āv- it is the stem of vocāvit (he called); with āto- it becomes the stem of vocātus (called); with ātiōn- it becomes the stem of vocātiōnis (of a calling). With its vowel lengthened it becomes the stem of vox, voc-is (a voice: that by which we call). This stem voc-, with -ālis added, means belonging to a voice; with -ūla, a little voice.

Note.—In inflected languages, words are built up from Roots, which at a very early time were used alone to express ideas, as is now done in Chinese. Roots are modified into Stems, which, by inflection, become fully formed words. The process by which roots are modified, in the various forms of derivatives and compounds, is called Stem-building. The whole of this process is originally one of composition, by which significant endings are added one after another to forms capable of pronunciation and conveying a meaning.

Roots had long ceased to be recognized as such before the Latin existed as a separate language. Consequently the forms which we assume as Latin roots never really existed in Latin, but are the representatives of forms used earlier.

¹ Another exception is the imperative second person singular in -e (as, rege).
² For example, the root sta is found in the Sanskrit tishthāmi, Greek τορημ, Latin sistere and stāre, German stehen, and English stand.
26. The Stem may be the same as the root: as induc-is, of a leader; fer-t, he bears; but it is more frequently formed from the root—

1. By changing or lengthening its vowel: as in scob-s, sawdust (scab, shave); rég-is, of a king (reg, direct); voc-is, of a voice (voc, call).

2. By the addition of a simple suffix (originally another root): as in fugā-, stem of fuga, flight (rug + ā-); regi-s, you rule (reg + stem-ending ẹ₀-); sini-t, he allows (si + nẹ₀-).²

3. By two or more of these methods: as in dūc-i-t, he leads (duc + stem-ending ẹ₀-).

4. By derivation and composition, following the laws of development peculiar to the language. (See §§ 227 ff.)

27. The Base is that part of a word which is unchanged in inflection: as, serv- in servus; mēns- in mēnsa; ign- in ignis.

28. Inflectional terminations are variously modified by combination with the final vowel or consonant of the Stem, and thus the various forms of Declension and Conjugation (see §§ 36, 164) developed.

GENDER

29. The Genders distinguished in Latin are three: Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter.

30. The gender of Latin nouns is either natural or grammatical.

a. Natural Gender is distinction as to the sex of the object denoted: as, puer (m.), boy; puella (f.), girl; rèx (m.), king; règina (f.), queen.

Note 1.—Many nouns have both a masculine and a feminine form to distinguish sex: as, cervus, cerva, stag, doe; clēns, clienta, client; victor, victrix, conqueror. Many designations of persons (as nauta, sailor) usually though not necessarily male are always treated as masculine. Similarly names of tribes and peoples are masculine: as, Rōmānī, the Romans; Persae, the Persians.

Note 2.—A few neuter nouns are used to designate persons as belonging to a class: as, mancipium tuum, your slave (your chattel). Many pet names of girls and boys are neuter in form: as, Paegnium, Glycerium.

Note 3.—Names of classes or collections of persons may be of any gender: as, exercitus (m.), acīs (f.), and agmen (n.), army; operae (f. plur.), workmen; cōpiae (f. plur.), troops; senātus (m.), senate; cohors (f.), cohort; concilium (n.), council.

² These suffixes are Indo-European stem-endings.
Grammatical Gender is a formal distinction as to sex where no actual sex exists in the object. It is shown by the form of the adjective joined with the noun: as, lapis māgnus (M.), a great stone; manus mea (F.), my hand.

General Rules of Gender

31. Names of Male beings, and of Rivers, Winds, Months, and Mountains, are masculine: —

pater, father; Iūlius, Julius; Tiberis, the Tiber; auster, south wind; Ianuārius, January; Apenninus, the Apennines.

Notice.—Names of Months are properly adjectives, the masculine noun mensis, month, being understood: as, Ianuarius, January.

a. A few names of Rivers ending in -a (as, Allia), with the Greek names Lēthē and Styx, are feminine; others are variable or uncertain.

b. Some names of Mountains are feminine or neuter, taking the gender of their termination: as, Alpēs (F.), the Alps; Sōracte (N.).

32. Names of Female beings, of Cities, Countries, Plants, Trees, and Gems, of many Animals (especially Birds), and of most abstract Qualities, are feminine: —

māter, mother; Iūlia, Julia; Rōma, Rome; Ītalia, Italy; rosa, rose; pīnus, pine; sapphīrus, sapphire; anas, duck; vēritās, truth.

a. Some names of Towns and Countries are masculine: as, Sulmō, Gabii (plur.); or neuter, as, Tarentum, Illyricum.

b. A few names of Plants and Gems follow the gender of their termination: as, centaurēum (N.), centaury; acanthus (M.), bearsfoot; opalus (M.), opal.

Notice.—The gender of most of the above may also be recognized by the terminations, according to the rules given under the several declensions. The names of Roman women were usually feminine adjectives denoting their gēns or house (see § 108. b).

33. Indeclinable nouns, infinitives, terms or phrases used as nouns, and words quoted merely for their form, are neuter: —

fās, right; nihil, nothing; gummi, gum; scīre tuum, your knowledge (to know); triste valē, a sad farewell; hōc ipsum diū, this very "long."

34. Many nouns may be either masculine or feminine, according to the sex of the object. These are said to be of Common Gender: as, exsul, exile; bōs, ox or cow; parēns, parent.

Notice.—Several names of animals have a grammatical gender, independent of sex. These are called epicene. Thus lēpus, hare, is always masculine, and vulpes, fox, is always feminine.
NUMBER AND CASE

35. Nouns, Pronouns, Adjectives, and Participles are declined in two Numbers, *singular* and *plural*; and in six Cases, *nominative*, *genitive*, *dative*, *accusative*, *ablative*, *vocative*.

*a.* The Nominative is the case of the Subject of a sentence.

*b.* The Genitive may generally be translated by the English Possessive, or by the Objective with the preposition of.

*c.* The Dative is the case of the Indirect Object (§ 274). It may usually be translated by the Objective with the preposition to or for.

*d.* The Accusative is the case of the Direct Object of a verb (§ 274). It is used also with many of the prepositions.

*e.* The Ablative may usually be translated by the Objective with from, by, with, in, or at. It is often used with prepositions.

*f.* The Vocative is the case of Direct Address.

*g.* All the cases, except the nominative and vocative, are used as object-cases; and are sometimes called Oblique Cases (*cāsās obliquā*).

*h.* In names of towns and a few other words appear traces of another case (the Locative), denoting the *place where*: as, Rōmae, at Rome; rūrī, in the country.

Note.—Still another case, the Instrumental, appears in a few adverbs (§ 215. 4).

DECLENSION OF NOUNS

36. Declension is produced by adding terminations originally significant to different forms of stems, vowel or consonant. The various phonetic corruptions in the language have given rise to the several declensions. Most of the case-endings, as given in Latin, contain also the final letter of the stem.

Adjectives are, in general, declined like nouns, and are etymologically to be classed with them; but they have several peculiarities of inflection (see § 109 ff.).

37. Nouns are inflected in five Declensions, distinguished by the final letter (*characteristic*) of the Stem, and by the case-ending of the Genitive Singular.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>ā</td>
<td>ae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>ō</td>
<td>ī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>ī or a Consonant</td>
<td>īs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>ū</td>
<td>ūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>ē</td>
<td>ēī</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*a.* The Stem of a noun may be found, if a consonant stem, by omitting the case-ending; if a vowel stem, by substituting for the case-ending the characteristic vowel.
38. The following are General Rules of Declension:

a. The Vocative is always the same as the Nominative, except in the singular of nouns and adjectives in -us of the second declension, which have -e in the vocative. It is not included in the paradigms, unless it differs from the nominative.

b. In neuters the Nominative and Accusative are always alike, and in the plural end in -ā.

c. The Accusative singular of all masculines and feminines ends in -m; the Accusative plural in -s.

d. In the last three declensions (and in a few cases in the others) the Dative singular ends in -i.

e. The Dative and Ablative plural are always alike.

f. The Genitive plural always ends in -um.

g. Final -i, -o, -u of inflection are always long; final -a is short, except in the Ablative singular of the first declension; final -e is long in the first and fifth declensions, short in the second and third. Final -is and -us are long in plural cases.

Case-endings of the Five Declensions

39. The regular Case-endings of the several declensions are the following:—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Decl. I</th>
<th>Decl. II</th>
<th>Decl. III</th>
<th>Decl. IV</th>
<th>Decl. V</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>F.</td>
<td>M.</td>
<td>N.</td>
<td>M., F.</td>
<td>N.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom. -a</td>
<td>-us</td>
<td>-um</td>
<td>-s</td>
<td>(modified stem)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. -ae</td>
<td>-ī</td>
<td>-is</td>
<td>-ūs</td>
<td>-ēi (-ē)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. -ae</td>
<td>-ō</td>
<td>-i</td>
<td>-ūi (-ū)</td>
<td>-ū</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. -am</td>
<td>-um</td>
<td>-um</td>
<td>-em (-im)</td>
<td>(like nom.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. -ā</td>
<td>-ō</td>
<td>-e (-ī)</td>
<td>-ū</td>
<td>-ē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc. -a</td>
<td>-e</td>
<td>-um</td>
<td>(like nom.)</td>
<td>-us</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.V. -ae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. -ārum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.Abl. -īs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. -ās</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 For ancient, rare, and Greek forms (which are here omitted), see under the several declensions.
FIRST DECLENSION (ā-STEMS)

40. The Stem of nouns of the First Declension ends in ā-. The Nominative ending is -a (the stem-vowel shortened), except in Greek nouns.

41. Latin nouns of the First Declension are thus declined: —

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Case-Endings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>stella, f., star</td>
<td>a star</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>stellae</td>
<td>of a star</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>stellae</td>
<td>to or for a star</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>stellām</td>
<td>a star</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>stellā</td>
<td>with, from, by, etc. a star</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Singular

Plural

| Nom.   | stellae       | stars       |
| Gen.   | stellārum     | of stars    |
| Dat.   | stellis       | to or for stars |
| Acc.   | stellās       | stars       |
| Abl.   | stellis       | with, from, by, etc. stars |

-ae

ārum

-īs

-ās

-īs

a. The Latin has no article; hence stella may mean a star, the star, or simply star.

Gender in the First Declension

42. Nouns of the first declension are Feminine.

Exceptions: Nouns masculine from their signification: as, nauta, sailor. So a few family or personal names: as, Mūrēna, Dolābella, Scaevola; also, Hadria, the Adriatic.

Case-Forms in the First Declension

43. a. The genitive singular anciently ended in -āī (dissyllabic), which is occasionally found: as, aulāī. The same ending sometimes occurs in the dative, but only as a diphthong.

1 Scaevola is really a feminine adjective, used as a noun, meaning little left hand; but, being used as the name of a man (originally a nickname), it became masculine. Original genders are often thus changed by a change in the sense of a noun.
b. An old genitive in -ās is preserved in the word familiās, often used in the combinations pater (māter, filius, filia) familiās, father, etc., of a family (plur. patrēs familiās or familiārum).

c. The Locative form for the singular ends in -ae; for the plural in -is (cf. p. 34, footnote): as, Rōmae, at Rome; Athēnis, at Athens.

d. The genitive plural is sometimes found in -um instead of -arum, especially in Greek patronyms, as, Aeneadum, sons of Aeneas, and in compounds with -ōla and -gēna, signifying dwelling and descent: as, caelicolum, celestials; Trōiugenum, sons of Troy; so also in the Greek nouns amphora and drachma.

e. The dative and ablative plural of dea, goddess, filia, daughter, end in an older form -ābus (deābus, filiābus) to distinguish them from the corresponding cases of deus, god, and filius, son (deis, filiis). So rarely with other words, as, liberta, freed-woman; mūla, she-mule; equa, mare. But, except when the two sexes are mentioned together (as in formulas, documents, etc.), the form in -is is preferred in all but dea and filia.

Note 1.—The old ending of the ablative singular (-ād) is sometimes retained in early Latin: as, praidad, booty (later, praedā).

Note 2.—In the dative and ablative plural -eis for -is is sometimes found, and -iis (as in taenis) is occasionally contracted to -is (taenis); so regularly in words in -āia (as, Bāis from Bāiae).

Greek Nouns of the First Declension

44. Many nouns of the First Declension borrowed from the Greek are entirely Latinized (as, aula, court); but others retain traces of their Greek case-forms in the singular.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Electra, f.</th>
<th>synopsis, f.</th>
<th>art of music, f.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>Electra (-ā)</td>
<td>epitomē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>Electrae</td>
<td>epitomēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>Electrae</td>
<td>epitomae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>Electram (-ān)</td>
<td>epitomēn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ābl.</td>
<td>Ėlectrā</td>
<td>epitomē</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Andromache, f.</th>
<th>ĀEneas, m.</th>
<th>Persian, m.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>Andromachē (-a)</td>
<td>Aenēās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>Andromachēs (-ae)</td>
<td>Aenēae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>Andromachae</td>
<td>Aenēae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>Andromachēn (-am)</td>
<td>Aenēān (-am)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ābl.</td>
<td>Andromachē (-ā)</td>
<td>Aenēā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>Andromachē (-a)</td>
<td>Aenēā (-a)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Greek Nouns of the First Declension (Ă–STEMS)
Anchises, m.    son of Aeneas, m.    comet, m.

Nom. Anchisēs    Aeneadēs (-a)    comētēs (-a)
Gen. Anchisae    Aeneadae    comētae
Dat. Anchisae    Aeneadae    comētae
Acc. Anchisēn (-am)    Aeneadēn    comētēn (-am)
Abl. Anchisē (-ā)    Aeneadē (-ā)    comētā (-ē)
Voc. Anchisē (-ā, -a)    Aeneadē (-a)    comēta

There are (besides proper names) about thirty-five of these words, several being names of plants or arts: as, crambe, cabbage; musice, music. Most have also regular Latin forms: as, comēta; but the nominative sometimes has the a long.

a. Greek forms are found only in the singular; the plural, when it occurs, is regular: as, comētae, -ārum, etc.

b. Many Greek nouns vary between the first, the second, and the third declensions: as, Boōtēs (genitive of Boōtēs, -is), Thūcūcydidās (accusative plural of Thūcūcydidēs, -is). See § 52. a and § 81.

Note.—The Greek accusative Scipiādam, from Scipīadēs, descendant of the Scipios, is found in Horace.

SECOND DECLENSION (o-STEMS)

45. The Stem of nouns of the Second Declension ends in ō-: as, viro- (stem of vir, man), servo- (stem of servus or servos, slave), bello- (stem of bellum, war).

a. The Nominative is formed from the stem by adding s in masculines and feminines, and m in neuters, the vowel ō being weakened to ū (see §§ 6. a, 46. n.1).

b. In most nouns whose stem ends in rō- the s is not added in the Nominative, but o is lost, and e intrudes before r,1 if not already present: as, ager, stem agrō-2; cf. puer, stem puero-

Exceptions: erus, hesperus, iūniperus, mōrus, numerus, taurus, uumerus, uērus, virus, and many Greek nouns.

c. The stem-vowel ō has a variant form ē,3 which is preserved in the Latin vocative singular of nouns in -us: as, servē, vocative of servus, slave.

Note.—In composition this ē appears as ī. Thus,—belli-ger, warlike (from bellō-, stem of bellum, war).

46. Nouns of the Second Declension in -us (-os) and -um (-om) are thus declined: —

1 Compare the English chamber from French chambre.
2 Compare Greek ἀγρός, which shows the original o of the stem.
3 By so-called Ablaut (see § 17. a).
### Second Declension (O-Stems)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Case-Endings</th>
<th>Case-Endings</th>
<th>Case-Endings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. servus (-os)</td>
<td>-us (-os)</td>
<td>bellum</td>
<td>-um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. servi</td>
<td>-ī</td>
<td>bellī</td>
<td>-ī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. servō</td>
<td>-ō</td>
<td>bellō</td>
<td>-ō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. servum (-om)</td>
<td>-um (-om)</td>
<td>bellum</td>
<td>-um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. servō</td>
<td>-ē</td>
<td>bellē</td>
<td>-ē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc. serve</td>
<td>-e</td>
<td>bellum</td>
<td>-um</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Plural

| Nom. servī | -ī | bella | -a | Pompēī |
| servōrum | -ōrum | bellōrum | -ōrum | Pompēīōrum |
| servīs | -īs | bellīs | -īs | Pompēīōs |
| servōs | -ōs | bella | -a | Pompēīōs |
| servīs | -īs | bellīs | -īs | Pompēīōs |

**Note 1.**—The earlier forms for nominative and accusative were -ōs, -om, and these were always retained after u and v up to the end of the Republic. The terminations s and m are sometimes omitted in inscriptions: as, Cornēlio for Cornēlios, Cornēliom.

**Note 2.**—Stems in quo-, like equo-, change qu to c before u. Thus,—ecus (earlier equos), equī, equō, ecum (earlier equom), eque. Modern editions disregard this principle.

### 47. Nouns of the Second Declension in -er and -ir are thus declined:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nominative</th>
<th>Ablative</th>
<th>Vocative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>puer, m., boy</td>
<td>puerō, m., field</td>
<td>puerōs, m., man</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Singular

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nominative</th>
<th>Accusative</th>
<th>Vocative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>puer</td>
<td>agrī</td>
<td>virī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>puerī</td>
<td>agrī</td>
<td>virī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>puerō</td>
<td>agrō</td>
<td>virō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>puerum</td>
<td>agrum</td>
<td>virum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>puerō</td>
<td>agrō</td>
<td>virō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nominative</th>
<th>Accusative</th>
<th>Vocative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>puerī</td>
<td>agrī</td>
<td>virī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>puerōrum</td>
<td>agrōrum</td>
<td>virōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>puerīs</td>
<td>agrīs</td>
<td>virīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>puerōs</td>
<td>agrōs</td>
<td>virōs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>puerīs</td>
<td>agrīs</td>
<td>virīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note.**—When e belongs to the stem, as in puer, it is retained throughout; otherwise it appears only in the nominative and vocative singular, as in ager.
Gender in the Second Declension

48. Nouns ending in -us (-os), -er, -ir, are Masculine; those ending in -um (-on) are Neuter.

Exceptions: Names of countries and towns in -us (-os) are Feminine: as, Aegyptus, Corinthus. Also many names of plants and gems, with the following: alvus, belly; carbasus, linen (pl. carbasae, sails, n.); colus, distaff; humus, ground; vannus, winnowing-shovel.

Many Greek nouns retain their original gender: as, arctus (r.), the Polar Bear; methodus (r.), method.

a. The following in -us are Neuter; their accusative (as with all neutrals) is the same as the nominative: pelagus, sea; virus, poison; vulgus (rarely m.), the crowd. They are not found in the plural, except pelagus, which has a rare nominative and accusative plural pelagē.

Note.—The nominative plural neuter cētē, sea monsters, occurs; the nominative singular cētus occurs in Vitruvius.

Case-Forms in the Second Declension

49. a. The Locative form of this declension ends for the singular in -i: as, humili, on the ground; Corinthi, at Corinth; for the plural, in -is: as, Philippis, at Philippi (cf. p. 34, footnote).

b. The genitive of nouns in -ius or -ium ended, until the Augustan Age, in a single -i: as, filli, of a son; Pompēi, of Pompey (Pompēius); but the accent of the nominative is retained: as, ingē'ni, of genius.¹

c. Proper names in -ius have -i in the vocative, retaining the accent of the nominative: as, Vergē'li. So also, filius, son; genius, divine guardian: as, audī, mi fili, hear, my son.

Adjectives in -ius form the vocative in -ie, and some of these are occasionally used as nouns: as, Lacedaemonie, O Spartan.

Note.—Greek names in -ius have the vocative -iē: as, Lyrcius, vocative Lyricē.

d. The genitive plural often has -um or (after v) -om (cf. § 6. a) instead of -orum, especially in the poets: as, deum, superum, divom, of the gods; virum, of men. Also in compounds of vir, and in many words of money, measure, and weight: as, Sēvirum, of the Seviri; nummum, of coins; iūgerum, of acres.

e. The original ending of the ablative singular (-ōd) is sometimes found in early Latin: as, Gnaīvōd (later, Gnaeō), Cneius.

f. Proper names in -āius, -ēius, -ōius (as, Aurunculēius, Bōi), are declined like Pompēius.

¹ The genitive in -ii occurs once in Virgil, and constantly in Ovid, but was probably unknown to Cicero.
§§ 49-52] SECOND DECLENSION (O-STEMS) 23

g. Deus (m.), god, is thus declined:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. deus</td>
<td>dei (dīf), dī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. dei</td>
<td>deōrum, deum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. deō</td>
<td>deiōs (dīs), dīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. deum</td>
<td>deōs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. deō</td>
<td>deiōs (dīs), dīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note.—The vocative singular of deus does not occur in classic Latin, but is said to have been deē; deus (like the nominative) occurs in the Vulgate. For the genitive plural, divum or divom (from divus, divine) is often used.

50. The following stems in ero-, in which e belongs to the stem, retain the e throughout and are declined like puer (§ 47):

- adulter, adulterer;
- gener, son-in-law;
- socer, father-in-law;
- vesper, evening;
- Libr, Bacchus.

Also, the adjective liber, free, of which liberi, children, is the plural (§ 111. a), and compounds in -fer and -ger (stem fero-, gero): as, lūcifer, morning star; armiger, squire.

a. An old nominative socerus occurs. So vocative puere, boy, as if from tpuerus (regularly puer).

b. Vir, man, has genitive virī; the adjective satur, sated, has saturī; vespere, evening, has ablative vespere (locative vesperī, in the evening).

c. Mulciber, Vulcān, has -berī and -brī in the genitive. The barbaric names Hibēr and Celtibēr retain ē throughout.

51. The following, not having e in the stem, insert it in the nominative singular and are declined like ager (§ 47):

- ager, field, stem agro-;
- aper, boar;
- arbitrēr, judge;
- auster, south wind;
- cancer, crab;
- caper, goat;
- coluber, snake;
- conger, sea eel;
- culter, knife;
- faber, smith;
- fiber, beaver;
- liber, book;
- magister, master;
- minister, servant;
- oleaster, wild olive;
- onager (-grus), wild ass;
- scomber (-brus), mackerel.

Greek Nouns of the Second Declension

52. Greek nouns of the Second Declension end in -os, -ōs, masculine or feminine, and in -on neuter.

They are mostly proper names and are declined as follows in the Singular, the Plural, when found, being regular:
mythos, m.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nam.</th>
<th>mythos</th>
<th>Athos (-S)</th>
<th>Dělos</th>
<th>Ílios, n.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pl.</td>
<td>mythi</td>
<td>Athō (-T)</td>
<td>Dělī</td>
<td>Íliūn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>mythō</td>
<td>Athō</td>
<td>Dělō</td>
<td>Íliō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>mython</td>
<td>Athōn (-um)</td>
<td>Dělon (-um)</td>
<td>Ílión</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>mythō</td>
<td>Athō</td>
<td>Děle</td>
<td>Íliō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>mythe</td>
<td>Athōs</td>
<td></td>
<td>Ílión</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Singular**

A. Many names in -ēs belonging to the third declension have also a genitive in -i: as, Thūcīdēs, Thūcīdīdī (compare § 44. b).

b. Several names in -er have also a nominative in -us: as, Teucer or Teucrus. The name Panthūs has the vocative Panthū (§ 81. 3).

c. The genitive plural of certain titles of books takes the Greek termination -ōn: as, Geōrgicōn, of the Georgics.

d. The termination -oe (for Greek -ai) is sometimes found in the nominative plural: as, Adelphōe, the Adelphi (a play of Terence).

e. Greek names in -eus (like Orpheus) have forms of the second and third declensions (see § 82).

**THIRD DECLENSION (CONSONANT AND i-STEMS)**

53. Nouns of the Third Declension end in a, e, i, o, y, c, l, n, r, s, t, x.

54. Stems of the Third Declension are classed as follows:

I. Consonant Stems

   a. Mute stems.
   b. Liquid and Nasal stems.

II. i-Stems

   a. Pure i-stems.
   b. Mixed i-stems.

55. The Nominative is always derived from the stem.
The variety in form in the Nominative is due to simple modifications of the stem, of which the most important are—

1. Combination of final consonants: as of c (or g) and s to form x; dux, ducis, stem duc-; rēx, rēgis, stem rēg-.
2. Omission of a final consonant: as of a final nasal; leō, leōnis, stem leōn-; ὥρατιος, ὥρατιον-, stem ὥρατιον-.
3. Omission of a final vowel: as of final i; calcar, calcāris, stem calcāri.
4. Change of vowel in the final syllable: as of a to e; princeps (for -caps), principis, stem princip- (for -cap-).
CONSONANT STEMS

Mute Stems

56. Masculine and Feminine Nouns with mute stems form the Nominative by adding s to the stem.

A labial (p) is retained before s: as, princeps-s.
A lingual (t, d) is dropped before s: as, miles (stem milit-), custos (stem custod-).
A palatal (c, g) unites with s to form x: as, dux (for †duc-s), rex (for †reg-s).

α. In dissyllabic stems the final syllable often shows e in the nominative and i in the stem: as, princeps, stem princip- (for -cap-).

57. Nouns of this class are declined as follows:—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>princeps, c., chief</th>
<th>radix, f., root</th>
<th>miles, m., soldier</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stem princip-</td>
<td>Stem radic-</td>
<td>Stem milit-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Nom.** princeps | radix | miles | -s
Gen. principis | radicis | militis | -is
Dat. principi | radici | militi | -i
Acc. principem | radicem | militem | -em
Abl. principe | radice | milite | -e

**Plural**

| princepses | radicês | militês | -ês
Gen. principum | radicum | militum | -um
Dat. principibus | radicibus | militibus | -ibus
Acc. principês | radicês | militês | -ês
Abl. principibus | radicibus | militibus | -ibus

custos, c., guard | dux, c., leader | rex, m., king |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stem custod-</td>
<td>Stem duc-</td>
<td>Stem reg-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Nom.** custos | dux | rex | -s
Gen. custodis | ducis | regis | -is
Dat. custodi | duci | regi | -i
Acc. custodem | ducem | regular | -em
Abl. custode | duce | regere | -e

**CASE-ENDINGS**
DECLENSION OF NOUNS

Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>custodēs</td>
<td>custodum</td>
<td>custodibus</td>
<td>custodēs</td>
<td>custodibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ducēs</td>
<td>ducum</td>
<td>ducibus</td>
<td>ducēs</td>
<td>ducibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>regēs</td>
<td>regum</td>
<td>regibus</td>
<td>regēs</td>
<td>regibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-ēs</td>
<td>-um</td>
<td>-ibus</td>
<td>-ēs</td>
<td>-ibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. In like manner are declined —
ariēs, -etis (m.), ram; comes, -itis (c.), companion; lapis, -idis (m.), stone; iūdex, -icis (m.), judge; cornīx, -icis (f.), raven, and many other nouns.

58. Most mute stems are Masculine or Feminine. Those that are neuter have for the Nominative the simple stem. But, —
a. Lingual Stems (t, d) ending in two consonants drop the final mute: as, cor (stem cord-), lac (stem lact-). So also stems in ōt- from the Greek: as, poēma (stem poēmat-).
b. The stem capit- shows u in the nominative (caput for capot).

59. Nouns of this class are declined as follows: —

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Case-Endings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>caput</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>capitēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>capitibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>capita</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>capitēs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plural</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>capita</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>capitum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>capitibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>capita</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>capitēs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

60. The following irregularities require notice: —
a. Greek neuters with nominative singular in -a (as poēma) frequently end in -is in the dative and ablative plural, and rarely in -orum in the genitive plural; as, poēmatēs (for poēmatibus), poēmatōrum (for poēmatum).
b. A number of monosyllabic nouns with mute stems want the genitive plural (like cor). See § 103. g. 2.
### Liquid and Nasal Stems (l, n, r)

61. In Masculine and Feminine nouns with liquid and nasal stems the Nominative is the same as the stem.

Exceptions are the following:

1. Stems in ön- drop n in the nominative: as in legiō, stem legiōn-.
2. Stems in din- and gin- drop n and keep an original ō in the nominative: as in virgō, stem virgin-.
3. Stems in in- (not din- or gin-) retain n and have e instead of i in the nominative: as in cornicen, stem cornicin-.
4. Stems in tr- have -ter in the nominative: as, pater, stem patr-.

62. Nouns of this class are declined as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>cōnsul</th>
<th>leō</th>
<th>virgō</th>
<th>pater</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>cōnsulis</td>
<td>leōnis</td>
<td>virginis</td>
<td>patris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>cōnsulī</td>
<td>leōnī</td>
<td>virginī</td>
<td>patrī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>cōnsulem</td>
<td>leōnem</td>
<td>virginem</td>
<td>patrem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>cōnsule</td>
<td>leōne</td>
<td>virgine</td>
<td>patre</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Singular Case-Endings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>cōnsulēs</td>
<td>leōnēs</td>
<td>virginēs</td>
<td>patrēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>cōnsulum</td>
<td>leōnum</td>
<td>virginum</td>
<td>patrulum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>cōnsulibus</td>
<td>leōnibus</td>
<td>virginibus</td>
<td>patribus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>cōnsulēs</td>
<td>leōnēs</td>
<td>virginēs</td>
<td>patrēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>cōnsulum</td>
<td>leōnum</td>
<td>virginum</td>
<td>patrulum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>cōnsulibus</td>
<td>leōnibus</td>
<td>virginibus</td>
<td>patribus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note 1.**—Stems in ili-, ri- (n.) lose one of their liquids in the nominative: as, far, farris; mel, mēllis.

**Note 2.**—A few masculine and feminine stems have a nominative in -s as well as in -r: as, honōs or honor, arbōs or arbor.

**Note 3.**—Canis, dog, and iuvenis, youth, have -is in the nominative.

1 These differences depend in part upon special phonetic laws, in accordance with which vowels in weakly accented or unaccented syllables are variously modified, and in part upon the influence of analogy.

2 These, no doubt, had originally ter- in the stem, but this had become weakened to tr- in some of the cases even in the parent speech. In Latin only the nominative and vocative singular show the e. But cf. Māspitris and Māspiteris (Mā[r]s-piter), quoted by Priscian as old forms.
63. In Neuter nouns with liquid or nasal stems the Nomina-
tive is the same as the stem.

Exceptions: 1. Stems in in- have e instead of i in the nominative: as in
nōmen, stem nōmin-.
2. Most stems in er- and or- have -us in the nominative: as, genus, stem gener-.

64. Nouns of this class are declined as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>nomen, n., name</th>
<th>genus, n., race</th>
<th>corpus, n., body</th>
<th>aequor, n., sea</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>nōmen</td>
<td>genus</td>
<td>corpus</td>
<td>aequor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>nōminis</td>
<td>generis</td>
<td>corporis</td>
<td>aequorius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>nōminī</td>
<td>generī</td>
<td>corporī</td>
<td>aequorī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>nōmen</td>
<td>genus</td>
<td>corpus</td>
<td>aequor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>nōmine</td>
<td>genere</td>
<td>corpore</td>
<td>aequore</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plural</th>
<th>nōmina</th>
<th>genera</th>
<th>corpora</th>
<th>aequora</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>nōminum</td>
<td>generum</td>
<td>corporum</td>
<td>aequorum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>nōminibus</td>
<td>generibus</td>
<td>corporibus</td>
<td>aequoribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>nōminibus</td>
<td>generibus</td>
<td>corporibus</td>
<td>aequoribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>nōmina</td>
<td>genera</td>
<td>corpora</td>
<td>aequora</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>nōminibus</td>
<td>generibus</td>
<td>corporibus</td>
<td>aequoribus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

So also are declined opus, -eris, work; pīgnus, -eris or -oris, pledge, etc.

Note.—The following real or apparent liquid and nasal stems have the genitive plural in -ium, and are to be classed with the i-stems: imber, linter, ūter, venter; glīs, mās, mūs, [tren]; also virēs (plural of vis: see § 79).

i-STEMS

65. Nouns of this class include—

1. Pure i-Stems:
   a. Masculine and Feminine parissyllabic nouns in -is and four in -er.
   b. Neuters in -e, -al, and -ar.

2. Mixed i-Stems, declined in the singular like consonant stems, in the plural like i-stems.

1 These were originally s-stems (cf. § 15. 4).
2 I.e. having the same number of syllables in the nominative and genitive singular.
Pure *i*-Stems

66. Masculine and Feminine parisyllabic nouns in *-is* form the Nominative singular by adding *s* to the stem.

Four stems in *bri*- and *tri*- do not add *s* to form the nominative, but drop *i* and insert *e* before *r*. These are *imber*, *linter*, *uter*, *venter*.

67. Nouns of this class are declined as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>sitis, <em>f.</em>, thirst</th>
<th>turris, <em>f.</em>, tower</th>
<th>īgnis, <em>m.</em>, fire</th>
<th>imber, <em>m.</em>, rain</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>sitis</td>
<td>turris</td>
<td>īgnis</td>
<td>imber</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>sitis</td>
<td>turris</td>
<td>īgnis</td>
<td>imbrīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>sitī</td>
<td>turī</td>
<td>īgnī</td>
<td>imbrī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>sitīm</td>
<td>turīm (-<em>em</em>)</td>
<td>īgnem</td>
<td>imbrem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>sitī</td>
<td>turī (-<em>e</em>)</td>
<td>īgnī (-<em>e</em>)</td>
<td>imbrī (-<em>e</em>)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>turres</th>
<th>īgnēs</th>
<th>imbrēs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>turrium</td>
<td>ignium</td>
<td>imbrium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>turribus</td>
<td>ignibus</td>
<td>imbrībus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>turribus</td>
<td>ignībus</td>
<td>imbrīs (-<em>ēs</em>)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>turris (-<em>ēs</em>)</td>
<td>ignī (-<em>ēs</em>)</td>
<td>imbrī (-<em>ēs</em>)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>turribus</td>
<td>ignībus</td>
<td>imbrībus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

68. In Neuters the Nominative is the same as the stem, with final *i* changed to *e*: as, *mare*, stem *mari*-. But most nouns¹ in which the *i* of the stem is preceded by *āl* or *ār* lose the final vowel and shorten the preceding *ā*: as, *animāl*, stem *animāli*.-²

a. Neuters in *-e*, *-al*, and *-ar* have *-i* in the ablative singular, *-ium* in the genitive plural, and *-ia* in the nominative and accusative plural: as, *animal*, *animāli*, *-ia*, *-ium*.

¹ Such are *animal*, *bacchāNAL*, *bidental*, *capital*, *cervical*, *cubital*, *lupercal*, *minūtal*, *puteal*, *quadrantal*, *toral*, *tribānal*, *vectīgal*; *calcar*, *cochlear*, *exemplar*, *lacūnar*, *laquear*, *lūcar*, *lūminar*, *lupānar*; *palæar*, *pulvinar*, *torcular*. Cf. the plurals *dentālia*, *frontālia*, *genuālia*, *spōnsālia*; *altāria*, *plantāria*, *speculāria*, *tālāria*; also many names of festivals, as, *Sāturnālia*.

² Exceptions are *augurāle*, *collāre*, *fōcāle*, *nāvāle*, *penetrāle*, *rāmāle*, *scūtāle*, *tibiāle*; *alveāre*, *capillāre*, *cochlearē*. 
69. Nouns of this class are declined as follows:—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Case-endings</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sedile, n., seat</td>
<td>-e or -is</td>
<td>sedile</td>
<td>sedilia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>animal, n., animal</td>
<td>-is</td>
<td>animal</td>
<td>animālia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calcar, n., spur</td>
<td>-t</td>
<td>calcar</td>
<td>calcārium</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Singular**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sedile</td>
<td>sedilis</td>
<td>sedilī</td>
<td>sedile</td>
<td>sedilī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>animal</td>
<td>animālis</td>
<td>animālī</td>
<td>animal</td>
<td>animālī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calcar</td>
<td>calcāris</td>
<td>calcāri</td>
<td>calcar</td>
<td>calcāri</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Plural**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sedilia</td>
<td>sedilīum</td>
<td>sedilibus</td>
<td>sedilia</td>
<td>sedilibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>animālia</td>
<td>animālium</td>
<td>animālibus</td>
<td>animālia</td>
<td>animālibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calcāria</td>
<td>calcārium</td>
<td>calcāribus</td>
<td>calcāria</td>
<td>calcāribus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Mixed i-Stems**

70. Mixed i-stems are either original i-stems that have lost their i-forms in the singular, or consonant stems that have assumed i-forms in the plural.

**Note.**—It is sometimes impossible to distinguish between these two classes.

71. Mixed i-stems have -em in the accusative and -e in the ablative singular, -ium in the genitive and -is or -ēs in the accusative plural. They include the following:—

1. Nouns in -ēs, gen. -is.
2. Monosyllables in -s or -x preceded by a consonant: as, ars, pōns, arx.
3. Polysyllables in -ns or -rs: as, cliēns, cohors.
5. Penātēs, optimātēs, and nouns denoting birth or abode (patrials) in -ās, -ēs, plural -ātēs, -ītēs: as, Arpānās, plural Arpānātēs; Quirīs, plural Quirītēs.
6. The following monosyllables in -s or -x preceded by a vowel: dōs, fraus, glīs, līs, mās, mūs, nīx, nox, strīx, vīs.

1 There is much variety in the practice of the ancients, some of these words having -ium, some -um, and some both.
2 These are acinacēs, aedēs, alcēs, caedēs, cautēs, clādēs, compāgēs, contāgēs, famēs, fēlēs, fidēs (plural), indōlēs, lābēs, luēs, mēlēs, mōlēs, nūbēs, palumbēs, prōlēs, prōpāgēs, pūbēs, sēdēs, saepēs, sordēs, strāgēs, strēs, subolēs, tābēs, torquēs, tudēs, vātēs, vehēs, veprēs, verrēs, vulpēs; aedēs has also nominative aedis.
72. Nouns of this class are thus declined:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>nūbēs, F., cloud</th>
<th>urbs, F., city</th>
<th>nox, F., night</th>
<th>cliēns, M., client</th>
<th>aetās, F., age</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stem</td>
<td>nūb(i)-</td>
<td>urb(i)-</td>
<td>noct(i)-</td>
<td>client(i)-</td>
<td>aētāt(i)-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Singular**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>nūbēs</th>
<th>urbs</th>
<th>nox</th>
<th>cliēns</th>
<th>aetās</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>nūbis</td>
<td>urbis</td>
<td>noctis</td>
<td>clientis</td>
<td>aetātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>nūbī</td>
<td>urbī</td>
<td>noctī</td>
<td>clientī</td>
<td>aetātī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>nūbem</td>
<td>urbem</td>
<td>noctem</td>
<td>clientem</td>
<td>aetātem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>nūbe</td>
<td>urbe</td>
<td>nocte</td>
<td>cliente</td>
<td>aetāte</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Plural**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>nūbēs</th>
<th>urbēs</th>
<th>noctēs</th>
<th>clientēs</th>
<th>aetātēs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>nūbium</td>
<td>urbium</td>
<td>noctium</td>
<td>clientium</td>
<td>aetātum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>nūbibus</td>
<td>urbibus</td>
<td>noctibus</td>
<td>clientibus</td>
<td>aetātibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>nūbīs(-ēs)</td>
<td>urbīs(-ēs)</td>
<td>noctīs(-ēs)</td>
<td>clientīs(-ēs)</td>
<td>aetātīs(-ēs)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>nūbibus</td>
<td>urbibus</td>
<td>noctibus</td>
<td>clientibus</td>
<td>aetātibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Summary of i-Stems

73. The i-declension was confused even to the Romans themselves, nor was it stable at all periods of the language, early Latin having i-forms which afterwards disappeared. There was a tendency in nouns to lose the i-forms, in adjectives to gain them. The nominative plural (-is) was most thoroughly lost, next the accusative singular (-im), next the ablative (-i) ; while the genitive and accusative plural (-ium, -is) were retained in almost all.

74. I-stems show the i of the stem in the following forms: —

- **a.** They have the genitive plural in -ium (but some monosyllables lack it entirely). For a few exceptions, see § 78.
- **b.** All neuters have the nominative and accusative plural in -ia.
- **c.** The accusative plural (m. or f.) is regularly -is.
- **d.** The accusative singular (m. or f.) of a few ends in -im (§ 75).
- **e.** The ablative singular of all neuters, and of many masculines and feminines, ends in -i (see § 76).

75. The regular case-ending of the Accusative singular of i-stems (m. or f.) would be -im: as, sitis, sitim (cf. stella, -am; servus, -um); but in most nouns this is changed to -em (following the consonant declension).

---

1 Rarely clientum.
2 Also aetātium. Cf. § 71. 4.
3 An old, though not the original, ending (see p. 32, footnote 2).
a. The accusative in -im is found exclusively —
1. In Greek nouns and in names of rivers.
2. In būris, cucumis, rāvis, sitis, tussis, vis.
3. In adverbs in -tim (being accusative of nouns in -tis), as, partim; and in amussim.

b. The accusative in -im is found sometimes in febris, puppis, restis, turris, secūris, sēmentis, and rarely in many other words.

76. The regular form of the Ablative singular of i-stems would be -i: as, sitis, siti; but in most nouns this is changed to -e.

a. The ablative in -i is found exclusively —
1. In nouns having the accusative in -im (§ 75); also secūris.
2. In the following adjectives used as nouns: aequālis, annālis, aquālis, consulāris, gentilis, molāris, primipilāris, tribūlis.
3. In neuters in -e, -al, -ar: except baccar, iubar, rēte, and sometimes mare.

b. The ablative in -i is found sometimes —
1. In avis, clāvis, febris, finis, ignis,1 imber, lūx, nāvis, ovis, pelvis, puppis, sēmentis, strīgilis, turris, and occasionally in other words.
2. In the following adjectives used as nouns: affinis, bipennis, canālis, familiāris, nātālis, rīvālis, sapiēns, triēns, trīrēmis, vōcālis.

Note 1. — The ablative of famēs is always famē (§ 105. e). The defective mānē has sometimes mānī (§ 103. b. n.) as ablative.

Note 2. — Most names of towns in -e (as, Praeneste, Tergeste) and Sōracte, a mountain, have the ablative in -e. Caere has Caerete.

Note 3. — Canis and iuvenis have cane, iuvene.

77. The regular Nominative plural of i-stems is -ēs,2 but -is is occasionally found. The regular Accusative plural -is is common, but not exclusively used in any word. An old form for both cases is -ēs (diphthong).

78. The following have -um (not -ium) in the genitive plural:
1. Always, — canis, iuvenis,3 ambāgēs, mare (once only, otherwise wanting), volucris; regularly, sēdēs, vātēs.
2. Sometimes, — apis, caedēs, clādēs, mēnsis, struēs, subōlēs.
3. Very rarely, — patrialis in -ās, -ātis; -īs, -ītis; as, Arpīnās, Arpīnātum; Samnis, Samnītum.

1 Always in the formula aquā et īgni interdīci (§ 401).
2 The Indo-European ending of the nominative plural, -ēs (preserved in Greek in consonant stems, as δρυέ, δρυέ-ēs), contracts with a stem-vowel and gives -ēs in the Latin i-declension (cf. the Greek plural δεῖς). This -ēs was extended to consonant stems in Latin.
3 Canis and iuvenis are really n-stems.
Irregular Nouns of the Third Declension

79. In many nouns the stem is irregularly modified in the nominative or other cases. Some peculiar forms are thus declined:—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>bōs</em>, c.</td>
<td><em>bos</em></td>
<td><em>bovis</em></td>
<td><em>bovi</em></td>
<td><em>bove</em></td>
<td><em>boves</em></td>
<td><em>boum</em></td>
<td><em>bōbus</em></td>
<td><em>bōbus</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>senex</em>, m.</td>
<td><em>senex</em></td>
<td><em>senis</em></td>
<td><em>senī</em></td>
<td><em>senem</em></td>
<td><em>senēs</em></td>
<td><em>senum</em></td>
<td><em>senibus</em></td>
<td><em>senibus</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>carō</em>, f.</td>
<td><em>carō</em></td>
<td><em>carnis</em></td>
<td><em>carnī</em></td>
<td><em>carmem</em></td>
<td><em>carnēs</em></td>
<td><em>carnium</em></td>
<td><em>carnibus</em></td>
<td><em>carnibus</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>os</em>, n.</td>
<td><em>os</em></td>
<td><em>ossis</em></td>
<td><em>ossī</em></td>
<td><em>osses</em></td>
<td><em>ossa</em></td>
<td><em>ossium</em></td>
<td><em>ossibus</em></td>
<td><em>ossibus</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>vis</em>, f.</td>
<td><em>vis</em></td>
<td><em>vis</em> (rare)</td>
<td><em>vī</em> (rare)</td>
<td><em>vi</em></td>
<td><em>vī</em></td>
<td><em>virium</em></td>
<td><em>vīribus</em></td>
<td><em>vīres</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Cattle

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>sūs</em>, c.</td>
<td><em>sūs</em></td>
<td><em>suis</em></td>
<td><em>suī</em></td>
<td><em>suem</em></td>
<td><em>suēs</em></td>
<td><em>sum</em></td>
<td><em>sūbus</em></td>
<td><em>sūbus</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Iuppiter</em>, m.</td>
<td><em>Iuppiter</em></td>
<td><em>Iovis</em></td>
<td><em>Iovī</em></td>
<td><em>Iovem</em></td>
<td><em>Ioveni</em></td>
<td><em>Ioveni</em></td>
<td><em>Iuvian</em></td>
<td><em>Iuvian</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>nix</em>, f.</td>
<td><em>nix</em></td>
<td><em>nivis</em></td>
<td><em>nivī</em></td>
<td><em>nivem</em></td>
<td><em>nive</em></td>
<td><em>nivium</em></td>
<td><em>nivibus</em></td>
<td><em>nivibus</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>iter</em>, n.</td>
<td><em>iter</em></td>
<td><em>itineris</em></td>
<td><em>itinerī</em></td>
<td><em>itinerem</em></td>
<td><em>itinere</em></td>
<td><em>itinerum</em></td>
<td><em>itineribus</em></td>
<td><em>itineribus</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Swine

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Iuppiter</em> ¹</td>
<td><em>nix</em></td>
<td><em>nivis</em></td>
<td><em>nivī</em></td>
<td><em>nivem</em></td>
<td><em>nive</em></td>
<td><em>nivium</em></td>
<td><em>nivibus</em></td>
<td><em>nivibus</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ Also Jupiter.
a. Two vowel-stems in ŭ-, grû- and sû-, which follow the third declension, add s in the nominative, and are inflected like mute stems: grûs has also a nominative gruis; sûs has both suibus and sûbus in the dative and ablative plural, grûs has only gribus.

b. In the stem bov- (bou-) the diphthong ou becomes ŏ in the nominative (bôs, bóvis).

In nâv- (nau-) an i is added (nâvis, -is), and it is declined like turris (§ 67). In Iôv- (= Zeûs) the diphthong (ou) becomes ŭ in Iû-piter (for -pater), genitive Iôvis, etc.; but the form Iuppiter is preferred.

c. In iter, itineris (N.), iecur, iecinoris (iecoris) (N.), supellêx, supellêctilis (r.), the nominative has been formed from a shorter stem; in senex, senis, from a longer; so that these words show a combination of forms from two distinct stems.

d. In nix, nivis the nominative retains a g from the original stem, the g uniting with s, the nominative ending, to form x. In the other cases the stem assumes the form niv- and it adds i in the genitive plural.

e. Vâs (N.), vâsis, keeps s throughout; plural vâsa, vâsorum. A dative plural vâsibus also occurs. There is a rare singular vâsum.

The Locative Case

80. The Locative form for nouns of the third declension ends in the singular in -î or -e, in the plural in -ibus: as, rûrî, in the country; Carthâgîni or Carthâgîne, at Carthage; Trallibus, at Tralles.1

Greek Nouns of the Third Declension

81. Many nouns originally Greek — mostly proper names — retain Greek forms of inflection. So especially —

1. Genitive singular in -os, as, tigridós.
2. Accusative singular in -a, as, aëthéra.
3. Vocative singular like the stem, as, Periclê, Orpheu, Atlâ.
4. Nominative plural in -ês, as, hërôês.
5. Accusative plural in -âs, as, hërôâs.

1 The Indo-European locative singular ended in -i, which became -ê in Latin. Thus the Latin ablative in -e is, historically considered, a locative. The Latin ablative in -i (from -ād) was an analogical formation (cf. -ā from -ād, -ê from -ād), properly belonging to i-stems. With names of towns and a few other words, a locative function was ascribed to forms in -i (as, Carthâgîni), partly on the analogy of the real locative of o-stems (as, Corinthi, § 49. a); but forms in -ê also survived in this use. The plural -bus is properly dative or ablative, but in forms like Trallibus it has a locative function. Cf. Philippîs (§ 49. a), in which the ending -ês is, historically considered, either locative, or instrumental, or both, and Athênîs (§ 43. e), in which the ending is formed on the analogy of o-stems.
82. Some of these forms are seen in the following examples:—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. hérōs</td>
<td>lampas</td>
<td>basis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. hérōis</td>
<td>lampados</td>
<td>baseōs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. hérōi</td>
<td>lampadī</td>
<td>basī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. hérōa</td>
<td>lampada</td>
<td>basin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. hérōe</td>
<td>lampade</td>
<td>basī</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Nom. hérōēs | lampadēs | basēs | tigrēs | nāidēs |
| Gen. hérōum | lampadum | basium(-eōn) | tigrium | nāidum |
| D.,A. hérōibus | lampadibus | basibus | tigribus | nāidibus |
| Acc. hérōās | lampadās | basiis(-ēis) | tigrīs(-idās) | nāidās |

**Proper Names**

| Nom. Didō | Simoīs | Capys |
| Gen. Didōnis(Didūs) | Simoentīs | Capyos |
| Dat. Didōnī(Didō) | Simoentī | Capyī |
| Acc. Didōnem(-ō) | Simoenta | Capyn |
| Abl. Didōne(-ō) | Simoente | Capyē |
| Voc. Didō | - Simoīs | Capy |

| Nom. Orpheus | Periclēs | Paris |
| Gen. Orpheī(-ēs) | Periclis(-ī) | Paridis |
| Dat. Orpheī(-ō) | Periclī(-i) | Paridī |
| Acc. Orpheum(-um) | Periclem(-ea, -ēn) | { Paridem, Parim(-in) |
| Abl. Orpheō | Pericle | Paride, Parī |
| Voc. Orpheu | Periclēs(-ē) | Pari |

Note.—The regular Latin forms may be used for most of the above.

83. Other peculiarities are the following:—

a. Delphinus, -i (m.), has also the form delphin, -inis; Salamis, -is (f.), has acc. Salamina.

b. Most stems in id- (nom. -is) often have also the forms of i-stems: as, tigris, gen. -idis (-idos) or -is; acc. -idem (-ida) or -im (-in); abl. -ide or -ī.

But many, including most feminine proper names, have acc. -idem (-ida), abl. -ide, —not -im or -ī. (These stems are irregular also in Greek.)

1 Dative, hérōisin (once only).
c. Stems in on- sometimes retain -n in the nominative: as, Agamemnón (or Agamemnō), genitive -ōnis, accusative -ōna.

d. Stems in ont- form the nominative in -ōn: as, horizōn, Xenophōn; but a few are occasionally Latinized into ōn- (nom. -ō): as, Dracō, -ōnis; Antiphō, -ōnis.

e. Like Simoïs are declined stems in ant-, ent-, and a few in ūnt- (nominative in -ās, -īs, -ūs): as, Atlās, -antis; Trapezūs, -ūntis.

f. Some words fluctuate between different declensions: as Orpheus between the second and the third.

g. -ōn is found in the genitive plural in a few Greek titles of books: as, Metamorphōseōn, of the Metamorphoses (Ovid’s well-known poem); Geōrgicōn, of the Georgics (a poem of Virgil).

Gender in the Third Declension

84. The Gender of nouns of this declension must be learned by practice and from the Lexicon. Many are masculine or feminine by nature or in accordance with the general rules for gender (p. 15). The most important rules for the others, with their principal exceptions, are the following: —

85. Masculine are nouns in -or, -ōs, -er, -ēs (gen. -itis), -ex (gen. -icis): as, color, fōs, imber, gurges (gurgitis), vertex (verticis).

Exceptions are the following: —

a. Feminine are arbor; cōs, dōs; linter.

b. Neuter are ador, aequor, cor, marmor; ēs (ēris); also os (ossis); cadāver, iter, tūber, ēber, vēr; and names of plants and trees in -er: as, acer, papāver.

86. Feminine are nouns in -ō, -ās, -ēs, -is, -ūs, -x, and in -s preceded by a consonant: as, legiō, cīvitās, nūbēs, avis, virtūs, arx, urbs. The nouns in -ō are mostly those in -dō and -gō, and abstract and collective nouns in -īō.

Exceptions are the following: —

a. Masculine are leō, leōnis; ligō, ōnis; sermō, -ōnis; also cardō, harpagō, margō, ārdō, turbō; and concrete nouns in -ō: as, pugiō, ūniō, papiliō; 2 acīnacēs, ariēs, celēs, lebēs, pāriēs, pēs;

1 Some nouns of doubtful or variable gender are omitted.
2 Many nouns in -ō (gen. -ōnis) are masculine by signification: as, gerō, carrier; restiō, ropemaker; and family names (originally nicknames): as, Cicero, Nāsō. See §§ 236. c, 255.
FOURTH DECLENSION

Nouns in -nis and -guis: as, īgnis, sanguis; also axis, caulis, collis, cucumis, ēnis, fascis, follis, fūstis, lapis, mēnsis, orbis, piscis, postis, pulvis, vōmis; mūs;
calix, fornix, grex, phoenix, and nouns in -ex (gen. -icis) (§ 85);
dēns, fōns, mōns, pōns.

Note.—Some nouns in -is and -ns which are masculine were originally adjectives or participles agreeing with a masculine noun: as, Aprilīs (sc. mēnsis), m., April; oriēns (sc. sōl), m., the east; annālis (sc. liber), m., the year-book.

b. Neuter are vās (vāsis); crūs, īus, pūs, rūs, tūs.

87. Neuter are nouns in -a, -e, -l, -n, -ar, -ur, -ūs: as, poēma, mare, animal, nōmen, calcar, rōbur, corpus; also lac and caput.

Exceptions are the following:—
a. Masculine are sāl, sōl, pecten, vultur, lepus.
b. Feminine is pecus (gen. -udis).

FOURTH DECLENSION

88. The Stem of nouns of the Fourth Declension ends in u-. This is usually weakened to i before -bus. Masculine and Feminine nouns form the nominative by adding s; Neuters have for nominative the simple stem, but with ū (long).

89. Nouns of the Fourth Declension are declined as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Manus, f., hand</th>
<th>Lacus, m., lake</th>
<th>Genū, n., knee</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stem manu-</td>
<td>Stem lacu-</td>
<td>Stem genu-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Singular**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>manus</th>
<th>lacus</th>
<th>genū</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>manūs</td>
<td>lacūs</td>
<td>genūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>manūf(-ū)</td>
<td>lacūf(-ū)</td>
<td>genū</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>manum</td>
<td>lacum</td>
<td>genū</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>manū</td>
<td>laeu</td>
<td>genū</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>manūs</th>
<th>lacūs</th>
<th>genua</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>manuum</td>
<td>lacuum</td>
<td>genuum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>manibus</td>
<td>lacubus</td>
<td>genibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>manūs</td>
<td>lacūs</td>
<td>genua</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>manibus</td>
<td>lacubus</td>
<td>genibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Plural**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>manūs</th>
<th>lacūs</th>
<th>genua</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>manuum</td>
<td>lacuum</td>
<td>genuum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>manibus</td>
<td>lacubus</td>
<td>genibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>manūs</td>
<td>lacūs</td>
<td>genua</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>manibus</td>
<td>lacubus</td>
<td>genibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Gender in the Fourth Declension

90. Most nouns of the Fourth Declension in -us are Masculine.

Exceptions: The following are Feminine: acus, anus, colus, domus, idūs (plural), manus, nurus, porticus, quinquâtrūs (plural), socrus, tribus, with a few names of plants and trees. Also, rarely, penus, specus.

91. The only Neuters of the Fourth Declension are cornū, genū, pecū (§ 105. f), verū.¹

Case-Forms in the Fourth Declension

92. The following peculiarities in case-forms of the Fourth Declension require notice: —

   a. A genitive singular in -i (as of the second declension) sometimes occurs in nouns in -tus: as, senātus, genitive senātī (regularly senātūs).

   b. In the genitive plural -uum is sometimes pronounced as one syllable, and may then be written -um: as, currum (Aen. vi. 653) for curruum.

   c. The dative and ablative plural in -ūbus are retained in partus and tribus; so regularly in artus and lacus, and occasionally in other words; portus and specus have both -ubus and -ibus.

   d. Most names of plants and trees, and colus, distaff, have also forms of the second declension: as, ficus, fig, genitive fīcūs or fīcī.

   e. An old genitive singular in -uis or -uos and an old genitive plural in -uom occur rarely: as, senātuis, senātuos; fluctuom.

   f. The ablative singular ended anciently in -ūd (cf. § 43. n. 1): as, magistrātūd.

93. Domus (F.), house, has two stems ending in u- and o-. Hence it shows forms of both the fourth and second declensions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>domus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>domūs (domī, loc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>domū (domō)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>domum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>domō (domū)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note 1. — The Locative is domī (rarely domui), at home.
Note 2. — The Genitive domī occurs in Plautus; domōrum is late or poetic.

¹ A few other neuters of this declension are mentioned by the ancient grammarians as occurring in certain cases.
§§ 94-96] FIFTH DECLENSION (ē-STEMS) 39

94. Most nouns of the Fourth Declension are formed from verb-stems, or roots, by means of the suffix -tus (-sus) (§ 238. b):
cantus, song, can, canō, sing; cāsus (for cad-tus), chance, cad, cadō, fall;
exsulātus, exile, from exsulō, to be an exile (exsul).

a. Many are formed either from verb-stems not in use, or by analogy:
cōnsulātus (as if from consulin, -āre), senātus, incestus.

b. The accusative and the dative or ablative of nouns in -tus (-sus) form the Supines of verbs (§ 159. b): as, spectātum, petitum; dictū, visū.
c. Of many verbal derivatives only the ablative is used as a noun: as, iussū (meō), by (my) command; so iniussū (populi), without (the people’s) order. Of some only the dative is used: as, divisūi.

FIFTH DECLENSION (ē-STEMS)

95. The Stem of nouns of the Fifth Declension ends in ē-, which appears in all the cases. The Nominative is formed from the stem by adding s.

96. Nouns of the Fifth Declension are declined as follows:—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>rēs, f., thing</th>
<th>diēs, m., day</th>
<th>fidēs, f., faith</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stem rē-</td>
<td>Stem diē-</td>
<td>Stem fidē-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SINGULAR</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>rēs</td>
<td>diēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>rēī</td>
<td>diēī (diē)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>rēī</td>
<td>diēī (diē)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>rem</td>
<td>diem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>rē</td>
<td>diē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PLURAL</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>rēs</td>
<td>diēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>rērum</td>
<td>diērum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>rēbus</td>
<td>diēbus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>rēs</td>
<td>diēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>rēbus</td>
<td>diēbus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>CASE-ENDINGS</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td></td>
<td>-ēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td></td>
<td>-ērum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td></td>
<td>-ēbus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td></td>
<td>-ēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td></td>
<td>-ēbus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note. — The ē of the stem is shortened in the genitive and dative singular of fidēs, spēs, rēs, but in these it is found long in early Latin. In the accusative singular ē is always short.
Gender in the Fifth Declension

97. All nouns of the Fifth Declension are Feminine, except dies (usually M.), day, and meridiēs (M.), noon.

a. Dies is sometimes feminine in the singular, especially in phrases indicating a fixed time, and regularly feminine when used of time in general: as, constitūtā dies, on a set day; longa dies, a long time.

Case-Forms in the Fifth Declension

98. The following peculiarities require notice: —

a. Of nouns of the fifth declension, only dies and rēs are declined throughout. Most want the plural, which is, however, found in the nominative or accusative in aciēs, effigiēs, ēlūiēs, faciēs, glaciēs, serīēs, speciēs, spēs.1

b. The Locative form of this declension ends in -ē. It is found only in certain adverbs and expressions of time: —

hodiē, to-day; diē quàrtō (old, quàrti), the fourth day; pridiē, the day before.

c. The fifth declension is closely related to the first, and several nouns have forms of both: as, māteria, -iēs; saevitia, -iēs. The genitive and dative in -ēī are rarely found in these words.

d. Some nouns vary between the fifth and the third declension: as, requiēs, satiēs (also satiās, genitive -ātis), plēbēs (also plēbs, genitive plēbis), famēs, genitive famis, ablative famē.

Note. — In the genitive and dative -ēī (-ēī) was sometimes contracted into -ēī: as, tribūnus plēbēi, tribune of the people (plēbēs). Genitives in -ī and -ē also occur: as, āī (Aen. i. 636), plēbī-seītum, aciē (B. G. ii. 23). A few examples of the old genitive in -ēs are found (cf. -ās in the first declension, § 43. b). The dative has rarely -ē; and a form in -ī is cited.

DEFECTIVE NOUNS

Nouns wanting in the Plural

99. Some nouns are ordinarily found in the Singular number only (singulāria tantum). These are —

1. Most proper names: as, Caesar, Cæsar; Gallia, Gaul.
2. Names of things not counted, but reckoned in mass: as, aurum, gold; āēr, air; triticum, wheat.
3. Abstract nouns: as, ambitiō, ambition; fortitūdō, courage; calor, heat.

1 The forms faciērum, speciērum, speciēbus, spērum, spēbus, are cited by grammarians, also spērēs, spēribus, and some of these occur in late authors.
100. Many of these nouns, however, are used in the plural in some other sense.

\( \textit{a.} \) The plural of a proper name may be applied to two or more persons or places, or even things, and so become strictly common: —

\[ \text{duodecim Caesarēs, the twelve Caesars.} \]
\[ \text{Galliae, the two Gauls (Cis- and Transalpine).} \]
\[ \text{Castores, Castor and Pollux; lūvēs, images of Jupiter.} \]

\( \textit{b.} \) The plural of names of things reckoned in mass may denote particular objects: as, \textit{aera}, bronze utensils, \textit{nīves}, snowflakes; or different kinds of a thing: as, \textit{āerēs}, \textit{airs} (good and bad).

\( \textit{c.} \) The plural of abstract nouns denotes occasions or instances of the quality, or the like: —

\[ \text{quaedam excellentiae, some cases of superiority; ōtia, periods of rest; calōrēs, frigora, times of heat and cold.} \]

**Nouns wanting in the Singular**

101. Some nouns are commonly or exclusively found in the Plural (\textit{plurālia tantum}). Such are —

1. Many names of towns: as, \textit{Athēnae (Athens), Thūrii, Philippī, Vēiī.}
2. Names of festivals and games: as, \textit{Olympia, the Olympic Games; Bacchānālia, feast of Bacchus; Quīnquātrūs, festival of Minerva; lūdī Rōmānī, the Roman Games.}
3. Names of classes: as, \textit{optimātēs, the upper classes; māiōrēs, ancestors; liberī, children; penātēs, household gods; Quīrītēs, citizens (of Rome).}
4. Words plural by signification: as, \textit{arma, weapons; artūs, joints; divītiae, riches; scālæ, stairs; valvae, folding-doors; forēs, double-doors; angustiae, a narrow pass (narrow); moenia, city walls.}

Note 1. — Some words, plural by signification in Latin, are translated by English nouns in the singular number: as, \textit{dēliciae, delight, darling; faucēs, throat; fidēs, lyre} (also singular in poetry); \textit{insidiae, ambush; cervicēs, neck; viscera, flesh.}

Note 2. — The poets often use the plural number for the singular, sometimes for metrical reasons, sometimes from a mere fashion: as, \textit{ōra (for ōs), the face; scēptrum, sceptre; silentia (for silentium), silence.}

102. Some nouns of the above classes (§ 101. 1–4), have a corresponding singular, as noun or adjective, often in a special sense:

1. As noun, to denote a single object: as, \textit{Bacchānal, a spot sacred to Bacchus; optimās, an aristocrat.}
2. As adjective: as, \textit{Catō Māior, Cato the Elder.}
3. In a sense rare, or found only in early Latin: as, \textit{scāla, a ladder; valva, a door; artus, a joint.}
Nouns Defective in Certain Cases

103. Many nouns are defective in case-forms: 1 —

a. Indeclinable nouns, used only as nominative and accusative singular: faüs, nefäs, instar, nihil, opus (need), secus.

Note 1. — The indeclinable adjective necesse is used as a nominative or accusative.

Note 2. — The genitive nihilī and the ablative nihilō (from nihilum, nothing) occur.

b. Nouns found in one case only (monoptotes): —

1. In the nominative singular: glōs (f.).
2. In the genitive singular: dicis, nauci (n.).
3. In the dative singular: divisū (m.) (cf. § 94. c).
4. In the accusative singular: amussim (m.); vēnum (dative vēnō in Tacitus).
5. In the ablative singular: pondō (n.); māne (n.); astū (m.), by craft; iussū, iniussū, nātū, and many other verbal nouns in -us (m.) (§ 94. c).

Note. — Māne is also used as an indeclinable accusative, and an old form mānī is used as ablative. Pondō with a numeral is often apparently equivalent to pounds. A nominative singular astus and a plural astās occur rarely in later writers.

6. In the accusative plural: inštās.

c. Nouns found in two cases only (diptotes): —

1. In the nominative and ablative singular: foris, forte (f.).
2. In the genitive and ablative singular: spontis (rare), sponte (f.).
3. In the accusative singular and plural: dicam, dicās (f.).
4. In the accusative and ablative plural: forās, forĭs (f.) (cf. forĕs), used as adverbs.

d. Nouns found in three cases only (triptotes): —

1. In the nominative, accusative, and ablative singular: impetus, -um, -ū (m.) 2; luēs, -em, -ē (f.).
2. In the nominative, accusative, and dative or ablative plural: grātēs, -ibus (f.).
3. In the nominative, genitive, and dative or ablative plural: iūgera, -um, -ibus (n.); but iūgerum, etc., in the singular (cf. § 105. b).

e. Nouns found in four cases only (tetrapptotes): —

In the genitive, dative, accusative, ablative singular: diciōnis, -i, -em, -e (f.).

f. Nouns declined regularly in the plural, but defective in the singular: —

1. Nouns found in the singular, in genitive, dative, accusative, ablative: frūgis, -i, -em, -ē (f.); opis, -ī (once only), -em, -e (f.; nominative Ops as a divinity).
2. Nouns found in the dative, accusative, ablative: precī, -em, -ē (f.).
3. Nouns found in the accusative and ablative: cassem, -e (f.); sordem, -e (f.).
4. Nouns found in the ablative only: ambāge (f.); fauce (f.); obice (c.).

g. Nouns regular in the singular, defective in the plural: —

1 Some early or late forms and other rarities are omitted.
2 The dative singular impetuī and the ablative plural impetibus occur once each.
1. The following neuters have in the plural the nominative and accusative only: fel (fella), far (farra), hordēum (hordea), iūs, broth (iūra), mel (mella), murmur (murmura), pūs (pūra), rūs (rūra), tūs or thūs (tūra).

Notes.—The neuter iūs, right, has only iūra in classical writers, but a very rare genitive plural iūrum occurs in old Latin.

2. calx, cor, cōs, crux, fax, faex, lanx, lūx, nex, ēs (ōris), 1 os (ossis), 2 pāx, pix, rōs, sāl, sōl, vas (vadis), want the genitive plural.

3. Most nouns of the fifth declension want the whole or part of the plural (see § 98. a).

h. Nouns defective in both singular and plural: —

1. Noun found in the genitive, accusative, ablative singular; nominative, accusative, dative, ablative plural: vicis, -em, -e; -ēs, -ibus.

2. Noun found in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular; genitive plural wanting: dapis, -ī, -em, -e; -ēs, -ibus. 3

VARIABLE NOUNS

104. Many nouns vary either in Declension or in Gender.

105. Nouns that vary in Declension are called heteroclites. 4

a. Colus (f.), distaff; domus (f.), house (see § 93), and many names of plants in -us, vary between the Second and Fourth Declensions.

b. Some nouns vary between the Second and Third: as, iūgerum, -ī, -ō, ablative -ō or -e, plural -a, -um, -ibus; Mulciber, genitive -berī and -beris; sequester, genitive -trī and -tris; vās, vāsis, and (old) vāsum, -ī (§ 79. e).

c. Some vary between the Second, Third, and Fourth: as, penus, penum, genitive penī and penoris, ablative penū.

d. Many nouns vary between the First and Fifth (see § 98. c).

e. Some vary between the Third and Fifth. Thus,—requīēs has genitive -ētīs, dative wanting, accusative -ētem or -em, ablative -ē (once -ēte); famēs, regularly of the third declension, has ablative famē (§ 76. n. 1), and pūbēs (m.) has once dative pūbē (in Plautus).

f. Pecus varies between the Third and Fourth, having pecoris, etc., but also nominative pecū, ablative pecū; plural pecua, genitive pecuum.

g. Many vary between different stems of the same declension: as, femur (n.), genitive -oris, also -inis (as from †femen); iecur (n.), genitive iecinoris, iecinoris, iecoris; mūnus (n.), plural mūn̄era and mūnia.

1 The ablative plural ērībus is rare, the classical idiom being in ēre omnium, in everybody's mouth, etc., not in ēribus omnium.

2 The genitive plural ossīum is late; ossuum (from ossua, plural of a neuter u-stem) is early and late.

3 An old nominative daps is cited.

4 That is, “nouns of different inflections” (έrepos, another, and κλίνω, to incline).
106. Nouns that vary in Gender are said to be heterogeneous.¹

a. The following have a masculine form in -us and a neuter in -um: balteus, caseus, clipeus, collum, cingulum, pileus, tergum, vallum, with many others of rare occurrence.

b. The following have in the Plural a different gender from that of the Singular:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>balteus</td>
<td>balneae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>caseus</td>
<td>caelos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clipeus</td>
<td>carbasae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>collum</td>
<td>deliciae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cingulum</td>
<td>epulae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pileus</td>
<td>frēnī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tergum</td>
<td>ioca</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vallum</td>
<td>loca</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>balneu</td>
<td>loci</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>caelum</td>
<td>iocae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>carbasus</td>
<td>ioci</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pileus</td>
<td>iocae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tergum</td>
<td>iocae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vallum</td>
<td>iocae</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note. — Some of these nouns are heteroclites as well as heterogeneous.

107. Many nouns are found in the Plural in a peculiar sense:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aedēs, -is (f.), temple;</td>
<td>aedēs, -ium, house.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aqua (f.), water;</td>
<td>aquae, mineral springs, a watering-place.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>auxilium (n.), help;</td>
<td>auxilia, auxiliaries.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bonum (n.), a good;</td>
<td>bona, goods, property.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>carcer (m.), dungeon;</td>
<td>carcerēs, barriers (of race-course).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>castrum (n.), fort;</td>
<td>castra, camp.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comitium (n.), place of assembly;</td>
<td>comitia, an election (town-meeting).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōpia (f.), plenty;</td>
<td>cōpiae, stores, troops.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fidēs (f.), harp-string;</td>
<td>fidēs, lyre.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>finis (m.), end;</td>
<td>finēs, bounds, territories.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fortūna (f.), fortune;</td>
<td>fortūnae, possessions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gratia (f.), favor (rarely, thanks);</td>
<td>gratiae, thanks (also, the Graces).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortus (m.), a garden;</td>
<td>horti, pleasure-grounds.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>impedimentum (n.) hindrance;</td>
<td>impedimenta, baggage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>littera (f.), letter (of alphabet);</td>
<td>litterae, epistle, literature.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>locus (m.), place [plural loca (n.)];</td>
<td>loci, topics, places in books.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lūdus (f.), sport;</td>
<td>lūdi, public games.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mōs (m.), habit, custom;</td>
<td>mōrēs, character.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nātālis (m.), birthday;</td>
<td>nātālēs, descent, origin.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opera (f.), work;</td>
<td>opera, day-laborers (&quot;hands&quot;).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[ops.] opis (f.), help (§ 103, f. 1);</td>
<td>opēs, resources, wealth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pars (f.), part;</td>
<td>partēs, part (on the stage), party.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rōstrum (n.), beak of a ship;</td>
<td>rōstra, speaker's platform.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sāl (m. or n.), salt;</td>
<td>salēs, witticisms.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tabella (f.), tablet;</td>
<td>tabellae, documents, records.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ That is, "of different genders" (τρεπόμενα, another, and γένος, gender).
² In early writers the regular plural.
NAMES OF PERSONS

108. A Roman had regularly three names:—(1) the praenomen, or personal name; (2) the nomen, or name of the gens or house; (3) the cognomen, or family name:—

Thus in Marcus Tullius Cicerō we have—

Mārcus, the praenomen, like our Christian or given name;
Tullius, the nomen, properly an adjective denoting of the Tullian gens (or house) whose original head was a real or supposed Tullus;
Cicerō, the cognomen, or family name, often in origin a nickname,—in this case from cicer, a vetch, or small pea.

Note.—When two persons of the same family are mentioned together, the cognomen is usually put in the plural: as, Pūblius et Servius Sullae.

a. A fourth or fifth name was sometimes given as a mark of honor or distinction, or to show adoption from another gens.

Thus the complete name of Scipio the Younger was Pūblius Cornēlius Scipīō Afrīcānus Aemiliānus: Afrīcānus, from his exploits in Africa; Aemiliānus, as adopted from the Āemilian gens.1

Note.—The Romans of the classical period had no separate name for these additions, but later grammarians invented the word āgnōmen to express them.

b. Women had commonly in classical times no personal names, but were known only by the nomen of their gens.

Thus, the wife of Cicero was Terentia, and his daughter Tullia. A second daughter would have been called Tullia secunda or minor, a third daughter, Tullia tertia, and so on.

c. The commonest praenomina are thus abbreviated:—

A. Aulus.
C. (G.) Gāius (Cāius) (cf. § 1. a).
Cn. (Gn.) Gnaeus (Cneius).
D. Decimus.
K. Kaesō (Caeso).
L. Lūcius.
M. Mārcus.
M'. Mānius.
Mām. Māmercus.
N. (Num.) Numerius.
P. Pūblius.
Q. Quintus.
Ser. Servius.
Sex. (S.) Sextus.
Sp. Spurius.
T. Titus.
Tl. (Tib.) Tiberius.

Note 1.—In the abbreviations C. and Cn., the initial character has the value of G (§ 1. a).

1 In stating officially the full name of a Roman it was customary to include the praenomina of the father, grandfather, and great-grandfather, together with the name of the tribe to which the individual belonged. Thus in an inscription we find M. TULLIVS M. F. M. N. M. PR. COR. CICERO, i.e. Marcus Tullius Mārci filius Mārci nepōs Mārci pro-nepōs Cornēliā tribū Cicerō. The names of grandfather and great-grandfather as well as that of the tribe are usually omitted in literature. The name of a wife or daughter is usually accompanied by that of the husband or father in the genitive: as, Postumia Servi Sulpiciī (Suet. Iul. 50), Postumia, wife of Servius Sulpicius; Caecilia Metelli (Div. i. 104), Caecilia, daughter of Metellus.
ADJECTIVES

109. Adjectives and Participles are in general formed and declined like Nouns, differing from them only in their use.

1. In accordance with their use, they distinguish gender by different forms in the same word, and agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case. Thus,—

   bonus puer, *the good boy.*
   bona puella, *the good girl.*
   bonum dōnum, *the good gift.*

2. In their inflection they are either (1) of the First and Second Declensions, or (2) of the Third Declension.

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS (ā- AND o-STEMS)

110. Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions (ā- and o-stems) are declined in the Masculine like servus, puer, or ager; in the Feminine like stella; and in the Neuter like bellum.

The regular type of an adjective of the First and Second Declensions is bonus, -a, -um, which is thus declined: —

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MASCULINE</th>
<th>FEMININE</th>
<th>NEUTER</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stem bono-</td>
<td>Stem bonā-</td>
<td>Stem bono-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SINGULAR</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>bonus</td>
<td>bona</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>bonī</td>
<td>bonae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>bonō</td>
<td>bonae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>bonum</td>
<td>bonām</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>bonō</td>
<td>bona</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>bone</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PLURAL</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>bonī</td>
<td>bonae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>bonōrum</td>
<td>bonārum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>bonīs</td>
<td>bonīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>bonōs</td>
<td>bonās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>bonīs</td>
<td>bonīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
§§ 110, 111] FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS 47

Note. — Stems in -qu have nominative -cus (-quos), -qua, -cum (-quom), accusative -cum (-quom), -quam, -cum (-quom), to avoid quu- (see §§ 6. b and 46. n. 2). Thus,—
Nom. propincus (-quos) propinqua propincum (-quom)
Gen. propinqui propinquae propinquī, etc.
But most modern editions disregard this principle.

a. The Genitive Singular masculine of adjectives in -ius ends in -ii, and the Vocative in -ie; not in -i, as in nouns (cf. § 49. b, c); as, Lacedaemonius, -ii, -ie.

Note. — The possessive meus, my, has the vocative masculine mi (cf. § 145).

111. Stems ending in ro- preceded by e form the Nominative Masculine like puer (§ 47) and are declined as follows: —

miser, misera, miserum, wretched

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MASCULINE</th>
<th>FEMININE</th>
<th>NEUTER</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stem miser-</td>
<td>Stem miser-</td>
<td>Stem miser-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SINGULAR

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Nom. miser</th>
<th>Gen. miserī</th>
<th>Dat. miserō</th>
<th>Acc. miserum</th>
<th>Abl. miserō</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. miser</td>
<td>miser</td>
<td>miserī</td>
<td>miserō</td>
<td>miserum</td>
<td>miserō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. miserī</td>
<td>misera</td>
<td>miserae</td>
<td>miserāe</td>
<td>miserarum</td>
<td>miserāe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. miserō</td>
<td>miserae</td>
<td>miserae</td>
<td>misera</td>
<td>miserī</td>
<td>misera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. miserum</td>
<td>miseram</td>
<td>miserā</td>
<td>misera</td>
<td>misera</td>
<td>misera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. miserō</td>
<td>miserō</td>
<td>misera</td>
<td>misera</td>
<td>misera</td>
<td>misera</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PLURAL

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Nom. miserī</th>
<th>Gen. miserōrum</th>
<th>Dat. miserīs</th>
<th>Acc. miserōs</th>
<th>Abl. miserīs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. miserī</td>
<td>miserae</td>
<td>miserāe</td>
<td>miserae</td>
<td>misera</td>
<td>misera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. miserōrum</td>
<td>misera</td>
<td>miserāre</td>
<td>misera</td>
<td>misera</td>
<td>misera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. miserīs</td>
<td>miseris</td>
<td>miseris</td>
<td>miseris</td>
<td>misera</td>
<td>misera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. miserōs</td>
<td>miserās</td>
<td>miserās</td>
<td>miserās</td>
<td>miseria</td>
<td>miseria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. miserīs</td>
<td>miserīs</td>
<td>miserīs</td>
<td>miserīs</td>
<td>miseria</td>
<td>miseria</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. Like miser are declined asper, gibber, lacer, liber, prosper (also prosperous), satur (-ura, -urum), tener, with compounds of -fer and -ger: as, saetiger, -era, -erum, bristle-bearing; also, usually, dexter. In these the e belongs to the stem; but in dextra it is often omitted: as, dextra manus, the right hand.

Note. — Stems in ero- (as prōcērus), with mōrigērus, propērus, have the regular nominative masculine in -us.

b. The following lack a nominative singular masculine in classic use: cētera, īnfera, postera, supera. They are rarely found in the singular except in certain phrases: as, posterō die, the next day.

Note. — An ablative feminine in -ō is found in a few Greek adjectives: as, lecticā octōphorō (Verr. v. 27).
112. Stems in ro- preceded by a consonant form the Nominative Masculine like ager (§ 47) and are declined as follows: —

niger, nigra, nigrum, black

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>MASCULINE</th>
<th>FEMININE</th>
<th>NEUTER</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stem</td>
<td>nigro-</td>
<td>nigra-</td>
<td>nigro-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>niger</td>
<td>nigra</td>
<td>nigrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>nigrī</td>
<td>nigrae</td>
<td>nigrī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>nigrō</td>
<td>nigrae</td>
<td>nigrō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>nigrum</td>
<td>nigrām</td>
<td>nigrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>nigrō</td>
<td>nigrā</td>
<td>nigrō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Singular**

**Plural**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>M.</th>
<th>F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
<th>M.</th>
<th>F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>ānus</td>
<td>āna</td>
<td>ānum</td>
<td>uter</td>
<td>utra</td>
<td>utrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>ānīus</td>
<td>ānīus</td>
<td>ānum</td>
<td>utrīus</td>
<td>utrīus</td>
<td>utrīus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>ānī</td>
<td>ānī</td>
<td>ānī</td>
<td>utrī</td>
<td>utrī</td>
<td>utrī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>ānum</td>
<td>ānam</td>
<td>ānum</td>
<td>utrum</td>
<td>utram</td>
<td>utrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>ānō</td>
<td>ānā</td>
<td>ānō</td>
<td>utrō</td>
<td>utrā</td>
<td>utrō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>ālius</td>
<td>ālia</td>
<td>āliūd</td>
<td>alter</td>
<td>altera</td>
<td>alterum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>ālius</td>
<td>ālius</td>
<td>ālius</td>
<td>alterīus</td>
<td>alterīus</td>
<td>alterīus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>āliī</td>
<td>āliī</td>
<td>āliī</td>
<td>alterī</td>
<td>alterī</td>
<td>alterī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>ālium</td>
<td>āliam</td>
<td>āliūd</td>
<td>alterum</td>
<td>alteram</td>
<td>alterum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>aliō</td>
<td>aliā</td>
<td>aliō</td>
<td>alterō</td>
<td>alterā</td>
<td>alterō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. Like niger are declined aeger, āter, crēber, faber, glaber, integer, lūdicer, macer, piger, pulcher, ruber, sacer, scaber, sinister, taeter, vafer; also the possessives noster, vester (§ 145).

113. The following nine adjectives with their compounds have the Genitive Singular in -ius and the Dative in -i in all genders:

alia (n. alīud), other.     tōtus, whole.     alter, -terīus, the other.
nūllus, no, none.     āllus, any.     neuter, -triūs, neither.
sōlus, alone.     ānus, one.     uter, -triūs, which (of two).

Of these the singular is thus declined: —
§§ 113-115] ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

113. Adjectives of the Third Declension are thus classified:

1. Adjectives of Three Terminations in the nominative singular, — one for each gender: as, ācer, ācris, ācre.
2. Adjectives of Two Terminations, — masculine and feminine the same: as, levis (m., f.), leve (n.).
3. Adjectives of One Termination, — the same for all three genders: as, atrōx.

1. Adjectives of two and three terminations are true i-stems and hence retain in the ablative singular -i, in the neuter plural -ia, in the genitive plural -ium, and in the accusative plural regularly -is (see §§ 73 and 74).\(^1\)

Adjectives of Three and of Two Terminations

115. Adjectives of Three Terminations are thus declined:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>M.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>ācer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>ācris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>ācri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>ācrem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>ācri</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^1\) But the forms of some are doubtful.
a. Like ācer are declined the following stems in ri-:

alacer, campester, celeber, equester, palüster, pedester, puter, salüber, silvester, terrester, volucr. So also names of months in -ber: as, Octöber (cf. § 66).

Note 1.—This formation is comparatively late, and hence, in the poets and in early Latin, either the masculine or the feminine form of these adjectives was sometimes used for both genders: as, coetus alacris (Enn.). In others, as faenebris, fünebris, illüs-tris, ĭgūbris, mediocris, muliebris, there is no separate masculine form at all, and these are declined like levis (§ 116).

Note 2.—Celer, celeris, cele, swift, has the genitive plural celerum, used only as a noun, denoting a military rank. The proper name Celer has the ablative in -e.

116. Adjectives of Two Terminations are thus declined:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>levis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>levis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>levī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>levem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>levī</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note.—Adjectives of two and three terminations sometimes have an ablative in -e in poetry, rarely in prose.

Adjectives of One Termination

117. The remaining adjectives of the third declension are Consonant stems; but most of them, except Comparatives, have the following forms of i-stems:

1. -i in the ablative singular (but often -e);
2. -ia in the nominative and accusative plural neuter;
3. -ium in the genitive plural;
4. -is (as well as -ēs) in the accusative plural masculine and feminine.

In the other cases they follow the rule for Consonant stems.

a. These adjectives, except stems in l- or r-, form the nominative singular from the stem by adding s: as, atrōx (stem atrōc- + s), egēns (stem egent- + s).2

b. Here belong the present participles in -ns(stem nt-): as, amāns, monēns. They are declined like egēns (but cf. § 121).

1 For details see § 121. 2 Stems in nt- omit t before the nominative -s.
118. Adjectives of one termination are declined as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>atrōx, fierce, Stem atrōc-</th>
<th>egēns, needy, Stem egent-</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>M., F.</td>
<td>N.</td>
<td>M., F.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>atrōx</td>
<td>egēns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>atrōcis</td>
<td>egentis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>atrōcī</td>
<td>egentī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>atrōcem</td>
<td>egentem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ABL.</td>
<td>atrōcī (-e)</td>
<td>egentī (-e)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

119. Other examples are the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>concors, harmonious</th>
<th>praeceps, headlong</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Stem concord-</td>
<td>Stem praecepit-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SINGULAR</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M., F.</td>
<td>N.</td>
<td>M., F.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>concors</td>
<td>praeceps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>concordis</td>
<td>praecepis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>concordī</td>
<td>praecepitī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>concordem</td>
<td>praecepitem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ABL.</td>
<td>concordī</td>
<td>praecepitī</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

|       |                             |                           |
| PLURAL |                             |                           |
| Nom.  | concordēs                   | praecepsīes               | praecepitidiae             |
| Gen.  | concordium                  | praecepsibus              | praecepitibus              |
| Dat.  | concordibus                 | praecepitis (-ēs)         | praecepitidiae             |
| Acc.  | concordīs (-ēs)             | praecepsibus              | praecepitidiae             |
| ABL.  | concordibus                 | praecepsibus              | praecepitidiae             |

1 Given by grammarians, but not found.
### SINGULAR

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>M., F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
<th>M., F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
<th>M., F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>iēns</td>
<td>iēns</td>
<td>pār</td>
<td>pār</td>
<td>dīves</td>
<td>dīves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>euntis</td>
<td>euntis</td>
<td>paris</td>
<td>paris</td>
<td>dīvitis</td>
<td>dīvitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>euntī</td>
<td>euntī</td>
<td>parī</td>
<td>parī</td>
<td>dīvitī</td>
<td>dīvitī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>euntēm</td>
<td>iēns</td>
<td>parem</td>
<td>pār</td>
<td>dīvitem</td>
<td>dīves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>eunte (-ī)</td>
<td>eunte (-ī)</td>
<td>parī</td>
<td>parī</td>
<td>dīvite</td>
<td>dīvite</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### PLURAL

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>M., F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
<th>M., F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
<th>M., F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
<th>M., F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>euntēs</td>
<td>euntia</td>
<td>parēs</td>
<td>paria</td>
<td>dīvēs</td>
<td>[dītia]</td>
<td>pārēs</td>
<td>pāria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>euntium</td>
<td>euntium</td>
<td>parium</td>
<td>parium</td>
<td>dīvētium</td>
<td>dīvētium</td>
<td>parium</td>
<td>parium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>euntibus</td>
<td>euntibus</td>
<td>paribus</td>
<td>paribus</td>
<td>dīvētibus</td>
<td>dīvētibus</td>
<td>paribus</td>
<td>paribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>euntīs (-ēs)</td>
<td>euntia</td>
<td>parīs (-ēs)</td>
<td>paria</td>
<td>dīvētīs (-ēs)</td>
<td>[dītia]</td>
<td>parīs (-ēs)</td>
<td>paria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>euntibus</td>
<td>euntibus</td>
<td>paribus</td>
<td>paribus</td>
<td>dīvētibus</td>
<td>dīvētibus</td>
<td>paribus</td>
<td>paribus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### SINGULAR

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>M., F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
<th>M., F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>über</td>
<td>über</td>
<td>vetus</td>
<td>vetus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>überis</td>
<td>überis</td>
<td>veteris</td>
<td>veteris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>überī</td>
<td>überī</td>
<td>veterī</td>
<td>veterī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>überem</td>
<td>über</td>
<td>veterem</td>
<td>vetus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>überī¹</td>
<td>überī¹</td>
<td>vetere (-ī)</td>
<td>vetere (-ī)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### PLURAL

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>M., F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
<th>M., F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>überēs</td>
<td>übera</td>
<td>veterēs</td>
<td>vetera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>überum</td>
<td>überum</td>
<td>veterum</td>
<td>veterum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>überibus</td>
<td>überibus</td>
<td>veteribus</td>
<td>veteribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>überēs</td>
<td>übera</td>
<td>veterēs</td>
<td>vetera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>überibus</td>
<td>überibus</td>
<td>veteribus</td>
<td>veteribus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note.** — Of these vetus is originally an s-stem. In most s-stems the r has intruded itself into the nominative also, as bi-corpor (for †bi-corpos), dégener (for †dé-genes).

¹ An ablative in -e is very rare.
Declension of Comparatives

120. Comparatives are declined as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>melior, better</th>
<th>plus, more</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stem</td>
<td>melior- for melios-</td>
<td>pluri- for pluri-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>M., F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NOM. melior</td>
<td>melius</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEN. melioris</td>
<td>meliōris</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAT. melliōrī</td>
<td>melliōrī</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACC. melliōrem</td>
<td>melius</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ABL. melliōre (-ī)</td>
<td>melliōre (-ī)</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plural</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NOM. melliōres</td>
<td>melliōra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEN. melliōrum</td>
<td>melliōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAT. melliōribus</td>
<td>melliōribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACC. melliōres (-īs)</td>
<td>melliōra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ABL. melliōribus</td>
<td>melliōribus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. All comparatives except plus are declined like melior.
b. The stem of comparatives properly ended in ęs-; but this became or in the nominative masculine and feminine, and őr- in all other cases except the nominative and accusative singular neuter, where s is retained and ę is changed to ū (cf. honōr, -ōris; corpus, -ōris). Thus comparatives appear to have two terminations.
c. The neuter singular plus is used only as a noun. The genitive (rarely the ablative) is used only as an expression of value (cf. § 417). The dative is not found in classic use. The compound complūres, several, has sometimes neuter plural complūria.

Case-Forms of Consonant Stems

121. In adjectives of Consonant stems —

a. The Ablative Singular commonly ends in -ī, but sometimes -e.
1. Adjectives used as nouns (as superstes, survivor) have -e.
2. Participles in -ns used as such (especially in the ablative absolute, § 419), or as nouns, regularly have -e; but participles used as adjectives have regularly -ī:

 domination imperante, at the master’s command; ab amante, by a lover; ab amanti muliere, by a loving woman.
3. The following have regularly -i: — āmēns, anceps, concors (and other compounds of cor), cōnsors (but as a substantive, -e), dégener, hebes, ingēns, inops, memor (and compounds), pār (in prose), perpes, praeceps, praepes, teres.

4. The following have regularly-e: — caelestes, compos, [†dēses], dives, hospes, particeps, pauper, princeps, sōspes, superstes. So also patrials (see § 71. 5) and stems in āt-, īt-, nūt-, rt-, when used as nouns, and sometimes when used as adjectives.

b. The Genitive Plural ends commonly in -ium, but has -um in the following:¹ —

1. Always in composes, dives, inops, particeps, praepes, princeps, supplex, and compounds of nouns which have -um: as, quadrupēs, bi-color.

2. Sometimes, in poetry, in participles in -ns: as, silentum concilium; a council of the silent shades (Aen. vi. 432).

c. The Accusative Plural regularly ends in -īs, but comparatives commonly have -ēs.

d. Vetus (gen. -ēris) and pūbes (gen. -ēris) regularly have -e in the ablative singular, -a in the nominative and accusative plural, and -um in the genitive plural. For über, see § 119.

e. A few adjectives of one termination, used as nouns, have a feminine form in -a: as, clienta, hospita, with the appellative Iūnō Sōspita.

Irregularities and Special Uses of Adjectives

122. The following special points require notice: —

a. Several adjectives vary in declension: as, gracilis (-us), hilaris (-us), inermis (-us), bicolor (-ōrus).

b. A few adjectives are indeclinable: as, damnās, frugi (really a dative of service, see § 382. 1. n. 2), nēquam (originally an adverb), necesse, and the pronominal forms tot, quot, aliquot, totidem. Potis is often used as an indeclinable adjective, but sometimes has pote in the neuter.

c. Several adjectives are defective: as, exspēs (only nom.), exlēx (exlēgem) (only nom. and acc. sing.), pernox (pernocte) (only nom. and abl. sing.); and primōris, sēminēci, etc., which lack the nominative singular.

d. Many adjectives, from their signification, can be used only in the masculine and feminine. These may be called adjectives of common gender.

Such are adulēscēns, youthul; [†dēses], -idis, slothful; inops, -opis, poor; sōspes, -itis, safe. Similarly, senex, old man, and iuvenis, young man, are sometimes called masculine adjectives.

For Adjectives used as Nouns, see §§ 288, 289; for Nouns used as Adjectives, see § 321. c; for Adjectives used as Adverbs, see § 214; for Adverbs used as Adjectives, see § 321. d.

¹ Forms in -um sometimes occur in a few others.
COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

123. In Latin, as in English, there are three degrees of comparison: the Positive, the Comparative, and the Superlative.

124. The Comparative is regularly formed by adding -ior (neuter -ius),¹ the Superlative by adding -issimus (-a, -um), to the stem of the Positive, which loses its final vowel:

- cárus, dear (stem căro-); cárior, dearer; cárissimus, dearest.
- levis, light (stem levi-); levior, lighter; levissimus, lightest.
- félīx, happy (stem fēlic-); félīcior, happier; félīcissimus, happiest.
- hebes, dull (stem hebet-); hebetior, duller; hebetissimus, dullest.

Note. — A form of diminutive is made upon the stem of some comparatives: as, grandius-culus, a little larger (see § 243).

a. Participles when used as adjectives are regularly compared:
- patiēns, patient; patientior, patientissimus.
- apertus, open; apertior, apertissimus.

125. Adjectives in -er form the Superlative by adding -rimus to the nominative. The comparative is regular:
- ācer, keen; ācrior, ācerrimus.
- miser, wretched; misērior, misērrimus.

a. So vetus (gen. veteris) has superlative veterrimus, from the old form veter; and mātūrus, besides its regular superlative (mātūrissimus), has a rare form mātūrīrīmus.

For the comparative of vetus, vetustior (from vetustus) is used.

126. Six adjectives in -lis form the Superlative by adding -limus to the stem clipped of its final i. These are facilis, difficilis, similis, dissimilis, gracilis, humilis.

facilis (stem facili-), easy; facilior, facillimus.

127. Compounds in -dicus (saying) and -volus (willing) take in their comparison the forms of the corresponding participles dicēns and volēns, which were anciently used as adjectives:

- maledicus, slanderous; maledicentior, maledicentissimus.
- malevolus, spiteful; malevolentior, malevolentissimus.

¹The comparative suffix (earlier -īōs) is akin to the Greek -iōr, or the Sanskrit -īyans. That of the superlative (-issimus) is a double form of uncertain origin. It appears to contain the is- of the old suffix -is-to-s (seen in ἵστο-στο-ς and English sweetest) and also the old -mo-s (seen in pri-mus, mini-mus, etc.). The endings -limus and -rimus are formed by assimilation (§ 15. 6) from -simus. The comparative and superlative are really new stems, and are not strictly to be regarded as forms of inflection.
a. So, by analogy, compounds in -ficus:—
magnificus, grand; magnificentior, magnificentiissimus.

128. Some adjectives are compared by means of the adverbs magis, more, and maximē, most.

So especially adjectives in -us preceded by e or i:—
idōneus, fit; magis idōneus, maximē idōneus.

Note. — But pius has piissimus in the superlative, — a form condemned by Cicero, but common in inscriptions; equally common, however, is the irregular pientissimus.

Irregular Comparison

129. Several adjectives have in their comparison irregular forms:—

- bonus, good; melior, better; optimus, best.
- malus, bad; pēior, worse; pessimus, worst.
- māgnus, great; māior, greater; maximus, greatest.
- parvus, small; minor, less; minus, least.
- multus, much; plūs (n.) (§ 120), more; plūrimus, most.
- multi, many; plūrēs, more; plūrimi, most.
- nēquam (indecl., § 122. b), nēquior; nēquissimus.
- frūgi (indecl., § 122. b), use- frūgālior; frūgāliissimus.
- ful, worthy; plūrimus, most.
- dexter, on the right, handy; dexterior; dextimus.

Note. — These irregularities arise from the use of different stems (cf. § 127). Thus frūgālior and frūgāliissimus are formed from the stem frūgāli-, but are used as the comparative and superlative of the indeclinable frūgi.

Defective Comparison

130. Some Comparatives and Superlatives appear without a Positive:—

ōcior, swifter; ochissimus, swiftest.
- potior, preferable; 1 potissimus, most important.

a. The following are formed from stems not used as adjectives: 2—

1 The old positive potis occurs in the sense of able, possible.
2 The forms in -trā and -terus were originally comparative (cf. alter), so that the comparatives in -terior are double comparatives. Inferus and superus are comparatives of a still more primitive form (cf. the English comparative in -er). The superlatives in -timus (-tumus) are relics of old forms of comparison; those in -mus like imus, summus, primus, are still more primitive. Forms like extremus are superlatives of a comparative. In fact, comparison has always been treated with an accumulation of endings, as children say furtherer and furtherest.
cis, citrā (adv., on this side): citerior, hither; citimus, hithermost.
dē (prep., down): dēterior, worse; dēterrimus, worst.
in, intrā (prep., in, within): interior, inner; intimus, inmost.
prae, prō (prep., before): prior, former; primus, first.
prope (adv., near): propior, nearer; proximus, next.
ultrā (adv., beyond): ulterior, farther; ultimus, farthest.

b. Of the following the positive forms are rare, except when used as nouns (generally in the plural): —

exterus, outward; exterior, outer; extrēmus (extimus), outmost.
inferus, below (see § 111. b); inferior, lower; infimus (imus), lowest.
posterus, following; posterior, latter; postrēmus (postumus), last.
superus, above; superior, higher; suprēmus or summus, highest.

But the plurals, exteri, foreigners; inferi, the gods below; posteri, posterity; superi, the heavenly gods, are common.

Note.—The superlative postumus has the special sense of last-born, and was a well-known surname.

131. Several adjectives lack the Comparative or the Superlative:

a. The Comparative is rare or wanting in the following: —

bellus, inclutus (or inclitus), novus,
ciaesius, invictus, pius,
falsus, invīitus, sacer,
fidus (with its compounds), meritus, vafer.

b. The Superlative is wanting in many adjectives in -ilis or -bilis (as, agilis, probāblis), and in the following: —

āctuōsus, exilis, prōclivis, surdus
agrestis, ingēns, propinquus, taciturnus
alacer, iēūnus, satur, tempestivus
arcānus, longinquus, ségnis, teres
daecus, obliquus, sērūs, vicīnus
diūtturnus, opimus, supīnus

c. From iuvenis, youth, senex, old man (cf. § 122. d), are formed the comparatives iūnior, younger, senior, older. For these, however, minor nātū and máior nātū are sometimes used (nātū being often omitted).

The superlative is regularly expressed by minimus and maximus, with or without nātū.

Note.—In these phrases nātū is ablative of specification (see § 418).

d. Many adjectives (as aureus, golden) are from their meaning incapable of comparison.

Note.—But each language has its own usage in this respect. Thus, niger, glossy black, and candidus, shining white, are compared; but not āter or albus, meaning absolute dead black or white (except that Plautus once has ātrior).
NUMERALS

132. The Latin Numerals may be classified as follows:—

I. Numeral Adjectives:
1. Cardinal Numbers, answering the question *how many?* as, unus, one; duo, two, etc.
2. Ordinal Numbers, adjectives derived (in most cases) from the Cardinals, and answering the question *which in order?* as, primus, first; secundus, second, etc.
3. Distributive Numerals, answering the question *how many at a time?* as, singuli, one at a time; bini, two by two, etc.

II. Numeral Adverbs, answering the question *how often?* as, semel, once; bis, twice, etc.

Cardinals and Ordinals

133. These two series are as follows:—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CARDINAL</th>
<th>ORDINAL</th>
<th>ROMAN NUMERALS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>unus, āna, ānum, one</td>
<td>primus, -a, -um, <em>first</em></td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duo, duae, duo, two</td>
<td>secundus (alter), <em>second</em></td>
<td>II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tres, tria, <em>three</em></td>
<td>tertius, <em>third</em></td>
<td>III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quattuor</td>
<td>quartus</td>
<td>III or IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quīnque</td>
<td>quintus</td>
<td>V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sex</td>
<td>sextus</td>
<td>VI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>septem</td>
<td>septimus</td>
<td>VII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>octō</td>
<td>octāvus</td>
<td>VIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>novem</td>
<td>nonus</td>
<td>VIII or IX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>decem</td>
<td>decimus</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>undecim</td>
<td>undecimus</td>
<td>XI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duodecim</td>
<td>duodecimus</td>
<td>XII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tredecim (decem (et) tres)</td>
<td>tertius decimus (decimus (et) tertius)</td>
<td>XIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quattuordecim</td>
<td>quārtus decimus</td>
<td>XIII or XIV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quindecim</td>
<td>quintus decimus</td>
<td>XV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sedecim</td>
<td>sextus decimus</td>
<td>XVI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>septendecim</td>
<td>septimus decimus</td>
<td>XVII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duodēvigintī (octōdecim)</td>
<td>duodēvigintī (octōvīs decimus)</td>
<td>XVIII</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 The Ordinals (except secundus, tertius, octāvus, nonus) are formed by means of suffixes related to those used in the superlative and in part identical with them. Thus, decimus (compare the form *infimus*) may be regarded as the last of a series of ten; primus is a superlative of a stem akin to pró; the forms in-tus (quārtus, quintus, sextus) may be compared with the corresponding Greek forms in -ros, and with superlatives in -orros, while the others have the superlative ending -timus (changed to -simus). Of the exceptions, secundus is a participle of sequor; alter is a comparative form (compare -repos in Greek), and nonus is contracted from novenos. The cardinal multiples of ten are compounds of -gint- ‘ten’ (a fragment of a derivative from decem).
19. undeviginti (novendecim) undevicensimus (novemdecim) xviii or xix
20. viginti vicensimus (vigensimus) xx
21. viginti unus vicensimus primus xxii
(or unus et viginti, etc.) (unus et vigensimus, etc.)
30. triginta tricensimus xxx
40. quadragesimta quadragensimus xlx
50. quinquaginta quinquagensimus lx
60. sexaginta sexagensimus lxxx
70. septuaginta septuagensimus lxx
80. octoginta octogesimus lxxx
90. nonaginta nonagensimus lxxxx or xc
100. centum centensimus c
101. centum (et) unus, etc. centensimus primus, etc. ci
200. ducenti, ae, a ducentensimus cc
300. trecenti trecentensimus ccc
400. quadringenti quadringentensimus cccc
500. quingenti quingentensimus d
600. sescenti sescentensimus dc
700. septingenti septingentensimus dccc
800. octingenti octingentensimus dccc
900. nongenti nongentensimus dccc
1000. mille millensimus oo (cio) or m
5000. quinque milia (millia) quinquennium millenimum oo
10,000. decem milia (millia) decemennium millenimum ccioo
100,000. centum milia (millia) centennium millenimum cc cioo

Note 1. — The forms in -ensimus are often written without the n: as, vicensimus, etc.
Note 2. — The forms octodecim, novendecim are rare, duodeviginti (two from twenty),
undeviginti (one from twenty), being used instead. So 28, 29; 38, 39; etc. may be expressed either by the subtraction of two and one or by the addition of eight and nine respectively.

Declension of Cardinals and Ordinals

134. Of the Cardinals only unus, duo, tres, the hundreds above one hundred, and mille when used as a noun, are declinable.

a. For the declension of unus, see § 113. It often has the meaning of same or only. The plural is used in this sense; but also, as a simple numeral, to agree with a plural noun of a singular meaning: as, una castra, one camp (cf. § 137. b). The plural occurs also in the phrase uni et alteri, one party and the other (the ones and the others).

b. Duo, two, and tres, three, are thus declined: —

1 The form in -o is a remnant of the dual number, which was lost in Latin, but is found in cognate languages. So in ambo, both, which preserves -o (cf. duo and § 629. b).
NUMERALS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>M.</th>
<th>F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
<th>M., F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>duo</td>
<td>duaee</td>
<td>duo</td>
<td>tres</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>duorum</td>
<td>duarium</td>
<td>duorum</td>
<td>trium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>duobus</td>
<td>duabus</td>
<td>duobus</td>
<td>tribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>duos (duo)</td>
<td>duas</td>
<td>duo</td>
<td>tres (triis)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>duobus</td>
<td>duabus</td>
<td>duobus</td>
<td>tribus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note.—Ambo, both, is declined like duo.

c. The hundreds, up to 1000, are adjectives of the First and Second Declensions, and are regularly declined like the plural of bonus.

d. Mille, a thousand, is in the singular an indeclinable adjective:—

mille modis, in a thousand ways.

cum mille hominibus, with a thousand men.

mille trahens variōs colorēs (Aen. iv. 701), drawing out a thousand various colors.

In the plural it is used as a neuter noun, and is declined like the plural of sedēle (§ 69): milia, milium, milibus, etc.

Note.—The singular mille is sometimes found as a noun in the nominative and accusative: as, mille hominum misit, he sent a thousand (of) men; in the other cases rarely, except in connection with the same case of milia: as, cum octō milibus peditum, mille equitum, with eight thousand foot and a thousand horse.

e. The ordinals are adjectives of the First and Second Declensions, and are regularly declined like bonus.

135. Cardinals and Ordinals have the following uses:—

a. In numbers below 100, if units precede tens, et is generally inserted: duo et viginti; otherwise et is omitted: viginti duo.

b. In numbers above 100 the highest denomination generally stands first, the next second, etc., as in English. Et is either omitted entirely, or stands between the two highest denominations:—mille (et) septingenti sexāgintā quattuor, 1764.

Note.—Observe the following combinations of numerals with substantives:—

ünus et viginti militēs, or viginti militēs (et) ünus, 21 soldiers.

duo milia quingenti militēs, or duo milia militum et quingenti, 2500 soldiers.

milītēs milīe ducenti trigintā ünus, 1231 soldiers.

c. After milia the name of the objects enumerated is in the genitive:

duo milia hominum, two thousand men.¹

cum tribus milibus militum, with three thousand soldiers.

milia passuum tria, three thousand paces (three miles).

d. For million, billion, trillion, etc., the Romans had no special words, but these numbers were expressed by multiplication (cf. § 138. a).

¹ Or, in poetry; bis milie homines, twice a thousand men.
§§ 135-137 DISTRIBUTIVES

135. Distributives

Fractions are expressed, as in English, by cardinals in the numerator and ordinals in the denominator. The feminine gender is used to agree with pars expressed or understood: — *two-sevenths*, *duae septimae* (sc. *partēs*); *three-eighths*, *tēs octāvae* (sc. *partēs*).

*One-half* is *dīmidia pars* or *dīmidium*.

**Note 1.** — When the numerator is *one*, it is omitted and *pars* is expressed: *one-third*, *tertia pars*; *one-fourth*, *quarta pars*.

**Note 2.** — When the denominator is but one greater than the numerator, the numerator only is given: *two-thirds*, *duae partēs*; *three-fourths*, *tres partēs*, etc.

**Note 3.** — Fractions are also expressed by special words derived from *as*, a *pound*: *as*, *triens*, a *third*; *bes*, *two-thirds*. See § 637.

136. Distributive Numerals are declined like the plural of bonus.

**Note.** — These answer to the interrogative *quotēnī*, how many of each? or how many at a time?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>1. singuli, one by one</th>
<th>18. octōnī dēnī or dūo-dēvicēnī</th>
<th>100. centēnī</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2. bīnī, two by two</td>
<td>19. novēnī dēnī or ūn-dēvicēnī</td>
<td>200. ducēnī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3. ternī, trīnī</td>
<td>20. vicēnī singuli, etc.</td>
<td>300. trecēnī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4. quaternī</td>
<td>21. vicēnī singuli, etc.</td>
<td>400. quadrēnī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5. quīnī</td>
<td>40. quadrāgēnī</td>
<td>500. quīngēnī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6. sēnī</td>
<td>41. quīnga singuli, etc.</td>
<td>600. sescēnī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7. septēnī</td>
<td>71. septēnī</td>
<td>700. septēnī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8. octōnī</td>
<td>70. septuāgēnī</td>
<td>800. octēnī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9. novēnī</td>
<td>50. quīnga singuli, etc.</td>
<td>900. nōngēnī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10. dēnī</td>
<td>60. sexāgēnī</td>
<td>1000. milleńi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11. ūndēnī</td>
<td>70. septuāgēnī</td>
<td>2000. bīna milleńi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12. duodēnī</td>
<td>80. octāgēnī</td>
<td>10,000. dēna milleńi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13. ternī dēnī, etc.</td>
<td>90. nōnāgēnī</td>
<td>100,000. centēnā milleńi</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

137. Distributives are used as follows: —

**a.** In the sense of *so many apiece or on each side*: as, *singula singulis*, *one apiece* (one each to each one); *agri septēnā iūgera plēbī dīvisa sunt*, i.e. *seven jugera to each citizen* (seven jugera each), etc.

**b.** Instead of cardinals, to express simple number, when a noun plural in form but usually singular in meaning is used in a plural sense: as, *bīna castra, two camps* (*duo castra* would mean *two forts*). With such nouns *trīnī*, not *ternī*, is used for *three*: as, *trīna* (not *terna*) *castra, three camps*; *terna castra* means *camps in threes*.

**c.** In multiplication: as, *bis bīna, twice two*; *ter septēnīs diēbus, in thrice seven days*.

**d.** By the poets instead of cardinal numbers, particularly where *pairs* or *sets* are spoken of: as, *bīna hastilia, two shafts* (two in a set).
Numeral Adverbs

138. The Numeral Adverbs answer the question *quotiens* (quotiēns), *how many times? how often?*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Numeral</th>
<th>Adverb</th>
<th>Numeral</th>
<th>Adverb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>semel, once</td>
<td>12.</td>
<td>duodecēns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>bis, <em>twice</em></td>
<td>13.</td>
<td>terdecēns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>ter, <em>thrice</em></td>
<td>14.</td>
<td>quaterdecēns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>quater</td>
<td>15.</td>
<td>quindecēns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>quinquinquēns (-ēs)1</td>
<td>16.</td>
<td>sēdecēns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>sexiēns</td>
<td>17.</td>
<td>septiēsdecēns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>septiēns</td>
<td>18.</td>
<td>duodecēviēns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>octiēns</td>
<td>19.</td>
<td>undēcēviēns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>noviēns</td>
<td>20.</td>
<td>viciēns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>decēns</td>
<td>21.</td>
<td>semel viciēns,² etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>undecēns</td>
<td>30.</td>
<td>triciēns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
<td>duodecēns</td>
<td>40.</td>
<td>quadrāgiēns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
<td>terdecēns</td>
<td>50.</td>
<td>quinquāgiēns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
<td>quaterdecēns</td>
<td>60.</td>
<td>sexāgiēns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
<td>quindecēns</td>
<td>70.</td>
<td>septuāgiēns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.</td>
<td>sēdecēns</td>
<td>80.</td>
<td>octōgiēns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.</td>
<td>septiēsdecēns</td>
<td>90.</td>
<td>nōnāgiēns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.</td>
<td>duodecēviēns</td>
<td>100.</td>
<td>centiēns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.</td>
<td>undēcēviēns</td>
<td>200.</td>
<td>ducentiēns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.</td>
<td>viciēns</td>
<td>300.</td>
<td>trecentiēns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.</td>
<td>semel viciēns,² etc.</td>
<td>1000.</td>
<td>miliēns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30.</td>
<td>triciēns</td>
<td>10,000.</td>
<td>deciēns miliēns</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*a.* Numeral Adverbs are used with *mille* to express the higher numbers:

- *ter et triciēns* (centēna milia) sēstertium, 3,300,000 sesterces (three and thirty times a hundred thousand sesterces).
- *viciēs ac septiēs miliēs* (centēna milia) sēstertium, 2,700,000,000 sesterces (twenty-seven thousand times a hundred thousand).

*Note.*—These large numbers are used almost exclusively in reckoning money, and centēna milia is regularly omitted (see § 634).

Other Numerals

139. The following adjectives are called Multiplicatives: —

- *simplex,* single; *duplex,* double, twofold; *triplex,* triple, threefold; *quadruplex,* quinquiplex, septemplex, decemplex, centuplex, sesquiplex (1½), multiplex (manifold).

*a.* Proportionals are: *duplus,* triplus, quadruplus, octupius, etc., *twice as great,* thrice as great, etc.

*b.* Temporals: *bimus,* trimus, *of two or three years' age;* biennis, triennis, *lasting two or three years;* bimēstris, trimēstris, *of two or three months;* bīduum, *a period of two days;* biennium, *a period of two years.*

*c.* Partitives: *bīnārius,* ternārius, *of two or three parts.*

*d.* Other derivatives are: *ūniō,* unity; *bīniō,* the two (of dice); *primānus,* of the first legion; *primārius,* of the first rank; *dēnārius,* a sum of 10 asses; *bīnus* (distributive), *double,* etc.

---

¹ Forms in -ns are often written without the n.
² Also written *viciēns et semel* or *viciēns semel,* etc.
PRONOUNS

140. Pronouns are used as Nouns or as Adjectives. They are divided into the following seven classes: —

1. Personal Pronouns: as, ego, I.
2. Reflexive Pronouns: as, sé, himself.
4. Demonstrative Pronouns: as, hic, this; ille, that.
5. Relative Pronouns: as, qui, who.
6. Interrogative Pronouns: as, quis, who?
7. Indefinite Pronouns: as, aliquis, some one.

141. Pronouns have special forms of declension.

Note.—These spécial forms are, in general, survivals of a very ancient form of declension differing from that of nouns.

Personal Pronouns

142. The Personal pronouns of the first person are ego, I, nōs, we; of the second person, tu, thou or you, vōs, ye or you. The personal pronouns of the third person — he, she, it, they — are wanting in Latin, a demonstrative being sometimes used instead.

143. Ego and tu are declined as follows: —

**First Person**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>ego, I</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>mei, of me</td>
<td>nōs, we</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>mihi (mi), to me</td>
<td>nostrum, nostrī, of us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>mē, me</td>
<td>nōbis, to us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>mē, by me</td>
<td>nōbis, by us</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Second Person**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>tu, thou or you</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>tui, of thee or you</td>
<td>vōs, ye or you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>tibi</td>
<td>vestrum, vestri; vostrum (-tri)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>tē</td>
<td>vōbis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>tē</td>
<td>vōbis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

α. The plural nōs is often used for the singular ego; the plural vōs is never so used for the singular tu.
Note.—Old forms are genitive mis, tis; accusative and ablative mēd, tēd (cf. § 43, n. 1).

b. The forms nostrum, vestrum, etc., are used partitively:—

ünusquisque nostrum, each one of us.
vestrum omnium, of all of you.

Note.—The forms of the genitive of the personal pronouns are really the genitives of the possessives: mei, tui, suī, nostri, vestri, genitive singular neuter: nostrum, vestrum, genitive plural masculine or neuter. So in early and later Latin we find una vestrārum, one of you (women).

c. The genitives mei, tui, suī, nostri, vestri, are chiefly used objectively (§ 347):

memor sis nostrī, be mindful of us (me).
mē tui pudet, I am ashamed of you.

d. Emphatic forms of tū are tūte and tūtemet (tūtimet). The other cases of the personal pronouns, excepting the genitive plural, are made emphatic by adding -met: as, egomet, vōsmet.

Note.—Early emphatic forms are mēpte and tēpte.

e. Reduplicated forms are found in the accusative and ablative singular: as, mēmē, tētē.

f. The preposition cum, with, is joined enclitically with the ablative: as, tēcum loquitur, he talks with you.

Reflexive Pronouns

144. Reflexive Pronouns are used in the Oblique Cases to refer to the subject of the sentence or clause in which they stand (see § 299): as, sē amat, he loves himself.

a. In the first and second persons the oblique cases of the Personal pronouns are used as Reflexives: as, mē videō, I see myself; tē laudās, you praise yourself; nōbis persuādēmus, we persuade ourselves.

b. The Reflexive pronoun of the third person has a special form used only in this sense, the same for both singular and plural. It is thus declined:—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>suī, of himself, herself, itself, themselves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>sibī, to himself, herself, itself, themselves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>sē (sēsē), himself, herself, itself, themselves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>sē (sēsē), [by] himself, herself, itself, themselves</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note 1.—Emphatic and reduplicated forms of sē are made as in the personals (see § 143. d, e). The preposition cum is added enclitically: as, sēcum, with himself, etc.

Note 2.—An old form sēd occurs in the accusative and ablative.
Possessive Pronouns

145. The Possessive pronouns are:—

| First Person. | meus, my | noster, our |
| Second Person. | tuus, thy, your | vester, your |
| Third Person. | suus, his, her, its | suus, their |

These are really adjectives of the First and Second Declensions, and are so declined (see §§ 110-112). But meus has regularly mí (rarely meus) in the vocative singular masculine.

Note.—Suus is used only as a reflexive, referring to the subject. For a possessive pronoun of the third person not referring to the subject, the genitive of a demonstrative must be used. Thus, patrem suum occidit, he killed his (own) father; but patrem eius occidit, he killed his (somebody else's) father.

a. Emphatic forms in -pte are found in the ablati ve singular: suópte.

b. A rare possessive cuius (quóius), -a, -um, whose, is formed from the genitive singular of the relative or interrogative pronoun (quí, quis). It may be either interrogative or relative in force according to its derivation, but is usually the former.

c. The reciprocals one another and each other are expressed by inter sé or alter . . . alterum:

alter alterius óva frangit, they break each other's eggs (one . . . of the other).
inter sé amant, they love one another (they love among themselves).

Demonstrative Pronouns

146. The Demonstrative Pronouns are used to point out or designate a person or thing for special attention, either with nouns as Adjectives or alone as Pronouns. They are:—híc, this; ís, íle, íste, that; with the Intensive ípse, self, and ídem, same; 1 and are thus declined:—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>M.</td>
<td>F.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom. híc</td>
<td>haec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. húius</td>
<td>húius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. huúc</td>
<td>huúc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. hunc</td>
<td>hanc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. hóc</td>
<td>hác</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 These demonstratives are combinations of o- and i-stems, which are not clearly distinguishable.
Note 1.—*Hic* is a compound of the stem *he*- with the demonstrative enclitic -ce. In most of the cases final e is dropped, in some the whole termination. But in these latter it is sometimes retained for emphasis: *as, huius-ce, his-ce*. In early Latin -c alone is retained in some of these (*hœrunc*). The vowel in *hic, hœc*, was originally short, and perhaps this quantity was always retained. *Ille* and *iste* are sometimes found with the same enclitic: *illic, illæc, illuc*. See *a*, p. 67.

Note 2.—For the dative and ablative plural of *hic* the old form *hibus* is sometimes found; *haec* occurs (rarely) for *hae*.

### SINGULAR

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>M.</th>
<th>F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
<th></th>
<th>M.</th>
<th>F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nom.</strong></td>
<td>is</td>
<td>ea</td>
<td>id</td>
<td></td>
<td>iī, iī (ī)</td>
<td>eae</td>
<td>ea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gen.</strong></td>
<td>eīus</td>
<td>eīus</td>
<td>eīus</td>
<td></td>
<td>eōrum</td>
<td>eārum</td>
<td>eōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dat.</strong></td>
<td>eī</td>
<td>eī</td>
<td>eī</td>
<td></td>
<td>eīs, iīs (īs)</td>
<td>eīs, iīs (īs)</td>
<td>eīs, iīs (īs)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Acc.</strong></td>
<td>eum eam</td>
<td>id</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>eōs</td>
<td>eās</td>
<td>ea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Abl.</strong></td>
<td>eō eā eō</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>eīs, iīs (īs)</td>
<td>eīs, iīs (īs)</td>
<td>eīs, iīs (īs)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note 3.—Obsolete forms are eae (dat. fem.), and eābus or hībus (dat. plur.). For dative eī are found also eī and eī (monosyllabic); eī, eās, etc., also occur in the plural.

### ille, that

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>M.</th>
<th>F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
<th></th>
<th>M.</th>
<th>F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nom.</strong></td>
<td>ille</td>
<td>illa</td>
<td>illud</td>
<td></td>
<td>illī</td>
<td>illae</td>
<td>illa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gen.</strong></td>
<td>illīus</td>
<td>illīus</td>
<td>illīus</td>
<td></td>
<td>illōrum</td>
<td>illārum</td>
<td>illōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dat.</strong></td>
<td>illī</td>
<td>illī</td>
<td>illī</td>
<td></td>
<td>illīs</td>
<td>illīs</td>
<td>illīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Acc.</strong></td>
<td>illum</td>
<td>illam</td>
<td>illud</td>
<td></td>
<td>illōs</td>
<td>illās</td>
<td>illa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Abl.</strong></td>
<td>illō</td>
<td>illā</td>
<td>illō</td>
<td></td>
<td>illīs</td>
<td>illīs</td>
<td>illīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Iste, ista, istud, *that* (*yonder*), is declined like *ille*.

Note 4.—Ille replaces an earlier *ollus* (*olle*), of which several forms occur.

Note 5.—*Iste* is sometimes found in early writers in the form *ste* etc. The first syllable of *ille* and *ipse* is very often used as short in early poetry.

Note 6.—The forms *illi*, *isti* (gen.), and *illae, istae* (dat.), are sometimes found; also the nominative plural *istaece, illaece* (for *istae, illae*). See *a*, p. 67.

### ipse, self

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>M.</th>
<th>F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
<th></th>
<th>M.</th>
<th>F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nom.</strong></td>
<td>ipse</td>
<td>ipsa</td>
<td>ipsum</td>
<td></td>
<td>ipsī</td>
<td>ipsae</td>
<td>ipsa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gen.</strong></td>
<td>ipsīus</td>
<td>ipsīus</td>
<td>ipsīus</td>
<td></td>
<td>ipsōrum</td>
<td>ipsārum</td>
<td>ipsōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dat.</strong></td>
<td>ipsī</td>
<td>ipsī</td>
<td>ipsī</td>
<td></td>
<td>ipsīs</td>
<td>ipsīs</td>
<td>ipsīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Acc.</strong></td>
<td>ipsum</td>
<td>ipsam</td>
<td>ipsum</td>
<td></td>
<td>ipsōs</td>
<td>ipsās</td>
<td>ipsa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Abl.</strong></td>
<td>ipsō</td>
<td>ipsā</td>
<td>ipsō</td>
<td></td>
<td>ipsīs</td>
<td>ipsīs</td>
<td>ipsīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Note 7.**—Ipse is compounded of is and -pse (a pronominal particle of uncertain origin; cf. § 145. a), meaning *self*. The former part was originally declined, as in reapse (for ré eāpse), *in fact*. An old form ipsus occurs, with superlative ipsissimus, *own self*, used for comic effect.

**Note 8.**—The intensive -pse is found in the forms eapse (nominative), eumpse, eampse, eōpse, eāpse (ablative).

**Singular**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>M</th>
<th>F</th>
<th>N</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>idem</td>
<td>cādem</td>
<td>idem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>ēiusdem</td>
<td>ēiusdem</td>
<td>ēiusdem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>eādem</td>
<td>eādem</td>
<td>eādem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>eundem</td>
<td>ēdem</td>
<td>eādem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>eōdem</td>
<td>cādem</td>
<td>ēdem</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Plural**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>M</th>
<th>F</th>
<th>N</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>idem</td>
<td>cādem</td>
<td>idem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>ēiusdem</td>
<td>ēiusdem</td>
<td>ēiusdem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>eādem</td>
<td>eādem</td>
<td>eādem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>eundem</td>
<td>ēdem</td>
<td>eādem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>eōdem</td>
<td>cādem</td>
<td>ēdem</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note 9.**—Idem is the demonstrative is with the indeclinable suffix -dem. The masculine idem is for āīdem; the neuter idem, however, is not for āīdem, but is a relic of an older formation. A final m of is is changed to n before d: as, eundem for eumdem, etc. The plural forms idem, isdem, are often written āīdem, āīsdem.

**a.** Ille and iste appear in combination with the demonstrative particle -c, shortened from -ce, in the following forms:

**Singular**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>M</th>
<th>F</th>
<th>N</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>illic</td>
<td>illaeç</td>
<td>illoc (illoc)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>illunc</td>
<td>illanc</td>
<td>illoc (illoc)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>illōc</td>
<td>illāç</td>
<td>ilłōc</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Plural**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>N</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.</td>
<td>illaeç</td>
<td>istaeç</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note 1.**—The appended -ce is also found with pronouns in numerous combinations: as, huiscue, huncue, hœrunce, hœrunce, hœsce, hisce (cf. § 146. N. 1), illiuscœ, isce; also with the interrogative -me, in hœcine, hœscine, istucine, illicine, etc.

**Note 2.**—By composition with ecce or em, *behold!* are formed eccum (for ecce cum), eccam, eccæs, eccæs; eccillum (for ecce illum); ellum (for em illum), ellam, ellæs, ellæs; eccistam. These forms are dramatic and colloquial.

**b.** The combinations huïusmodi (huïuscemodi), eïusmodi, etc., are used as indeclinable adjectives, equivalent to talis, such: as, rēs eïusmodi, such a thing (a thing of that sort; cf. § 345. a).

For uses of the Demonstrative Pronouns, see §§ 296 ff.
Relative Pronouns

147. The Relative Pronoun qui, who, which, is thus declined:—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>M.</td>
<td>F.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>qui</td>
<td>quae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>cūius</td>
<td>cūius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>cui</td>
<td>cui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>quem</td>
<td>quam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>quō</td>
<td>quā</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Interrogative and Indefinite Pronouns

148. The Substantive Interrogative Pronoun quis, who? quid, what? is declined in the Singular as follows:—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>M.</th>
<th>F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>quis</td>
<td></td>
<td>qui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>cūius</td>
<td>cūius</td>
<td>cūius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>cui</td>
<td>cui</td>
<td>cui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>quem</td>
<td>quam</td>
<td>quod</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>quō</td>
<td>quā</td>
<td>quō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Plural is the same as that of the Relative, qui, quae, quae.

a. The singular quis is either masculine or of indeterminate gender, but in old writers it is sometimes distinctly feminine.

b. The Adjective Interrogative Pronoun, qui, quae, quod, what kind of? what? which? is declined throughout like the Relative:—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>SUBSTANTIVE</th>
<th>ADJECTIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>quis vocat, who calls?</td>
<td>qui homō vocat, what man calls?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quid vídēs, what do you see?</td>
<td>quod templum vídēs, what temple do you see?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note.—But qui is often used without any apparent adjective force; and quis is very common as an adjective, especially with words denoting a person: as, qui nōmi- nat mē? who calls my name? quis dīēs fuit? what day was it? quis homō? what man? but often qui homō? what kind of man? nesciō qui sīs, I know not who you are.

c. Quisnam, pray, who? is an emphatic interrogative. It has both substantive and adjective forms like quis, qui.

149. The Indefinite Pronouns quis, any one, and qui, any, are declined like the corresponding Interrogatives, but qua is commonly used for quae except in the nominative plural feminine:
COMPOUNDS OF QUIS AND QUI

§§ 149-151

Substantive: quis, any one; quid, anything.
Adjective: qui, qua (quaes), quod, any.

a. The feminine forms qua and quae are sometimes used substantively.

b. The indefinites quis and qui are rare except after si, nisi, ne, and num, and in compounds (see § 310. a, b).

Note. — After these particles qui is often used as a substantive and quis as an adjective (cf. § 148. b. n.).

Case-Forms of qui and quis

150. The Relative, Interrogative, and Indefinite Pronouns are originally of the same stem, and most of the forms are the same (compare § 147 with § 148). The stem has two forms in the masculine and neuter, quo-, qui-, and one for the feminine, quá-. The interrogative sense is doubtless the original one.

a. Old forms for the genitive and dative singular are quōius, quiō.

b. The form qui is used for the ablative of both numbers and all genders; but especially as an adverb (how, by which way, in any way), and in the combination quicūm, with whom, as an interrogative or an indefinite relative.

c. A nominative plural quēs (stem qui-) is found in early Latin. A dative and ablative quis (stem quo-) is not infrequent, even in classic Latin.

d. The preposition cuum is joined enclitically to all forms of the ablative, as with the personal pronouns (§ 143. f.): as, quōcum, quīcum, quībuscum.

Note. — But occasionally cuum precedes: as, cum quō (Iuv. iv. 9).

Compounds of quis and qui

151. The pronouns quis and qui appear in various combinations.

a. The adverb -cumque (-cunque) (cf. quisque) added to the relative makes an indefinite relative, which is declined like the simple word: as, quicumque, quaecumque, quocumque, whoever, whatever; cūiuscumque, etc.

Note. — This suffix, with the same meaning, may be used with any relative: as, quāliscumque, of whatever sort; quāndōcumque (also rarely quāndōque), whenever; ubi-cumque, wherever.

b. In quisquis, whoever, both parts are declined, but the only forms in common use are quisquis, quidquid (quicquid) and quōquo.

Note 1. — Rare forms are quemquem and quibusquibus; an ablative quiquī is sometimes found in early Latin; the ablative feminine quāquā is both late and rare. Cuēui occurs as a genitive in the phrase cuēui modi, of whatever kind. Other cases are cited, but have no authority. In early Latin quisquis is occasionally feminine.

Note 2. — Quisquis is usually substantive, except in the ablative quaēquē, which is mere commonly an adjective,
c. The indefinite pronouns *quidam*, *a certain* (one); *quivis*, *quilibet*, *any you please*, are used both as substantives and as adjectives. The first part is declined like the relative *qui*, but the neuter has both *quid*-(substantive) and *quod*-(adjective): —

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\text{quidam} & \text{quaeam} & \text{quiddam} \ (\text{quoddam}) \\
\text{quivis} & \text{quaevis} & \text{quidvis} \ (\text{quodvis})
\end{array}
\]

*Quidam* changes *m* to *n* before *d* in the accusative singular (*quendam*, *m.*; *quandam*, *f.*) and the genitive plural (*quorundam*, *m.*, *n.*; *quarundam*, *f.*).

d. The indefinite pronouns *quispiam*, *some, any*, and *quisquam*, *any at all*, are used both as substantives and as adjectives. *Quispiam* has feminine *quaepiam* (adjective), neuter *quidpiam* (substantive) and *quodpiam* (adjective); the plural is very rare. *Quisquam* is both masculine and feminine; the neuter is *quidquam* (*quicquam*), substantive only; there is no plural. *Ullus*, *-a*, *-um*, is commonly used as the adjective corresponding to *quisquam*.

e. The indefinite pronoun *aliquis* (substantive), *some one, aliqui* (adjective), *some*, is declined like *quis* and *qui*, but *aliqua* is used instead of *aliquae* except in the nominative plural feminine: —

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>M.</th>
<th>F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>aliquis (aliqui)</td>
<td>aliqua</td>
<td>aliquid (aliquod)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>alicuius</td>
<td>alicuius</td>
<td>alicuius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>alicui</td>
<td>alicui</td>
<td>alicui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>aliquem</td>
<td>aliquam</td>
<td>aliquid (aliquod)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>aliquo</td>
<td>aliquä</td>
<td>aliquö</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PLURAL</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>aliqui</td>
<td>aliquae</td>
<td>aliqua</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>aliquorum</td>
<td>aliquarum</td>
<td>aliquorum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>aliquibus</td>
<td>aliquibus</td>
<td>aliquibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>aliquōs</td>
<td>aliquās</td>
<td>aliqua</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>aliquibus</td>
<td>aliquibus</td>
<td>aliquibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note. — *Aliquī* is sometimes used substantively and *aliquis* as an adjective.

f. The indefinite pronoun *ecquis* (substantive), *whether any one, ecqui* (adjective), *whether any*, is declined like *aliquis*, but has either *ecquae* or *ecqua* in the nominative singular feminine of the adjective form.

Note. — *Ecquīs* (*ecqui*) has no genitive singular, and in the plural occurs in the nominative and accusative only.

g. The enclitic particle -que added to the interrogative gives a universal: as, *quisque, every one*; *uterque, each of two, or both*. *Quisque* is declined
like the interrogative quis, quí:—substantive, quises, quidque; adjective, quique, quaeque, quodque.

In the compound unusquisque, every single one, both parts are declined (genitive unusquisque), and they are sometimes written separately and even separated by other words:—

nē in ūnō quidem quōque (Lael. 92), not even in a single one.

h. The relative and interrogative have rarely a possessive adjective cūius (-a, -um), older quōius, whose; and a patrial cūias (cūiāt-), of what country.

i. Quantus, how great, quālis, of what sort, are derivative adjectives from the interrogative. They are either interrogative or relative, corresponding respectively to the demonstratives tantus, tālis (§ 152). Indefinite compounds are quantuscumque and quāliscumque (see § 151. a).

Correlatives

152. Many Pronouns, Pronominal Adjectives, and Adverbs have corresponding demonstrative, relative, interrogative, and indefinite forms. Such parallel forms are called Correlatives. They are shown in the following table:—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>is</td>
<td>qui</td>
<td>quis?</td>
<td>quisquis</td>
<td>aliquis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>that</td>
<td>who</td>
<td>who?</td>
<td>whoever</td>
<td>some one</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tantus</td>
<td>quantus</td>
<td>quantus?</td>
<td>quantuscumque</td>
<td>aliquantus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>so great</td>
<td>quālis</td>
<td>quālis?</td>
<td>quāliscumque</td>
<td>some</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tālis</td>
<td>how (as) great</td>
<td>how great?</td>
<td>however great</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>such</td>
<td>as</td>
<td>of what sort?</td>
<td>of whatever kind</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ibi</td>
<td>ubi</td>
<td>ubi?</td>
<td>ubiubi</td>
<td>alicubi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>there</td>
<td>where</td>
<td>where?</td>
<td>wherever</td>
<td>somewhere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eō</td>
<td>quō</td>
<td>quō?</td>
<td>quōquō</td>
<td>alīquō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thither</td>
<td>whither</td>
<td>whither?</td>
<td>whithersoever</td>
<td>(to) somewhere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eā</td>
<td>qua</td>
<td>qua?</td>
<td>quāquā</td>
<td>aliqua</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>that way</td>
<td>which way</td>
<td>which way?</td>
<td>whithersoever</td>
<td>somewhere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inde</td>
<td>unde</td>
<td>unde?</td>
<td>undecumque</td>
<td>alicunde</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thence</td>
<td>whence</td>
<td>whence?</td>
<td>whencesoever</td>
<td>from somewhere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tum</td>
<td>cum</td>
<td>quandō?</td>
<td>quandōcumque</td>
<td>aliquandō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>then</td>
<td>when</td>
<td>when?</td>
<td>whenever</td>
<td>at some time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tot</td>
<td>quot</td>
<td>quot?</td>
<td>quotquot</td>
<td>aliquot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>so many</td>
<td>as</td>
<td>how many?</td>
<td>however many</td>
<td>some, several</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>totiēns</td>
<td>quotiēns</td>
<td>quotiēns?</td>
<td>quotiēncumque</td>
<td>aliquoteNS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>so often</td>
<td>as</td>
<td>how often?</td>
<td>however often</td>
<td>at several times</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CONJUGATION OF THE VERB

VERBS

CONJUGATION OF THE VERB

153. The inflection of the Verb is called its Conjugation.

Voice, Mood, Tense, Person, Number

154. Through its conjugation the Verb expresses Voice, Mood, Tense, Person, and Number.

a. The Voices are two: Active and Passive.

\[ \text{Active}: \text{the Present and Future Participles.} \]

\[ \text{Passive}: \text{the Perfect Participle and the Gerundive.} \]

b. The Moods are four: Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative, and Infinitive.¹

Note. — The Indicative, Subjunctive, and Imperative are called Finite Moods in distinction from the Infinitive.

c. The Tenses are six, viz.:—

1. For continued action, Present, Imperfect, Future.
2. For completed action, Perfect, Pluperfect, Future Perfect.

The Indicative Mood has all six tenses, but the Subjunctive has no future or future perfect, and the Imperative has only the present and the future. The Infinitive has the present, perfect, and future.

da. The Persons are three: First, Second, and Third.

d. The Numbers are two: Singular and Plural.

Noun and Adjective Forms

155. The following Noun and Adjective forms are also included in the inflection of the Latin Verb:—

\[ \text{a. Four Participles,}^2 \text{ viz.:—} \]

\[ \text{Active}: \text{the Present and Future Participles.} \]

\[ \text{Passive}: \text{the Perfect Participle and the Gerundive.}^3 \]

\[ \text{b. The Gerund:} \text{ this is in form a neuter noun of the second declension, used only in the oblique cases of the singular.} \]

\[ \text{c. The Supine:} \text{ this is in form a verbal noun of the fourth declension in the accusative (-um) and dative or ablative (-ā)}^4 \text{ singular.} \]

¹ The Infinitive is strictly the locative case of an abstract noun, expressing the action of the verb (§ 451).

² The Participles are adjectives in inflection and meaning, but have the power of verbs in construction and in distinguishing time.

³ The Gerundive is also used as an adjective of necessity, duty, etc. (§ 158. d). In late use it became a Future Passive Participle.

⁴ Originally locative.
SIGNIFICATION OF THE FORMS OF THE VERB

Voices

156. The Active and Passive Voices in Latin generally correspond to the active and passive in English; but —

a. The passive voice often has a reflexive meaning:

ferrō accingor, I gird myself with my sword.
Turnus vertitur, Turnus turns (himself).
induitur vestem, he puts on his (own) clothes.

Note. — This use corresponds very nearly to the Greek Middle voice, and is doubtless a survival of the original meaning of the passive (p. 76, footnote 2).

b. Many verbs are passive in form, but active or reflexive in meaning. These are called Deponents (§ 190): as, hortor, I exhort; sequor, I follow.

c. Some verbs with active meaning have the passive form in the perfect tenses; these are called Semi-Deponents: as, audeō, audere, ausus sum, dare.

Moods

157. The Moods are used as follows: —

a. The Indicative Mood is used for most direct assertions and interrogations: as, — valēsne? valeō, are you well? I am well.

b. The Subjunctive Mood has many idiomatic uses, as in commands, conditions, and various dependent clauses. It is often translated by the English Indicative; frequently by means of the auxiliaries may, might, would, should; sometimes by the (rare) Subjunctive; sometimes by the Infinitive; and often by the Imperative, especially in prohibitions. A few characteristic examples of its use are the following: —

eāmus, let us go; nē abeat, let him not depart.
adsum ut videam, I am here to see (that I may see).
tū nē quaesieris, do not thou inquire.
beātus sis, may you be blessed.
quid morer, why should I delay?
nesciō quid scribam, I know not what to write.
si moneam, audiat, if I should warn, he would hear.

1 That is, verbs which have laid aside (dēpōnerē) the passive meaning.

2 The Latin uses the subjunctive in many cases where we use the indicative; and we use a colorless auxiliary in many cases where the Latin employs a separate verb with more definite meaning. Thus, I may write is often not scribam (subjunctive), but licet mihi scribere; I can write is possum scribere; I would write is scribam, scribere, or scribere velim (vellem); I should write, (if, etc.), scribere (si) . . . , or (implying duty) oportet mé scribere.
c. The Imperative is used for exhortation, entreaty, or command; but the Subjunctive is often used instead (§§ 439, 450):

liber estō, he shall be free.

nē ossa legitiō, do not gather the bones.

d. The Infinitive is used chiefly as an indeclinable noun, as the subject or complement of another verb (§§ 452, 456 n.). In special constructions it takes the place of the Indicative, and may be translated by that mood in English (see Indirect Discourse, § 580 ff.).

Note.—For the Syntax of the Moods, see § 436 ff.

Participles

158. The Participles are used as follows: —

a. The Present Participle (ending in -ns) has commonly the same meaning and use as the English participle in -ing; as, vocāns, calling; legentēs, reading. (For its inflection, see egēns, § 118.)

b. The Future Participle (ending in -ūrus) is oftenest used to express what is likely or about to happen: as, rectūrus, about to rule; auditūrus, about to hear.

Note.—With the tenses of esse, to be, it forms the First Periphrastic Conjugation (see § 195): as, urbs est cāsūra, the city is about to fall; mānsūrus eram, I was going to stay.

c. The Perfect Participle (ending in -tus, -sus) has two uses: —

1. It is sometimes equivalent to the English perfect passive participle: as, tēctus, sheltered; acceptus, accepted; ictus, having been struck; and often has simply an adjective meaning: as, acceptus, acceptable.

2. It is used with the verb to be (esse) to form certain tenses of the passive: as, vocātus est, he was (has been) called.

Note.—There is no Perfect Active or Present Passive Participle in Latin. For substitutes see §§ 492, 493.

d. The Gerundive (ending in -ndus), has two uses: —

1. It is often used as an adjective implying obligation, necessity, or propriety (ought or must): as, audiendus est, he must be heard.

Note.—When thus used with the tenses of the verb to be (esse) it forms the Second Periphrastic Conjugation: dēligendus erat, he ought to have been chosen (§ 196).

2. In the oblique cases the Gerundive commonly has the same meaning as the Gerund (cf. § 159. a), though its construction is different. (For examples, see § 503 ff.)
Gerund and Supine

159. The Gerund and Supine are used as follows:—

a. The Gerund is a verbal noun, corresponding in meaning to the English verbal noun in -ing (§ 502): as, loquendi causā, for the sake of speaking.

Note.—The Gerund is found only in the oblique cases. A corresponding nominative is supplied by the Infinitive: thus, scribere est útile, writing (to write) is useful; but, ās scribendi, the art of writing.

b. The Supine is in form a noun of the fourth declension (§ 94. b), found only in the accusative ending in -tūm, -tūm, and the dative or ablative ending in -tū, -sū.

The Supine in -tūm is used after verbs and the Supine in -ū after adjectives (§§ 509, 510):—

vēnit spectātum, he came to see; mīrābile dictū, wonderful to tell.

Tenses of the Finite Verb

160. The Tenses of the Indicative have, in general, the same meaning as the corresponding tenses in English:—

a. Of continued action,

1. Present: scribō, I write, I am writing, I do write.
2. Imperfect: scribēbam, I wrote, I was writing, I did write.

b. Of completed action,

4. Perfect: scripsī, I have written, I wrote.
5. Pluperfect: scripsēram, I had written.
6. Future Perfect: scripsērō, I shall have written.

161. The Perfect Indicative has two separate uses, — the Perfect Definite and the Perfect Historical (or Indefinite).

1. The Perfect Definite represents the action of the verb as completed in present time, and corresponds to the English perfect with have: as, scripsī, I have written.

2. The Perfect Historical narrates a simple act or state in past time without representing it as in progress or continuing. It corresponds to the English past or preterite and the Greek aorist: as, scripsit, he wrote.

162. The Tenses of the Subjunctive are chiefly used in dependent clauses, following the rule for the Sequence of Tenses; but have also special idiomatic uses (see Syntax).

For the use of Tenses in the Imperative, see §§ 448, 449.
PERSONAL ENDINGS

163. Verbs have regular terminations for each of the three Persons, both singular and plural, active and passive. These are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ACTIVE</th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PASSIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. -m (-ŏ)</td>
<td>am-ŏ, I love.</td>
<td>-r (-or): amo-r, I am loved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. -s:</td>
<td>amā-s, thou lovest.</td>
<td>-ris (-re): amā-ris, thou art loved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. -t:</td>
<td>ama-t, he loves.</td>
<td>-tur: amā-tur, he is loved.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Plural

1. -mus: amā-mus, we love. -mur: amā-mur, we are loved. |
| 2. -tis: amā-tis, you love. | -mini: amā-mini, you are loved. |
| 3. -nt: ama-nt, they love. | -ntur: ama-ntur, they are loved. |

**a.** The Perfect Indicative active has the special terminations:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sing.</th>
<th>Plur.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. -i:</td>
<td>amāv-i, I loved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. -is-ti:</td>
<td>amāv-is-ti, thou lovedst.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. -i-t:</td>
<td>amāv-i-t, he loved.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**b.** The Imperative has the following terminations:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present Active</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Singular</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. —:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Plural</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. -te:</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future Active**

| 2. -tō: | amā-tō, thou shalt love. |
| 3. -ntō: | amā-ntō, they shall love. |

1 Most of these seem to be fragments of old pronouns, whose signification is thus added to that of the verb-stem (cf. § 36). But the ending -mini in the second person plural of the passive is perhaps a remnant of the participial form found in the Greek -μενος, and has supplanted the proper form, which does not appear in Latin. The personal ending -nt is probably connected with the participial nt (nominative -ns).

2 The Passive is an old Middle Voice, peculiar to the Italic and Celtic languages, and of uncertain origin.

3 Of these terminations -i is not a personal ending, but appears to represent an Indo-European tense-sign -ai of the Perfect Middle. In -is-ti and -is-tis, -ti and -tis are personal endings; for -is-, see § 169. c. n. In -i-t and -i-mus, -t and -mus are personal endings, and i is of uncertain origin. Both -erunt and -ère are also of doubtful origin, but the former contains the personal ending -nt.
Forms of the Verb

The Three Stems

164. The forms of the verb may be referred to three stems, called (1) the Present, (2) the Perfect, and (3) the Supine stem.

1. On the Present stem are formed —
   The Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative, Active and Passive.
   The Present and Imperfect Subjunctive, Active and Passive.
   The Imperative, Active and Passive.
   The Present Infinitive, Active and Passive.
   The Present Participle, the Gerundive, and the Gerund.

2. On the Perfect stem are formed —
   The Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative Active.
   The Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive Active.
   The Perfect Infinitive Active.

3. On the Supine stem are formed 1 —
   a. The Perfect Passive Participle, which combines with the forms of the verb sum, be, to make —
      The Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative Passive.
      The Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive Passive.
      The Perfect Infinitive Passive.
   b. The Future Active Participle, which combines with esse to make the Future Active Infinitive.
   c. The Supine in -um and -ū. The Supine in -um combines with ārī to make the Future Passive Infinitive (§ 203. a).

Note. — The Perfect Participle with fore also makes a Future Passive Infinitive (as, amātus fore). For fore (futūrum esse) ut with the subjunctive, see § 569. 3. a.

1 The Perfect Passive and Future Active Particples and the Supine, though strictly noun-forms, each with its own suffix, agree in having the first letter of the suffix (t) the same and in suffering the same phonetic change (t to s, see § 15. 5). Hence these forms, along with several sets of derivatives (in -tor, -tūra, etc., see § 238. b. n.1), were felt by the Romans as belonging to one system, and are conveniently associated with the Supine Stem. Thus, from pingō, we have pictum, pictus, pictūrus, pictor, pictūra; from rīdeō, risum (for rīd-tum), risus (part.), risus (noun), risūrus, rīsīō, rīsor, rīsibilis.
CONJUGATION OF THE VERB

VERB-ENDINGS

165. Every form of the finite verb is made up of two parts:
1. The Stem (see § 24). This is either the root or a modification or development of it.
2. The Ending, consisting of——
   1. the Signs of Mood and Tense (see §§ 168, 169).
   2. the Personal Ending (see § 163).

Thus in the verb vocā-bā-s, you were calling, the root is voc, modified into the verb-stem vocā-, which by the addition of the ending -bās becomes the imperfect tense vocābās; and this ending consists of the tense-sign bā- and the personal ending (-s) of the second person singular.

166. The Verb-endings, as they are formed by the signs for mood and tense combined with personal endings, are——

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ACTIVE</th>
<th>SUBJUNCTIVE</th>
<th>PASSIVE</th>
<th>SUBJUNCTIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>INDICATIVE</td>
<td></td>
<td>INDICATIVE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sing. 1. -ō</td>
<td></td>
<td>-m</td>
<td>-r</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. -s</td>
<td>-s</td>
<td>-ris (-re)</td>
<td>-ris (-re)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. -t</td>
<td>-t</td>
<td>-tur</td>
<td>-mur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plur. 1. -mus</td>
<td>-mus</td>
<td>-mur</td>
<td>-mur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. -tis</td>
<td>-tis</td>
<td>-mini</td>
<td>-mini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. -nt</td>
<td>-nt</td>
<td>-ntur</td>
<td>-ntur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IMPERFECT</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>IMPERFECT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sing. 1. -ba-m</td>
<td>-re-m</td>
<td>-ba-r</td>
<td>-re-r</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. -bā-s</td>
<td>-rē-s</td>
<td>-bā-ris (-re)</td>
<td>-rē-ris (-re)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. -ba-t</td>
<td>-re-t</td>
<td>-bā-tur</td>
<td>-rē-tur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plur. 1. -bā-mus</td>
<td>-rē-mus</td>
<td>-bā-mur</td>
<td>-rē-mur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. -bā-tis</td>
<td>-rē-tis</td>
<td>-bā-mini</td>
<td>-rē-mini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. -ba-nt</td>
<td>-rē-nt</td>
<td>-bā-ntur</td>
<td>-rē-ntur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

FUTURE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>INDICATIVE</th>
<th></th>
<th>INDICATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I, II</td>
<td></td>
<td>III, IV</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sing. 1. -bō</td>
<td>-a-m</td>
<td>-a-r</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. -bi-s</td>
<td>-ē-s</td>
<td>-ē-ris (-re)</td>
<td>-ē-ris (-re)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. -bi-t</td>
<td>-ē-t</td>
<td>-ē-tur</td>
<td>-ē-tur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plur. 1. -bi-mus</td>
<td>-ē-mus</td>
<td>-ē-mur</td>
<td>-ē-mur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. -bi-tis</td>
<td>-ē-tis</td>
<td>-ē-mini</td>
<td>-ē-mini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. -bu-nt</td>
<td>-ē-nt</td>
<td>-bu-ntur</td>
<td>-e-ntur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 These numerals refer to the four conjugations given later (see § 171).
### Active

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Indicative</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Perfect</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sing. 1.</td>
<td>-i</td>
<td>-eri-m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>-is-ti</td>
<td>-eri-s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>-i-t</td>
<td>-eri-t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plur. 1.</td>
<td>-i-mus</td>
<td>-eri-mus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>-is-tis</td>
<td>-eri-tis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>-ēru-nt (-ēre)</td>
<td>-eri-nt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pluperfect</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sing. 1.</td>
<td>-era-m</td>
<td>-isse-m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>-erā-s</td>
<td>-isse-s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>-era-t</td>
<td>-isse-t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plur. 1.</td>
<td>-erā-mus</td>
<td>-isse-mus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>-erā-tis</td>
<td>-isse-tis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>-era-nt</td>
<td>-isse-nt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Future</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sing. 1.</td>
<td>-erō</td>
<td>-tus (-ta, -tum)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>-eri-s</td>
<td>-erōs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>-eri-t</td>
<td>-erōt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plur. 1.</td>
<td>-eri-mus</td>
<td>-erōmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>-eri-tis</td>
<td>-erōtis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>-eri-nt</td>
<td>-erōnt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Passive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Indicative</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Perfect</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sing. 1.</td>
<td>-tus (-ta, -tum)</td>
<td>sim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>es</td>
<td>sis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>est</td>
<td>sit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plur. 1.</td>
<td>sumus</td>
<td>simus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>estis</td>
<td>sitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>sunt</td>
<td>sint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pluperfect</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sing. 1.</td>
<td>-tus (-ta, -tum)</td>
<td>eram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>erās</td>
<td>essēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>erat</td>
<td>esset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plur. 1.</td>
<td>-erāmus</td>
<td>-essēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>erātis</td>
<td>essētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>erant</td>
<td>essent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Imperative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th><strong>Sing. 2.</strong></th>
<th><strong>Plur. 2.</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>-te</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>-re</td>
<td>-rei</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plur. 2.</td>
<td>-mini</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>-te</td>
<td>-tote</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>-tō</td>
<td>-ntō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Future</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>-tor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>-ntor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For convenience a table of the Noun and Adjective forms of the verb is here added.

### Infinitive

- Pres. -re (Pres. stem)
- Perf. -isse (Perf. stem)
- Fut. -tūrus (-a, -um) esse

### Participle

- Pres. -ns, -ntis
- Fut. -tūrus, -a, -um

### Gerund

- -ndi, -ndē, -ndum, -ndō

### Supine

- -tum, -tū
167. A long vowel is shortened before the personal endings -m (-r), -t, -nt (-ntur): as, ame-t (for older amē-t), habe-t (for habē-t), mone-nt, mone-ntur.

168. The tenses of the Present System are made from the Present Stem as follows: — ¹

a. In the Present Indicative the personal endings are added directly to the present stem. Thus, — present stem arā-: arā-s, arā-mus, arā-tis.

b. In the Imperfect Indicative the suffix -bam, -bās, etc. (originally a complete verb) is added to the present stem: as, arā-bam, arā-bās, arā-bāmus.

Note.—The form bām was apparently an aorist of the Indo-European root bhu (cf. fui, futūrus, φῶ, English be, been), and meant I was. This was added to a complete word, originally a case of a verbal noun, as in I was a-seeing; hence vidē-bam. The form probably began in the Second or Third Conjugation and was extended to the others. The a was at first long, but was shortened in certain forms (§ 167).

c. In the Future Indicative of the First and Second Conjugations a similar suffix, -bō, -bis, etc., is added to the present stem: as, arā-bō, arā-bis, monē-bō.

Note.—The form bō was probably a present tense of the root bhu, with a future meaning, and was affixed to a noun-form as described in b. n.

d. In the Future Indicative of the Third and Fourth Conjugations the terminations -am, -ēs, etc. (as, teg-am, teg-ēs, audi-am, audi-ēs) are really subjunctive endings used in a future sense (see e). The vowel was originally long throughout. For shortening, see § 167.

e. In the Present Subjunctive the personal endings were added to a form of the present stem ending in ē- or ā-, which was shortened in certain forms (§ 167). Thus, ame-m, amē-s, tegā-mus, tega-nt.

Note 1.—The vowel ē (seen in the First Conjugation: as, am-ē-s) is an inherited subjunctive mood-sign. It appears to be the thematic vowel e (§ 174. 1) lengthened. The ā of the other conjugations (monē-ā-s, reg-ā-s, audi-ā-s) is of uncertain origin.

Note 2.—In a few irregular verbs a Present Subjunctive in -im, -īs, etc. occurs: as, sim, sis, simus, velim, velīs, etc. This is an old optative, i being a form of the Indo-European optative mood-sign yē- (cf. siem, siēs, siet, § 170. b. n.). The vowel has been shortened in the first and third persons singular and the third person plural.

f. In the Imperfect Subjunctive the suffix -rem, -rēs, etc. is added to the present stem: as, amā-rem, amā-rēs, monē-rem, tege-rem, audi-rem.

Note.—The stem element -rē- is of uncertain origin and is not found outside of Italic. The r is doubtless the aorist sign s (cf. es-se-m, es-sē-s) changed to r between two vowels (§ 15. 4). The ē is probably the subjunctive mood-sign (see e).

¹ The conjugation of a verb consists of separate formations from a root, gradually grouped together, systematized, and supplemented by new formations made on old lines to supply deficiencies. Some of the forms were inherited from the parent speech; others were developed in the course of the history of the Italic dialects or of the Latin language itself.
169. The tenses of the Perfect System in the active voice are made from the Perfect Stem as follows: —

a. In the Perfect Indicative the endings -i, -isti, etc. are added directly to the perfect stem: as, amāv-isti, tēx- isti.

b. In the Pluperfect Indicative the suffix -eram, -erās, etc. is added to the perfect stem: as, amāv-eram, monu-erās, tēx-erat.

Note.—This seems to represent an older †-is-ām etc. formed on the analogy of the Future Perfect in -erō (older †-is-ō: see c below) and influenced by eram (imperfect of sum) in comparison with erō (future of sum).

c. In the Future Perfect the suffix -erō, -eris, etc. is added to the perfect stem: as, amāv-erō, monu-eris, tēx-erit.

Note.—This formation was originally a subjunctive of the s-aorist, ending probably in †-is-ō. The -is- is doubtless the same as that seen in the second person singular of the perfect indicative (vid-is-ī), in the perfect infinitive (vid-is-se), and in the pluperfect subjunctive (vid-is-sem), s being the aorist sign and i probably an old stem vowel.

d. In the Perfect Subjunctive the suffix -erim, -eris, etc. is added to the perfect stem: as, amāv-erim, monu-eris, tēx-erit.

Note.—This formation was originally an optative of the s-aorist (-er- for older -is-, as in the future perfect, see c above). The i after r is the optative mood-sign ī shortened (see § 168. e. n. 2). Forms in -īs, -īt, -īmus, -ītis, are sometimes found. The shortening in -īs, -īmus, -ītis, is due to confusion with the future perfect.

e. In the Pluperfect Subjunctive the suffix -issem, -isses, etc. is added to the perfect stem: as, amāv-issem, monu-isses, tēx-isset.

Note.—Apparently this tense was formed on the analogy of the pluperfect indicative in †-is-ām (later -er-am, see b), and influenced by ēsem (earlier †essēm) in its relation to eram (earlier †ešām). 1

The Verb Sum

170. The verb sum, be, is both irregular and defective, having no gerund or supine, and no participle but the future.

Its conjugation is given at the outset, on account of its importance for the inflection of other verbs.

1 The signs of mood and tense are often said to be inserted between the root (or verb-stem) and the personal ending. No such insertion is possible in a language developed like the Latin. All true verb-forms are the result, as shown above, of composition; that is, of adding to the root or the stem either personal endings or fully developed auxiliaries (themselves containing the personal terminations), or of imitation of such processes. Thus vidēbāmus is made by adding to vidē-, originally a significant word or a form conceived as such, a full verbal form †bāmus, not by inserting -bā- between vidē- and -mus (§ 168. 8).
**Principal Parts**: Present Indicative sum, Present Infinitive esse, Perfect Indicative fui, Future Participle futurus.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present Stem es-</th>
<th>Perfect Stem fu-</th>
<th>Supine Stem fut-</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>INDICATIVE</td>
<td>INDICATIVE</td>
<td>SUBJUNCTIVE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sing. 1. sum, I am</td>
<td>Sing. 1. sum, I am</td>
<td>Sing. 1. sim¹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. és, thou art (you are)</td>
<td>2. fui, I was (have been)</td>
<td>2. fuerim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. est, he (she, it) is</td>
<td>3. fuerit, he was</td>
<td>3. fuerint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plur. 1. sumus, we are</td>
<td>Plur. 1. eramus, we were</td>
<td>Plur. 1. fuerimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. estis, you are</td>
<td>2. eratis, you were</td>
<td>2. fueritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. sunt, they are</td>
<td>3. erant, they were</td>
<td>3. fuerint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IMPERFECT</td>
<td>IMPERFECT</td>
<td>IMPERFECT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sing. 1. eram, I was</td>
<td>Sing. 1. eram, I was</td>
<td>Sing. 1. fueram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. eräs, you were</td>
<td>2. fueras, you were (you had been)</td>
<td>2. fueras</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. erat, he (she, it) was</td>
<td>3. fuerat, he had been</td>
<td>3. fuerat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plur. 1. eramus, we were</td>
<td>Plur. 1. eramus, we were</td>
<td>Plur. 1. fueramus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. erætis, you were</td>
<td>2. fueritis, you were (you had been)</td>
<td>2. fueritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. erant, they were</td>
<td>3. fuerunt, they were (they had been)</td>
<td>3. fuerunt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FUTURE</td>
<td>FUTURE</td>
<td>FUTURE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sing. 1. erö, I shall be</td>
<td>Sing. 1. erö, I shall be</td>
<td>Sing. 1. fueram, I had been</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. eris, you will be</td>
<td>2. fueras, you were (you had been)</td>
<td>2. fueras</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. erit, he will be</td>
<td>3. fuerat, he had been</td>
<td>3. fuerat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plur. 1. erimus, we shall be</td>
<td>Plur. 1. erimus, we shall be</td>
<td>Plur. 1. fuerimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. eritis, you will be</td>
<td>2. fueritis, you were (you had been)</td>
<td>2. fueritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. erunt, they will be</td>
<td>3. fuerunt, they were (they had been)</td>
<td>3. fuerunt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PERFECT</td>
<td>PERFECT</td>
<td>PERFECT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sing. 1. fui, I was</td>
<td>Sing. 1. fui, I was</td>
<td>Sing. 1. fueram, I had been</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. fuistî, you were</td>
<td>2. fueras, you were (you had been)</td>
<td>2. fueras</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. fuit, he was</td>
<td>3. fuerat, he had been</td>
<td>3. fuerat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plur. 1. fuimus, we were</td>
<td>Plur. 1. fuimus, we were</td>
<td>Plur. 1. fuerimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. fuistis, you were</td>
<td>2. fueritis, you were (you had been)</td>
<td>2. fueritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. fuërunt, fuëre, they were</td>
<td>3. fuerunt, they were (they had been)</td>
<td>3. fuerunt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLUPERFECT</td>
<td>PLUPERFECT</td>
<td>PLUPERFECT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sing. 1. fueram, I had been</td>
<td>Sing. 1. fueram, I had been</td>
<td>Sing. 1. fueram, I had been</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. fuerâs, you had been</td>
<td>2. fuerâs, you had been</td>
<td>2. fuerâs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. fuerat, he had been</td>
<td>3. fuerat, he had been</td>
<td>3. fuerat</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ All translations of the Subjunctive are misleading, and hence none is given; see § 157. b.
§170] THE VERB SUM 83

Plur. 1. fuerāmus, we had been  
2. fuerātis, you had been  
3. fuerant, they had been  

FUTURE PERFECT

Sing. 1. fuerō, I shall have been  
2. fueris, you will have been  
3. fuerit, he will have been  
Plur. 1. fuerimus, we shall have been  
2. fueritis, you will have been  
3. fuerint, they will have been

IMPERATIVE

Present Sing. 2. es, be thou  
Future 2. estō, thou shalt be  
3. estō, he shall be  
Plur. 2. este, be ye  
Future 2. estote, ye shall be  
3. suntō, they shall be

INFINITIVE

Present esse, to be  
Perfect fuisse, to have been  
Future futūrus esse or fore, to be about to be

PARTICIPLE

Future futūrus, -a, -um, about to be

a. For essem, essēs, etc., forem, forēs, foret, forent, are often used; so fore for futūrus esse.

b. The Present Participle, which would regularly be ṭsōns, appears in the adjective in-sōns, innocent, and in a modified form in ab-sēns, praesēns. The simple form ēns is sometimes found in late or philosophical Latin as a participle or abstract noun, in the forms ēns, being; entia, things which are.

Note.—Old forms are:—Indicative: Future, escit, escunt (strictly an inchoative present, see § 263. 1).

Subjunctive: Present, siem, siēs, siet, sient; fuam, fuās, fuat, fuant; Perfect, fuimus; Pluperfect, fuīsset.

The root of the verb sum is es, which in the imperfect is changed to er (see § 15. 4), and in many forms is shortened to s. Some of its modifications, as found in several languages more or less closely related to Latin, may be seen in the following table,—the Sanskrit syām corresponding to the Latin sim (siem):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SANSKRIT</th>
<th>GREEK</th>
<th>LATIN</th>
<th>LITHUANIAN</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>as-mi</td>
<td>syām (optative)</td>
<td>ἐμι ²</td>
<td>s-um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>as-i</td>
<td>syās</td>
<td>ἐσι ²</td>
<td>es</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>as-ti</td>
<td>syāt</td>
<td>ἐστι</td>
<td>es-t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s-mas</td>
<td>syāma</td>
<td>ἐσμεν</td>
<td>s-umus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s-tha</td>
<td>syāta</td>
<td>ἐστέ</td>
<td>es-tis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s-anti</td>
<td>syūs</td>
<td>ἐστίν ²</td>
<td>s-unt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Perfect and Supine stems, fu-, fut-, are kindred with the Greek ἐφυ, and with the English be.

1 Compare Sankrit sānt, Greek ἕφυ.  ² Old form.
The Four Conjugations

171. Verbs are classed in Four Regular Conjugations, distinguished by the stem-vowel which appears before -re in the Present Infinitive Active:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conjugation</th>
<th>Infinitive Ending</th>
<th>Stem</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>First</td>
<td>-are (amære)</td>
<td>a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Second</td>
<td>-ere (monære)</td>
<td>ę</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Third</td>
<td>-ere (regere)</td>
<td>ę</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fourth</td>
<td>-ire (audire)</td>
<td>i</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Principal Parts

172. The Principal Parts of a verb, showing the three stems which determine its conjugation throughout, are:

1. The Present Indicative (as, amō) showing the Present Stem.
2. The Present Infinitive (as, amā-re) showing the Perfect Stem.
3. The Perfect Indicative (as, amāv-ī) showing the Perfect Stem.
4. The neuter of the Perfect Participle (as, amāt-um), or, if that form is not in use, the Future Active Participle (amāt-ūrus) showing the Supine Stem.

173. The regular forms of the Four Conjugations are seen in the following:

First Conjugation:

Active, amō, amāre, amāvī, amātum, love.
Passive, amor, amārī, amātus.
Present Stem amā-, Perfect Stem amāv-, Supine Stem amāt-.

Second Conjugation:

Active, déleō, délere, délēvi, délētum, blot out.
Passive, déleor, délēri, délētus.
Present Stem délē-, Perfect Stem délēv-, Supine Stem délēt-.

In the Second conjugation, however, the characteristic ę rarely appears in the perfect and perfect participle. The common type is, therefore:

Active, moneō, monēre, monūi, monitum, warn.
Passive, moneor, monēri, monitus.
Present Stem monē-, Perfect Stem monu-, Supine Stem monit-.
Third Conjugation: —
Active, tegō, tegēre, tēxi, tēctum, cover.
Passive, tegor, tegī, tēctus.
Present Stem tegē-, Perfect Stem tēx-, Supine Stem tēct-.

Fourth Conjugation: —
Active, audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītum, hear.
Passive, audior, audīrī, audītus.
Present Stem audi-, Perfect Stem audīv-, Supine Stem audīt-.

a. In many verbs the principal parts take forms belonging to two or
more different conjugations (cf. § 189): —
1, 2, domō, domāre, domuī, domitum, subdue.
2, 3, maneō, manēre, mānsi, mānsum, remain.
3, 4, petō, petēre, petīvi, petītum, seek.
4, 3, vincīō, vincīre, vincīxī, vincītum, bind.

Such verbs are referred to the conjugation to which the Present stem
conforms.

Present Stem

174. The parent (Indo-European) speech from which Latin comes had two main
classes of verbs: —
1. Thematic Verbs, in which a so-called thematic vowel (/, in Latin i/u) appeared
between the root and the personal ending: as, leg-i-tis (for îleg-e-tes), leg-u-nt (for
îleg-o-nti). 1
2. Athematic Verbs, in which the personal endings were added directly to the root:
as, es-t, es-tis (root es) 2 , dā-mus (dō, root DA), fer-t (ferō, root FER).

Of the Athematic Verbs few survive in Latin, and these are counted as irregular,
except such as have been forced into one of the four "regular" conjugations. Even
the irregular verbs have admitted many forms of the thematic type.

Of the Thematic Verbs a large number remain. These may be divided into two
classes: —
1. Verbs which preserve the thematic vowel e or o (in Latin i or u) before the per-
sonal endings. — These make up the Third Conjugation. The present stem is formed
in various ways (§ 176), but always ends in a short vowel / (Latin i/u). Examples are
tegō (stem teg/o-), sternimus (stem stern/o-) for *ster-no-mos, plectunt (stem plect/o-)
for *plec-to-nti. So nōscō (stem gnōsc/o-) for gnō-sc-o. Verbs like nōscō became the
type for a large number of verbs in -scō, called inceptives (§ 263. 1).
2. Verbs which form the present stem by means of the suffix y/o-, which already
contained the thematic vowel /, — Verbs of this class in which any vowel (except u)
came in contact with the suffix y/o- suffered contraction so as to present a long
vowel ē-, ē-, i-, at the end of the stem. In this contraction the thematic / disappeared.
These became the types of the First, Second, and Fourth conjugations respectively.
In imitation of these long vowel-stems numerous verbs were formed by the Romans
themselves (after the mode of formation had been entirely forgotten) from noun- and

1 Cf. λέγ-ε-τε, λέγ-ο-μεν; Doric λέγ-ο-ντι.
2 Cf. ἐσ-τι, ἐσ-τέ (see p. 83, note).
adjective-stems. This came to be the regular way of forming new verbs, just as in English the borrowed suffix -ize can be added to nouns and adjectives to make verbs: as, macadamize, modernize.

Thematic verbs of the second class in which a consonant or u came into contact with the suffix y% suffered various phonetic changes. Such verbs fall partly into the Third Conjugation, giving rise to an irregular form of it, and partly into the Fourth, and some have forms of both. Examples are: — (côm)spicô (-spicère) for †spēkyô; veniô (venîre) for †(g)vem-yô; cupidô, cupidère, but cupidî; orîor, oritur, but orîrî. Note, however, plurô (pluere) for †plu-yô; and hence, by analogy, acûô (acuere) for †acu-yô.

In all these cases many cross- analogies and errors as well as phonetic changes have been at work to produce irregularities. Hence has arisen the traditional system which is practically represented in §§ 175, 176.

175. The Present Stem may be found by dropping -re in the Present Infinitive: —

amâ-re, stem amâ-; monê-re, stem monê-; tegê-re, stem tegê-; audî-re, stem audî-.

176. The Present Stem is formed from the Root in all regular verbs in one of the following ways: —

a. In the First, Second, and Fourth conjugations, by adding a long vowel (ä-, ê-, i-) to the root, whose vowel is sometimes changed: as, vocâ-re (voc), monê-re (men, cf. memini), sopî-re (sop).

Note. — Verb-stems of these conjugations are almost all really formed from noun-stems on the pattern of older formations (see § 174).

b. In the Third Conjugation, by adding a short vowel 1/2 to the root. In Latin this 1/2 usually appears as 1/4, but e is preserved in some forms. Thus, tegi-s (root teg), ali-tis (al), regu-nt (reg); but tegê-ris (tegê-re), alê-ris.

1. The stem-vowel 1/2 (1/4) may be preceded by n, t, or sc: as, tem-ni-tis, tem-nu-nt, tem-ne-ris (tem); plec-ti-s (plec); cré-sci-tis (cré).

2. Verbs in -iô of the Third Conjugation (as, capiô, capère) show in some forms an i before the final vowel of the stem: as, cap-i-unt (cap), fug-i-unt (fug).

c. The root may be changed —

1. By the repetition of a part of it (reduplication): as, gi-gn-e-re (gen).

2. By the insertion of a nasal (m or n): as, find-e-re (fid), tang-e-re (tag).

1 Most verbs of the First, Second, and Fourth Conjugations form the present stem by adding the suffix -y% to a noun-stem. The ä of the First Conjugation is the stem-ending of the noun (as, plantä-re, from plantâ-, stem of planta). The ê of the Second and the i of the Fourth Conjugation are due to contraction of the short vowel of the noun-stem with the ending -y%.

Thus albêre is from alb%ô, stem of albus; finirê is from fini, stem of finis. Some verbs of these classes, however, come from roots ending in a vowel.

2 This is the so-called "thematic vowel."

3 In these verbs the stem-ending added to the root is respectively -n%ô, -t%ô, sc%ô.
d. In some verbs the present stem is formed from a noun-stem in u: as, statu-e-re (stati-s), aestu-ā-re (aestu-s); cf. acuō, acuere.1

Note 1.—A few isolated forms use the simple root as a present stem: as, fer-re, fer-t; es-se; vel-le, vul-t. These are counted as irregular.

Note 2.—In some verbs the final consonant of the root is doubled before the stem-vowel: as, pell-i-tis (PEL), mitt-i-tis (MIT).

e. Some verbs have roots ending in a vowel. In these the present stem is generally identical with the root: as, da-mus (DA), filē-mus (stem filē, root form unknown).2 But others, as rui-mus (RU), are formed with an additional vowel according to the analogy of the verbs described in d.

Note.—Some verbs of this class reduplicate the root: as, si-st-e-re (STA, cf. stāre).

Perfect Stem

177. The Perfect Stem is formed as follows:—

a. The suffix v (u) is added to the verb-stem: as, vocā-v-i, audi-v-i; or to the root: as, son-u-i (sonā-re, root son), mon-u-i (monē-re, mon treated as a root).3

Note.—In a few verbs the vowel of the root is transposed and lengthened: as, strā-v-i (sternō, STAR), sprē-v-i (spernō, SPAR).

b. The suffix s is added to the root: as, carp-s-i (CARP), tēx-i (for tēg-s-i, TEG).4

Note.—The modifications of the present stem sometimes appear in the perfect: as, finx-i (FIC, present stem fingē-), sānx-i (SAC, present stem sancē-).

c. The root is reduplicated by prefixing the first consonant—generally with ē, sometimes with the root-vowel: as, ce-cid-i (cadō, CAD), to-tond-i (tondeō, TOND).

Note.—In fid-i (for fidē-ī, find-ō), scid-i (for sci-cid-ī, scindō), the reduplication has been lost, leaving merely the root.

d. The root vowel is lengthened, sometimes with vowel change: as, lēg-i (lēg-ō), ēm-i (ēm-ō), vid-i (vid-e-ō), fūg-i (fūg-i-ō), ēg-i (ēg-ō).

e. Sometimes the perfect stem has the same formation that appears in the present tense: as, vert-i (vert-ō), solv-i (solv-ō).

f. Sometimes the perfect is formed from a lost or imaginary stem: as, petī-v-i (as if from petī-ō, petī-re, PET).

---

1 These are either old formations in -yō- in which the y has disappeared after the u (as, statuō for †statu-yō) or later imitations of such forms.
2 In some of the verbs of this class the present stem was originally identical with the root; in others the ending -yō- was added, but has been absorbed by contraction.
3 The v-perfect is a form of uncertain origin peculiar to the Latin.
4 The s-perfect is in origin an aorist. Thus, dix-i (for dicēs-i) corresponds to the Greek aorist ē-dai-x-a (for ē-deikσ-a).
Supine Stem

178. The Supine Stem may be found by dropping -um from the Supine. It is formed by adding t (or, by a phonetic change, s)—

a. To the present stem: as, amā-t-um, délē-t-um, audī-t-um.

b. To the root, with or without i: as, cap-t-um (capiō, cap), moni-t-um (moneō, mon used as root), cās-um (for cad-t-um, cad), lēc-t-um (leg).

Note 1.—By phonetic change dt and tt become s (dēfēsum, versum for fā-fer-t-um, vert-t-um); bt becomes pt (scrip-t-um for scrib-t-um); gt becomes ct (rēc-t-um for reg-t-um).1

Note 2.—The modifications of the present stem sometimes appear in the supine: as, tinc-t-um (tingō, tíg), tēn-s-um for tēnd-t-um (ten-dō, ten).

Note 3.—The supine is sometimes from a lost or imaginary verb-stem: as, petī-t-um (as if from peti-t, peti-re, pet).

Note 4.—A few verbs form the supine stem in s after the analogy of verbs in d and t: as, fāl-s-um (fallo), pul-s-um (pello).

Forms of Conjugation

179. The forms of the several conjugations from which, by adding the verb-endings in § 166, all the moods and tenses can be made are as follows:—

a. The First Conjugation includes all verbs which add ā- to the root to form the present stem:2 as, amā-re; with a few whose root ends in a (fā-rī, flō, flā-re; nō, nā-re; stō, stā-re).

1. The stem-vowel ā- is lost before -ō: as, amō = fāmā-(y)ō; and in the present subjunctive it is changed to ē: as, amē-s, amē-mus.

2. The perfect stem regularly adds v, the supine stem t, to the present stem: as, amā-v-i, amā-t-um. For exceptions, see § 209. a.

b. The Second Conjugation includes all verbs which add ē- to the root to form the present stem: as, monē-re; with a few whose root ends in ē: as, fle-ō, flē-re; ne-ō, nē-re; re-or, rē-rī (cf. § 176. e).

1. In the present subjunctive ē is added to the verb-stem: as, mone-ā-s, mone-ā-mus (cf. § 168. e).

2. A few verbs form the perfect stem by adding v (u), and the supine stem by adding t, to the present stem: as, délē-v-i, délē-t-um. But most form the perfect stem by adding v (u) to the root, and the supine stem by adding t to a weaker form of the present stem, ending in ā: as, mon-u-i, moni-t-um. For lists, see § 210.

1 For these modifications of the supine stem, see § 15. 5, 6, 10.

2 The present stem is thus the verb-stem. For exceptions, see § 209. a.
c. The Third Conjugation includes all verbs (not irregular, see § 197) which add ē to the root to form the present stem: as, tegē-re, capē-re; with a few whose root ends in e: as, se-rē-re for †se-se-re (reduplicated from se, cf. sātum).

1. The stem-vowel ē is regularly lost before -ō, and becomes u1 before -nt and ĭ before the other endings of the indicative and imperative: as, teg-ō, tegi-t, tegu-nt; in the imperfect indicative it becomes ē: as, tegē-bam, tegē-bās, etc.; in the future, ē: as, tegē-s (except in the first person singular, tega-m, tega-r); in the present subjunctive, ā: as, tegā-s.

Verbs in -iō lose the ĭ before a consonant and also before ĭ, ĭ, and ē (except in the future, the participle, the gerund, and the gerundive). Thus, —capi-at, capi-unt, capi-ēbat, capi-ēs, capi-et, capi-ent; but, cap-it (not †capi-it), cap-eret.

2. All varieties of perfect and supine stems are found in this conjugation. See lists, § 211. The perfect is not formed from the present stem, but from the root.

d. The Fourth Conjugation includes all verbs which add ĭ to the root to form the present stem: as, audī-re.2 In these the perfect and supine stems regularly add v, t, to the verb-stem: as, audī-v-i, audī-t-um.3 Endings like those of the third conjugation are added in the third person plural of the present (indicative and imperative), in the imperfect and future indicative, and in the present subjunctive: as, audī-unt, audī-ēbat, audī-ētis, audī-at, the ĭ being regularly short before a vowel.

e. The Present Imperative Active (second person singular) is the same as the present stem: as, amā, monē, tegē, audī. But verbs in -iō of the third conjugation omit ĭ: as, capē (not †capie).

f. The tenses of completed action in the Active voice are all regularly formed by adding the tense-endings (given in § 166) to the perfect stem: as, amāv-ī, amāv-eram, amāv-erō, amāv-erim, amāv-issem, amāv-isse.

g. The tenses of completed action in the Passive voice are formed by adding to the perfect participle the corresponding tenses of continued action of the verb esse: as, perfect amātus sum; pluperfect amātus eram, etc.

1 The gerundive varies between -endus and -undus.
2 A few are formed from noun-stems, as finī-re (from fini-s), and a few roots perhaps end in ĭ; but these are not distinguishable in form.
3 For exceptions, see § 212. b.
Synopsis of the Verb

180. The following synopsis shows the forms of the verb arranged according to the three stems (§ 164). Amō, a regular verb of the first conjugation, is taken as a type.

**Principal Parts:** Active, amō, amāre, amāvī, amātum.
Passive, amor, amārī, amātus sum.

**PRESENT STEM amā-**
**PERFECT STEM amāv-**
**SUPINE STEM amāt-**

**ACTIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present Stem</th>
<th>Perfect Stem</th>
<th>Supine Stem</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres. amō</td>
<td>amāv-ī</td>
<td>amāt-um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperf. amā-bam</td>
<td>amāv-eram</td>
<td>amāt-um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. amā-bō</td>
<td>amāv-erō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**INDICATIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present Stem</th>
<th>Perfect Stem</th>
<th>Supine Stem</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres. amē-m</td>
<td>amāv-erim</td>
<td>amāt-urus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperf. amā-rem</td>
<td>amāv-issem</td>
<td>amāt-um esse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. amā-tō</td>
<td>amāv-isse</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SUBJUNCTIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present Stem</th>
<th>Perfect Stem</th>
<th>Supine Stem</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres. amā-re</td>
<td>amāv-isser</td>
<td>amāt-urus esse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperf. amā-vō</td>
<td>amāv-essem</td>
<td>amāt-um esse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. amā-vō</td>
<td>amāv-isser</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**IMPERATIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present Stem</th>
<th>Perfect Stem</th>
<th>Supine Stem</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres. amā-ns</td>
<td>amāv-isser</td>
<td>amāt-um esse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperf. amā-ndī</td>
<td>amāv-isser</td>
<td>amāt-um esse</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PARTICIPLE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present Stem</th>
<th>Perfect Stem</th>
<th>Supine Stem</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres. amā-tō</td>
<td>amāv-isse</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperf. amā-vō</td>
<td>amāv-isser</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. amā-tō</td>
<td>amāv-isse</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PERF.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present Stem</th>
<th>Perfect Stem</th>
<th>Supine Stem</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres. amē-m</td>
<td>amāv-erim</td>
<td>amāt-urus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperf. amē-rem</td>
<td>amāv-issem</td>
<td>amāt-um esse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. amē-tō</td>
<td>amāv-isse</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PASSIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present Stem</th>
<th>Perfect Stem</th>
<th>Supine Stem</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres. amor</td>
<td>amāv-erim</td>
<td>amāt-urus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperf. amārī</td>
<td>amāv-issem</td>
<td>amāt-um esse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. amātūrus</td>
<td>amāv-isse</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**GERUND**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present Stem</th>
<th>Perfect Stem</th>
<th>Supine Stem</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres. amā-re</td>
<td>amāv-isse</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperf. amā-vō</td>
<td>amāv-isser</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. amā-vō</td>
<td>amāv-isse</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PERF.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present Stem</th>
<th>Perfect Stem</th>
<th>Supine Stem</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres. amē-m</td>
<td>amāv-erim</td>
<td>amāt-urus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperf. amē-rem</td>
<td>amāv-issem</td>
<td>amāt-um esse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. amē-tō</td>
<td>amāv-isse</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**INFINITIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present Stem</th>
<th>Perfect Stem</th>
<th>Supine Stem</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres. amē-m</td>
<td>amāv-erim</td>
<td>amāt-urus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperf. amē-rem</td>
<td>amāv-issem</td>
<td>amāt-um esse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. amē-tō</td>
<td>amāv-isse</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PARTICIPLE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present Stem</th>
<th>Perfect Stem</th>
<th>Supine Stem</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres. amē-m</td>
<td>amāv-erim</td>
<td>amāt-urus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperf. amē-rem</td>
<td>amāv-issem</td>
<td>amāt-um esse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. amē-tō</td>
<td>amāv-isse</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Peculiarities of Conjugation

181. In tenses formed upon the Perfect Stem, v between two vowels is often lost and contraction takes place.

a. Perfects in -āvī, -ēvī, -ōvī, often contract the two vowels into ā, ē, ō, respectively: as, amāsse for amāvisse; amārim for amāverim; amāssem for amāvissem; cōnseūrat for cōnseuverat; fēlētis for fēlivistis; nōsse for nōvisse. So in perfects in -vī, where the v is a part of the present stem: as, commōrāt for commōverat.

Note.—The first person of the perfect indicative (as, amāvī) is never contracted, the third very rarely.

b. Perfects in -ivī regularly omit v, but rarely contract the vowels except before st and ss, and very rarely in the third person perfect:—

audieram for audiveram; audisse for audīvisse; audistī for audīvistī; abītī for abīvit; abīrunt for abīvērunt.

Note 1.—The forms sīris, sīrit, sīritis, sīrint, for sīveris etc. (from sīverō or sīverim), are archaic.

Note 2.—In many forms from the perfect stem is, iss, iss, are lost in like manner, when s would be repeated if they were retained: as, dixtī for dixistī (x = cs); trāxe for trāxisse; ēvāstī for ēvāsisti; vīxet for vīxisset; ērēpsēmus for ērēpsissēmus; dēcessē for dēcessisse. These forms belong to archaic and colloquial usage.

182. Four verbs, — dicō, dūcō, faciō, ferō, — with their compounds, drop the vowel-termination of the Imperative, making dic, duc, fac, fer; but compounds in -ficiō retain it, as, conficē.

Note.—The imperative forms dicē, ducē, face (never fere), occur in early Latin.

a. For the imperative of sciō, the future form scitō is always used in the singular, and scitōte usually in the plural.

183. The following ancient forms are found chiefly in poetry:

1. In the fourth conjugation, -ibam, -ibō, for -iēbam, -iam (future). These forms are regular in eō, go (§ 203).

2. In the present subjunctive, -im: as in duim, perduim, retained in religious formulas and often in comedy. This form is regular in sum and volō and their compounds (§§ 170, 199).

3. In the perfect subjunctive and future perfect indicative, -sim, -sō: as, faxim, faxō, iussō, recēpsō (= fēcerim etc.); ausim (= ausus sim).

4. In the passive infinitive, -ier: as, vocārier for vocāri; agier for aģi.

5. A form in -assō, -assere is found used as a future perfect: as, amāssis, from amō; levāssō, from levō; impetrāssere, from impetrō; iūdicāssit, from iūdicō (cf. § 263. 2. b. n.).
184. The First Conjugation includes all verbs which add ā- to the root to form the present stem, with a few whose root ends in a-. The verb amō, love, is conjugated as follows:

**Principal Parts:** Present Indicative amō, Present Infinitive amāre, Perfect Indicative amāvī, Supine amātum.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present Stem amā-</th>
<th>Perfect Stem amāv-</th>
<th>Supine Stem amāt-</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Indicative</strong></td>
<td><strong>Subjunctive</strong></td>
<td><strong>Indicative</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amō, I love, am loving, do love</td>
<td>amēm²</td>
<td>amāvam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amās, thou lovest (you love)</td>
<td>amēs</td>
<td>amāvās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amat, he (she, it) loves</td>
<td>amet</td>
<td>amāvat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāmus, we love</td>
<td>amēmus</td>
<td>amāvāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amātis, you love</td>
<td>amētis</td>
<td>amāvātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amant, they love</td>
<td>amēnt</td>
<td>amāvāt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperfect**

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amābam, I loved, was loving, did love</td>
<td>amārem</td>
<td>amābās, you loved</td>
<td>amārēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amābās, you loved</td>
<td>amārēs</td>
<td>amābat, he loved</td>
<td>amāret</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amābat, he loved</td>
<td>amāret</td>
<td>amābāmus, we loved</td>
<td>amārēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amābāmus, we loved</td>
<td>amārēmus</td>
<td>amābātis, you loved</td>
<td>amārētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amābātis, you loved</td>
<td>amārētis</td>
<td>amābant, they loved</td>
<td>amārent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amābant, they loved</td>
<td>amārent</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future**

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amābō, I shall love</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amābis, you will love</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amābit, he will love</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amābīmus, we shall love</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amābitis, you will love</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amābunt, they will love</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ The stem-vowel ā- is lost before -ō, and in the Present Subjunctive becomes ē-.
² The translation of the Subjunctive varies widely according to the construction. Hence no translation of this mood is given in the paradigms.
FIRST CONJUGATION

INDICATIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amāvī, I loved, have loved</td>
<td>amāverim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāvistī, you loved</td>
<td>amāveris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāvit, he loved</td>
<td>amāverit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāvimus, we loved</td>
<td>amāverimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāvistis, you loved</td>
<td>amāveritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāvērunť (-ēre), they loved</td>
<td>amāverint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Pluperfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amāveram, I had loved</td>
<td>amāvissem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāverās, you had loved</td>
<td>amāvissēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāverat, he had loved</td>
<td>amāvisset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāverāmus, we had loved</td>
<td>amāvissēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāverātis, you had loved</td>
<td>amāvissētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāverant, they had loved</td>
<td>amāvissent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

FUTURE PERFECT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amāverō, I shall have loved</td>
<td>amāverimus, we shall have loved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāveris, you will have loved</td>
<td>amāveritis, you will have loved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāverit, he will have loved</td>
<td>amāverint, they will have loved</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

IMPERATIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amā, love thou</td>
<td>amātō, thou shalt love</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāte, love ye</td>
<td>amātōte, ye shall love</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amantō, they shall love</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

INFINITIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amāre, to love</td>
<td>amātūrus esse, to be about to love</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāisse or amāsse, to have loved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PARTICIPLES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amāns, -antis, loving</td>
<td>amātūrus,-a,-um, about to love</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

GERUND

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Genitive</th>
<th>Accusative</th>
<th>Dative</th>
<th>Ablative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amandī, of loving</td>
<td>amandum, loving</td>
<td>amandō, for loving</td>
<td>amandō, by loving</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SUPINE

amātum, to love amātū, to love
FIRST CONJUGATION (ā-STEMS)—PASSIVE VOICE

Principal Parts: Present Indicative amor, Present Infinitive amāri, Perfect Indicative amātus sum.¹

Present stem amā-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INDICATIVE</th>
<th>SUBJUNCTIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amor², I am loved, being loved</td>
<td>amer³</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāris (-re), you are loved</td>
<td>amēris (-re)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amātur, he is loved</td>
<td>amētur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāmur, we are loved</td>
<td>amēmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāmini, you are loved</td>
<td>amēmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amantur, they are loved</td>
<td>amentur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Imperfect

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amābar, I was loved, being loved</td>
<td>amārer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amābāris (-re), you were loved</td>
<td>amārēris (-re)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amābātur, he was loved</td>
<td>amārētur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amābāmur, we were loved</td>
<td>amārēmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amābāmini, you were loved</td>
<td>amārēmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amābantur, they were loved</td>
<td>amārentur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Future

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amābor, I shall be loved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāberis (-re), you will be loved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amābitur, he will be loved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amābimur, we shall be loved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amābimini, you will be loved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amābuntur, they will be loved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ Fui, fuisti, etc., are sometimes used instead of sum, es, etc.; so also fueram instead of eram and fuerō instead of ero. Similarly in the Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive fuerim, fueris, etc. are sometimes used instead of sim, sis, etc., and fuissem instead of essem.

² The stem-vowel ā- is lost before -or, and in the Present Subjunctive becomes ē-.

³ The translation of the Subjunctive varies widely according to the construction. Hence no translation of this mood is given in the paradigms.
### INDICATIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>SUBJUNCTIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amātus sum,(^1) I was loved</td>
<td>amātus sim (^1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amātus es, you were loved</td>
<td>amātus sis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amātus est, he was loved</td>
<td>amātus sit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amātī sumus, we were loved</td>
<td>amātī simus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amātī estis, you were loved</td>
<td>amātī sitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amātī sunt, they were loved</td>
<td>amātī sint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Pluperfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Future Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Singular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amātus eram,(^1) I had been loved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amātus erās, you had been loved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amātus erat, he had been loved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amātī erāmus, we had been loved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amātī erātis, you had been loved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amātī erant, they had been loved</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Future Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>amāre, be thou loved</th>
<th>amāminī, be ye loved</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td>amātor, thou shalt be loved</td>
<td>amantor, they shall be loved</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### IMPERATIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amāre, be thou loved</td>
<td>amātus esse, to have been loved</td>
<td>amātor, thou shalt be loved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāminī, be ye loved</td>
<td>amantor, they shall be loved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### INFINITIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amārī, to be loved</td>
<td>amātus esse, to have been loved</td>
<td>amātum ērī, to be about to be loved</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### PARTICIPLES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Future (Gerundive)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amātus, -a, -um, loved (beloved, or having been loved)</td>
<td>amandus, -a, -um, to-be-loved (lovely)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^1\) See page 94, footnote 1.
SECOND CONJUGATION (ē-STEMS)

185. The Second Conjugation includes all verbs which add ē- to the root to form the present stem, with a few whose root ends in ē-.

Principal Parts: Active, moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum; Passive, moneor, monēri, monitus sum.

Present stem monē-  Perfect stem monu-  Supine stem monit-

Active Voice  Passive Voice

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicative</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
<th>Indicative</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td></td>
<td>Present</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moneō, I warn</td>
<td>moneam¹</td>
<td>moneor</td>
<td>monear¹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēs, you warn</td>
<td>moneās</td>
<td>monēris (-re)</td>
<td>moneāris (-re)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monet, he warns</td>
<td>moneat</td>
<td>monētur</td>
<td>moneātur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēmus</td>
<td>moneāmus</td>
<td>monēmur</td>
<td>moneāmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monētis</td>
<td>moneātis</td>
<td>monēmini</td>
<td>moneāmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monent</td>
<td>moneant</td>
<td>monentur</td>
<td>moneantur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Imperfect

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monebam</td>
<td>monērem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēbās</td>
<td>monērēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēbat</td>
<td>monēret</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēbāmus</td>
<td>monērēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēbātis</td>
<td>monērētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēbant</td>
<td>monērent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Future

<p>| |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monebō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēbis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēbit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēbimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēbitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēbunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ See § 179. b. 1.
### Active Voice

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INDICATIVE</th>
<th>SUBJUNCTIVE</th>
<th>INDICATIVE</th>
<th>SUBJUNCTIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Perfect</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Perfect</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monui</td>
<td>monuerim</td>
<td>monitus sum</td>
<td>monitis sim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuistī</td>
<td>monueris</td>
<td>monitus es</td>
<td>monitus sīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuit</td>
<td>monuerit</td>
<td>monitus est</td>
<td>monitus sit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuimus</td>
<td>monuerimus</td>
<td>monītī sumus</td>
<td>monītī sīmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuistis</td>
<td>monueritis</td>
<td>monītī estis</td>
<td>monītī sītis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuērunt (-re)</td>
<td>monuerint</td>
<td>monītī sunt</td>
<td>monītī sint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Pluperfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INDICATIVE</th>
<th>SUBJUNCTIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Perfect</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monueram</td>
<td>monuissem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuerās</td>
<td>monuissēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuerat</td>
<td>monuisset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuerāmus</td>
<td>monuissemus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuerātis</td>
<td>monuisētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuerant</td>
<td>monuisent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Future Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Active Voice</strong></th>
<th><strong>Passive Voice</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monuerō</td>
<td>monitus erō ¹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monueris</td>
<td>monitus eris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuerit</td>
<td>monitus erit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuerimus</td>
<td>monītī erimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monueritis</td>
<td>monītī eritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuerint</td>
<td>monītī erunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### IMPERATIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Singular</strong></th>
<th><strong>Plural</strong></th>
<th><strong>Singular</strong></th>
<th><strong>Plural</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>monē</td>
<td>monēre</td>
<td>monēmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td>monētō</td>
<td>monētō</td>
<td>monētor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>monētō</td>
<td>monētō</td>
<td>monētor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### INFINITIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Present</strong></th>
<th><strong>Perfect</strong></th>
<th><strong>Future</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monēre</td>
<td>monēri</td>
<td>monitūrus esse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuisse</td>
<td>monitus esse</td>
<td>monitum īri</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### PARTICIPLES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Present</strong></th>
<th><strong>Perfect</strong></th>
<th><strong>Future</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monēns, -entis</td>
<td>monitus, -a, -um</td>
<td>monitūrus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### GERUND

| monendī, -dō, -dum, -dō |

### SUPINE

| monitum, monītū |

¹ See footnote 1 on page 94.
### THIRD CONJUGATION (े-STEMS)

186. The Third Conjugation includes all verbs (not irregular, see § 197) which add े- to the root to form the present stem, with a few whose root ends in े.

Principal Parts: *Active*, tegो, tegेre, tēxi, tēctum; *Passive*, tegor, tegi, tēctus sum.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present stem tegे-</th>
<th>Perfect stem tēx-</th>
<th>Supine stem tēct-</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>ACTIVE VOICE</strong></td>
<td><strong>PASSIVE VOICE</strong></td>
<td><strong>ACTIVE VOICE</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>INDICATIVE</strong></td>
<td><strong>PASSIVE VOICE</strong></td>
<td><strong>SUBJUNCTIVE</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRESENT</strong></td>
<td><strong>PRESENT</strong></td>
<td><strong>SUBJUNCTIVE</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tegो, 2 <em>I cover</em></td>
<td>tegor 2</td>
<td>tegar 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tegis, <em>you cover</em></td>
<td>tegēris (-re)</td>
<td>tegāris (-re)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tegit, <em>he covers</em></td>
<td>tegitur</td>
<td>tegātur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tegimus</td>
<td>tegimur</td>
<td>tegāmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tegitis</td>
<td>tegiminī</td>
<td>tegāminī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tegunt</td>
<td>teguntur</td>
<td>tegantur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>IMPERFECT</strong></td>
<td><strong>IMPERFECT</strong></td>
<td><strong>FUTURE</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tegēbam</td>
<td>tegerem</td>
<td>tegar 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tegēbās</td>
<td>tegerēs</td>
<td>tegēris (-re)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tegēbat</td>
<td>tegeret</td>
<td>tegētur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tegēbāmus</td>
<td>tegerēmus</td>
<td>tegēbāmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tegēbātis</td>
<td>tegerētis</td>
<td>tegēbāminī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tegēbant</td>
<td>tegerent</td>
<td>tegēbantur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 The perfect stem in this conjugation is always formed from the root; tēx- is for tēg-s- (see § 15. 9).  
2 See § 179. c. 1.
### Active Voice

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicative</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Perfect</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>téxi</td>
<td>téxerim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>téxistī</td>
<td>téxeris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>téxit</td>
<td>téxerit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>téximus</td>
<td>téxerimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>téxistis</td>
<td>téxeritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>téxerunt (-re)</td>
<td>téxerint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Pluperfect</strong></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>téxeram</td>
<td>téxissem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>téxerās</td>
<td>téxisseš</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>téxerat</td>
<td>téxisset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>téxerāmus</td>
<td>téxissešmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>téxerātis</td>
<td>téxisseštis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>téxerant</td>
<td>téxisseštent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Future Perfect</strong></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>téxerō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>téxeris</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>téxerit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>téxerimus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>téxeritis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>téxerint</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Passive Voice

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicative</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Perfect</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tectus sum</td>
<td>tectus sim 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tectus es</td>
<td>tectus sis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tectus est</td>
<td>tectus sit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tectī sumus</td>
<td>tectī simus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tectī estis</td>
<td>tectī sistis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tectī sunt</td>
<td>tectī sint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Pluperfect</strong></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tectus eram 1</td>
<td>tectus essem 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tectus erās</td>
<td>tectus essēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tectus erat</td>
<td>tectus esset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tectī erāmus</td>
<td>tectī essēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tectī erātis</td>
<td>tectī essētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tectī erant</td>
<td>tectī essent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Imperative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sing.</td>
<td>Plur.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tegere</td>
<td>tegere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tegitō</td>
<td>tegitō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tegitō</td>
<td>teguntō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Infinitive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tegi</td>
<td>tectus esse</td>
<td>tectum ēri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tegere</td>
<td>texitiss</td>
<td>tecturūs esse</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Participles

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tegēns, -entis</td>
<td>tectūrus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Gerund

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>tegendī, -dō, -dum, -dō</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

### Supine

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>tegum, tectū</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1 See footnote 1 on page 94.
FOURTH CONJUGATION (ī-STEMS)

187. The Fourth Conjugation includes all verbs which add ī- to the root to form the present stem.

**Principal Parts:** *Active*, audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītum;  
*Passive*, audior, audīri, audītus sum.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present stem audi-</th>
<th>Perfect stem audīv-</th>
<th>Supine stem audit-</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>ACTIVE VOICE</strong></td>
<td><strong>PASSIVE VOICE</strong></td>
<td><strong>ACTIVE VOICE</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>INDICATIVE</strong></td>
<td><strong>SUBJUNCTIVE</strong></td>
<td><strong>INDICATIVE</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiō, <em>I hear</em></td>
<td>audiam</td>
<td>audiōr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīs, <em>you hear</em></td>
<td>audiās</td>
<td>audiāris (-re)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīt, <em>he hears</em></td>
<td>audiat</td>
<td>auditur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiōmus</td>
<td>audiāmus</td>
<td>audiōmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiōtis</td>
<td>audiātis</td>
<td>audiōminī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiōunt</td>
<td>audiānt</td>
<td>audiōuntur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>IMPERFECT</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēbam 1</td>
<td>audīrem</td>
<td>audiēbar 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēbās</td>
<td>audīrēs</td>
<td>audiēbāris (-re)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēbat</td>
<td>audīret</td>
<td>audiēbātur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēbāmus</td>
<td>audīrēmus</td>
<td>audiēbāmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēbātis</td>
<td>audīrētis</td>
<td>audiēbāmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēbant</td>
<td>audīrent</td>
<td>audiēbantur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FUTURE</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiām 1</td>
<td>audiār 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēs</td>
<td>audiēris (-re)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audit</td>
<td>audītūr</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēmus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiētis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēunt</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 See § 179. d.
### Active Voice

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INDICATIVE</th>
<th>SUBJUNCTIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Perfect</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīvī</td>
<td>audīverim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīvisti</td>
<td>audīveris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīvit</td>
<td>audīverit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīvimus</td>
<td>audīverimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīvistis</td>
<td>audīveritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīverunt (-re)</td>
<td>audīverint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Pluperfect</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audīveram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīverās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīverat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīverāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīverātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīverant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Future Perfect</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audīverō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīveris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīverit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīverimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīverit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Passive Voice

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INDICATIVE</th>
<th>SUBJUNCTIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Perfect</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audītus sum</td>
<td>audītus sim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audītus es</td>
<td>audītus sīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audītus est</td>
<td>audītus sīt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiītī sumus</td>
<td>audiītī sīmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiītī estis</td>
<td>audiītī sītis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiītī sunt</td>
<td>audiītī sint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Pluperfect</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audītus eram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audītus erās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audītus erat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiītī erāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiītī erātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiītī erant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Future Perfect</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audītus erō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audītus eris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audītus erit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiītī erimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiītī eritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiītī erunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Imperative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Singular</strong></th>
<th><strong>Plural</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present</strong></td>
<td>audi, audite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Future</strong></td>
<td>auditō, auditōte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>auditō, auditōte</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Singular</strong></th>
<th><strong>Plural</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present</strong></td>
<td>audire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Perfect</strong></td>
<td>auditor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Future</strong></td>
<td>auditor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Infinitive

| **Present** | audire |
| **Perfect** | audivisse |
| **Future**  | auditūrus esse |

### Participles

| **Present** | audiēns, -iēntis |
| **Future**  | auditūrus, -a, -um |

### Gerund

| audiendi, -dō, -dum, -dō |

### Supine

| audiēns, -iēntis |

---

1 See footnote 1, p. 94.
188. Verbs of the Third Conjugation in -iō have certain forms of the present stem like the fourth conjugation. They lose the i of the stem before a consonant and also before ī, ī, and ē (except in the future, the participle, the gerund, and the gerundive).\(^1\) Verbs of this class are conjugated as follows:—

**Principal Parts:** *Active*, capiō, capēre, cēpī, captum;  
*Passive*, capiōr, capī, captus sum.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present Stem</th>
<th>Perfect Stem</th>
<th>Supine Stem</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>capie- (cape-)</td>
<td>cēp-</td>
<td>capt-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Active Voice</strong></th>
<th><strong>Passive Voice</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Indicative</strong></td>
<td><strong>Subjunctive</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiō, <em>I take</em></td>
<td>capiam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capis, <em>you take</em></td>
<td>capiās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capit, <em>he takes</em></td>
<td>capiat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capimus</td>
<td>capiāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capitis</td>
<td>capiātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiunt</td>
<td>capiant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Imperfect</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiēbam</td>
<td>caperem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiam</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiēs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiēt, etc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Perfect</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cēpī</td>
<td>cēperim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pluperfect</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cēperam</td>
<td>cēpissem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Future Perfect</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cēperō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^1\) This is a practical working rule. The actual explanation of the forms of such verbs is not fully understood.
### Active Voice

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Singular</strong></td>
<td><strong>Plural</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cape</td>
<td>capite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capitō</td>
<td>capitōte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capitō</td>
<td>capiunto</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Passive Voice

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Singular</strong></td>
<td><strong>Plural</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capere</td>
<td>capimini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capitor</td>
<td>capiuntor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### IMPERATIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>capere</td>
<td>capitor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### INFINITIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>capi</td>
<td>captus esse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>captum ēri</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### PARTICIPLES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>capiens, -ientis</td>
<td>capturus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### GERUND

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>capiendī, -dō, -dum, -dō</td>
<td>captum, -tū</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### DEPONENT VERBS

189. Many verbs have more than one set of forms, of which only one is generally found in classic use:

- lavō, lavāre or lavēre, wash (see § 211. e).
- scateō, scatēre or scatēre, gush forth.
- lūdificō, -āre, or lūdificor, -āri, mock.
- fulgō, fulgēre, or fulgeō, fulgère, shine.

### Parallel Forms

190. Deponent Verbs have the forms of the Passive Voice, with an active or reflexive signification:

**Principal Parts**

- First conjugation: mīrō, mīrāri, mīrātus, admire.
- Second conjugation: vereor, verēri, veritus, fear.
- Third conjugation: sequor, sequī, secūtus, follow.
- Fourth conjugation: partior, partīri, partitus, share.
# CONJUGATION OF THE VERB

## INDICATIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
<th>Imperative</th>
<th>Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>miror</td>
<td>vereor</td>
<td>verer</td>
<td>mirare</td>
<td>mirandus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>mirāris (-re)</td>
<td>verēris (-re)</td>
<td>verēris</td>
<td>mirāris (-re)</td>
<td>verēris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>mirātum</td>
<td>verētum</td>
<td>sequitur</td>
<td>mirātus</td>
<td>verētum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>mirāmur</td>
<td>verēmur</td>
<td>sequimur</td>
<td>mirāmur</td>
<td>verēmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>mirāminī</td>
<td>verēminī</td>
<td>sequiminī</td>
<td>mirāminī</td>
<td>verēminī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>mirantur</td>
<td>verentur</td>
<td>sequuntur</td>
<td>mirantur</td>
<td>verentur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impf.</td>
<td>mirābar</td>
<td>verēbar</td>
<td>sequēbar</td>
<td>mirābar</td>
<td>verēbar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>mirābor</td>
<td>verēbor</td>
<td>sequar</td>
<td>mirābor</td>
<td>verēbor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>mirātus sum</td>
<td>veritus sum</td>
<td>secūtus sum</td>
<td>mirātus</td>
<td>veritus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plup.</td>
<td>mirātus eram</td>
<td>veritus eram</td>
<td>secūtus eram</td>
<td>mirātus</td>
<td>veritus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F. P.</td>
<td>mirātus erō</td>
<td>veritus erō</td>
<td>secūtus erō</td>
<td>mirātus</td>
<td>veritus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## SUBJUNCTIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>mirēr</td>
<td>verear</td>
<td>partēr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>mirēr</td>
<td>verērer</td>
<td>partērer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>mirēr</td>
<td>verēr sim</td>
<td>partēr sim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>mirēr</td>
<td>verēs sim</td>
<td>partēs sim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>mirēr</td>
<td>verēsim</td>
<td>partēsim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>mirēr</td>
<td>verēson</td>
<td>partēson</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>mirātus esse</td>
<td>veritus esse</td>
<td>secūtus esse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plup.</td>
<td>mirātus essem</td>
<td>veritus essem</td>
<td>secūtus essem</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## IMPERATIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>mirāre</td>
<td>verēre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>mirātor</td>
<td>verētor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>mirātor</td>
<td>verētor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## INFINITIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>mirāns</td>
<td>verēns</td>
<td>partēns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>mirātūrus</td>
<td>veritūrus</td>
<td>partitūrus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>mirātus</td>
<td>veritus</td>
<td>partitus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ger.</td>
<td>mirandus</td>
<td>verendus</td>
<td>partiendus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## PARTICIPLES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>mirāns</td>
<td>verēns</td>
<td>partēns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>mirātūrus</td>
<td>veritūrus</td>
<td>partitūrus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>mirātus</td>
<td>veritus</td>
<td>partitus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ger.</td>
<td>mirandus</td>
<td>verendus</td>
<td>partiendus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## GERUND

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>mirandī, -ō, etc.</td>
<td>verendī, etc.</td>
<td>partiendī, etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## SUPINE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>mirātum, -tū</td>
<td>veritum, -tū</td>
<td>partitum, -tū</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Deponents have the participles of both voices:—

sequens, following.
secutus, having followed.

The perfect participle generally has an active sense, but in verbs otherwise deponent it is often passive: as, mercatus, bought; adeptus, gained (or having gained).

The future infinitive is always in the active form: thus, sequor has secuturus (-a, -um) esse (not secutum īrī).

The gerundive, being passive in meaning, is found only in transitive verbs, or intransitive verbs used impersonally:

- hoc confitendum est, this must be acknowledged.
- moriendum est omnibus, all must die.

Most deponents are intransitive or reflexive in meaning, corresponding to what in Greek is called the Middle Voice (§ 156. a. n.).

Some deponents are occasionally used in a passive sense: as, criminor, I accuse, or I am accused.

About twenty verbs have an active meaning in both active and passive forms: as, mereō or mereor, I deserve.

More than half of all deponents are of the First Conjugation, and all of these are regular. The following deponents are irregular:

adsentior, -īrī, adsēnsus, assent.
apīscor, (-ip-), -ī, aptus (-eptus), get.
defēscor, -ī, -fessus, faint.
expurgiscor, -ī, -perfēctus, rouse.
experior, -īrī, expertus, try.
fater, -ērī, fassus, confess.
fruor, -ī, frūctus (fruitus), enjoy.
fungor, -ī, functus, fulfill.
gradior (-gredior), -ī, gressus, step.
irāscor, -ī, irātus, be angry.
lābor, -ī, lāpsus, fall.
loquor, -ī, locūtus, speak.
mētior, -īrī, mēnsus, measure.
-minisscor, -ī, -mentus, think.
morior, -i (-īrī), mortuus (moritūrus), die.
nanciscor, -ī, nactus (nāctus), find.
nāscor, -i, nātus, be born.
nītor, -ī, nīsus (nīxus), strive.
oblīviscor, -ī, obitus, forget.
opissor, -īrī, oppertus, await.
ōrdior, -īrī, ērsus, begin.
orior, -īrī, ortus (oritūrus), rise (3d conjugation in most forms).
patiscor, -ī, pactus, bargain.
pator (-petior), -ī, passus (-pessus), suffer.
-plector, -i, -plexus, clasp.
profisciōr, -i, profectus, set out.
queror, -ī, questus, complain.
reor, reōrī, ratus, think.
revertor, -ī, reversus, return.
ringer, -ī, rīctus, snarl.
sequor, -ī, secūtus, follow.
tueor, -ērī, tuitus (tūtus), defend.
ulcisciōr, -ī, ulitus, avenge.
ūtor, -ī, ĕsus, use, employ.

Note.—The deponent comperior, -īrī, compertus, is rarely found for comperīō, -ire. Revertor, until the time of Augustus, had regularly the active forms in the perfect system, reverti, reverteram, etc.
a. The following deponents have no supine stem: —

dēvertor, -tī, turn aside (to lodge).
diffiteror, -ērī, deny.
fatiscor, -ī, gape.
liquor, -ī, melt (intrans.).

medeor, -ērī, heal.
reminiscor, -ī, call to mind.
vescor, -ī, feed upon.

Note.—Deponents are really passive (or middle) verbs whose active voice has disappeared. There is hardly one that does not show signs of having been used in the active at some period of the language.

Semi-Deponents

192. A few verbs having no perfect stem are regular in the present, but appear in the tenses of completed action as deponents. These are called Semi-deponents. They are: —

audeō, audēre, ausus, dare. gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvisus, rejoice.
fidō, fidēre, fisus, trust. soleō, solēre, solitus, be wont.

a. From audeō there is an old perfect subjunctive ausim. The form sōdēs (for sī audēs), an thou wilt, is frequent in the dramatists and rare elsewhere.

b. The active forms vāpulō, vāpulāre, be flogged, and vēneō, vēnire, be sold (contracted from vēnum īre, go to sale), have a passive meaning, and are sometimes called neutral passives. To these may be added fierī, to be made (§ 204), and exsulāre, to be banished (live in exile); cf. accēdere, to be added.

Note.—The following verbs are sometimes found as semi-deponents: iūrō, iūrāre, iūrātus, swear; nūbō, nūbere, nūptā, marry; placeō, placēre, placitus, please.

THE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS

193. A Periphrastic form, as the name indicates, is a “roundabout way of speaking.” In the widest sense, all verb-phrases consisting of participles and sum are Periphrastic Forms. The Present Participle is, however, rarely so used, and the Perfect Participle with sum is included in the regular conjugation (amātus sum, eram, etc.). Hence the term Periphrastic Conjugation is usually restricted to verb-phrases consisting of the Future Active Participle or the Gerundive with sum.

Note.—The Future Passive Infinitive, as amātum īrī, formed from the infinitive passive of eō, go, used impersonally with the supine in -um, may also be classed as a periphrastic form (§ 203. a).

194. There are two Periphrastic Conjugations, known respectively as the First (or Active) and the Second (or Passive).

a. The First Periphrastic Conjugation combines the Future Active Participle with the forms of sum, and denotes a future or intended action.

b. The Second Periphrastic Conjugation combines the Gerundive with the forms of sum, and denotes obligation, necessity, or propriety.

c. The periphrastic forms are inflected regularly throughout the Indicative and Subjunctive and in the Present and Perfect Infinitive.
195. The First Periphrastic Conjugation: —

**INDICATIVE**

| Present | amātūrus sum, I am about to love |
| Imperfect | amātūrus eram, I was about to love |
| Future | amātūrus erō, I shall be about to love |
| Perfect | amātūrus fui, I have been, was, about to love |
| Pluperfect | amātūrus fueram, I had been about to love |
| Future Perfect | amātūrus fuerō, I shall have been about to love |

**SUBJUNCTIVE**

| Present | amātūrus sim |
| Imperfect | amātūrus essem |
| Perfect | amātūrus fuerim |
| Pluperfect | amātūrus fuissem |

**INFINITIVE**

| Present | amātūrus esse, to be about to love |
| Perfect | amātūrus fuisse, to have been about to love |

So in the other conjugations: —

Second: moniturus sum, I am about to advise.
Third: tectūrus sum, I am about to cover.
Fourth: auditūrus sum, I am about to hear.
Third (in -iō): captūrus sum, I am about to take.

196. The Second Periphrastic Conjugation: —

**INDICATIVE**

| Present | amandus sum, I am to be, must be, loved |
| Imperfect | amandus eram, I was to be, had to be, loved |
| Future | amandus erō, I shall have to be loved |
| Perfect | amandus fui, I was to be, had to be, loved |
| Pluperfect | amandus fueram, I had had to be loved |
| Future Perfect | amandus fuerō, I shall have had to be loved |

**SUBJUNCTIVE**

| Present | amandus sim |
| Imperfect | amandus essem |
| Perfect | amandus fuerim |
| Pluperfect | amandus fuissem |

**INFINITIVE**

| Present | amandus esse, to have to be loved |
| Perfect | amandus fuisse, to have had to be loved |
So in the other conjugations:—

Second: monendus sum, I am to be, must be, advised.
Third: tegendus sum, I am to be, must be, covered.
Fourth: audiendus sum, I am to be, must be, heard.
Third (in -īō): capiendus sum, I am to be, must be, taken.

**IRREGULAR VERBS**

197. Several verbs add some of the personal endings of the present system directly to the root,\(^1\) or combine two verbs in their inflection. These are called Irregular Verbs. They are sum, volō, ferō, edō, dō, ēō, quēō, fīō, and their compounds.

Sum has already been inflected in § 170.

198. Sum is compounded without any change of inflection with the prepositions ab, ad, dē, in, inter, ob, prae, prō (earlier form prōd), sub, super.

\(\alpha.\) In the compound prōsum (help), prō retains its original d before e:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Principal Parts: prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui, prōfutūrus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>INDICATIVE</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Singular</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pluperfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. Perf.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SUBJUNCTIVE</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Singular</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. Perf.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**IMPERATIVE**

| **Present** | prōdes, prōdeste |
| **Future**  | prōdestō, prōdestōte |

**INFINITIVE**

| **Present** | prōdesse |
| **Future**  | prōfuisse |

**PARTICIPLE**

| **Present** | prōfutūrus |
| **Future**  | prōfutūrus |

\(^1\) These are athematic verbs, see § 174. 2.
b. Sum is also compounded with the adjective potis, or pote, able, making the verb possum (be able, can). Possum is inflected as follows:—

**Principal Parts**: possum, posse, potui

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th><strong>Principal Parts</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Indicative</strong></td>
<td><strong>Subjunctive</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Singular</strong></td>
<td><strong>Plural</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>possum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>potes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>potest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperfect</td>
<td>poteram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td>poteró</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perfect</td>
<td>potuí</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pluperfect</td>
<td>potueram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. Perf.</td>
<td>potueró</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>INFINITIVE</strong></td>
<td>Pres. posse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PARTICIPLE</strong></td>
<td>Pres. potëns (adjective), powerful</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

199. volô, nólô, malô

**Principal Parts**: volô, velle, voluí, ——, be willing, will, wish

nólô, nölle, nölui, ——, be unwilling, will not

mälô, målle, måluì, ——, be more willing, prefer

**Note**.— Nölô and mälô are compounds of volô. Nölô is for ne-volô, and mälô for mä-volô from mage-volô.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th><strong>Indicative</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>volô</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>vis ³</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>vult (volt)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>volumus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>vultis (voltis)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>volunt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperfect</td>
<td>volébam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td>volam, volès, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perfect</td>
<td>voluí</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pluperfect</td>
<td>volueram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. Perf.</td>
<td>volueró</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ The forms potis sum, pote sum, etc. occur in early writers. Other early forms are potesse; possiém, -ès, -et; poterint, potisit (for possit); potestur and possitur (used with a passive infinitive, cf. § 205. a).

² Potui is from an obsolete ḫpotëre.

³ Vis is from a different root.
### Subjunctive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Pluperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>velim, -ēs, -it,</td>
<td>velīmus, -ētis, -ent</td>
<td>vellem, -ēs, -et,</td>
<td>vellemus, -ētis, -ent</td>
<td>voluerim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōlim</td>
<td>nöllem</td>
<td>nöllem</td>
<td>nöluerim</td>
<td>noluissēm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mālim</td>
<td>māllem</td>
<td>māllem</td>
<td>māluerim</td>
<td>māluissem</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Imperative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-nōli, -nōlite</td>
<td>-nōlitō, etc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Infinitive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>velle</td>
<td>nōlle</td>
<td>nōlisse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mālle</td>
<td>mālisse</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Participles

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>-entis</th>
<th>nōlēns, -entis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

### Note

The forms sis for si vis, sūtis for si vultis, and the forms nēvis (nē-vīs), nēvolt, māvolō, māvolunt, māvelim, māvellem, etc., occur in early writers.

---

### Ferō, bear, carry, endure

**Principal Parts:** ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum

**Present stem** fer-

**Perfect stem** tul-

**Supine stem** lāt-

#### Active

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Indicative</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>ferō</td>
<td>ferimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fers</td>
<td>fertis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fert</td>
<td>ferunt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperfect</td>
<td>ferēbam</td>
<td>ferēbar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td>feram</td>
<td>ferar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perfect</td>
<td>tuli</td>
<td>lātus sum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pluperfect</td>
<td>tuleram</td>
<td>lātus eram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future Perfect</td>
<td>tulerō</td>
<td>lātus erō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Vellem is for †vel-sēm, and velle for †vel-se (cf. es-se), the s being assimilated to the l preceding.

2. Ferō has two independent stems: fer- in the present system, and tul- (for tol-) in the perfect from tol, root of tollō. The perfect tētulē occurs in Plautus. In the participle the root is weakened to tl-, lātum standing for †tlātum (cf. τλητόδι).

3. Ferre, ferrem, are for †fer-se, †fer-sēm (cf. es-se, es-sem), s being assimilated to preceding r; or ferre, ferrem, may be for †ferese, †feresēm (see § 15. 4).
§ 200] IRREGULAR VERBS 111

Active  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Pluperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>feram</td>
<td>ferrem $^1$</td>
<td>tulgerim</td>
<td>tulissem</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SUBJUNCTIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Imperative</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fer</td>
<td>ferre</td>
<td>ferri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ferte</td>
<td>fertor</td>
<td>latus esse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ferto</td>
<td>ferto</td>
<td>latus esse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fertōte</td>
<td>ferto</td>
<td>latum ērī</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Passive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Imperative</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ferrar</td>
<td>ferialmi</td>
<td>latus ērī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ferrer</td>
<td>ferto</td>
<td>latus esse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>latus sim</td>
<td>ferto</td>
<td>latus esse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>latus esse</td>
<td>ferto</td>
<td>latus esse</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PARTICIPLES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Gerundive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ferēns, -entis</td>
<td>latus</td>
<td>ferendus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lātūrus</td>
<td>lātus</td>
<td>-dō, -dum, -dō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

GERUND  

ferendi, -dō, -dum, -dō  

SUPINE

lātum, lātū

**a.** The compounds of ferō, conjugated like the simple verb, are the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ad-</th>
<th>adferō</th>
<th>adferre</th>
<th>attulī</th>
<th>allātum</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>au-, ab-</td>
<td>auferō</td>
<td>auferre</td>
<td>abstulī</td>
<td>ablātum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>con-</td>
<td>cōnferō</td>
<td>cōnferre</td>
<td>contulī</td>
<td>collātum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dis-, di-</td>
<td>differō</td>
<td>differre</td>
<td>distulī</td>
<td>dilātum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ex-, ē-</td>
<td>efferō</td>
<td>efferre</td>
<td>extulī</td>
<td>ēlātum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in-</td>
<td>īferō</td>
<td>īferre</td>
<td>intulī</td>
<td>illātum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ob-</td>
<td>offerō</td>
<td>offerre</td>
<td>obtulī</td>
<td>oblātum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>re-</td>
<td>referō</td>
<td>referre</td>
<td>retulī</td>
<td>relātum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sub-</td>
<td>sufferō</td>
<td>sufferre</td>
<td>sustulī $^2$</td>
<td>sublātum $^2$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note.** — In these compounds the phonetic changes in the preposition are especially to be noted. ab- and au- are two distinct prepositions with the same meaning.

$^1$ See note 3, page 110.

$^2$ Sustulī and sublātum also supply the perfect and participle of the verb tollō.
201. *Edo*, *edere*, *edī*, *ēsum*, *eat*, is regular of the third conjugation, but has also an archaic present subjunctive and some alternative forms directly from the root *(ēd)*, without the thematic vowel. These are in full-faced type.

**ACTIVE**

**INDICATIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>edō, edis <em>(ēs)</em>, edit <em>(ēst)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>edimus, editis <em>(ēstis)</em>, edunt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperfect</td>
<td>edēbam, edēbās, etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SUBJUNCTIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>edam <em>(ēdim)</em>, edās <em>(ēdis)</em>, edat <em>(ēdit)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>edāmus <em>(ēdimus)</em>, edātis <em>(ēditis)</em>, edant <em>(ēdint)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperfect</td>
<td>ederem, ederēs <em>(ēssēs)</em>, ederet <em>(ēssēt)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ederēmus <em>(ēssēmus)</em>, ederētis <em>(ēssētis)</em>, ederent <em>(ēssēnt)</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**IMPERATIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>ede <em>(ēs)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td>editō <em>(ēstō)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>editōte <em>(ēstōte)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>eduntō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**INFINITIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>edere <em>(ēsse)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perfect</td>
<td>ēdisse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td>ēsūrus esse</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PARTICIPILES**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>edēns, -entis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td>ēsūrus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**GERUND**

edendī, -dō, -dum, -dō

**SUPINE**

ēsum, ēsū

a. In the Passive the following irregular forms occur in the third person singular: Present Indicative *ēstur*, Imperfect Subjunctive *ēsētur*.

1 In *ēs* etc. the ē is long. In the corresponding forms of *sum*, ē is short. The difference in quantity between *ēdō* and *ēs* etc. depends upon inherited vowel variation (§17. a).

2 Old forms are *ēsūrus* and supine *ēsum*. 
202. The irregular verb *dō*, *give*, is conjugated as follows:—

**Principal Parts**: dō, dare, dedi, datum

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present Stem dā-</th>
<th>Perfect Stem ded-</th>
<th>Supine Stem dat-</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>ACTIVE</strong></td>
<td><strong>INDICATIVE</strong></td>
<td><strong>PASSIVE</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present</strong></td>
<td><strong>Present</strong></td>
<td><strong>Perfect</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dō</td>
<td>damus</td>
<td>damus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dās</td>
<td>datis</td>
<td>daris (-re)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat</td>
<td>dant</td>
<td>datur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Imperfect</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dabam</td>
<td></td>
<td>dabar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Future</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dabō</td>
<td></td>
<td>dabor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Perfect</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dedi</td>
<td></td>
<td>datus sum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pluperfect</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dederam</td>
<td></td>
<td>datus eram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Future Perfect</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dederō</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SUBJUNCTIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dem, dēs, det, etc.</td>
<td>dem, dēs, det, etc.</td>
<td>dem, dēs, det, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dare</td>
<td>darer</td>
<td>darer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dederim</td>
<td>datus sim</td>
<td>datus sim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dedissem</td>
<td>datus essem</td>
<td>datus essem</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**IMPERATIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dā</td>
<td>date</td>
<td>dare</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>datō</td>
<td>datōte</td>
<td>dator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>datō</td>
<td>dantō</td>
<td>dator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>datō</td>
<td>dantō</td>
<td>dator</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**INFINITIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dare</td>
<td>darē</td>
<td>daturus esse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dedisse</td>
<td>datus esse</td>
<td>datum ēri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>datūrus esse</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PARTICIPLES**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dāns, dantis</td>
<td>datus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td>datūrus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dandus</td>
<td>Gerundive</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**GERUND**

dandi, -dō, -dum, -dō

**SUPINE**

datum, datū

For compounds of dō, see § 209. a. n.
203. **Eō, go.**

**Principal Parts:** eō, īre, ī (īvī), ītum

**INDICATIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Future</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Pluperfect</th>
<th>Future Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>eō, īs, it</td>
<td>ībam, ībās, ībat</td>
<td>ībō, ībis, ībit</td>
<td>īī (īvī)</td>
<td>ieram (īveram)</td>
<td>ierō (īverō)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SUBJUNCTIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Future</th>
<th>Fut. Perfect</th>
<th>Imperative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>eam, eās, eat</td>
<td>eāmus, eātis, eant</td>
<td>īrem, īrēs, īret</td>
<td>īerim (īverim)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>īssem (īvissem)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**IMPERATIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Future</th>
<th>Fut. Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>īte</td>
<td>ītō, ītōte</td>
<td>ītō, euntō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**INFINITIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Future</th>
<th>Gerundive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ītūrus esse</td>
<td>ītūris</td>
<td>eundum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PARTICIPLES**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Future</th>
<th>Gerund</th>
<th>Supine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>īens, gen. euntis</td>
<td>ītūris</td>
<td>ātum</td>
<td>ītū</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**GERUND** eundī, -dō, -dum, -dō **SUPINE** ītum, ītū

*a.* The compounds adeō, approach, ineō, enter, and some others, are transitive. They are inflected as follows in the passive:—

**INDICATIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres. adeor</th>
<th>IMPF. adībar</th>
<th>Pres. adear</th>
<th>IMPF. adīrer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>adīris</td>
<td>Fut. adībor</td>
<td>adītis sum</td>
<td>adītis sim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adītur</td>
<td>Perf. adītus erō</td>
<td>Plup. adītus esse</td>
<td>Plup. adītus esse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adīmur</td>
<td>F. P. adītus esse</td>
<td>adītus adeundus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adīmini</td>
<td>adītus esse</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SUBJUNCTIVE**

Thus inflected, the forms of eō are used impersonally in the third person singular of the passive: as, ītum est (§ 208. d). The infinitive īrī is used with the supine in -um to make the future infinitive passive (§ 193. n.). The verb vēneō, be sold (i.e. vēnum ēō, go to sale), has also several forms in the passive.

*b.* In the perfect system of eō the forms with v are very rare in the simple verb and unusual in the compounds.

*c.* īi before s is regularly contracted to ī: as, īsse.

1 The root of eō is ei (weak form i). This ī becomes ī except before a, o, and u, where it becomes e (cf. eō, īam, īunt). The strong form of the root, ī, is shortened before a vowel or final -t; the weak form, ī, appears in ītum and ītūrus.
§§ 203, 204] IRREGULAR VERBS

a. The compound ambiō is inflected regularly like a verb of the fourth conjugation. But it has also ambībat in the imperfect indicative.
e. Prō with ē retains its original ē: as, prōdeō, prōdis, prōdit.

204. Faciō, facere, fēci, factum, make, is regular. But it has imperative fac in the active, and, besides the regular forms, the future perfect faxō, perfect subjunctive faxim. The passive of faciō is — fīō, fīēri, factus sum, be made or become.
The present system of fīō is regular of the fourth conjugation, but the subjunctive imperfect is fierem, and the infinitive fieri.
Note. — The forms in brackets are not used in good prose.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INDICATIVE</th>
<th>SUBJUNCTIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>fieri, fīs, fīt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[fimus], [fītis], fiunt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperfect</td>
<td>fieram, fīēbās, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td>fiam, fīēs, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perfect</td>
<td>factus sum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pluperfect</td>
<td>factus eram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future Perfect</td>
<td>factus ero</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

IMPERATIVE
[fī, fite, fītō, ——]¹

INFINITIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fieri</td>
<td>factus esse</td>
<td>factum īri</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PARTICIPLES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Gerundive</th>
<th>faciendus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>factus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. Most compounds of faciō with prepositions weaken ā to ē in the present stem and to č in the supine stem, and are inflected regularly like verbs in -īō: —

conficiō, conficère, confēci, confectum, finish.

conficior, confici, confectus.

b. Other compounds retain a, and have -fīō in the passive: as, benefaciō, -facere, -fēci, -factum; passive benefiō, -fierī, -factus, benefit. These retain the accent of the simple verb: as, bene-fā'cis (§ 12. a, Exc.).
c. A few isolated forms of fīō occur in other compounds: —

confit, it happens, confiunt; confiatur, confieri, confici, confici, confictum.

dēfīt, it lacks, dēfiunt; dēfiet; dēfīet; dēfieri.

effīeri, to be effected.

infīō, begin (to speak), infit.

interfīt, let him perish; interfieri, to perish.

superfīt, it remains over; superfīti, superferi.

¹ The imperative is rarely found, and then only in early writers.
DEFECTIVE VERBS

205. Some verbs have lost the Present System, and use only tenses of the Perfect, in which they are inflected regularly. These are —

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>ὁδὶ,² I hate</th>
<th>meminῖ,³ I remember</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>INDICATIVE</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perfect</td>
<td>coepĭ</td>
<td>ὁδὶ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pluperfect</td>
<td>coeperam</td>
<td>ὁderam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future Perfect</td>
<td>coeperō</td>
<td>ὁδerō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SUBJUNCTIVE</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perfect</td>
<td>coeperim</td>
<td>ὁderim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pluperfect</td>
<td>coepissem</td>
<td>ὁdissem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>IMPERATIVE</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>INFINITIVE</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perfect</td>
<td>coepisse</td>
<td>ὁdisse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td>coeptūrus esse</td>
<td>ὀsūrus esse</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| **PARTICIPLES** |            |                     |
| Perfect        | coeptus, begun | ὀsus, hating or hated |
| Future         | coeptūrus     | ὀsūrus, likely to hate |

a. The passive of coepĭ is often used with the passive infinitive: as, coeptus sum vocāri, I began to be called, but coepĭ vocāre, I began to call. For the present system incipiō is used.

Note. — Early and rare forms are coepiō, coepiam, coeperet, coepere.

b. The Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect of ὁδὶ and meminῖ have the meanings of a Present, Imperfect, and Future respectively: —

ὁδὶ, I hate; ὁderam, I hated (was hating); ὁderō, I shall hate.

Note 1. — A present participle meminēns is early and late.
Note 2. — Nōvi and consuevi (usually referred to nōscō and consuēscō) are often used in the sense of I know (have learned) and I am accustomed (have become accustomed) as preterite verbs. Many other verbs are occasionally used in the same way (see 476. n.).

1 Root ap (as in apiscor) with co(n-).
2 Root od, as in ὀdium.
3 Root men, as in mēns.
206. Many verbs are found only in the Present System. Such are maereō, -ēre, be sorrowful (cf. maestus, sad); ferō, -īre, strike.

In many the simple verb is incomplete, but the missing parts occur in its compounds: as, vādō, vādere, in-vāsi, in-vāsum.

Some verbs occur very commonly, but only in a few forms:

a. Âiō, I say:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Indic. Pres.</td>
<td>âiō, ais,1 ait;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impf.</td>
<td>āiēbat,2 āiēbās, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subj. Pres.</td>
<td>âiās, âiat;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imper.</td>
<td>al (rare)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part.</td>
<td>âiens</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The vowels a and i are pronounced separately (a-is, a-it) except sometimes in old or colloquial Latin. Before a vowel, one i stands for two (see § 6. c): — thus âiō was pronounced âi-yō and was sometimes written aiō.

b. Inquam, I say, except in poetry, is used only in direct quotations (cf. the English quo'th).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Indic. Pres.</td>
<td>inquam, inquis, inquit; inquimus, inquitis (late), inquiunt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impf.</td>
<td>—, —, inquiēbat;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>—, inquiēs, inquiet;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>inquii, inquisti, —;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imper.</td>
<td>inque</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>inquitō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The only common forms are inquam, inquis, inquit, inquiunt, and the future inquiēs, inquiet.

c. The deponent fāri, to speak, has the following forms:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Indic. Pres.</td>
<td>—, —, fātur;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>fābor, —, fābitur;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>—, —, fātus est;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plup.</td>
<td>fātus eram, —, fātus erat;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imper. Pres.</td>
<td>fāre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infinit. Pres.</td>
<td>fāri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part. Pres.</td>
<td>fāns, fantis, etc. (in singular)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>fātus (having spoken)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ger.</td>
<td>fandus (to be spoken of)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Several forms compounded with the prepositions ex, prae, prō, inter, occur: as, prae-fātur, prae-fāmur, affāri, prō-fātus, inter-fātur, etc. The compound ĭnfāns is regularly used as a noun (child). Įnfandus, nefandus, are used as adjectives, unspeakable, abominable.

1 The second singular ais with the interrogative -ne is often written ain.
2 An old imperfect aibam, aibās, etc. (dissyllabic) is sometimes found.
d. Queō, *I can, nequeō, I cannot*, are conjugated like eō. They are rarely used except in the present. Queō is regularly accompanied by a negative. The forms given below occur, those in full-faced type in classic prose. The Imperative, Gerund, and Supine are wanting.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INDICATIVE</th>
<th>SUBJUNCTIVE</th>
<th>INDICATIVE</th>
<th>SUBJUNCTIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td></td>
<td>Present</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>queō</td>
<td>queam</td>
<td>nequeō (nōn queō)</td>
<td>nequeam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quis</td>
<td>queās</td>
<td>nequis</td>
<td>nequeās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quit</td>
<td>queat</td>
<td>nequit</td>
<td>nequeat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quīmus</td>
<td>queāmus</td>
<td>nequīmus</td>
<td>nequeāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quītis</td>
<td></td>
<td>nequitis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>queunt</td>
<td>queant</td>
<td>nequeunt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperfect</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quībam</td>
<td></td>
<td>nequīrem</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quībat</td>
<td>quiret</td>
<td>nequībat</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>quīrent</td>
<td>nequībant</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quībō</td>
<td></td>
<td>nequībit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quībunt</td>
<td></td>
<td>nequībunt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perfect</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quīvī</td>
<td></td>
<td>nequīvī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>nequīstī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quīvit</td>
<td>quīverit (-ierit)</td>
<td>nequīvit (nequīt)</td>
<td>nequīverit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quīvērunt (-ère)</td>
<td>quierint</td>
<td>nequīvērunt (-quière)</td>
<td>nequīverint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pluperfect</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>quivissent</td>
<td></td>
<td>nequīverat (-ierat)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>nequīverant (-ierant)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INFINITIVE</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quire</td>
<td>quisse</td>
<td>nequire</td>
<td>nequīvisse (-quisse)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PARTICIPLES</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quiēns</td>
<td></td>
<td>nequiēns, nequeuntēs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note. — A few passive forms are used with passive infinitives: as, quītur, queuntur, quītus sum, queātūr, queantur, nequītur, nequītum; but none of these occurs in classic prose.
e. Quaesō, I ask, beg (original form of quaeřō), has —

Note. — Other forms of quaesō are found occasionally in early Latin. For the perfect system (quaesivī, etc.), see quaeřō (§ 211. d).

f. Ovāre, to triumph, has the following: —

Note. — Other forms of ovāre are occasionally found in early Latin. For the perfect system (ovāre, etc.), see ovare (§ 211. d).

g. A few verbs are found chiefly in the Imperative: —

Pres. singular salve, plural salveτē, Fut. salveτō, hail! (from salvus, safe and sound). An infinitive salvēre and the indicative forms salveō, salveτis, salvebris, are rare.

Pres. singular avē (or havē), plural avēτe, Fut. avēτō, hail or farewell. An infinitive avēre also occurs.

Pres. singular cedo, plural cēdite (cette), give, tell.
Pres. singular apage (properly a Greek word). The passive of many intransitive verbs is used in the same way.

IMPERSOHAL VERBS

207. Many verbs, from their meaning, appear only in the third person singular, the infinitive, and the gerund. These are called Impersonal Verbs, as having no personal subject.1 The passive of many intransitive verbs is used in the same way.

1 With impersonal verbs the word it is used in English, having usually no representative in Latin, though id, hoc, illud, are often used nearly in the same way.
208. Impersonal Verbs may be classified as follows:

a. Verbs expressing the operations of nature and the time of day:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Inceptive</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Imperfective</th>
<th>Subject</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>vesperāscit</td>
<td>it grows late.</td>
<td>ningit</td>
<td>it snows.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>luciscit hoc</td>
<td>it is getting</td>
<td>fulgurat</td>
<td>it lightens.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grandinat</td>
<td>it hails.</td>
<td>tonat</td>
<td>it thunders.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pluit</td>
<td>it rains.</td>
<td>rōrat</td>
<td>the dew falls.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note.—In these no subject is distinctly thought of. Sometimes, however, the verb is used personally with the name of a divinity as the subject: as, Iuppiter tonat, Jupiter thunders. In poetry other subjects are occasionally used: as, fundae saxa pluunt, the slings rain stones.

b. Verbs of feeling, where the person who is the proper subject becomes the object, as being himself affected by the feeling expressed in the verb (§ 354. b):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Imperfective</th>
<th>Subject</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>miseret</td>
<td>it grieves.</td>
<td>paenitet (poenitet), it repents.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>piget</td>
<td>it disgusts.</td>
<td>pudet, it shames.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>taedet</td>
<td>it wearyes.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miseret mē, I pity</td>
<td>it distresses me;</td>
<td>pudet mē, I am ashamed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note.—Such verbs often have also a passive form: as, misereor, I pity (am moved to pity); and occasionally other parts: as, paenitūrus (as from paeniō), paenitendus, pudendus, pertaesium est, pigitum est.

c. Verbs which have a phrase or clause as their subject (cf. §§ 454, 569. 2):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Imperfective</th>
<th>Subject</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>accidit</td>
<td>it happens.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>libet</td>
<td>it pleases.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>licet</td>
<td>it is permitted.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>certum est</td>
<td>it is resolved.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnstat</td>
<td>it is clear.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>placet</td>
<td>it seems good.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vidētur</td>
<td>it seems, seems good.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>decet</td>
<td>it is becoming.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note.—Many of these verbs may be used personally; as, vacō, I have leisure. Libet and licet have also the passive forms libitum (licitum) est etc. The participles libēns and licēns are used as adjectives.

da. The passive of intransitive verbs is very often used impersonally (see synopsis in § 207):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Imperfective</th>
<th>Subject</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ventum est</td>
<td>they came (there was coming).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pugnātur</td>
<td>there is fighting (it is fought).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>itur</td>
<td>some one goes (it is gone).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parcitur mihi</td>
<td>I am spared (it is spared to me, see § 372).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note.—The impersonal use of the passive proceeds from its original reflexive (or middle) meaning, the action being regarded as accomplishing itself (compare the French cela se fait).
First Conjugation

209. There are about 360 simple verbs of the First Conjugation, most of them formed directly on a noun- or adjective-stem:

armō, arm (arma, armis); caecō, to blind (caecus, blind); exsulō, be an exile (exsul, an exile) (§ 250).

Their conjugation is usually regular, like amō; though of many only a few forms are found in use.

a. The following verbs form their Perfect and Supine stems irregularly. Those marked * have also regular forms.

crepō, crepui (-crepāvi), -crepit-, resound.

cubō, *cubui, -cubit-, lie down.

dō, dāre, dēdi, dāt-, give (va).

domō, domui, domit-, subdue.

fricō, fricui, *frict-, rub.

iuvo (ad-iuvō), iūvi, iūt-, 1 help.

micō, micui, —, glitter.

necō, *necui, necāt- (-nect-), kill.2

Note.—Compounds of these verbs have the following forms:—

crepō: con-crepui, dis-crepui or -crepāvi; in-crepui or -crepāvi.

dō: circum-, inter-, pessum-, satis-, super-, vēnum-dō, -dedi, -dat-, of the first conjugation. Other compounds belong to the root dha, put, and are of the third conjugation: as, condō, condere, condiō, conditum.

micō: di-micāvi, -micāt-; e-micui, -micāt-.

plīcō: re-, sub- (sup.), multi-plīcō, -plīcāvi, -plīcāt-; ex-plīcō (unfold), -ui, -it-; (explain), āvi, āt-, im-plīcō, āvi (-ui), ātum (-itum).

stō: cōn-stō, -stiī, (stātūrus); ad-, re-stō, -stī, —; ante- (anti-), inter-, super-stō, -stī, —; circum-stō, -stīi (-stītī), —; praē-stō, -stiī, -stīt- (-stāt-); di-stō, ex-stō, no perfect or supine (future participle ex-stātūrus).

Second Conjugation

210. There are nearly 120 simple verbs of the Second Conjugation, most of them denominative verbs of condition, having a corresponding noun and adjective from the same root, and an inceptive in -scō (§ 263. 1):—

caleō, be warm; calor, warmth; calidus, warm; calēscō, grow warm.

tīmeō, fear; timor, fear; timidus, timid; per-timēscō, to take fright.

1 Future Participle also in -ātūrus (either in the simple verb or in composition).

2 Necō has regularly necāvi, necātum, except in composition.
a. Most verbs of the second conjugation are inflected like moneō, but many lack the supine (as, arceō, ward off; careō, lack; egeō, need; timeō, fear), and a number have neither perfect nor supine (as, maereō, be sad).

b. The following keep ē in all the systems:

\[
\begin{array}{llll}
\text{dēleō, destroy} & \text{dēlēre} & \text{dēlēvī} & \text{dēlētum} \\
\text{fleō, sleep} & \text{flēre} & \text{flēvī} & \text{flētum} \\
\text{neō, sew} & \text{nēre} & \text{nēvī} & [nētum] \\
\text{vieō, plait} & \text{viēre} & \text{[viēvī]} & \text{viētum} \\
\text{com-pleō, fill up}^1 & \text{-plēre} & \text{-plēvī} & \text{-plētum} \\
\end{array}
\]

c. The following show special irregularities:

\[
\begin{array}{llll}
\text{algeō, alsī, be cold.} & \text{mulceō, mulsī, muls-, soothe.} \\
\text{árdeō, ārsī, ārsūrus, burn.} & \text{mulgeō, mulsī, muls-, milk.} \\
\text{audeō, ausus sum, dare.} & \text{(cō)niveō, -nīvī (-nīxī), —, wink.} \\
\text{augeō, auxi, auct-, increase.} & \text{(ab)oleō, -ōlēvī, -ōlit-, destroy.} \\
\text{caveō, cāvī, caut-, care.} & \text{pendeō, pependi, -pēns-, hang.} \\
\text{cēsēō, cēsūi, cēns-, value.} & \text{prandeō, prandi, prāns-, dine.} \\
\text{cieō, civī, cit-, excite.} & \text{rideō, rīsi, -ris-, laugh.} \\
\text{doceō, docui, docēt-, teach.} & \text{sedēo, sēdī, sess-, sit.} \\
\text{faveō, fāvī, faut-, favor.} & \text{soleō, solitus sum, be wont.} \\
\text{ferveō, fervī (ferbūi), —, glow.} & \text{sorbeō, sorbūi (sorpsi), —, suck.} \\
\text{foveō, fōvī, fōt-, cherish.} & \text{spondeō, spongondi, spōns-, pledge.} \\
\text{fulgeo, fulsī, —, shine.} & \text{strīdeo, strīdiū, —, whiz.} \\
\text{gaudeō, gāvisus sum, rejoice.} & \text{suādeo, suāsī, suās-, urge.} \\
\text{haeareō, hasī, haēs-, cling.} & \text{teneō (-tineō), tenuī, -tent-, hold.} \\
\text{indulgeō, indulgī, induct-, indulge.} & \text{tergeō, tersī, ters-, wipe.} \\
\text{iubeō, iussī, iuss-, order.} & \text{tondereō, -tondī (-tondī), tōns-, shear.} \\
\text{liqueō, licui (liquī), —, melt.} & \text{torqueō, torsi, tort-, twist.} \\
\text{lūceō, lūxī, —, shine.} & \text{torreō, torrūi, tost-, roast.} \\
\text{lūgeō, lūxiū, —, mourn.} & \text{turgeō, cursī, —, swell.} \\
\text{maneō, mānsī, māns-, wait.} & \text{urgeō, ursī, —, urge.} \\
\text{miscēō, -cūi, mixt- (mist-), mix.} & \text{videō, vīdī, vis-, see.} \\
\text{mordeō, momordī, mor-, bite.} & \text{voveō, vōvī, vōt-, vow.} \\
\text{moveō, mōvī, mōt-, move.} & \text{1 And other compounds of -pleō.}
\end{array}
\]

Third Conjugation

211. The following lists include most simple verbs of the Third Conjugation, classed according to the formation of the Perfect Stem:

a. Forming the perfect stem in s (x) (§ 177. b and note):

\[
\begin{array}{llll}
\text{angō, ānxī, —, choke.} & \text{candō, clausī, claus-, shut.} \\
\text{carpō, carpā, carp-, pluck.} & \text{cōmō, cōmpī, cōmp-, comb, deck.} \\
\text{cessō, cessī, cess-, yield.} & \text{coquō, coxi, coct-, cook.} \\
\text{cingō, cinxī, cinct-, bind.} & \text{-cutiō, -cussī, -cuss-, shake.}
\end{array}
\]
Third Conjugation

dēmō, dēmpsi, dēmpt-, take away.
dicō, dixī, dict-, say.
dīvidō, dīvisī, dīvis-, divide.
dūcō, dūxi, duct-, guide.
ēmungō, -münkxi, -münkct-, clean out.
figō, fixī, fix-, fixx.
finnō [fīg], finnxi, fict-, fashion.
flectō, flexī, flex-, bend.
-fīgō, -fixī, -flīct-, ----, smile.
flūō, flūxi, flux-, flow.
frendō, ----, frēs- (fress-), gnash.
frīgō, frīxi, frict-, fry.
gerō, gessi, gest-, carry.
iungō, iūnxi, iünkct-, join.
laedō, laesī, laes-, hurt.
-līciō, -lexi-, -lect-, entice (ēlicui, -līcīt-).
lūdō, lūsī, lūys-, play.
mergō, mersī, mers-, plunge.
mittō, missi, miss-, send.
nectō [NEC], nexī (nexui), nex-, weave.
nūbō, nūpsi, nūpt-, marry.
pectō, pexī, pex-, comb.
pergō, perrēxi, perrēct-, go on.
pingō [PIG], pinxi, pict-, paint.
plangō [PLAG], plānxi, plāntct-, beat.
plauđō, plausī, plaus-, applaud.
plectō, plexī, plex-, braid.
premō, pressī, press-, press.
prōmō, -mpsī, -mptr-, bring out.

b. Reduplicated in the perfect (§ 177. c):—
cadō, cecidī, cās-, fall.
caedō, cecidī, caes-, cut.
canō, cecinī, can-, sing.
currō, cucurri, curs-, run.
discō [DIC], didici, ----, learn.
-dō [DHA], -dīdi, -dīt- (as in ab-dō, etc.,
with crōdō, vēndō), put.
fallo, fefelli, fals-, deceive.
pangō [PAG], pepigi (-pēgi), pāct-, fasten,
fix, bargain.
parcō, pepercī (parsi), (parsūrus), spare.

patriō, peperi, part- (paritūrus), bring forth.
pellō, pepulī, puls-, drive.
pendō, pependī, pēns-, weigh.
poscō, possci, ----, demand.
pungō [PUG], pupugi (-pūnxi), pūnct-
prick.
sistō [STA], stīti, stat-, stop.
tangō [TAG], tetigi, tāct-, touch.
tendō[TEM], tetendi (-tendi), tent-, stretch.
tundō [TUD], tutudi, tūns- (-tūs-), beat.

Adding u (v) to the verb-root (§ 177. a):—
alō, alui, alt- (alit-), nourish.
cernō, crēvī, -crēt-, decree.
colō, colui, cult-, dwell, till.

compēscō, compēscūi, ----, restrain.
cōnsulō, -lui, cōnsulti-, consult.
crēscō, crēvī, crēt-, increase.
CONJUGATION OF THE VERB

§ 211

d. Adding iv to the verb-root (§ 177. f):

arcessō,1 -ivi, arcessit-, summon.
capessō, capessivi, —, undertake.
cupīō, cupīvī, cupit-, desire.
incessō, incessīvī, —, attack.
lacessō, lacessīvī, lacessit-, provoke.

e. Lengthening the vowel of the root (cf. § 177. d):

agō, ēgī, āct-, drive.
capiō, cēpī, capt-, take.
edō, ōdī, ōsum, eat (see § 201).
emō, ēmī, ēmpīt-, buy.
faciō, fēcī, fact-, make (see § 204).
fodiō, fōdī, foss-, dig.
frangō [frag], frēgī, frāct-, break.
fugīō, fūgī, (fugītūrus), flee.
fundō [fund], fūdī, fūs-, pour.
iacīō, iēcī, iact-, throw (-iō, -ict-).
lavō, lāvī, lōt-, (laut-), wash (also regular of first conjugation).
legō,2 lāgī, lēct-, gather.
līnō [li], lēvi (livī), līt-, smear.
linquō [lic], -līquī, -līct-, leave.
nōscō [gno], nōvī, nōt-(cōgnit-, āgnit-, adgnit-), know.
rumpō [rup], rūpī, rupt-, burst.
scabō, scābī, —, scratch.
vincō [vic], vicī, vict-, conquer.

f. Retaining the present stem or verb-root (cf. § 177. e):

acuō, -uī, -ūt-, sharpen.
arguō, -uī, -ūt-, accuse.
bibō, bibī, (pōtus), drink.
-cendō, -cendi, -cēns-, kindle.
(con)gruō, -uī, —, agree.
cūdō, -cūdī, -cūs-, forge.
faccessō, -i (facci), faceessit-, execute.
-fendō, -fendi, -fēns-, ward off.
findō [fid], fīdī,3 fīss-, split.
icō, iici, iict-, hit.
rapiō, rapui, rapt-, seize.
sciscō, scivi, scīt-, decree.
serō, sēvī, sat-, sow.
serō, serui, sert-, entwine.
sinō, sīvī, sit-, permit.
spernō, sprēvī, sprēt-, scorn.
sternō, strāvī, strāt-, strew.
stertō, -stertui, —, snore.
strepō, strepui, —, sound.
suēscō, suēvī, suēt-, be wont.
texō, texui, text-, weave.
tremō, tremui, —, tremble.
vomō, vomui, —, vomit.

1 Sometimes accersō, etc.
2 The following compounds of legō have -lēxi: dīligō, intellegō, neglegō.
3 In this the perfect stem is the same as the verb-root, having lost the reduplication (§ 177. c. n.).
scandō, -scendi, -scensus, climb.
scindo, -scid, -scidi, -sciss-, tear.
sido, -sidi, -sess-, settle.
solvō, solvi, solūt-, loose, pay.
spuō, -uī, —, spit.
statuō, -uī, -ūt-, establish.
sternuo, -uī, —, sneeze.
strīdō, strīdi, —, whiz.

Note.—Several have no perfect or supine: as, claudō, limp; fatiscō, gape; hiscō, yawn; tollō (sustulī, sublatum, supplied from sufferō), raise; vergō, incline.

Fourth Conjugation

212. There are — besides a few deponents and some regular derivatives in -ūriō, as, ēsuriō, be hungry (cf. § 263. 4) — about 60 verbs of this conjugation, a large proportion of them being descriptive verbs: like —

crōciō, croak; mūgiō, bellow; tinniō, tinkle.

a. Most verbs of the Fourth Conjugation are conjugated regularly, like audiō, though a number lack the supine.

b. The following verbs show special peculiarities: —

amiciō, amixi (-cui), amict-, clothe.
aperīō, aperiū, apert-, open.
comperīō, -peri, compert-, find.
farcīō, farṣi, fartum, stuff.
ferīō, —, —, strike.
fulcīō, fulsi, fult-, prop.
hauriō, hauṣi, haust- (hausūrus), drain.
opernīō, operūi, operpt-, cover.
reperīō, repperī, repert-, find.

For Index of Verbs, see pp. 436 ff.

1 See footnote 3, page 124.
213. Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, and Interjections are called Particles.

In their origin Adverbs, Prepositions, and Conjunctions are either (1) case-forms, actual or extinct, or (2) compounds and phrases.

Particles cannot always be distinctly classified, for many adverbs are used also as prepositions and many as conjunctions (§§ 219 and 222).

ADVERBS

DERIVATION OF ADVERBS

214. Adverbs are regularly formed from Adjectives as follows:

a. From adjectives of the first and second declensions by changing the characteristic vowel of the stem to -ē: as, carē, dearly, from cārus, dear (stem cāro-); amicē, like a friend, from amicus, friendly (stem amīco-).

Note.—The ending -ē is a relic of an old ablative in -ēd (cf. § 43. n. 1).

b. From adjectives of the third declension by adding -ter to the stem. Stems in nt- (nom. -ns) lose the t. All others are treated as i-stems:—

fortiter, bravely, from fortis (stem forti-), brave.
ācriter, eagerly, from ācer (stem ācri-), eager.
vigilanter, watchfully, from vigilāns (stem vigilant-).
prūdenter, prudently, from prūdēns (stem prūdent-).
aliter, otherwise, from alius (old stem ali-).

Note.—This suffix is perhaps the same as -ter in the Greek -repos and in uter, alter. If so, these adverbs are in origin either neuter accusatives (cf. d) or masculine nominatives.

c. Some adjectives of the first and second declensions have adverbs of both forms (-ē and -ter). Thus dūrus, hard, has both dūrē and dūrīter; miser, wretched, has both miserē and miserīter.

d. The neuter accusative of adjectives and pronouns is often used as an adverb: as, multum, much; facīlē, easily; quid, why.

This is the origin of the ending -ius in the comparative degree of adverbs (§ 218): as, ācrius, more keenly (positive ācriter); facilius, more easily (positive faciliē).

Note.—These adverbs are strictly cognate accusatives (§ 390).

e. The ablative singular neuter or (less commonly) feminine of adjectives, pronouns, and nouns may be used adverbially: as, falsō, falsely; citō,
quickly (with shortened o); recta (via), straight (straightway); crebro, frequently; volgo, commonly; forte, by chance; sponte, of one's own accord.

Note.—Some adverbs are derived from adjectives not in use: as, abunde, plentifully (as if from tabundus; cf. abundo, abound); saepè, often (as if from saepis, dense, close-packed; cf. saepès, hedge, and saepiò, hedge in).

215. Further examples of Adverbs and other Particles which are in origin case-forms of nouns or pronouns are given below. In some the case is not obvious, and in some it is doubtful.

1. Neuter Accusative forms: nôn (for nê-oinom, later ûnum), not; iterum (comparative of i-, stem of is), a second time; dênum (superlative of dê, down), at last.

2. Feminine Accusatives: partim, partly. So statim, on the spot; saltim, at least (generally saltem), from lost nouns in -tis (genitive -tis). Thus -tis became a regular adverbial termination; and by means of it adverbs were made from many noun- and verb-stems immediately, without the intervention of any form which could have an accusative in -tis: as, sèpàtìm, separately, from sèpàratus, separate. Some adverbs that appear to be feminine accusative are possibly instrumental: as, palam, openly; perperam, wrongly; tam, so; quam, as.

3. Plural Accusatives: as, aliás, elsewhere; forás, out of doors (as end of motion). So perhaps quia, because.

4. Ablative or Instrumental forms: quâ, where; intrá, within; extrá, outside; qui, how; aliqui, somehow; foris, out of doors; quò, whither; adeò, to that degree; ultró, beyond; citró, this side (as end of motion); retró, back; illîc (for ìllî-ce), weakened to illîc, thither. Those in -tró are from comparative stems (cf. ëls, cis, re-).

5. Locative forms: ibi, there; ubi, where; îlli, illî-c, there; peregrî (peregrû), abroad; hic (for ìhî-ce), here. Also the compounds hodiê (probably for ìhodîê), to-day; perendiê, day after to-morrow.

6. Of uncertain formation: (1) those in -tus (usually preceded by i), with an ablative meaning: as, funditus, from the bottom, utterly; divinitus, from above, providentially; intus, within; penitus, within; (2) those in -dem, -dam, -dô: as, quidem, indeed; quondam, once; quandô (cf. dôneïc), when; (3) dum (probably accusative of time), while; iam, now.

216. A phrase or short sentence has sometimes grown together into an adverb (cf. notwithstanding, nevertheless, besides):

postmodo, presently (a short time after).

denuò (for dê novô), anew.

videlicet (for vidê licet), to wit (see, you may).

nihilominus, nevertheless (by nothing the less).

Note.—Other examples are:—antea, old antideâ, before (ante eâ, probably ablative or instrumental); ściū (in loco), on the spot, immediately; prorsus, absolutely (prò versus, straight ahead); rursus (re-versus), again; quotannis, yearly (quot annis, as many years as there are); quam-ob-rem, wherefore; cóminus, hand to hand (con manus); ëminus, at long range (ex manus); nimirum, without doubt (ni mîrum); ob-viam (as in ire obviam, to go to meet); pridem (cf. prae and -dem in i-dem), for some time; forsân (fors an), perhaps (it's a chance whether); forstian (fors sit an), perhaps (it would be a chance whether); sollicit (醺eï, licet), that is to say (know, you may; cf. î-licet, you may go); ëctátum (ëctû, on the act, and tum, then).
Classification of Adverbs

217. The classes of Adverbs, with examples, are as follows:

a. Adverbs of Place

hic, here.  hūc, hither.  hinc, hence.  häc, by this way.
ibi, there.  eō, thither.  inde, thence.  eā, by that way.
istic, there.  istic, thither.  istinc, thence.  istā, by that way.
illic, there.  illuc, thither.  illinc, thence.  illā (illāc), " "
ubi, where.  quō, whither.  unde, whence.  qua, by what way.
alicubi, somewhere.  aliquō, somewhither, (to) somewhere.
alicunde, from somewhere.  alicuā, by some way.
ibidem, in the same place.  eōdem, to the same place.
indidem, from the same place.  eādem, by the same way.
aliibi, elsewhere, in another place.  aliunde, from another place.
alibi, in another place.  aliā, in another way.
ubiubi, wherever.  quōquō, whithersoever.  quāquā, in whatever way.
ubivis, anywhere, quōvis, anywhere, where you will.
undique, from every quarter.  quāvis, by whatever way.
sicubi, if anywhere.  siquō, if anywhere (anywhither).
sicunde, if from anywhere.  siquā, if anywhere.
nēcubi, lest anywhere.  nēquō, lest anywhere.
nēcunde, lest from anywhere.  nēquā, lest anywhere.
whither.  nēquā, lest anywhere.  nēquā, lest anywhere.

Note. — The demonstrative adverbs hic, ibi, istic, illi, illic, and their correlatives, correspond in signification with the pronouns hic, is, iste, ille (see § 146), and are often equivalent to these pronouns with a preposition: as, inde = ab eō, etc. So the relative or interrogative ubi corresponds with qui (quis), ali-cubi with aliquis, ububi with quisquis, si-cubi with sīquis (see §§ 147-151, with the table of correlatives in § 152).

ūsque, all the way to; usquam, anywhere; nusquam, nowhere; citrō, to this side; intrō, inwardly; ultrō, beyond (or freely, i.e. beyond what is required); porrō, farther on.
quórsum (for quō vorsum, whither turned?), to what end? hōrsum, this way; prōrsum, forward (prōrsus, utterly); intrōrsum, inwardly; retrōrsum, backward; sūrsum, upward; deorsum, downward; seorsum, apart; aliōrsum, another way.

b. Adverbs of Time

quandō, when? (interrogative); cum (quom), when (relative); ut, when, as; nunc, now; tunc (tum), then; mox, presently; iam, already; dum, while; iam diū, iam dúdum, iam pridem, long ago, long since.

1 All these adverbs were originally case-forms of pronouns. The forms in -bi and -ic are locative, those in -ō and -ūc, -ā and -āc, ablative (see § 215); those in -inc are from -im (of uncertain origin) with the particle -ce added (thus illim, illin-ō).
primum (primō), first; deinde (postea), next after; postrēmum (postrēmō), finally; posteāquam, postquam, when (after that, as soon as).

umquam (unquam), ever; numquam (nunquam), never; semper, always.

aliquando, at some time, at length; quandōque (quandōcumque), whenever; dēnique, at last.

quotiens (quotēis), how often; totiēs, so often; aliquotēis, a number of times.

cotidiē, every day; hodīē, to-day; herī, yesterday; crās, to-morrow; pridiē, the day before; postridiē, the day after; in diēs, from day to day.

nōndum, not yet; necdum, nor yet; vixdum, scarce yet; quam primum, as soon as possible; saepe, often; crebro, frequently; iam non, no longer.

c. Adverbs of Manner, Degree, or Cause

quam, how, as; tam, so; quamvis, however much, although; paene, almost; magis, more; valdē, greatly; vix, hardly.

cūr, quārē, why; ideō, idcirco, propterē, on this account, because; eō, therefore; ergō, itaque, igitur, therefore.

ita, sīc, so; ut (uti), as, how; utut, utcumque, however.

d. Interrogative Particles

an, -ne, anne, utrum, utrumne, num, whether.
nōnne, annōn, whether not; numquid, ecquid, whether at all.

On the use of the Interrogative Particles, see §§ 332, 335.

e. Negative Particles

nōn, not (in simple denial); haud, minimē, not (in contradiction); nē, not (in prohibition); nēve, neu, nor; nēdum, much less.

nē, lest; neque, nec, nor; nē . . . quidem, not even.
nōn modo . . . vērum (sed) etiam, not only . . . but also.
nōn modo . . . sed nē . . . quidem, not only nor . . . but not even.

si minus, if not; quō minus (quōminus), so as not.

quin (relative), but that; (interrogative), why not?

nē, nec (in composition), not; so in nesciō, I know not; negō, I say no (āiō, I say yes); negōtium, business (tneōtium); nēmō (nē- and hemō, old form of homō), no one; nē quis, lest any one; neque enim, for . . . not.

For the use of Negative Particles, see § 325 ff.
For the Syntax and Peculiar uses of Adverbs, see § 320 ff.

Comparison of Adverbs

218. The Comparative of Adverbs is the neuter accusative of the comparative of the corresponding adjective; the Superlative is the Adverb in -ē formed regularly from the superlative of the Adjective: —
cārē, dearly (from cārūs, dear); cārius, cāriissimē.

miserē (miseriter), wretchedly (from miser, wretched); miserius, miserrimē.

levīter (from levis, light); levīus, levissimē.

audāctēr (audāciter) (from audāx, bold); audācius, audācissimē.

benē, well (from bonus, good); melius, optimē.

malē, ill (from malus, bad); peius, pessimē.

a. The following are irregular or defective:

- diū, long (in time); diūtius, diūtissimē.
- potius, rather; potissimum, first of all, in preference to all.
- saepe, often; saepius, oftener, again; saepissimē.
- satis, enough; satius, preferable.
- multum (mūtō, magis, māximē, much, more, most.
- parum, not enough; minus, less; minimē, least.
- nūper, newly; nūperrimē.
- temperē, seasonably; temperius.

Note.—In poetry the comparative magē is sometimes used instead of magis.

PREPOSITIONS

219. Prepositions were not originally distinguished from Adverbs in form or meaning, but have become specialized in use. They developed comparatively late in the history of language. In the early stages of language development the cases alone were sufficient to indicate the sense, but, as the force of the case-endings weakened, adverbs were used for greater precision (cf. § 338). These adverbs, from their habitual association with particular cases, became Prepositions; but many retained also their independent function as adverbs.

Most prepositions are true case-forms: as, the comparative ablatives extrā, infrā, suprā (for †exterā, †inferā, †superā), and the accusatives circum, cōram, cum (cf. § 215). Circiter is an adverbial formation from circum (cf. § 214 b. n.) ; praeter is the comparative of prae, propter of prope.1 Of the remainder, versus is a petrified nominative (participle of vertē); adversus is a compound of versus; trāns is probably an old present participle (cf. in-trā-re); while the origin of the brief forms ab, ad, de, ex, ob, is obscure and doubtful.

220. Prepositions are regularly used either with the Accusative or with the Ablative.

a. The following prepositions are used with the Accusative:

- ad, to.
- adversus, against.
- adversum, towards.
- ante, before.
- apud, at, near.
- circā, around.
- circum, around.

- circiter, about.
- cis, citrā, this side.
- contrā, against.
- ergā, towards.
- extrā, outside.
- infrā, below.
- inter, among.

- intrā, inside.
- iūxtā, near.
- ob, on account of.
- penes, in the power of.
- per, through.
- pōne, behind.
- post, after.

1 The case-form of these prepositions in -ter is doubtful.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Preposition</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>praeter, beyond.</td>
<td>secundum, next to.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prope, near.</td>
<td>suprà, above.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>propter, on account of.</td>
<td>trāns, across.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sub,</td>
<td>versus, towards.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prae,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>as,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tenus,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>supra,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sine,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>partem,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to, till</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tive,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>near</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>from</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>down</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§§ 220, 221</td>
<td>PREPOSITIONS</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

221. The uses of the Prepositions are as follows: —

1. Ā, ab, away from,2 from, off from, with the ablative.
   a. Of place: as, — ab urbe prefectus est, he set out from the city.
   b. Of time: (1) from: as, — ab hōrā tertiā ad vesperam, from the third hour till evening; (2) just after: as, — ab eō magistrātū, after [holding] that office.
   c. Idiomatic uses: ā reliquis differunt, they differ from the others; ā parvulis, from early childhood; prope ab urbe, near (not far from) the city; liberāre ab, to set free from; occīsus ab hoste (perīt ab hoste), slain by an enemy; ab āc parte, on this side; ab rē ēius, to his advantage; ā rē pūblīcā, for the interest of the state.

2. Ad, to, towards, at, near, with the accusative (cf. in, into).
   a. Of place: as, — ad urbem vēnit, he came to the city; ad meridiem, towards the south; ad exercitum, to the army; ad hostem, toward the enemy; ad urbem, near the city.
   b. Of time: as, — ad nōnam hōram, till the ninth hour.
   c. With persons: as, — ad eum vēnit, he came to him.

1 For palam etc., see § 432.
2 Ab signifies direction from the object, but often towards the speaker; compare dē, down from, and ex, out of.
d. Idiomatic uses: ad supplicia descendunt, *they resort to punishment*; ad haec respondit, *to this he answered*; ad tempus, *at the [fit] time*; adire ad rem publicam, *go into public life*; ad petendum pacem, *to seek peace*; ad latera, *on the flank*; ad arma, *to arms*; ad hunc modum, *in this way*; quem ad modum, *how, as*; ad centum, *nearly a hundred*; ad hоc, *besides*; omnēs ad unum, *all to a man*; ad diem, *on the day*.

3. *Ante*, *in front of*, before, with the accusative (cf. *post*, *after*).
   b. Of time: as, — ante bellum, *before the war*.
   c. Idiomatic uses: ante urbem captam, *before the city was taken*; ante diem quintum (a.d.v.) Kal., *the fifth day before the Calends*; ante quadriennium, *four years before or ago*; ante tempus, *too soon* (before the time).

4. *Apud*, *at, by, among*, with the accusative.
   b. With reference to persons or communities: as, — apud Helvētiōs, *among the Helvētians*; apud populum, *before the people*; apud alium, *at one's house*; apud sē, *at home or in his senses*; apud Cicerōnem, *in [the works of] Cicero*.

5. *Circā, about, around*, with the accusative (cf. *circum*, *circiter*).
   a. Of place: templā circā forum, *the temples about the forum*; circā sē habet, *he has with him* (of persons).
   b. Of time or number (in poetry and later writers): circā eandem hōram, *about the same hour*; circā idūs Octōbris, *about the fifteenth of October*; circā decem milia, *about ten thousand*.
   c. Figuratively (in later writers), *about, in regard to* (cf. *ād*): circā quem pūgna est, *with regard to whom*, etc.; circā deōs neglectior, *rather neglectful of (i.e. in worshipping) the gods*.

6. *Circiter*, *about, with the accusative*.
   a. Of time or number: circiter idūs Novembris, *about the thirteenth of November*; circiter meridiem, *about noon*.

7. *Circum*, *about, around*, with the accusative.
   a. Of place: circum haec loca, *hereabout*; circum Capuam, *round Capua*; circum illum, *with him*; légātiō circum insulās missa, *an embassy sent to the islands round about*; circum amicōs, *to his friends round about*.

8. *Contrā*, *opposite, against*, with the accusative.
   contrā Itāliam, *over against Italy*; contrā haec, *in answer to this*.
   a. Often as adverb: as, — haec contrā, *this in reply*; contrā autem, *but on the other hand*; quod contrā, *whereas, on the other hand*.

9. *Cum*, *with, together with*, with the ablative.
§ 221] PREPOSITIONS

10. De, down from, from, with the ablative (cf. ab, away from; ex, out of).

a. Of place: as, — de caelo demissus, sent down from heaven; de navibus désilire, to jump down from the ships.

b. Figuratively, concerning, about, of: ¹ as, — cōgnóscit de Clōdi caede, he learns of the murder of Clodius; cōnsilia dé bellō, plans of war.

c. In a partitive sense (compare ex), out of, of: as, — únus dé plēbe, one of the people.

d. Idiomatic uses: multis dé causis, for many reasons; quā dé causā, for which reason; dé imprōvisō, of a sudden; dé industriā, on purpose; dé integró, anew; dé tertia vigiliā, just at midnight (starting at the third watch); dé mēnse Decembri nāvigāre, to sail as early as December.

11. Ex, e, from (the midst, opposed to in), out of, with the ablative (cf. ab and dē).

a. Of place: as, — ex omnibus partibus silvae évolāvērunt, they flew out from all parts of the forest; ex Hispāniā, [a man] from Spain.

b. Of time: as, — ex eo die quintus, the fifth day from that (four days after); ex hoc diē, from this day forth.

c. Idiomatically or less exactly: ex cōnsulātū, right after his consulship; ex eius sententiā, according to his opinion; ex aequō, justly; ex imprōvisō, unexpectedly; ex tua rē, to your advantage; magnā ex parte, in a great degree; ex equō pūgnāre, to fight on horseback; ex āquī, expedient; e regione, opposite; quaerere ex aliquō, to ask of some one; ex senātūs cōnsultō, according to the decree of the senate; ex fugā, in [their] flight (proceeding immediately from it); únus ē filīs, one of the sons.

12. In, with the accusative or the ablative.

1. With the accusative, into (opposed to ex).

a. Of place: as, — in Italiam contendit, he hastens into Italy.

b. Of time, till, until: as, — in lūcem, till daylight.

c. Idiomatically or less exactly: in meridiem, towards the south; amor in (ergā, adversus) patrem, love for his father; in āram confugit, he fled to the altar (on the steps, or merely to); in diēs, from day to day; in longitūdinem, lengthwise; in lātitūdinem patēbat, extended in width; in haec verba iūrāre, to swear to these words; hunc in modum, in this way; ērātiō in Catillnam, a speech against

¹ Of originally meant from (cf. off).
PARTICLES

Catiline; in perpetuum, forever; in peius, for the worse; in diem vivere, to live from hand to mouth (for the day).

2. With the ablative, in, on, among.

In very various connections: as,—in castris, in the camp (cf. ad castra, to, at, or near the camp); in mari, on the sea; in urbe esse, to be in town; in tempore, in season; in scribendo, while writing; est mihi in animō, I have it in mind, I intend; in ancoris, at anchor; in hoc homine, in the case of this man; in dubio esse, to be in doubt.

13. Infra, below, with the accusative.

a. Of place: as,—ad mare infra oppidum, by the sea below the town; infra caelum, under the sky.

b. Figuratively or less exactly: as,—infra Homerus, later than Homer; infra tres pedes, less than three feet; infra elephantos, smaller than elephants; infra infimōs omnis, the lowest of the low.

14. Inter, between, among, with the accusative.

inter me et Scipionem, between myself and Scipio; inter os et offam, between the cup and the lip (the mouth and the morsel); inter hostium tela, amid the weapons of the enemy; inter omnibus primus, first of all; inter bibendum, while drinking; inter se loquentur, they talk together.

15. Ob, towards, on account of, with the accusative.

a. Literally: (1) of motion (archaic): as,—ob Rōmam, towards Rome (Ennius); ob viam, to the road (preserved as adverb, in the way of). (2) Of place in which, before, in a few phrases: as,—ob oculōs, before the eyes.

b. Figuratively, in return for (mostly archaic, probably a word of account, balancing one thing against another): as,—ob mulierem, in pay for the woman; ob rem, for gain. Hence applied to reason, cause, and the like, on account of (a similar mercantile idea), for: as,—ob eam causam, for that reason; quam ob rem (quamobrem), wherefore, why.

16. Per, through, over, with the accusative.

a. Of motion: as,—per urbem ire, to go through the city; per mūros, over the walls.

b. Of time: as,—per hiemem, throughout the winter.

c. Figuratively, of persons as means or instruments: as,—per hominēs idōneos, through the instrumentality of suitable persons; licet per me, you (etc.) may for all me. Hence, stat per me, it is through my instrumentality; so, per se, in and of itself.

d. Weakened, in many adverbial expressions: as,—per locum, in jest; per speciem, in show, ostentatiously.

17. Prae, in front of, with the ablative.

a. Literally, of place (in a few connections): as,—praesē portāre, to carry in one's arms; prae sē ferre, to carry before one, (hence figuratively) exhibit, proclaim ostentatiously, make known.
b. Figuratively, of hindrance, as by an obstacle in front (compare English for): as,—praee gaudios conticuit, he was silent for joy.
c. Of comparison: as,—praee magnostudine corporum suo rum, in comparison with their own great size.

18. Praeter, along by, by, with the accusative.
   a. Literally: as,—praeter castra, by the camp (along by, in front of); praeter oculōs, before the eyes.
   b. Figuratively, beyond, besides, more than, in addition to, except: as,—praeter spem, beyond hope; praeter aliōs, more than others; praeter paucōs, with the exception of a few.

19. Prō, in front of, with the ablative.
   sedēns prō aede Castoris, sitting in front of the temple of Castor; prō populō, in presence of the people. So prō rōstris, on [the front of] the rostra; prō contione, before the assembly.
   a. In various idiomatic uses: prō lēge, in defence of the law; prō vitulā, instead of a heifer; prō centum milibus, as good as a hundred thousand; prō ratā parte, in due proportion; prō hac vice, for this once; prō consule, in place of consul; prō viribus, considering his strength; prō virīlī parte, to the best of one's ability; prō tua prūdentīa, in accordance with your wisdom.

20. Propter, near, by, with the accusative.
   propter tē sedet, he sits next you. Hence, on account of (cf. all along of):
   as,—propter metum, through fear.

21. Secundum,1 just behind, following, with the accusative.
   a. Literally: as,—ìte secundum mē (Plaut.), go behind me; secundum litus, near the shore; secundum flūmen, along the stream (cf. secundō flūmine, down stream).
   b. Figuratively, according to: as,—secundum nātūram, according to nature.

22. Sub, under, up to, with the accusative or the ablative.
   1. Of motion, with the accusative: as,—sub montem succēdere, to come close to the hill.
      a. Idiomatically: sub noctem, towards night; sub lūcem, near daylight; sub haec dicta, at (following) these words.
   2. Of rest, with the ablative: as,—sub Iove, in the open air (under the heaven, personified as Jove); sub monte, at the foot of the hill.
      a. Idiomatically: sub eōdem tempore, about the same time (just after it).

23. Subter, under, below, with the accusative (sometimes, in poetry, the ablative).
   subter togam (Liv.), under his mantle; but,—subter litore (Catull.), below the shore.

24. Super,2 with the accusative or the ablative.

---

1 Old participle of sequor.
2 Comparative of sub.
1. With the accusative, above, over, on, beyond, upon.

a. Of place: super vallum præcipitāri (Ing. 58), to be hurled over the rampart; super laterēs coria indūcuntur (B.C. ii. 10), hides are drawn over the bricks; super terrae tumulum statuī (Legg. ii. 65), to be placed on the mound of earth; super Numidiam (Ing. 19), beyond Numidia.

b. Idiomatically or less exactly: vulnus super vulnus, wound upon wound; super vinum (Q. C. viii. 4), over his wine.

2. With the ablative, concerning, about (the only use with this case in prose).

hāc super rē, concerning this thing; super tāli rē, about such an affair; litterās super tantā rē exspectāre, to wait for a letter in a matter of such importance.

a. Poetically, in other senses: ligna super focō largē repōnēns (Hor. Od. i. 9. 5), piling logs generously on the fire; nocte super mediā (Aen. ix. 61), after midnight.

25: Suprā, on top of, above, with the accusative.

suprā terram, on the surface of the earth. So also figuratively: as, — suprā hanc memoriam, before our remembrance; suprā mōrem, more than usual; suprā quod, besides.

26. Tenus (postpositive), as far as, up to, regularly with the ablative, sometimes with the genitive (cf. § 359. b).

1. With the ablative: Taurō tenus, as far as Taurus; capulō tenus, up to the hilt.

2. With the genitive: Cumārum tenus (Fam. viii. 1. 2), as far as Cumae.

Note 1.—Tenus is frequently connected with the feminine of an adjective pronoun, making an adverbial phrase: as, hāctenus, hitherto; quātensus, so far as; dē hāc rē hāctenus, so much for that (about this matter so far).

Note 2.—Tenus was originally a neuter noun, meaning line or extent. In its use with the genitive (mostly poetic) it may be regarded as an adverbial accusative (§ 397. a).

27. Trans, across, over, through, by, with the accusative.

a. Of motion: as, — tran̄s mare currunt, they run across the sea; tran̄s flūmen ferre, to carry over a river; tran̄s aethera, through the sky; tran̄s caput iace, throw over your head.

b. Of rest: as, — tran̄s Rhēnum incolunt, they live across the Rhine.

28. Ultrā, beyond (on the further side), with the accusative.

cis Padum ultrāque, on this side of the Po and beyond; ultrā eum numerum, more than that number; ultrā fidem, incredible; ultrā modum, immoderate.

Note. — Some adverbs appear as prepositions: as, intus, insuper (see § 219).

For Prepositions in Compounds, see § 267.
CONJUNCTIONS

222. Conjunctions, like prepositions (cf. § 219), are closely related to adverbs, and are either petrified cases of nouns, pronouns, and adjectives, or obscured phrases: as, quod, an old accusative; dum, probably an old accusative (cf. tum, cum); vērō, an old neuter ablative of vērus; nihilōminus, none the less; prōinde, lit. forward from there. Most conjunctions are connected with pronominal adverbs, which cannot always be referred to their original case-forms.

223. Conjunctions connect words, phrases, or sentences. They are of two classes, Coördinate and Subordinate: —

a. Coördinate, connecting coördinate or similar constructions (see § 278. 2. a). These are: —
1. Copulative or disjunctive, implying a connection or separation of thought as well as of words: as, et, and; aut, or; neque, nor.
2. Adversative, implying a connection of words, but a contrast in thought: vs, sed, but.
3. Causal, introducing a cause or reason: as, nam, for.
4. Illative, denoting an inference: as, igitur, therefore.

b. Subordinate, connecting a subordinate or independent clause with that on which it depends (see § 278. 2. b). These are: —
1. Conditional, denoting a condition or hypothesis: as, si, if; nisi, unless.
2. Comparative, implying comparison as well as condition: as, ac si, as if.
3. Concessive, denoting a concession or admission: as, quamquam, although (lit. however much it may be true that, etc.).
5. Consecutive, expressing result: as, ut, so that.
6. Final, expressing purpose: as, ut, in order that; né, that not.
7. Causal, expressing cause: as, quia, because.

224. Conjunctions are more numerous and more accurately distinguished in Latin than in English. The following list includes the common conjunctions ¹ and conjunctive phrases: —

Coördinate

a. Copulative and Disjunctive

et, -que, atque (ac), and.
et . . . et; et . . . -que (atque); -que . . . et; -que . . . -que (poetical), both . . . and.
etiam, quoque, neque nōn (necnōn), quin etiam, itidem (item), also.
cum . . . tum; tum . . . tum, both . . . and; not only . . . but also.

¹ Some of these have been included in the classification of adverbs. See also list of Correlatives, § 152.
PARTICLES

quā ... quā, on the one hand ... on the other hand.
modo ... modo, now ... now.
aut ... aut; vel ... vel (ve), either ... or.
sive (seu) ... sive, whether ... or.
nec (neque) ... nec (neque); neque ... nec; nec ... neque (rare), neither ... nor.
et ... neque, both ... and not.
nec ... et; nec (neque) ... -que, neither (both not) ... and.

b. Adversative

sed, autem, vērum, vērō, at, atqui, but.
tamen, attamen, sed tamen, vērum tamen, but yet, nevertheless.
nihilominus, none the less.
at vērō, but in truth; enimvērō, for in truth.
cēterum, on the other hand, but.

nam, namque, enim, etenim, for.
quāpropter, quārē, quamobrem, quōcircā, unde, wherefore, whence.

Subordinate

a. Conditional

si, if; sin, but if; nisi (ni), unless, if not; quod si, but if.
modo, dum, dummodo, si modo, if only, provided.
dummodo nē (dum nē, modo nē), provided only not.

b. Comparative

ut, uti, sicut, just as; velut, as, so as; prout, praeut, ceu, like as, according as.
tamquam (tanquam), quasi, ut sī, ac sī, velut, veluti, velut sī, as if.
quam, atque (ac), as, than.

c. Concessive

etsi, etiamsi, tametsi, even if; quamquam (quanquam), although.
quamvis, quantumvis, quamlibet, quantumlibet, however much.
licet (properly a verb), ut, cum (quom), though, suppose, whereas.

d. Temporal

cum (quom), quandō, when; ubi, ut, when, as; cum primum, ut primum, ubi primum,
simul, simul ac, simul atque, as soon as; postquam (posteaquam), after.
prius ... quam, ante ... quam, before; nōn ante ... quam, not ... until.
dum, üsque dum, dōnec, quoad, until, as long as, while.
e. Consecutive and Final

ut (uti), quō, so that, in order that.
nē, ut nē, lest (that . . . not, in order that not); nēve (neu), that not, nor.
quin (after negatives), quōminus, but that (so as to prevent), that not.

f. Causal

quia, quod, quoniam (†quom-iam), quandō, because.
cum (quom), since.
quandōquidem, sī quidem, quippe, ut pote, since indeed, inasmuch as.
propterēa . . . quod, for this reason . . . that.

On the use of Conjunctions, see §§ 323, 324.

INTERJECTIONS

225. Some Interjections are mere natural exclamations of feeling; others are derived from inflected parts of speech, e.g. the imperatives em, lo (probably for eme, take); age, come, etc. Names of deities occur in herclei, pol (from Pollux), etc. Many Latin interjections are borrowed from the Greek, as euge, euhoe, etc.

226. The following list comprises most of the Interjections in common use:

ō, ēn, ecce, ehem, papae, vāh (of astonishment).
iō, évae, évoe, euhoe (of joy).
heu, ēheu, vae, alas (of sorrow).
heus, eho, ehoodum, ho (of calling); st, hist.
ēia, euge (of praise).
prō (of attestation): as, prō pudor, shame!
FORMATION OF WORDS

227. All formation of words is originally a process of composition. An element significant in itself is added to another significant element, and thus the meaning of the two is combined. No other combination is possible for the formation either of inflections or of stems. Thus, in fact, words (since roots and stems are significant elements, and so words) are first placed side by side, then brought under one accent, and finally felt as one word. The gradual process is seen in sea voyage, sea-nymph, seaside. But as all derivation, properly so called, appears as a combination of uninflected stems, every type of formation in use must antedate inflection. Hence words were not in strictness derived either from nouns or from verbs, but from stems which were neither, because they were in fact both; for the distinction between noun-stems and verb-stems had not yet been made.

After the development of Inflection, however, that one of several kindred words which seemed the simplest was regarded as the primitive form, and from this the other words of the group were thought to be derived. Such supposed processes of formation were then imitated, often erroneously, and in this way new modes of derivation arose. Thus new adjectives were formed from nouns, new nouns from adjectives, new adjectives from verbs, and new verbs from adjectives and nouns.

In course of time the real or apparent relations of many words became confused, so that nouns and adjectives once supposed to come from nouns were often assigned to verbs, and others once supposed to come from verbs were assigned to nouns.

Further, since the language was constantly changing, many words went out of use, and do not occur in the literature as we have it. Thus many Derivatives survive of which the Primitive is lost.

Finally, since all conscious word-formation is imitative, intermediate steps in derivation were sometimes omitted, and occasionally apparent Derivatives occur for which no proper Primitive ever existed.

ROOTS AND STEMS

228. Roots 1 are of two kinds: —

1. Verbal, expressing ideas of action or condition (sensible phenomena).
2. Pronominal, expressing ideas of position and direction.

From verbal roots come all parts of speech except pronouns and certain particles derived from pronominal roots.

229. Stems are either identical with roots or derived from them. They are of two classes: (1) Noun-stems (including Adjective-stems) and (2) Verb-stems.

Note. — Noun-stems and verb-stems were not originally different (see p. 163), and in the consciousness of the Romans were often confounded; but in general they were treated as distinct.

230. Words are formed by inflection: (1) from roots inflected as stems; (2) from derived stems (see § 232).

1 For the distinction between Roots and Stems, see §§ 24, 25.
231. A root used as a stem may appear —

a. With a short vowel: as, *duc-is* (*dux*), *duc*; *nec-is* (*nex*); *i-s, i-d*. So in verbs: *as*, *es-t, fér-t* (cf. § 174. 2).

b. With a long vowel ¹: as, *lúc-is* (*lúx*), *lúc*; *pác-is* (*páx*). So in verbs: *dúc-ó, i-s for ḫeis, from eō, īre; fátur from fāri*.


**DERIVED STEMS AND SUFFIXES**

232. Derived Stems are formed from roots or from other stems by means of **suffixes**. These are: —

1. Primary: added to the root, or (in later times by analogy) to verb-stems.

2. Secondary: added to a noun-stem or an adjective-stem.

Both primary and secondary suffixes are for the most part pronominal roots (§ 228. 2), but a few are of doubtful origin.

**Note 1.** — The distinction between primary and secondary suffixes, not being original (see § 227), is continually lost sight of in the development of a language. Suffixes once primary are used as secondary, and those once secondary are used as primary. Thus in *hosticus* (*hosti + cus*) the suffix *-cus*, originally *ko-* (see § 234. II. 12) primary, as in *paucus*, has become secondary, and is thus regularly used to form derivatives; but in *pudicus*, *apricus*, it is treated as primary again, because these words were really or apparently connected with verbs. So in English *-able* was borrowed as a primary suffix (*tolerable, eatable*), but also makes forms like *clubbable, salable*; *-some* is properly a secondary suffix, as in *toilsome, lonesome*, but makes also such words as *meddlesome, venturesome*.

**Note 2.** — It is the stem of the word, not the nominative, that is formed by the derivative suffix. For convenience, however, the nominative will usually be given.

**Primary Suffixes**

233. The words in Latin formed immediately from the root by means of Primary Suffixes, are few. For —

1. Inherited words so formed were mostly further developed by the addition of other suffixes, as we might make an adjective *lonely-some-ish*, meaning nothing more than *lone, lonely, or lonesome*.

2. By such accumulation of suffixes, new compound suffixes were formed which crowded out even the old types of derivation. Thus, —

¹ The difference in vowel-quantity in the same root (as *důc*) depends on inherited variations (see § 17. a).
FORMATION OF WORDS

A word like mēns, mentis, by the suffix ōn- (nom. -ō), gave mentīō, and this, being divided into mēn + ōn, gave rise to a new type of abstract nouns in -ōn: as, lēgā-tōō, embassy.

A word like auditor, by the suffix io- (nom. -ius), gave rise to adjectives like audītor-ius, of which the neuter (audītorium) is used to denote the place where the action of the verb is performed. Hence tōrio- (nom. -tōrium), n., becomes a regular noun-suffix (§ 250. a).

So in English such a word as suffocation gives a suffix -ation, and with this is made starvation, though there is no such word as starvate.

234. Examples of primary stem-suffixes are: —

I. Vowel suffixes: —

1. o- (m., n.), ā- (f.), found in nouns and adjectives of the first two declensions: as, sonus, lūdus, vagus, toga (root teg).

2. i-, as in ovis, avis; in Latin frequently changed, as in rūpēs, or lost, as in scobs (scobis, root scab).

3. u-, disguised in most adjectives by an additional i, as in suā-vis (for †suāvis, instead of †suā-dus, cf. ṭūōs), ten-uis (root ten in tendō), and remaining alone only in nouns of the fourth declension, as acus (root ak, sharp, in ācer, aciēs, ωκός), pecū, genū.

II. Suffixes with a consonant: —

1. tō- (m., n.), tā- (f.), in the regular perfect passive participle, as tēctus, tēctum; sometimes with an active sense, as in pōtus, prānsus; and found in a few words not recognized as participles, as pūtus (cf. pūrus), altus (alō).

2. ti- in abstracts and rarely in nouns of agency, as messis, vestis, pars, mēns. But in many the i is lost.

3. tu- in abstracts (including supines), sometimes becoming concretes, as āctus, lūctus.

4. no- (m., n.), nā- (f.), forming perfect participles in other languages, and in Latin making adjectives of like participial meaning, which often become nouns, as māgnus, plēnus, rēgnum.

5. ni-, in nouns of agency and adjectives, as ignis, sēgnis.

6. nu-, rare, as in manus, pīnus, cornū.

7. mo- (mā-), with various meanings, as in animus, almus, firmus, forma.

8. vo- (vā-) (commonly vo-, uā-), with an active or passive meaning, as in equus (equus), arvum, cōnspicuus, exiguus, vacivus (vacuus).

9. ro- (rā-), as in ager (stem ag-ro-), integer (cf. intāctus), sacer, plēri-que (cf. plēnus, plētus).

10. lo- (lā-), as in caelum (for †caed-lum), chisel, exemplum, sella (for †sedla).

11. yo- (yā-), forming gerundives in other languages, and in Latin making adjectives and abstracts, including many of the first and fifth declensions, as eximius, audācia, Flōrentia, perniciēs.

12. ko- (kā-), sometimes primary, as in pauci (cf. παοιos), locus (for stlocus). In many cases the vowel of this termination is lost, leaving a consonant stem: as, apex, cortex, loquāx.
13. en- (on-, ōn-, ōn-), in nouns of agency and abstracts: as, aspergō, compāgō (-inis), gerō (-ōnis).

14. men-, expressing means, often passing into the action itself: as, agmen, flūmen, fulmen.

15. ter- (tor-, tēr-, tōr-, tr-), forming nouns of agency: as, pater (i.e. protector), frāter (i.e. supporter), ōrātor.

16. tro-, forming nouns of means: as, claustrum (claud), múlctrum (mulf).

17. es- (os-), forming names of actions, passing into concretes: as, genus (generis), tempus (see § 15.4). The infinitive in -ere (as in reg-ere) is a locative of this stem (-er-e for †-es-i).

18. nt- (ont-, ent-), forming present active participles: as, legēns, with some adjectives from roots unknown: as, frequēns, recēns.

The above, with some suffixes given below, belong to the Indo-European parent speech, and most of them were not felt as living formations in the Latin.

**Significant Endings**

235. Both primary and secondary suffixes, especially in the form of compound suffixes, were used in Latin with more or less consciousness of their meaning. They may therefore be called Significant Endings.

They form: (1) Nouns of Agency; (2) Abstract Nouns (including Names of Actions); (3) Adjectives (active or passive).

Note.—There is really no difference in etymology between an adjective and a noun, except that some formations are habitually used as adjectives and others as nouns (§ 20. b. n. 2).

**DERIVATION OF NOUNS**

**Nouns of Agency**

236. Nouns of Agency properly denote the agent or doer of an action. But they include many words in which the idea of agency has entirely faded out, and also many words used as adjectives.

a. Nouns denoting the agent or doer of an action are formed from roots or verb-stems by means of the suffixes—

- **tor (-sor), m.; -trīx, f.**
  - can-tor, can-trīx, singer;
  - vic-tor, vic-trīx, conqueror (victorious);
  - tōn-sor (for †tōnd-tor), tōns-trīx (for †tōnd-trīx), hair-cutter;
  - peti-tor, candidate;

- can-ere (root can), to sing.
- vinc-ere (vic), to conquer.
- tond-ere (tond as root), to shear.
- pet-ere (pet; petī- as stem), to seek.
By analogy -tor is sometimes added to noun-stems, but these may be stems of lost verbs: as, \textit{viā-tor}, traveller, from \textit{via}, way (but cf. the verb in\textit{viō}).

Note 1.—The termination -tor (-sor) has the same phonetic change as the supine ending -tum (-sum), and is added to the same form of root or verb-stem as that ending. The stem-ending is tōr—(§ 234. II. 15), which is shortened in the nominative.

Note 2.—The feminine form is always -trix. Masculines in -sor lack the feminine, except expulsor (expultrix) and tōnsor (tónstrix).

\textit{b}. t-, m. or f., added to verb-stems makes nouns in -es (-itis, -etis; stem it-, et-) descriptive of a character:—

\begin{itemize}
  \item praestes, -stitis, (verb-stem from root \textit{sta}, stāre, \textit{stand}), guardian.
  \item tēges, -etis (verb-stem tege-, cf. tegō, cover), a coverer, a mat.
  \item pedes, -itis (pēs, ped-is, foot, and \textit{i}, root of īre, go), foot-soldier.
\end{itemize}

\textit{c}. -ō (genitive -ōnis, stem -ōn-), m., added to verb-stems\(^1\) indicates a person employed in some specific art or trade:—

\begin{itemize}
  \item com-bibo (bib as root in bibō, bibere, drink), a pot-companion.
  \item gerō, -ōnis (ges in gerō, gerere, carry), a carrier.
\end{itemize}

Note.—This termination is also used to form many nouns descriptive of personal characteristics (cf. § 255).

**Names of Actions and Abstract Nouns**

237. Names of Actions are confused, through their terminations, with real abstract nouns (names of \textit{qualities}), and with concrete nouns denoting \textit{means} and \textit{instrument}.

They are also used to express the \textit{concrete result} of an action (as often in English).

Thus legiō is literally \textit{the act of collecting}, but comes to mean \textit{legion} (the body of soldiers collected); cf. \textit{levy} in English.

238. Abstract Nouns and Names of Actions are formed from roots and verb-stems by means of the endings—

\textit{a}. Added to roots or forms conceived as roots—

\begin{tabular}{lllll}
Nom. & -or, m. & -ēs, f. & -us, n. \\
Gen. & -ōris & -is & -eris or -oris \\
Stem & ōr- (earlier ōs-) & i- & er- (earlier e/ōs-) \\
\end{tabular}

\begin{itemize}
  \item tim-or, fear; timēre, to fear.
  \item am-or, love; amāre, to love.
  \item sēd-ēs, seat; sedēre, to sit.
  \item caed-ēs, slaughter; caedere, to kill.
  \item genus, birth, race; genē, to be born (root of gignō, bear).
\end{itemize}

\(^1\) So conceived, but perhaps this termination was originally added to noun-stems.
Note. — Many nouns of this class are formed by analogy from imaginary roots: as facinus from a supposed root FACIN.

b. Apparently added to roots or verb-stems —

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>-iō, f.</th>
<th>-tiō (-siō), f.</th>
<th>-tūra (-sūra), f.</th>
<th>-tūs, m.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>-iōnis</td>
<td>-tiōnis (-siōnis)</td>
<td>-tūrae (-sūrae)</td>
<td>-tūs (-sūs)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stem</td>
<td>iōn-</td>
<td>tīōn- (siōn-)</td>
<td>tūrā- (sūrā-)</td>
<td>tu- (su-)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

leg-iō, a collecting (levy), a legion; legere, to collect.
reg-iō, a direction, a region; regere, to direct.
vocā-tiō, a calling; vocāre, to call.
mōlī-tiō, a toiling; mōlīri, to toil.
scrip-tūra, a writing; scribere, to write.
sēn-sus (for †sent-tus), feeling; sentire, to feel.

Note 1. — -tiō, -tūra, -tūs are added to roots or verb-stems precisely as -tor, with the same phonetic change (cf. § 236. a. n. 1). Hence they are conveniently associated with the supine stem (see § 178). They sometimes form nouns when there is no corresponding verb in use: as, senātus, senate (cf. senex); mentiō, mention (cf. mensus); fētūra, offspring (cf. fētus); litterātūra, literature (cf. litterae); cōnsulātus, consulship (cf. cōnsul).

Note 2. — Of these endings, -tus was originally primary (cf. § 234. II. 3.) ; -iō is a compound formed by adding ōn- to a stem ending in a vowel (originally i): as, diciō (cf. dicus and dicis); -tiō is a compound formed by adding ōn- to stems in ti-: as, gradātiō (cf. gradātim); -tūra is formed by adding -ra, feminine of -rus, to stems in tu-: as, nātūra from nātus; statūra from status (cf. figūra, of like meaning, from a simple u-stem, ūgu-s; and mātūrus, Mātūta).

239. Nouns denoting acts, or means and results of acts, are formed from roots or verb-stems by the use of the suffixes —

-mentum, N.; -mōnium, N.; -mōnia, f.

ag-men, line of march, band; ag, root of agere, to lead.
regi-men, rule;
regi-mentum, rule; }

certa-men, contest, battle; certā-, stem of certare, to contend.

Socolum, pillar; mō-men, movement; nō-men, name; flū-men, stream.

testi-mōnia, testimony;
testāri, to witness.
queri-mōnia, complaint;
queri, to complain.

-mōnium and -mōnia are also used as secondary, forming nouns from other nouns and from adjectives: as, sancti-mōnia, sanctity (sanctus, holy); mātrimōnium, marriage (māter, mother).

Note. — Of these endings, -men is primary (cf. § 234. II. 14); -mentum is a compound of men- and to-, and appears for the most part later in the language than -men: as, mōmen, movement (Lucr.); mōmentum (later). So elementum is a development from L-M-N-a, l-m-n's (letters of the alphabet), changed to elementa along with other nouns in -men. -mōnium and -mōnia were originally compound secondary suffixes formed from mōn- (a by-form of men-), which was early associated with mo-. Thus almus
240. Nouns denoting means or instrument are formed from roots and verb-stems (rarely from noun-stems) by means of the neuter suffixes —

- bulum, - cum, - brum, - crum, - trum

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pā-bulum</td>
<td>fodder</td>
<td>pāscere</td>
<td>to feed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sta-bulum</td>
<td>stall</td>
<td>stāre</td>
<td>to stand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vehi-culum</td>
<td>wagon</td>
<td>vehere</td>
<td>to carry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>candēlā-brum</td>
<td>candlestick</td>
<td>candēla</td>
<td>candle (a secondary formation)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seput-crum</td>
<td>tomb</td>
<td>sepelīre</td>
<td>to bury</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>claus-trum</td>
<td>(† claud-trum), bar</td>
<td>claudere</td>
<td>to shut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arā-trum</td>
<td>plough</td>
<td>arāre</td>
<td>to plough</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note. —-trum (stem tro-) was an old formation from tor- (§ 234. II. 15), with the stem suffix o-, and - cum (stem clo- for tlo-) appears to be related; - cum is the same as - clum; - bulum contains lo- (§ 234. II. 9, 10) and - brum is closely related.

α. A few masculines and feminines of the same formation occur as nouns and adjectives: —

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fa-bula</td>
<td>tale</td>
<td>fāri</td>
<td>to speak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rīdi-culus</td>
<td>laughable</td>
<td>ridēre</td>
<td>to laugh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fa-ber</td>
<td>smith</td>
<td>facere</td>
<td>to make</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>late-bra</td>
<td>hiding-place</td>
<td>latēre</td>
<td>to hide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tere-bra</td>
<td>auger</td>
<td>terere</td>
<td>to bore</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mulc-tra</td>
<td>milk-pail</td>
<td>mulgēre</td>
<td>to milk</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

241. Abstract Nouns, mostly from adjective-stems, rarely from noun-stems, are formed by means of the secondary feminine suffixes —

- ia (-iēs), - tia (-tiēs), - tās, - tūs, - tūdō

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audāc-ia</td>
<td>boldness</td>
<td>audāx</td>
<td>bold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pauper-iēs</td>
<td>poverty</td>
<td>pauper</td>
<td>poor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tristi-tia</td>
<td>sadness</td>
<td>tristis</td>
<td>sad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sēgni-tiēs</td>
<td>laziness</td>
<td>sēgnis</td>
<td>lazy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boni-tās</td>
<td>goodness</td>
<td>bonus</td>
<td>good</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>senec-tūs</td>
<td>age</td>
<td>senex</td>
<td>old</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>māgni-tūdō</td>
<td>greatness</td>
<td>māgnus</td>
<td>great</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. In stems ending in o- or ā- the stem-vowel is lost before - ia (as superb-ia) and appears as i before - tās, - tūs, - tia (as in boni-tās, above).

2. Consonant stems often insert i before -tās: as, loquāx (stem loquāc-), loquāci-tās; but hones-tās, máies-tās (as if from old adjectives in - es), über-tās, volup-tās. o after i is changed to e: as, pius (stem pio-), pie-tās; socius, socie-tās.
a. In like manner -dō and -gō (f.) form abstract nouns, but are associated with verbs and apparently added to verb-stems: —

cupī-dō, desire, from cupere, to desire (as if from stem cupī-).
dulcē-dō, sweetness (cf. dulcis, sweet), as if from a stem dulcē-, cf. dulcē-scō.
lūmba-gō, lumbago (cf. lumbus, loin), as if from ĭlumbī, -āre.

Note. — Of these, -ia is inherited as secondary (cf. § 234. II. 11). -tia is formed by adding -ia to stems with a t-suffix: as, militia, from miles (stem milit-); molestia from molestus; clémentia from clémens; whence by analogy, mali-tia, avāri-tia. -tās is inherited, but its component parts, ŭā + tī-, are found as suffixes in the same sense: as, senecta from senex; sēmen-tīs from sēmen. -tūs is tū + tī-, cf. servitū-dō. -dō and -gō appear only with long vowels, as from verb-stems, by a false analogy; but -dō is dō + ŭīn-: as, cupidus, cupīdō; gravidus, gravēdō (cf. gravē-scō); albiāus, albēdō (cf. albēscō); formidus, hot, fūrmīdō (cf. fūrmīdōsūs), (hot flash?) fear; -gō is possibly co- + ŭīn-; cf. vorāx, vorāgō, but cf. Cethēgus. -tūdō is compounded of -dō with tu-stems, which acquire a long vowel from association with verb-stems in u- (cf. voīlūmen, from voīlō): as, cōnsūētū-dō, valētū-dō, habitū-dō, sollicitū-dō; whence servitūdō (cf. servitūs, -tūtis).

b. Neuter Abstracts, which easily pass into concretes denoting offices and groups, are formed from noun-stems and perhaps from verb-stems by means of the suffixes —

-ium, -tium

hospit-ium, hospitality, an inn; ¹
collēg-ium, colleagueship, a college;
auspic-ium, soothsaying, an omen;
gaud-ium, joy;
effug-ium, escape;
benefic-ium, a kindness;
dēsider-ium, longing;
adverb-ium, adverb;
interlūn-ium, time of new moon;
rēgīfug-ium, flight of the kings;
servi-ium, slavery, the slave class;
hospes (gen. hospit-is), a guest.
collēgā, a colleague.
auspex (gen. auspic-is), a soothsayer.
gaudēre, to rejoice.
effugere, to escape.
benefacere, to benefit; cf. beneficus.
dēsiderāre, to miss, from ĭtūdē-sidēs, out of place, of missing soldiers.
ad verbum, [added] to a verb.
inter lūnās, between moons.
rēgis fuga, flight of a king.
servus, a slave.

Vowel stems lose their vowel before -ium: as, collēg-ium, from collēga.

Note. — -ium is the neuter of the adjective suffix -ius. It is an inherited primary suffix, but is used with great freedom as secondary. -tium is formed like -tia, by adding -ium to stems with t: as, exit-ium, equit-ium (cf. exitus, equītēs); so, by analogy, calvitium, servitium (from calvus, servus).

c. Less commonly, abstract nouns (which usually become concrete) are formed from noun-stems (confused with verb-stems) by means of the suffixes —

¹ The abstract meaning is put first.
-nia, f.; -nium, -lium, -cinium, n.

pecū-nia, money (chattels);
contici-nium, the hush of night;
auxi-lium, help;
lātrō-cinium, robbery;

pecū, cattle.
conticēscere, to become still.
augēre, to increase.
lātrō, robber (cf. lātrōcinor, rob, implying an adjective †lātrōcinus).

For Diminutives and Patronymics, see §§ 243, 244.

DERIVATION OF ADJECTIVES

242. Derivative Adjectives, which often become nouns, are either Nominal (from nouns or adjectives) or Verbal (as from roots or verb-stems).

Nominal Adjectives

243. Diminutive Adjectives are usually confined to one gender, that of the primitive, and are used as Diminutive Nouns. They are formed by means of the suffixes —

-ulus (-a, -um), -olus (after a vowel), -culus, -ellus, -illus

riv-ulus, a streamlet;
gladi-olus, a small sword;
filii-olus, a little son;
filii-ola, a little daughter;
ātrium-olum, a little hall;
homunculus-olus, a dwarf;
auri-cula, a little ear;
münus-culum, a little gift;
codic-illii, writing-tablets;
mis-ellus, rather wretched;
lib-ellus, a little book;
aure-olus (-a, -um), golden;
parv-olus (later parv-ulus), very small;
mäius-culus, somewhat larger;

rivus, a brook.
gladius, a sword.
filius, a son.
filia, a daughter.
ātrium, a hall.
homō, a man.
auris, an ear.
münus, n., a gift.
cōdex, a block.
miser, wretched.
liber, a book.
aureus (-a, -um), golden.
parvus (-a, -um), little.
maitor (old mātōs), greater.

Note 1. — These diminutive endings are all formed by adding -lus to various stems. The formation is the same as that of -ulus in § 251. But these words became settled as diminutives, and retained their connection with nouns. So in English the diminutives whitish, reddish, are of the same formation as bookish and snappish. -culus comes from -lus added to adjectives in -cus formed from stems in n- and s-: as, iuven-cus, Aurun-cus (cf. Aurunculēius), prīs-cus, whence the cu becomes a part of the termination, and the whole ending (-culus) is used elsewhere, but mostly with n- and s-stems, in accordance with its origin.

Note 2. — Diminutives are often used to express affection, pity, or contempt: as, dēhiciolae, little pet; muliercula, a poor (weak) woman; Graeculus, a miserable Greek.
§§ 243-246] NOMINAL ADJECTIVES 149

a. -cio, added to stems in n-, has the same diminutive force, but is used with masculines only: as, homun-cio, a dwarf (from homō, a man).

244. Patronymics, indicating descent or relationship, are formed by adding to proper names the suffixes —

-adēs, -idēs, -idēs, -eus, m.; -ās, -is, -īs, f.

These words, originally Greek adjectives, have almost all become nouns in Latin:

Atlās: Atlanti-adēs, Mercury; Atlantidēs (Gr. plur.), the Pleiads.  
Scīpiō: Scīpi-adēs, son of Scipio.  
Tyndareus: Tyndar-idēs, Castor or Pollux, son of Tyndar; Tyndar-is, Helen, daughter of Tyndar.  
Anchisēs: Anchisi-adēs, Αἰνεας, son of Anchises.  
Thēseus: Thēs-idēs, son of Theseus.  
Tydeus: Tyd-idēs, Diomedes, son of Tydeus.  
Oileus: Αἰαξ Oile-eus, son of Oileus.  
Cisseus: Cissē-is, Hecuba, daughter of Cisseus.  
Thaumās: Thaumant-iās, Iris, daughter of Thaumā.  
Hesperus: Hesper-ides (from Hesper-is, -idis), plur., the daughters of Hesperus, the Hesperides.

245. Adjectives meaning full of, prone to, are formed from noun-stems with the suffixes —

-ōsus, -lēns, -lentus

fluctu-ōsus, billowy;  
form-ōsus, beautiful;  
pericul-ōsus, dangerous;  
pesti-lēns, pesti-lentus, pestilent;  
vino-lentus, vin-ōsus, given to drink;  
fluctus, a billow.  
forma, beauty.  
periculum, danger.  
pestis, pest.  
vnum, wine.

246. Adjectives meaning provided with are formed from nouns by means of the regular participial endings —

-tus, -ātus, -ītus, -ūtus

fünes-tus, deadly;  
hones-tus, honorable;  
faus-tus (for †faves-tus), favorable;  
barb-ātus, bearded;  
turr-ītus, turreted;  
corn-ūtus, horned;  
fünus (st. füner-, older füner-es-), death.  
honor, honor.  
favor, favor.  
barba, a beard.  
turris, a tower.  
cornū, a horn.

Note. —-ātus, -ītus, -ūtus, imply reference to an imaginary verb-stem; -tus is added directly to nouns without any such reference.
247. Adjectives of various meanings, but signifying in general made of or belonging to, are formed from nouns by means of the suffixes —

-eus, -ius, -āceus, -iicius, -āneus (-neus), -ticus

aur-eus, golden;
patr-ius, paternal;
uxōr-ius, uxorious;
ros-āceus, of roses;
later-iicius, of brick;
praesent-āneus, operating instantly;
extr-āneus, external;
subterr-āneus, subterranean;
volā-ticus, winged (volātus, a flight);
domes-ticus, of the house, domestic;
silvā-ticus, sylvan;

aurum, gold.
pater, a father.
uxor, a wife.
rosa, a rose.
later, a brick.
praesēns, present.
extrā, without.
sub terrā, underground.
volāre, to fly.
domus, a house.
silva, a wood.

Note. — -ius is originally primitive (§ 234. II. 11); -eus corresponds to Greek -eios, -eos, and has lost a y-sound (cf. yo-, § 234. II. 11); -iicius and -āceus are formed by adding -ius and -eus to stems in i-ć-, ā-ć- (suffix ko-, § 234. II. 12); -neus is no-+ -eus (§ 234. II. 4); -āneus is formed by adding -neus to ā-stems; -ticus is a formation with -cus (cf. hosti-cus with silvā-ticus), and has been affected by the analogy of participial stems to- (nominative -tus).

248. Adjectives denoting pertaining to are formed from noun-stems with the suffixes —

-ālis, -āris, -ēlis, -īlis, -ūlis

nātūr-ālis, natural;
poplūr-āris, fellow-countryman;
patrū-ēlis, cousin;
hostūl-īlis, hostile;
curūl-ūlis, curule;

nātūra, nature.
populus, a people.
patrus, uncle.
hostis, an enemy.
currus, a chariot.

Note. — The suffixes arise from adding -lis (stem li-) to various vowel stems. The long vowels are due partly to confusion between stem and suffix (cf. vitā-lis, from vitā-, with rēg-ālis), partly to confusion with verb-stems: cf. Aprilis (aperire), edūlis (edere), with senilis (senex). -ris is an inherited suffix, but in most of these formations -āris arises by differentiation for -ālis in words containing an l (as milit-āris).

249. Adjectives with the sense of belonging to are formed by means of the suffixes —

-ānus, -ēnus, -īnus; -ās, -ēnsis; -cus, -acus (-ācus), -icus; -eus, -ēius, -icius

1. So from common nouns: —

mont-ānus, of the mountains;
veter-ānus, veteran;
anteluc-ānus, before daylight;

mōns (stem monti-), mountain.
vetus (stem veter-), old.
ante lūcem, before light.
§§ 249, 250] NOMINAL ADJECTIVES

151

terr-énus, earthly;  
ser-énus, calm (of evening stillness);  
coll-ínus, of a hill;  
div-ínus, divine;  
líber-tínus, of the class of freedmen;  
cúi-ás, of what country?  
ínfim-ás, of the lowest rank;  
for-énss, of a market-place, or the Forum;  
civi-cus, civic, of a citizen;  
fullón-icus, of a fuller;  
mer-acus, pure;  
lác-éus, milky;  
pleb-éius, of the commons, plebeian;  
patr-icius, patrician;  

terra, earth.  
sérus, late.  
collis, hill.  
dívus, god.  
líbertus, one’s freedman.  
quís, who?  
ínfimus, lowest.  
forum, a market-place.  
cívís, a citizen.  
fulló, a fuller.  
merum, pure wine.  
lémína, a woman.  
lác, milk (stem laci-).  
plebés, the commons.  
pater, father.  

2. But especially from proper nouns to denote belonging to or coming from:

Róm-ánus, Roman;  
Sull-ání, Sulla’s veterans;  
Cyzic-éni, Cyzicenes, people of Cyzicus;  
Ligur-ínus, of Liguria;  
Arpín-ás, of Arpinum;  
Sicili-énsis, Sicilian;  
Ilí-acus, Trojan (a Greek form);  
Platón-icus, Platonic;  
Aquil-éius, a Roman name;  
Aquil-éia, a town in Italy;  

Róma, Rome.  
Sulla.  
Cyzicus.  
Liguria.  
Arpinum.  
Sicilia, Sicily.  
Ilium, Troy.  

a. Many derivative adjectives with these endings have by usage become nouns:

Silv-ánus, m., a god of the woods;  
membr-ánna, f., skin;  
Aemili-ánus, m., name of Scipio Africanus;  
lani-énna, f., a butcher’s stall;  
Aufdí-énus, m., a Roman name;  
incol-ínus, m., a lodger;  
Caec-ína, used as m., a Roman name;  
rú-ína, f., a fall;  
doctor-ína, f., learning;  
silva, a wood.  
membrum, limb.  
Aemilia (gêns).  
lanius, butcher.  
†Aufdius (Aufidus).  
incola, an inhabitant.  
caecus, blind.  
rūō, fall (no noun existing).  
doctor, teacher.

Note.—Of these terminations, -ánus, -énus, -ínus are compounded from -nus added to a stem-vowel: as, arca, arca-nus; collis, collínus. The long vowels come from a confusion with verb-stems (as in plé-nus, fini-tus, tribu-tus), and from the noun-stem in á-: as, arcá-nus. A few nouns occur of similar formation, as if from verb-stems in ó- and ú-: as, colá-nus (coló, cf. incola), patrónus (cf. patrō, -āre), tribú-nus (cf. tribuō, tribus), Portú-nus (cf. portus), Vacána (cf. vacó, vacuus).

250. Other adjectives meaning in a general way belonging to (especially of places and times) are formed with the suffixes—
-ter (-tris), -ester (-estris), -timus, -nus, -ernus, -urnus, -ternus (-turnus)

palüs-ter, of the marshes;
pedes-ter, of the foot-soldiers;
sêmès-tris, lasting six months;
silv-ester, silv-estris, woody;
fini-timus, neighboring, on the borders;
mari-timus, of the sea;
vër-nus, vernal;
hodi-ernus, of today;
di-urnus, daily;
hes-ternus, of yesterday;
diù-turnus, lasting;
palüs, a marsh.
pedes, a footman.
sex mënès, six months.
svla, a wood.
fínis, an end.
mare, sea.
vër, spring.
hodië, to-day.
diës, day.
heri (old hesi), yesterday.
dii, long (in time).

Note. — Of these, -ester is formed by adding tri- (cf. tro-, § 234. II. 16) to stems in t- or d-. Thus †pedet-tri- becomes pedestri-, and others follow the analogy. -nus is an inherited suffix (§ 234. II. 4). -ernus and -urnus are formed by adding -nus to s-stems: as, diur-nus (for ḫius-nus), and hence, by analogy, hodiernus (hodië). By an extension of the same principle were formed the suffixes -ternus and -turnus from words like paternus and nocturnus.

a. Adjectives meaning belonging to are formed from nouns by means of the suffixes —

-ārius, -tōrius (-sōrius)

ördin-ārius, regular;
argent-ārius, of silver or money;
extr-ārius, stranger;
meri-tōrius, profitable;
dēvor-sōrius, of an inn (cf. § 254. 5);
ordō, rank, order.
argentum, silver.
extrā, outside.
meritus, earned.
dēversus, turned aside.

Note 1. — Here -ius (§ 234. II. 11) is added to shorter forms in -āris and -or: as, pecū-liārius (from peculiāris), bellātōrius (from bellātor).

Note 2. — These adjectives are often fixed as nouns (see § 254).

Verbal Adjectives

251. Adjectives expressing the action of the verb as a quality or tendency are formed from real or apparent verb-stems with the suffixes —

-āx, -idus, -ulus, -vus (-uus, -īvus, -tīvus)

-āx denotes a faulty or aggressive tendency; -tīvus is oftener passive.

pūgn-āx, pugnacious;
aud-āx, bold;
cup-īdus, eager;
bib-ulus, thirsty (as dry earth etc.);
proter-ūsus, violent, wanton;
pūgnäre, to fight.
audēre, to dare.
cupere, to desire.
bibere, to drink.
pōterere, to trample.
nec-uus (nec-ivus), hurtful, injurious; necère, to do harm.
recid-ivus, restored; recidere, to fall back.
cap-tivus, captive; m., a prisoner of war; capere, to take.

Note. — Of these, -āx is a reduction of -ācus (stem-vowel ā- + -cus), become independent and used with verb-stems. Similar forms in -ēx, -ōx, -īx, and -ūx are found or employed in derivatives: as, imbrex, m., a rain-tile (from imber); senex, old (from seni-s); ferōx, fierce (from ferus); atrōx, savage (from ātēr, black); celōx, r., a yacht (cf. cellō); fēlix, happy, originally fertile (cf. fēliō, suck); fidiōcia, r., confidence (as from fidiōx); cf. also victor (from victor). So mandācus, chewing (from mandō).

-īdus is no definite denominative, as in herbīdus, grassy (from herba, herb); tumīdus, swollen (cf. tumu-lus, hill; tumuli-tus, uproar); callidus, tough, cunning (cf. callum, tough flesh); mūcidus, slimy (cf. mūcus, slime); tābidus, wasting (cf. tābēs, wasting disease). But later it was used to form adjectives directly from verb-stems.

-ulus is the same suffix as in diminutives, but attached to verb-stems. Cf. aemulus, rivalling (cf. imītor and imāgō); sēdulus, sitting by, attentive (cf. domī-seda, home-staying, and sēdō, set, settle, hence calm); pendulus, hanging (cf. pondō, ablative, in weight; perpendiculum, a plummet; appendix, an addition); strāgulus, covering (cf. strāgēs); legulus, a picker (cf. sacri-legus, a picker up of things sacred).

-vus seems originally primary (cf. § 234. I. 8), but -ivus and -tivus have become secondary and are used with nouns: as, aestivus, of summer (from aestus, heat); tempestivus, timely (from tempus); cf. domes-ticus (from domus).

252. Adjectives expressing passive qualities, but occasionally active, are formed by means of the suffixes —
-īlis, -bilis, -ius, -tilis (-silis)
frag-īlis, frail; frangere (frag), to break.
nō-bilis, well known, famous; nōscere (ono), to know.
em-ius, choice, rare (cf. ë-greg-ius); eximere, to take out, select.
ag-īlis, active; agere, to drive.
hab-īlis, handy; habere, to hold.
al-tilis, fattened (see note); alere, to nourish.

Note. — Of these, -ius is primary, but is also used as secondary (cf. § 241. ò). -īlis is both primary (as in agilis, fragilis) and secondary (as in similis, like, cf. ëmos, ëmalos, English same); -bilis is in some way related to -bulum and -brum (§ 240. n.); in -tillus and -sillus, -lis is added to te- (so-), stem of the perfect participle: as, fossilis, dug up (from fossus, dug); volātilis, winged (from volātus, flight).

253. Verbal Adjectives that are Participial in meaning are formed with the suffixes —
-ndus, -bundus, -cundus

a. -ndus (the same as the gerundive ending) forms a few active or reflexive adjectives:
secu-ndus, second (the following), favorable; sequi, to follow.
rotu-ndus, round (whirling) ¹; rotāre, to whirl.

¹ Cf. volvendis mensibus (Aen. i. 269), in the revolving months; cf. oriundī ab Sabinīs (Liv. i. 17), sprung from the Sabines, where oriundī = ortī.
b. -bundus, -cundus, denote a continuance of the act or quality expressed by the verb:

- vitā-bundus, avoiding; vitāre, to shun.
- treme-bundus, trembling; tremere, to tremble.
- mori-bundus, dying, at the point of death; morīri, to die.
- fā-cundus, eloquent; fāri, to speak.
- Fé-cundus, fruitful; root Fé, nourish.
- irā-cundus, irascible; cf. irasci, to be angry.

Note.—These must have been originally nominal: as in the series, rubus, red bush; rubidus (but no trubicus), ruddy; Rubicōn, Red River (cf. Miniō, a river of Etruria; Minius, a river of Lusitania); rubicundus (as in averruncus, homun-culus). So turba, commotion; turbō, a top; turbidus, roily, etc. Cf. apexabō, longabō, gravēdō, dulcēdō.

c. Here belong also the participial suffixes -minus, -mnus (cf. Greek -μενος), from which are formed a few nouns in which the participial force is still discernible:  

1. fé-mina, woman (the nourisher);
   alu-mnus, a foster-child, nursling;

Nouns with Adjective Suffixes

254. Many fixed forms of the Nominal Adjective suffixes mentioned in the preceding sections, make Nouns more or less regularly used in particular senses:

1. -ārius, person employed about anything:
   argent-ārius, m., silversmith, broker, from argentum, silver.
   Corinthi-ārius, m., worker in Corinthian bronze (sarcastic nickname of Augustus), from (aes) Corinthium, Corinthian bronze.
   centōn-ārius, m., ragman, from centō, patchwork.

2. -āria, thing connected with something:
   argent-āria, f., bank, from argentum, silver.
   arēn-āriae, f. plural, sandpits, from arēna, sand.
   Asin-āria, f., name of a play, from asinus, ass.

3. -ārium, place of a thing (with a few of more general meaning):
   aer-ārium, n., treasury, from aes, copper.
   tepid-ārium, n., warm bath, from tepidus, warm.
   süd-ārium, n., a towel, cf. südō, -äre, sweat.
   sal-ārium, n., salt money, salary, from sāl, salt.
   calend-ārium, n., a note-book, from calendae, calends.

1 Cf. § 163. footnote 1.
2 Probably an adjective with fābula, play, understood.
4. -töria (-sória):

Agitā-töria, f., a play of Plautus, The Carter, from agitātor.
vor-sória, f., a lack (nautical), from versus, a turn.

5. -tōrium (-sōrium), place of action (with a few of more general meaning):

dēvor-sōrium, n., an inn, as from dēvortō, turn aside.
audi-tōrium, n., a lecture-room, as from audiō, hear.
ten-tōrium, n., a tent, as from tendō, stretch.
tēc-tōrium, n., plaster, as from tegō, tectus, cover.
por-tōrium, n., toll, cf. portō, carry, and portus, harbor.

6. -ile, animal-stall:

bov-ile, n., cattle-stall, from bōs, bōvis, ox, cow.
olv-ile, n., sheepfold, from ovis, stem ovi-, sheep.

7. -al for -āle, thing connected with the primitive:

capit-al, n., headdress, capital crime, from caput, head.
penetr-āle (especially in plural), n., inner apartment, cf. penetrō, enter.
Sāturm-ālia, n. plural (the regular form for names of festivals), feast of Saturn, from Sāturmus.

8. -ētum, n. (cf. -ātus, -ūtus, see § 246. n.), -tum, place of a thing, especially with names of trees and plants to designate where these grow:

querc-ētum, n., oak grove, from quercus, oak.
olv-ētum, n., olive grove, from oliva, an olive tree.
salic-tum, n., a willow thicket, from salix, a willow tree.
Argil-ētum, n., The Clay Pit, from argilla, clay.

9. -cus (sometimes with inserted i, -icus), -icus, in any one of the genders, with various meanings:

vili-cus, m., a steward, vili-ca, f., a stewardess, from villa, farm-house.
fabr-ica, f., a workshop, from faber, workman.
am-icus, m., am-ica, f., friend, cf. amāre, to love.
būbul-cus, m., ox-tender, from būb-ulus, diminutive, cf. bōs, ox.
cant-icum, n., song, from cantus, act of singing.
rubr-ica, f., red paint, from ruber, red.

10. -eus, -ea, -eum, with various meanings:

alv-eus, m., a trough, from alvus, the belly.
capr-ea, f., a wild she-goat, from caper, he-goat.
flamm-eum, n., a bridal veil, from flamma, flame, from its color.

11. -ter (stem tri-), -aster, -ester:

eques-ter, m., knight, for ūquet-ter.
sequ-ester, m., a stake-holder, from derivative of sequor, follow.
ole-aster, m., wild olive, from olea, an olive tree.
IRREGULAR DERIVATIVES

255. The suffix -ō (genitive -ōnis, stem ēn-), usually added to verb-stems (see § 236. c), is sometimes used with noun-stems to form nouns denoting possessed of. These were originally adjectives expressing quality or character, and hence often appear as proper names:

- epulae, a feast; epul-ō, a feaster.
- nāsus, a nose; nās-ō, with a large nose (also as a proper name).
- volus (in bene-volus), wishing; vol-ōnēs (plural), volunteers.
- frōns, forehead; front-ō, big-head (also as a proper name).
- cūria, a curia; cūri-ō, head of a curia (also as a proper name).
- restis, a rope; resti-ō, a rope-maker.

a. Rarely suffixes are added to compound stems imagined, but not used in their compound form:

- ad-verb-ium, adverb; ad, to, and verbum, verb, but without the intervening adverbus.
- lāti-fund-ium, large estate; lātus, wide, fundus, estate, but without the intervening lātifundus.
- su-ove-taur-ilīa, a sacrifice of a swine, a sheep, and a bull; sūs, swine, ovis, sheep, taurus, bull, where the primitive would be impossible in Latin, though such formations are common in Sanskrit.

DERIVATION OF VERBS

256. Verbs may be classed as Primitive or Derivative.
1. Primitive Verbs are those inherited by the Latin from the parent speech.
2. Derivative Verbs are those formed in the development of the Latin as a separate language.

257. Derivative Verbs are of two main classes:
1. Denominative Verbs, formed from nouns or adjectives.
2. Verbs apparently derived from the stems of other verbs.

Denominative Verbs

258. Verbs were formed in Latin from almost every form of noun-stem and adjective-stem.

259. 1. Verbs of the First Conjugation are formed directly from ā-stems, regularly with a transitive meaning: as, fūga, flight; fūgāre, put to flight.
2. Many verbs of the First Conjugation are formed from o-stems, changing the o into a-. These are more commonly transitive:

- stimulō, -āre, to incite, from stimulus, a goad (stem stimulo-).
- aequō, -āre, to make even, from aequus, even (stem aequo-).
- hibernō, -āre, to pass the winter, from hibernus, of the winter (stem hiberno-).
- albō, -āre, to whiten, from albus, white (stem albo-).
- piō, -āre, to expiate, from pius, pure (stem pio-).
- novō, -āre, to renew, from novus, new (stem novo-).
- armō, -āre, to arm, from arma, arms (stem armo-).
- damnō, -āre, to injure, from damnum, injury (stem damno-).

3. A few verbs, generally intransitive, are formed by analogy from consonant and i- or u-stems, adding a to the stem: —

- vigilō, -āre, to watch, from vigil, awake.
- exsulō, -āre, to be in exile, from exsul, an exile.
- auspicio, -āri, to take the auspices, from auspex (stem auspic-), augur.
- pulverō, -āre, to turn (anything) to dust, from pulvis (stem pulver- for pulvis-), dust.
- aestuō, -āre, to surge, boil, from aestus (stem aestu-), tide, seething.
- levō, -āre, to lighten, from levis (stem levi-), light.

260. A few verbs of the Second Conjugation (generally intransitive) are recognizable as formed from noun-stems; but most are inherited, or the primitive noun-stem is lost:

- albeō, -ēre, to be white, from albus (stem alb%-), white.
- caneo, -ēre, to be hoary, from cânus (stem cán%-), hoary.
- cläreō, -ēre, to shine, from clárus, bright.
- claudeō, -ēre, to be lame, from claudus, lame.
- algeō, -ēre, to be cold, cf. algidus, cold.

261. Some verbs of the Third Conjugation in -uō,-uere, are formed from noun-stems in u- and have lost a consonant i:

- statuō (for †statu-yō), -ere, to set up, from status, position.
- metuō, -ere, to fear, from metus, fear.
- acuō, -ere, to sharpen, from acus, needle.
- arguō, -ere, to clear up, from inherited stem †argu-, bright (cf. ἀργύς).

Note. — Many verbs in u are inherited, being formed from roots in u: as, fluō, fluere, flow; so-lvō (for †śl-luō, cf. λῶ), solvere, dissolve. Some roots have a parasitic u: as, loquor, locūtus, speak.

1 The type of all or most of the denominative formations in §§ 259-262 was inherited, but the process went on in the development of Latin as a separate language.
262. Many i-verbs or verbs of the Fourth Conjugation are formed from i-stems:—

mölior, -iri, to toil, from mølēs (-is), mass.
finiō, -ire, to bound, from finis, end.
sitiō, -ire, to thirst, from sitis, thirst.
stabilō, -ire, to establish, from stabilis, stable.

a. Some arise by confusion from other stems treated as i-stems:—
bullō, -ire, to boil, from bulla (stem bullā-), bubble.
condiō, -ire, to preserve, from condus (stem condo-), storekeeper.
insulaō, -ire, to rave, from insanus (stem insāno-), mad.
gestiō, -ire, to show wild longing, from gestus (stem gestu-), gesture.

Note. — Some of this form are of doubtful origin: as, òrdior, begin, cf. òrdō and exòrdium. The formation is closely akin to that of verbs in -iō of the third conjugation (p. 102).

b. Some are formed with -iō from consonant stems:—
custodiō, -ire, to guard, from custōs (stem custōd-), guardian.
fulguriō, -ire, to lighten, from fulgur, lightning.

Note. — Here probably belong the so-called desideratives in -uriō (see § 263. 4. n.).

Verbs from Other Verbs

263. The following four classes of verbs regularly derived from other verbs have special meanings connected with their terminations.

Note. — These classes are all really denominative in their origin, but the formations had become so associated with actual verbs that new derivatives were often formed directly from verbs without the intervention of a noun-stem.

1. Inceptives or Inchoatives add -scō 1 to the present stem of verbs. They denote the beginning of an action and are of the Third Conjugation. Of some there is no simple verb in existence:—
calē-scō, grow warm, from calēō, be warm.
labā-scō, begin to totter, from labā, totter.
scī-scō, determine, from sciō, know.
con-cupī-scō, conceive a desire for, from cupīō, desire.
alē-scō, grow, from alē, feed.
So īrā-scōr, get angry; cf. īrā-tus.
iuvenē-scō, grow young; cf. iuvenis, young man.
mitē-scō, grow mild; cf. mitis, mild.
vesperā-scit, it is getting late; cf. vesper, evening.

1 For -scō in primary formation, see § 176. b. 1.
Note. — Inceptives properly have only the present stem, but many use the perfect and supine systems of simple verbs: as, calēscō, grow warm, calui; ārdēscō, blaze forth, ārsī; proficīscor, set out, profectus.

2. Intensives or Iteratives are formed from the Supine stem and end in-tō or -tō (rarely -sō). They denote a forcible or repeated action, but this special sense often disappears. Those derived from verbs of the First Conjugation end in -itō (not -ātō).

_iac-tō_, hurl, from _iacē_, throw.
_dormi-tō_, be sleepy, from _dormē_, sleep.
_vol-itō_, flit, from _volē_, fly.
_vēndi-tō_, try to sell, from _vēndē_, sell.
_qua-sō_, shatter, from _qua-tī_, shake.

They are of the first conjugation, and are properly denominative.

a. Compound suffixes -titō, -sitō, are formed with a few verbs. These are probably derived from other Iteratives; thus, _cantītō_ may come from _cantō_, iterative of _cano_, sing.

b. Another form of Intensives — sometimes called Meditatives, or verbs of practice — ends in -essō (rarely -issō). These denote a certain energy or eagerness of action rather than its repetition:

_cap-essō_, lay hold on, from _capī_, take.
_fac-essō_, do (with energy), from _facī_, do.
_pet-esse_, _pet-issē_, seek (eagerly), from _petī_, seek.

These are of the third conjugation, usually having the perfect and supine of the fourth:

_arcessō_, _arcessēre_, _arcessīvī_, _arcessītum_, summon.
_lacessō_, _lacessēre_, _lacessīvī_, _lacessītum_, provoke.

Note. — The verbs in -essō, -issō, show the same formation as _levāssō_, _impetrāssere_, _iūdīcāssit_, etc. (§ 183. 5), but its origin is not fully explained.

3. Diminutives end in -illō, and denote a feeble or petty action:

_cav-illō_, jest, cf. _cavilla_, raillery.
_cant-illō_, chirp or warble, from _cantō_, sing.

Note. — Diminutives are formed from verb-stems derived from real or supposed diminutive nouns.

4. Desideratives end in -turiō (-suriō), and express longing or wishing. They are of the fourth conjugation, and only two are in common use:

_par-turiō_, be in labor, from _parī_, bring forth.
_ē-suriō_ (for _ē-turiō_), be hungry, from _ēdē_, eat.

Others are used by the dramatists.

Note. — Desideratives are probably derived from some noun of agency: as, _emptūriō_, wish to buy, from _emptōr_, buyer. _Visō_, go to see, is an inherited desiderative of a different formation.
COMPOUND WORDS

264. A Compound Word is one whose stem is made up of two or more simple stems.

a. A final stem-vowel of the first member of the compound usually disappears before a vowel, and usually takes the form of i before a consonant. Only the second member receives inflection.\(^1\)

b. Only noun-stems can be thus compounded. A preposition, however, often becomes attached to a verb.

265. New stems are formed by Composition in three ways:—

1. The second part is simply added to the first:—
   su-ove-taurilia (süs, ovis, taurus), the sacrifice of a swine, a sheep, and a bull (cf. § 255. a).
   septen-decim (septem, decem), seventeen.

2. The first part modifies the second as an adjective or adverb (Determinative Compounds):—
   lāti-fundium (lātus, fundus), a large landed estate.
   omni-potēns (omnis, potēns), omnipotent.

3. The first part has the force of a case, and the second a verbal force (Objective Compounds):—
   agri-cola (ager, field, †cola akin to colō, cultivate), a farmer.
   armi-ger (arma, arms, †ger akin to gerō, carry), armor-bearer.
   corni-cen (cornū, horn, †cen akin to canō, sing), horn-blower.
   carnī-fex (carō, flesh, †fex akin to faciō, make), executioner.

a. Compounds of the above kinds, in which the last word is a noun, may become adjectives, meaning possessed of the quality denoted:—
   āli-pēs (āla, wing, pēs, foot), wing-footed.
   māgn-animus (māgnus, great, animus, soul), great-souled.
   an-ceps (amb-, at both ends, caput, head), double.

Note. — Many compounds of the above classes appear only in the form of some further derivative, the proper compound not being found in Latin.

\(^1\) The second part generally has its usual inflection; but, as this kind of composition is in fact older than inflection, the compounded stem sometimes has an inflection of its own (as, cornicen, -cenis; lūcifer, -ferī; īūdex, -dicis), from stems not occurring in Latin. Especially do compound adjectives in Latin take the form of i-stems: as, animus, exanimis; nōrma, abnōrmis (see § 73). In composition, stems regularly have their uninflected form: as, igni-spicium, divining by fire. But in o- and ē-stems the final vowel of the stem appears as i-, as in āli-pēs (from āla, stem ālā-); and i- is so common a termination of compounded stems, that it is often added to stems which do not properly have it: as, flōri-comus, flower-crowned (from flōs, flōr-is, and coma, hair).
Syntactic Compounds

266. In many apparent compounds, complete words — not stems — have grown together in speech. These are not strictly compounds in the etymological sense. They are called Syntactic Compounds. Examples are:

a. Compounds of faciō, factō, with an actual or formerly existing noun-stem confounded with a verbal stem in ē-. These are causative in force:
   cōnsūē-faciō, habituate (cf. cōnsūē-scō, become accustomed).
   cale-faciō, cale-factō, to heat (cf. calē-scō, grow warm).

b. An adverb or noun combined with a verb:
   bene-dīcō (bene, well, dīcō, speak), to bless.
   satis-faciō (satis, enough, faciō, do), to do enough (for).

c. Many apparent compounds of stems:
   fide-iubeo (fide, surety, iubeo, command), to give surety.
   mān-suētus (manuī, to the hand, suētus, accustomed), tame.
   Mārci-por (Mārcī puer), slave of Marcus.
   Iuppiter (Īū, old vocative, and pater), father Jove.
   anim-adverto (animum advertō), attend to, punish.

d. A few phrases forced into the ordinary inflections of nouns:
   prō-cōnsul, proconsul (for prō cōnsule, instead of a consul).
   trium-vir, triumvir (singular from trium virōrum).
   septen-trīō, the Bear, a constellation (supposed singular of septem trīōnēs, the Seven Plough-Oxen).

In all these cases it is to be observed that words, not stems, are united.

267. Many syntactic compounds are formed by prefixing a Particle to some other part of speech.

a. Prepositions are often prefixed to Verbs. In these compounds the prepositions retain their original adverbial sense:
   ā, ab, away: ā-mittere, to send away.
   ad, to, towards: af-ferre (ad-ferō), to bring.
   ante, before: ante-ferre, to prefer; ante-cellere, to excel.
   circum, around: circum-munire, to fortify completely.
   com-, con- (cum), together or forcibly: cōn-ferre, to bring together; col-locare, to set firm.
   dē, down, utterly: dē-spicere, despise; dē-struere, destroy.
   ē, ex, out: ef-ferre (ec-ferō), to carry forth, uplift.
   in (with verbs), in, on, against: in-ferre, to bear against.
   inter, between, to pieces: inter-rumpere, to interrupt.
   ob, towards, to meet: of-ferre, to offer; ob-venire, to meet.
   sub, under, up from under: sub-struere, to build beneath; sub-dūcere, to lead up.
   super, upon, over and above: super-fluere, to overflow.
Note 1.—In such compounds, however, the prepositions sometimes have their
ordinary force as prepositions, especially ad, in, circum, trāns, and govern the case of
a noun: as, trānsire flūmen, to cross a river (see § 388. b).
Note 2.—Short a of the root is weakened to i before one consonant, to e before
two: as, faciō, cōniciō, cōnfactus; iaciō, ēiciō, ēlectus. But long a is retained: as, perāctus.

b. Verbs are also compounded with the following inseparable particles,
which do not appear as prepositions in Latin: —

amb- (am-, an-), around: amb-ire, to go about (cf. ἀμφι, about).
dis-, di-, asunder, apart: dis-cēdere, to depart (cf. duo, two); dī-vidēre, to
divide.
por-, forward: por-tendere, to hold forth, predict (cf. porrō, forth).
red-, re-, back, again: red-ire, to return; re-clūdere, to open (from claudō,
shut); re-ficere, to repair (make again).
sēd-, sē-, apart: sē-cernē, to separate; cf. sēd-itiō, a going apart, secession
(eō, ire, to go).

c. Many Verbals are found compounded with a preposition, like the
verbs to which they correspond: —

per-fuga, deserter; cf. per-fugiō.
trā-duux, vine-branch; cf. trā-duucō (trāns-duucō).
ad-vena, stranger; cf. ad-veniō.
con-iux (con-iuxx), spouse; cf. con-iungō.
in-dex, pointer out; cf. in-dicō.
praeh-ses, guardian; cf. praeh-sideō.
com-bibō, boon companion; cf. com-bibo, -ere.

d. An Adjective is sometimes modified by an adverbial prefix.
1. Of these, per- (less commonly praeh-), very; sub-, somewhat; in-, not, are
regular, and are very freely prefixed to adjectives: —

per-māgnus, very large.
per-pauci, very few.
sub-rūsticus, rather clownish.
sub-fuscus, darkish.
praeh-longus, very long.
in-nocuus, harmless.
in-imicus, unfriendly.
in-sānus, insane.
in-finitus, boundless.
im-pūrus, impure.

Note.—Per and sub, in these senses, are also prefixed to verbs: as, per-terreo,
terrify; sub-rideō, smile. In ignōscō, pardon, in- appears to be the negative prefix.

2. The negative in- sometimes appears in combination with an adjective
that does not occur alone: —

in-ermis, unarmed (cf. arma, arms).
im-bellis, unwarlike (cf. bellum, war).
im-pūnis, without punishment (cf. poena, punishment).
in-teger, untouched, whole (cf. tangō, to touch, root tag).
in-vitus, unwilling (probably from root seen in vi-s, thou wishest).
PART SECOND—SYNTAX

INTRODUCTORY NOTE

268. The study of formal grammar arose at a late period in the history of language, and dealt with language as a fully developed product. Accordingly the terms of Syntax correspond to the logical habits of thought and forms of expression that had grown up at such a period, and have a logical as well as a merely grammatical meaning. But a developed syntactical structure is not essential to the expression of thought. A form of words—like ē puerum pulchrum! oh! beautiful boy—expresses a thought and might even be called a sentence; though it does not logically declare anything, and does not, strictly speaking, make what is usually called a sentence at all.

At a very early period of spoken language, word-forms were no doubt significant in themselves, without inflections, and constituted the whole of language,—just as to a child the name of some familiar object will stand for all he can say about it. At a somewhat later stage, such uninflected words put side by side made a rudimentary form of proposition: as a child might say fire bright; horse run. With this began the first form of logical distinction, that of Subject and Predicate; but as yet there was no distinction in form between noun and verb, and no fixed distinction in function. At a later stage forms were differentiated in function and,—by various processes of composition which cannot be fully traced—Inflections were developed. These served to express person, tense, case, and other grammatical relations, and we have true Parts of Speech.

Not until language reached this last stage was there any fixed limit to the association of words, or any rule prescribing the manner in which they should be combined. But gradually, by usage, particular forms came to be limited to special functions (as nouns, verbs, adjectives), and fixed customs arose of combining words into what we now call Sentences. These customs are in part the result of general laws or modes of thought (logic), resulting from our habits of mind (General Grammar); and in part are what may be called By-Laws, established by custom in a given language (Particular Grammar), and making what is called the Syntax of that language.

In the fully developed methods of expression to which we are almost exclusively accustomed, the unit of expression is the Sentence: that is, the completed statement, with its distinct Subject and Predicate. Originally sentences were simple. But two simple sentence-forms may be used together, without the grammatical subordination of either, to express a more complex form of thought than could be denoted by one alone. This is parataxis (arrangement side by side). Since, however, the two sentences, independent in form, were in fact used to express parts of a complex whole and were therefore mutually dependent, the sense of unity found expression in conjunctions, which denoted the grammatical subordination of the one to the other. This is hypotaxis (arrangement under, subordination). In this way, through various stages of development, which correspond to our habitual modes of thought, there were produced various forms of complex sentences. Thus, to express the complex idea I beseech you to pardon me, the two simple sentence-forms quæsō and ignōscās were used side by side, quæsō ignōscās; then the feeling of grammatical subordination found expression in a conjunction, quæsō ut ignōscās, forming a complex sentence. The results of these processes constitute the subject-matter of Syntax.

163
THE SENTENCE

Kinds of Sentences

269. A Sentence is a form of words which contains a Statement, a Question, an Exclamation, or a Command.

a. A sentence in the form of a Statement is called a Declarative Sentence: as, — canis currit, the dog runs.

b. A sentence in the form of a Question is called an Interrogative Sentence: as, — canisne currit? does the dog run?

c. A sentence in the form of an Exclamation is called an Exclamatory Sentence: as, — quam celeriter currit canis! how fast the dog runs!

d. A sentence in the form of a Command, an Exhortation, or an Entreaty is called an Imperative Sentence: as, — i, curre per Alpis, go, run across the Alps; currat canis, let the dog run.

Subject and Predicate

270. Every sentence consists of a Subject and a Predicate.

The Subject of a sentence is the person or thing spoken of. The Predicate is that which is said of the Subject.

Thus in canis currit, the dog runs, canis is the subject, and currit the predicate.

271. The Subject of a sentence is usually a Noun or Pronoun, or some word or group of words used as a Noun: —

equites ad Caesarem venerunt, the cavalry came to Cæsar.
humanum est errare, to err is human.
quaeritur num mors malum sit, the question is whether death is an evil.

a. But in Latin the subject is often implied in the termination of the verb: —

sedemus, we sit. curritis, you run. inquit, says he.

272. The Predicate of a sentence may be a Verb (as in canis currit, the dog runs), or it may consist of some form of sum and a Noun or Adjective which describes or defines the subject (as in Caesar consul erat, Cæsar was consul).

Such a noun or adjective is called a Predicate Noun or Adjective, and the verb sum is called the Copula (i.e. the connective).

Thus in the example given, Caesar is the subject, consul the predicate noun, and erat the copula (see § 283).
Transitive and Intransitive Verbs

273. Verbs are either Transitive or Intransitive.

1. A Transitive Verb has or requires a direct object to complete its sense (see § 274) as,—frātem cecidit, he slew his brother.

2. An Intransitive Verb admits of no direct object to complete its sense:

   cadō, I fall (or am falling).  sōl lūcet, the sun shines (or is shining).

Note 1.—Among transitive verbs Factitive Verbs are sometimes distinguished as a separate class. These state an act which produces the thing expressed by the word which completes their sense. Thus mēnsam fēcit, he made a table (which was not in existence before), is distinguished from mēnsam percussit, he struck a table (which already existed).

Note 2.—A transitive verb may often be used absolutely, i.e. without any object expressed: as,—arāt, he is ploughing, where the verb does not cease to be transitive because the object is left indefinite, as we see by adding,—quid, what? agrum suum, his land.

Note 3.—Transitive and Intransitive Verbs are often called Active and Neuter Verbs respectively.

Object

274. The person or thing immediately affected by the action of a verb is called the Direct Object.

A person or thing indirectly affected by the action of a verb is called the Indirect Object.

Only transitive verbs can have a Direct Object; but an Indirect Object may be used with both transitive and intransitive verbs (§§ 362, 366):

   pater vocat filium (direct object), the father calls his son.
   mihi (ind. obj.) agrum (dir. obj.) ostendit, he showed me a field.
   mihi (ind. obj.) placet, it is pleasing to me.

Note.—The distinction between transitive and intransitive verbs is not a fixed distinction, for most transitive verbs may be used intransitively, and many verbs usually intransitive may take a direct object and so become transitive (§ 388. a).

a. With certain verbs, the Genitive, Dative, or Ablative is used where the English, from a difference in meaning, requires the direct object (Objective):

   hominem videō, I see the man (Accusative).
   hominī servīō, I serve the man (Dative, see § 367).
   hominis misereor, I pity the man (Genitive, see § 354. a).
   homine amīcō ūtor, I treat the man as a friend (Ablative, see § 410).
b. Many verbs transitive in Latin are rendered into English by an intransitive verb with a preposition:—

petit aprum, he aims at the boar.
laudem affectat, he strives after praise.
cūrat valētūdinem, he takes care of his health.
meum cāsum doluērunt, they grieved at my misfortune.
ridet nostram āmentiam (Quinct. 55), he laughs at our stupidity.

275. When a transitive verb is changed from the Active to the Passive voice, the Direct Object becomes the Subject and is put in the Nominative case:—

Active: pater filium vocat, the father calls his son.
Passive: filius ā patre vocātur, the son is called by his father.
Active: lūnam et stellās vidēmus, we see the moon and the stars.
Passive: lūna et stellae videntur, the moon and stars are seen (appear).

Modification

276. A Subject or a Predicate may be modified by a single word, or by a group of words (a phrase or a clause).

The modifying word or group of words may itself be modified in the same way.

a. A single modifying word may be an adjective, an adverb, an appositive (§ 282), or the oblique case of a noun.

Thus in the sentence vir fortis patienter fert, a brave man endures patiently, the adjective fortis, brave, modifies the subject vir, man, and the adverb patienter, patiently, modifies the predicate fert, endures.

b. The modifying word is in some cases said to limit the word to which it belongs.

Thus in the sentence puerī patrem videō, I see the boy’s father, the genitive puerī limits patrem (by excluding any other father).

277. A Phrase is a group of words, without subject or predicate of its own, which may be used as an Adjective or an Adverb.

Thus in the sentence vir fuit summā nōbilitāte, he was a man of the highest nobility, the words summā nōbilitāte, of the highest nobility, are used for the adjective nōbilis, noble (or nōbilissimus, very noble), and are called an Adjective Phrase.

So in the sentence māgnā celeritāte vēnit, he came with great speed, the words māgnā celeritāte, with great speed, are used for the adverb celeriter, quickly (or celerrimē, very quickly), and are called an Adverbial Phrase.
Clauses and Sentences

278. Sentences are either Simple or Compound.

1. A sentence containing a single statement is called a Simple Sentence.

2. A sentence containing more than one statement is called a Compound Sentence, and each single statement in it is called a Clause.

a. If one statement is simply added to another, the clauses are said to be Coördinate. They are usually connected by a Coördinate Conjunction (§ 223. a); but this is sometimes omitted: —

divide et imperā, divide and control. But, —
vēnī, vidi, vici, I came, I saw, I conquered.

b. If one statement modifies another in any way, the modifying clause is said to be Subordinate, and the clause modified is called the Main Clause.

This subordination is indicated by some connecting word, either a Subordinate Conjunction (§ 223. b) or a Relative: —

ōderint dum metuant, let them hate so long as they fear.
servum mīsit quem sēcum habēbat, he sent the slave whom he had with him.

A sentence containing one or more subordinate clauses is sometimes called Complex.

Note. — A subordinate clause may itself be modified by other subordinate clauses.

279. Subordinate Clauses are of various kinds.

a. A clause introduced by a Relative Pronoun or Relative Adverb is called a Relative Clause: —

Mosa prōfluit ex monte Vosegō, qui est in finibus Lingonum (B. G. iv. 10),
the Meuse rises in the Vosges mountains, which are on the borders of the Lingones.

For Relative Pronouns (or Relative Adverbs) serving to connect independent sentences, see § 308. f.

b. A clause introduced by an Adverb of Time is called a Temporal Clause: —

cum tacēnt, clāmant (Cat. i. 21), while they are silent, they cry aloud.
hominēs aegri morbō gravi, cum iactantur aestū febrīque, sī aquam gelidam biberint, prīmō relevārī videntur (id. i. 31), men suffering with a severe sickness, when they are tossing with the heat of fever, if they drink cold water, seem at first to be relieved.
c. A clause containing a Condition, introduced by si, if (or some equivalent expression), is called a Conditional Clause. A sentence containing a conditional clause is called a Conditional Sentence.

Thus, si aquam gelidam biberint, primō relevāri videntur (in b, above) is a Conditional Sentence, and si . . . biberint is a Conditional Clause.

da. A clause expressing the Purpose of an action is called a Final Clause:

edō ut vīvam, I eat to live (that I may live).
misit lēgātōs qui dicerent, he sent ambassadors to say (who should say).

e. A clause expressing the Result of an action is called a Consecutive Clause:

tam longē aberam ut nōn vidērem, I was too far away to see (so far away that I did not see).

AGREEMENT

280. A word is said to agree with another when it is required by usage to be in the same Gender, Number, Case, or Person. The following are the general forms of agreement, sometimes called the Four Concords:

1. The agreement of the Noun in Apposition or as Predicate (§§ 281–284).
2. The agreement of the Adjective with its Noun (§ 286).
3. The agreement of the Relative with its Antecedent (§ 305).
4. The agreement of the Finite Verb with its Subject (§ 316).

a. A word sometimes takes the gender or number, not of the word with which it should regularly agree, but of some other word implied in that word.

This use is called Synesis, or cōnstrucṭiō ad sēnsum (construction according to sense).

AGREEMENT OF NOUNS

281. A noun used to describe another, and denoting the same person or thing, agrees with it in Case.

The descriptive noun may be either an Appositive (§ 282) or a Predicate noun (§ 283).

1 Observe that the classes defined in a–e are not mutually exclusive, but that a single clause may belong to several of them at once. Thus a relative clause is usually subordinate, and may be at the same time temporal or conditional; and subordinate clauses may be coordinate with each other.
Apposition

282. A noun used to describe another, and standing in the same part of the sentence with the noun described, is called an Appositive, and is said to be in apposition: —

externus timor, maximum concordiae vinculum, iungēbat animōs (Liv. ii. 39), fear of the foreigner, the chief bond of harmony, united their hearts. [Here the appositive belongs to the subject.]

quattuor hic primum ōmen equōs vidi (Aen. iii. 587), I saw here four horses, the first omen. [Here both nouns are in the predicate.]

litterās Graecās senex didici (Cat. M. 26), I learned Greek when an old man. [Here senex, though in apposition with the subject of didici, really states something further: viz., the time, condition, etc., of the act (Predicate Apposition).]

a. Words expressing parts may be in apposition with a word including the parts, or vice versa (Partitive Apposition): —

Nec P. Popilius neque Q. Metellus, clārissimi virī atque amplissimi, vim tribūniciam sustinēre potuerunt (Clu. 95), neither Publius Popilius nor Quintus Metellus, [both of them] distinguished and honorable men, could withstand the power of the tribunes.

Gnaeus et Pūblius Scipūnēs, Cneius and Publius Scipio (the Scipios).

b. An Adjective may be used as an appositive: —

ea Sex. Rōscium inopem recepit (Rosc. Am. 27), she received Sextus Roscius in his poverty (needy).

c. An appositive generally agrees with its noun in Gender and Number when it can: —

sequuntur nātūram, optimam ducem (Lael. 19), they follow nature, the best guide.

omnia doctrinārum inventricēs Athēnās (De Or. i. 13), Athens, discoverer of all learning.

Note. — But such agreement is often impossible: as, —ōlim truncus eram ficulnus, inūtile lignum (Hor. S. i. 8. 1), I once was a fig-tree trunk, a useless log.

d. A common noun in apposition with a Locative (§ 427) is put in the Ablative, with or without the preposition in: —

Antiochiae, celebrē quondam urbe (Arch. 4), at Antioch, once a famous city.

Albae cōnstitērunt, in urbe mūnītā (Phil. iv. 6), they halted at Alba, a fortified town.

For a Genitive in apposition with a Possessive Pronoun or an Adjective, see § 302. e.

For the so-called Appositional Genitive, see § 343. d.

For the construction with nōmen est, see § 373. a.
Predicate Noun or Adjective

283. With sum and a few other intransitive or passive verbs, a noun or an adjective describing or defining the subject may stand in the predicate. This is called a Predicate Noun or Adjective.

The verb sum is especially common in this construction, and when so used is called the copula (i.e. connective).

Other verbs which take a predicate noun or adjective are the so-called copulative verbs signifying to become, to be made, to be named, to appear, and the like.

284. A Predicate Noun or Adjective after the copula sum or a copulative verb is in the same case as the Subject: —

pācis semper auctor fūt (Lig. 28), I have always been an adviser of peace.
quae pertinācia quibusdam, eadem aliis cōnstantia vidērī potest (Marc. 31),
what may seem obstinacy to some, may seem to others consistency.
ēius mortis sedētis uitōrēs (Mil. 79), you sit as avengers of his death.
habeātur vir ēgregius Paulus (Cat. iv. 21), let Paulus be regarded as an extraordinary man.

ego patrōnus exstītī (Rosc. Am. 5), I have come forward as an advocate.
dicit nōn omnis bonōs esse beātōs, he says that not all good men are happy.

a. A predicate noun referring to two or more singular nouns is in the plural: —
cōnsulēs creantur Caesar et Servilius (B. C. iii. 1), Caesar and Servilius are elected consuls.

b. Sum in the sense of exist makes a complete predicate without a predicate noun or adjective. It is then called the substantive verb: —
sunt virī fortēs, there are (exist) brave men. [Cf. vixēre fortēs ante Agamemnona (Hor. Od. iv. 9. 25), brave men lived before Agamemnon.]

For Predicate Accusative and Predicate Ablative, see §§ 392, 415. n.

AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES

Attributive and Predicate Adjectives

285. Adjectives are either Attributive or Predicate.

1. An Attributive Adjective simply qualifies its noun without the intervention of a verb or participle, expressed or implied: as, —bonus imperātor, a good commander; stellae lūcidae, bright stars; verbum Graecum, a Greek word.
2. All other adjectives are called Predicate Adjectives:—

stellae lúcidae erant, the stars were bright.
sit Scépiō clárus (Cat. iv. 21), let Scipio be illustrious.
hominës mitís reddidit (Inv. i. 2), has rendered men mild.
tria praedia Capitónií pròpria tràduntur (Rosc. Am. 21), three farms are handed over to Capito as his own.
cónsiliúm cèpérunt plènum sceleris (id. 28), they formed a plan full of villany.

Note. — A predicate adjective may be used with sum or a copulative verb (§ 283); it may have the construction of a predicate accusative after a verb of naming, calling, or the like (§ 393. n.); or it may be used in apposition like a noun (§ 282. b).

Rules of Agreement

286. Adjectives, Adjective Pronouns, and Participles agree with their nouns in Gender, Number, and Case:—

vir fortis, a brave man.
illa mulier, that woman.
urbium mánürnberg, of great cities.
cum ducentis militibus, with two hundred soldiers.
imperator victus est, the general was beaten.
secútæ sunt tempestátès, storms followed.

Note. — All rules for the agreement of adjectives apply also to adjective pronouns and to participles.

a. With two or more nouns the adjective is regularly plural, but often agrees with the nearest (especially when attributive):—

Nísus et Euryalus prími (Aen. v. 294), Nísus and Euryalus first.
Caesaris omní et grátiá et opibus fruor (Fam. i. 9. 21), I enjoy all Caesar’s favor and resources.

Note. — An adjective referring to two nouns connected by the preposition cum is occasionally plural (synesis, § 280. a): as, — Iuba cum Labiénó captí (B. Afr. 52), Juba and Labienus were taken.

b. A collective noun may take an adjective of a different gender and number agreeing with the gender and number of the individuals implied (synesis, § 280. a):—

pars certáre pràtí (Aen. v. 108), a part ready to contend.
colóniae alíquot déductae, Priscí Latíní appelláti (Liv. i. 3), several colonies were planted (led out) [of men] called Old Latins.
multitúdó convictí sunt (Tac. Ann. xv. 44), a multitude were convicted.
mágnæ pars raptæ (id. i. 9), a large part [of the women] were seized.

Note. — A superlative in the predicate rarely takes the gender of a partitive genitive by which it is limited: as, — velícíssimum animálium delphínus est (Plin. N. H. ix. 20), the dolphin is the swiftest [creature] of creatures.
287. One adjective may belong in sense to two or more nouns of different genders. In such cases,—

1. An Attributive Adjective agrees with the nearest noun:—
   multae operae ac labōris, of much trouble and toil.
   vita mōrēsque mei, my life and character.
   si rēs, si vir, si tempus ūllum dignum fuit (Mil. 19), if any thing, if any man, if any time was fit.

2. A Predicate Adjective may agree with the nearest noun, if the nouns form one connected idea:—
   factus est strepitus et admurmūrātīō (Verr. i. 45), a noise of assent was made (noise and murmur).
   Note. —This is only when the copula agrees with the nearest subject (§ 317. c).

3. But generally, a Predicate Adjective will be masculine, if nouns of different genders mean living beings; neuter, if things without life:—
   uxor deinde ac liberī amplexī (Liv. ii. 40), then his wife and children embraced him.
   labor (m.) volūtāsque (f.) societāte quādam inter sē nātūrālī sunt iūncta (n.) (id. v. 4), labor and delight are bound together by a certain natural alliance.

4. If nouns of different genders include both living beings and things without life, a Predicate Adjective is sometimes masculine (or feminine), sometimes neuter, and sometimes agrees in gender with the nearest if that is plural:—
   rēx rēgiaque classis ūnā profectī (Liv. xxi. 50), the king and the royal fleet set out together.
   nātūrā inimica sunt liberā cívītās et rēx (id. xliii. 24), by nature a free state and a king are hostile.
   légātōs sortēsque ōrāculī exspectandās (id. v. 15), that the ambassadors and the replies of the oracle should be waited for.

a. Two or more abstract nouns of the same gender may have a Predicate Adjective in the neuter plural (cf. § 289. c):—
   stultitīa et temerītās et inīustitīa . . . sunt fugienda (Fin. iii. 39), folly, rashness, and injustice are [things] to be shunned.

Adjectives used Substantively

288. Adjectives are often used as Nouns (substantively), the masculine usually to denote men or people in general of that kind, the feminine women, and the neuter things:—
omnēs, all men (everybody).
máiōrēs, ancestors.
Rōmānī, Romans.
liberta, a freedwoman.
sapiēns, a sage (philosopher).
boni, the good (good people).

omnia, all things (everything).
minōrēs, descendents.
barbari, barbarians.
Sabinae, the Sabine wives.
amīcus, a friend.
bona, goods, property.

Note.—The plural of adjectives, pronouns, and participles is very common in this use. The singular is comparatively rare except in the neuter (§ 289. a, c) and in words that have become practically nouns.

a. Certain adjectives have become practically nouns, and are often modified by other adjectives or by the possessive genitive:—
tuus vicinus proximus, your next-door neighbor.
propinqui cēteri, his other relatives.
meus aequalis, a man of my own age.
ēius familiāris Catilīna (Har. Resp. 5), his intimate friend Catiline.
Leptae nostrī familiārissimus (Fam. ix. 13. 2), a very close friend of our friend Leptā.

b. When ambiguity would arise from the substantive use of an adjective, a noun must be added:—
boni, the good; omnia, everything (all things); but, —
potentia omnium rērum, power over everything.

c. Many adjectives are used substantively either in the singular or the plural, with the added meaning of some noun which is understood from constant association:—
Āfricus [ventus], the southwest wind; Iānuārius [mēnsis], January; vitulīna [carō], veal (calf’s flesh); fera [bēstia], a wild beast; patria [terra], the fatherland; Gallīa [terra], Gaul (the land of the Galli); hiberna [castra], winter quarters; trīrēmis [nāvis], a three-banked galley, trireme; argentārius [faber], a silversmith; rēgīa [domus], the palace; Latīnae [fēriae], the Latin festival.

Note.—These adjectives are specific in meaning, not generic like those in § 288. They include the names of winds and months (§ 31).
For Nouns used as Adjectives, see § 321. c.
For Adverbs used like Adjectives, see § 321. d.

289. Neuter Adjectives are used substantively in the following special senses:—
a. The neuter singular may denote either a single object or an abstract quality:—
raptō vivere, to live by plunder. in āridō, on dry ground.
honestum, an honorable act, or virtue (as a quality).
opus est mātūrātō, there is need of haste. [Cf. impersonal passives, § 208. d.]
b. The neuter plural is used to signify objects in general having the quality denoted, and hence may stand for the abstract idea: —

honesta, honorable deeds (in general). praeterita, the past (lit., bygones).

omnēs fortia laudant, all men praise bravery (brave things).

c. A neuter adjective may be used as an appositive or predicate noun with a noun of different gender (cf. § 287. a):

triste lupus stabulis (Ecl. iii. 80), the wolf [is] a grievous thing for the fold.

varium et mútābile semper fēmina (Aen. iv. 569), woman is ever a changing and fickle thing.

malum mihi vidētur esse mors (Tusc. i. 9), death seems to me to be an evil.

d. A neuter adjective may be used as an attributive or a predicate adjective with an infinitive or a substantive clause:

istuc ipsum nōn esse (Tusc. i. 12), that very "not to be."

hūmānum est errāre, to err is human.

aliud est errāre Caesarem nōlle, aliud nōlle miserērī (Lig. 16), it is one thing to be unwilling that Caesar should err, another to be unwilling that he should pity.

Adjectives with Adverbial Force

290. An adjective, agreeing with the subject or object, is often used to qualify the action of the verb, and so has the force of an adverb:

prīmus vēnit, he was the first to come (came first).

nūllus dubitō, I no way doubt.

laeti audīère, they were glad to hear.

erat Rōmae frequēns (Rosc. Am. 16), he was often at Rome.

sērus in caelum redeās (Hor. Od. i. 2. 45), mayst thou return late to heaven.

Comparatives and Superlatives

291. Besides their regular signification (as in English), the forms of comparison are used as follows:

a. The Comparative denotes a considerable or excessive degree of a quality: as, — brevior, rather short; audācior, too bold.

b. The Superlative (of eminence) often denotes a very high degree of a quality without implying a distinct comparison: as, — mōns altissimus, a very high mountain.

Note. — The Superlative of Eminence is much used in complimentary references to persons and may often be translated by the simple positive.
c. With quam, vel, or unus the Superlative denotes the highest possible degree: —

quam plūrimī, as many as possible.
vel maximē potest (maximē quam potest), as much as can be.
vir minimus, the very least.

Note. — A high degree of a quality is also denoted by such adverbs as admodūm, valē, very, or by per or præ in composition (§ 267. d. 1): as, — valē malus, very bad = pessimus; permāgnus, very great; praealtus, very high (or deep).

Note 2. — A low degree of a quality is indicated by sub in composition: as, — subrūsticus, rather clownish, or by minus, not very; minimē, not at all; parum, not enough; nōn satis, not much.

Note 3. — The comparative māiōrēs (for māiōrēs nātū, greater by birth) has the special signification of ancestors; so minōrēs often means descendants.

For the Superlative with quisque, see § 313. b. For the construction of a substantive after a Comparative, see §§ 406, 407; for that of a clause, see § 535. c, 571. a. For the Ablative of Degree of Difference with a Comparative (multō etc.), see § 414.

292. When two qualities of an object are compared, both adjectives are in the Comparative:

longior quam lātior acīēs erat (Liv. xxvii. 48), the line was longer than it was broad (or, rather long than broad).

vērior quam grātior (id. xxii. 38), more true than agreeable.

Note. — So also with adverbs: as, — libentius quam vērius (Mīl. 78), with more freedom than truth.

a. Where magis is used, both adjectives are in the positive:

disertus magis quam sapiēns (Att. x. 1. 4), eloquent rather than wise.
clāri magis quam honestī (Iug. 8), more renowned than honorable.

Note. — A comparative and a positive, or even two positives, are sometimes connected by quam. This use is rarer and less elegant than those before noticed:

clāris māiōribus quam vetustīs (Tac. Ann. iv. 61), of a family more famous than old.

vekementius quam cautē (Tac. Agr. 4), with more fury than good heed.

293. Superlatives (and more rarely Comparatives) denoting order and succession — also mediūs, [cēterus], reliquus — usually designate not what object, but what part of it, is meant: —

summus mōns, the top of the hill.
in ultimā plateā, at the end of the place.
prior āctīō, the earlier part of an action.

reliqui captīvī, the rest of the prisoners.
in colle mediō (B. G. i. 24), half way up the hill (on the middle of the hill).

inter cēteram plānitiem (Iug. 92), in a region elsewhere level.

Note. — A similar use is found in sērā (multā) nocte, late at night, and the like. But medium viae, the middle of the way; multum diēī, much of the day, also occur.
PRONOUNS

294. A Pronoun indicates some person or thing without either naming or describing it. Pronouns are derived from a distinct class of roots, which seem to have denoted only ideas of place and direction (§ 228.2), and from which nouns or verbs can very rarely be formed. They may therefore stand for Nouns when the person or thing, being already present to the senses or imagination, needs only to be pointed out, not named.

Some pronouns indicate the object in itself, without reference to its class, and have no distinction of gender. These are Personal Pronouns. They stand syntactically for Nouns, and have the same construction as nouns.

Other pronouns designate a particular object of a class, and take the gender of the individuals of that class. These are called Adjective Pronouns. They stand for Adjectives, and have the same construction as adjectives.

Others are used in both ways; and, though called adjective pronouns, may also be treated as personal, taking, however, the gender of the object indicated.

In accordance with their meanings and uses, Pronouns are classified as follows:—

- Personal Pronouns (§ 295).
- Interrogative Pronouns (§ 333).
- Demonstrative Pronouns (§ 296).
- Relative Pronouns (§ 303).
- Reflexive Pronouns (§ 299).
- Indefinite Pronouns (§ 309).
- Possessive Pronouns (§ 302).

Personal Pronouns

295. The Personal Pronouns have, in general, the same constructions as nouns.

a. The personal pronouns are not expressed as subjects, except for distinction or emphasis:—

tē vocō, I call you. But, —
quis mē vocat? ego tē vocō, who is calling me? I (emphatic) am calling you.

b. The personal pronouns have two forms for the genitive plural, that in -um being used partitively (§ 346), and that in -i oftenest objectively (§ 348):—

māior vestrum, the elder of you.
habētis ducem memorem vestrī, oblītum sui (Cat. iv. 19), you have a leader who thinks (is mindful) of you and forgets (is forgetful of) himself.
pars nostrum, a part (i.e. some) of us.

Note 1.—The genitives nostrum, vestrum, are occasionally used objectively (§ 348): as,—cupidus vestrum (Verr. iii. 224), fond of you; cūstōs vestrum (Cat. iii. 29), the guardian of you (your guardian).

Note 2.—“One of themselves” is expressed by unus ex suis or ipsīs (rarely ex sē), or unus suōrum.

c. The Latin has no personal pronouns of the third person except the reflexive sē. The want is supplied by a Demonstrative or Relative (§§ 296. 2, 308. f).
Demonstrative Pronouns

296. Demonstrative Pronouns are used either adjectively or substantively.

1. As adjectives, they follow the rules for the agreement of adjectives and are called Adjective Pronouns or Pronominal Adjectives (§§ 286, 287):

   hic proelio factō, after this battle was fought (this battle having been fought).
   eōdem proelio, in the same battle.
   ex eis aedificiis, out of those buildings.

2. As substantives, they are equivalent to personal pronouns. This use is regular in the oblique cases, especially of is:

   Caesar et exercitus ēius, Caesar and his army (not suus). [But, Caesar exercitum suum dimisit, Caesar disbanded his [own] army.]
   si obsidēs ab eis dentur (B. G. i. 14), if hostages should be given by them (persons just spoken of).
   hi sunt extrā provīnciām trāns Rhodanum prīmi (id. i. 10), they (those just mentioned) are the first [inhabitants] across the Rhone.
   ille minimum propter adulēscēntiam poterat (id. i. 20), he (emphatic) had very little power, on account of his youth.

   a. An adjective pronoun usually agrees with an appositive or predicate noun, if there be one, rather than with the word to which it refers (cf. § 306):

   hic locus est ūnus quō perfugiant; hic portus, haec arx, haec āra sociōrum (Verr. v. 126), this is the only place to which they can flee for refuge; this is the haven, this the citadel, this the altar of the allies.
   rērum caput hōc erat, hic fōns (Hor. Ep. i. 17. 45), this was the head of things, this the source.
   eam sapientiam interpretantur quam adhuc mortālis nēmō est consecūtus [for id . . . quod] (Lael. 18), they explain that [thing] to be wisdom which no man ever yet attained.

297. The main uses of hic, ille, iste, and is are the following:

   a. Hic is used of what is near the speaker (in time, place, or thought). It is hence called the demonstrative of the first person.

   It is sometimes used of the speaker himself; sometimes for "the latter" of two persons or things mentioned in speech or writing; more rarely for "the former," when that, though more remote on the written page, is nearer the speaker in time, place, or thought. Often it refers to that which has just been mentioned.
b. *Ille* is used of what is *remote* (in time, etc.); and is hence called the *demonstrative of the third person.*

It is sometimes used to mean “the former”; also (usually following its noun) of what is *famous* or *well-known*; often (especially the neuter *illud*) to mean “the following.”

c. *Iste* is used of what is *between the two others* in remoteness: often in allusion to the person addressed,—hence called the *demonstrative of the second person.*

It especially refers to one's opponent (in court, etc.), and frequently implies antagonism or contempt.

d. *Is* is a weaker demonstrative than the others and is especially common as a personal pronoun. It does not denote any special object, but refers to one just mentioned, or to be afterwards explained by a relative. Often it is merely a correlative to the relative *qui:*—

\[\text{vēnit mīhi obviam tuus puer, is mīhi litterās abs tē reddidit (Att. ii. 1. 1),}\]
\[\text{your boy met me, he delivered to me a letter from you.}\]
\[\text{eum quem, one whom.}\]
\[\text{eum cōnsulem qui nōn dubitet (Cat. iv. 24), a consul who will not hesitate.}\]

e. The pronouns *hic, ille,* and *is* are used to point in either direction, back to something just mentioned or forward to something about to be mentioned.

The neuter forms often refer to a clause, phrase, or idea:—

\[\text{est illud quidem vel maximum, animum vidēre (Tusc. i. 52), that is in truth a very great thing, — to see the soul.}\]

f. The demonstratives are sometimes used as *pronouns of reference,* to indicate with emphasis a noun or phrase just mentioned:—

\[\text{nūllam virtūs aliam mercedem dēsiderat praetēr hanc laudis (Arch. 28), virtue wants no other reward except that [just mentioned] of praise.}\]

**Note.**—But the ordinary English use of *that of* is hardly known in Latin. Commonly the genitive construction is continued without a pronoun, or some other construction is preferred:—

\[\text{cum eī Simōnidēs artem memoriae pollicērētur: oblivīōnis, inquit, māllem (Fin. ii. 104), when Simonides promised him the art of memory, “I should prefer,” said he, “[that] of forgetfulness.”}\]

Caesaris exercitus Pompeiānos ad Pharsalum vicit, *the army of Caesar defeated that of Pompey (the Pompeians) at Pharsalus.*

298. The main uses of *idem* and *ipse* are as follows:—

a. When a quality or act is ascribed with emphasis to a person or thing already named, is or *idem* (often with the concessive *quidem*) is used to indicate that person or thing:—
DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

§ 298] 179

per unum servum et eum ex gladiatoriō lūdō (Att. i. 16. 5), by means of a single slave, and that too one from the gladiatorial school.

vincula, et ea sempiterna (Cat. iv. 7), imprisonment, and that perpetual.

Ti. Gracchus régnum occupáre cónātus est, vel régnavit is quidem paucōs mēnsis (Lael. 41), Tiberius Gracchus tried to usurp royal power, or rather he actually reigned a few months.

Note.—So rarely with ille: as,—nunc dextrā ingemīnāns ictūs, nunc ille sinistrā (Aen. v. 437), now dealing redoubled blows with his right hand, now (he) with his left. [In imitation of the Homeric ὅ γε: cf. Aen. v. 334; ix. 796.]

b. Idem, the same, is often used where the English requires an adverb or adverbial phrase (also, too, yet, at the same time):—

ōrātō splendida et grandis et eadem in prīmis facēta (Brut. 273), an oration, brilliant, able, and very witty too.

cum [haec] dicat, negat idem esse in Deō grātiam (N. D. i. 121), when he says this, he denies also that there is mercy with God (he, the same man).

Note.—This is really the same use as in a above, but in this case the pronoun cannot be represented by a pronoun in English.

c. The intensive ipse, self, is used with any of the other pronouns, with a noun, or with a temporal adverb for the sake of emphasis:—

turpe mihi ipṣi vidēbātur (Phil. i. 9), even to me (to me myself) it seemed disgraceful.

id ipsum, that very thing; quod ipsum, which of itself alone.

in eum ipsum locum, to that very place.

tum ipsum (Off. ii. 60), at that very time.

Note 1.—The emphasis of ipse is often expressed in English by just, very, mere, etc.

Note 2.—In English, the pronouns himself etc. are used both intensively (as, he will come himself) and reflexively (as, he will kill himself): in Latin the former would be translated by ipse, the latter by sē or sēsē.

d. Ipse is often used alone, substantively, as follows:—

1. As an emphatic pronoun of the third person:—

idque ref pūlicae praeclārūm, ipsīs glōriōsum (Phil. ii. 27), and this was splendid for the state, glorious for themselves.

 omnēs bonī quantum in ipsīs fuit (id. ii. 29), all good men so far as was in their power (in themselves).

dī capītī ipsīs generique reseruent (Aen. viii. 484), may the gods hold in reserve [such a fate] to fall on his own and his son-in-law's head.

2. To emphasize an omitted subject of the first or second person:—

vōbiscum ipsī recordāmini (Phil. ii. 1), remember in your own minds (yourselves with yourselves).

3. To distinguish the principal personage from subordinate persons:—

ipse dixit (cf. aōrds ἐφα), he (the Master) said it.

Nōmentānus erat super ipsum (Hor. S. ii. 8. 23), Nomentanus was above [the host] himself [at table].
e. *Ipse* is often (is rarely) used instead of a reflexive (see § 300. b).

f. *Ipse* usually agrees with the subject, even when the real emphasis in English is on a reflexive in the predicate:—

mē ipse cōnsōlor (Lael. 10), *I console myself.* [Not mē ipsum, as the English would lead us to expect.]

**Reflexive Pronouns**

299. The Reflexive Pronoun (*sē*), and usually its corresponding possessive (*suus*), are used in the predicate to refer to the subject of the sentence or clause:—

sē ex nā ví prōīcēt (B. G. iv. 25), *he threw himself from the ship.*

Dumnorīgēm ad sē vocāt (id. i. 20), *he calls Dumnorix to him.*

sē sē castrīs tenēbant (id. iii. 24), *they kept themselves in camp.*

contenmī sē putant (Cat. M. 65), *they think they are despised.*

Caesar suās cōpiās subdūcīt (B. G. i. 22), *Caesar leads up his troops.*

Caesar statuīt sībī Rīhēnum esse trānsēundum (id. iv. 16), *Caesar decided that he must cross the Rhine* (the Rhine must be crossed by himself).

a. For reflexives of the first and second persons the oblique cases of the personal pronouns (*mei, tuī, etc.*) and the corresponding possessives (*meus, tuus, etc.*) are used:—

mortī mē obtūlī (Mil. 94), *I have exposed myself to death.*

hīnc tē rēgīnae ad limīna perfer (Aen. i. 389), *do you go (bear yourself) hence to the queen’s threshold.*

quid est quod tantīs nōs in lāborībus ēxercēamus (Arch. 28), *what reason is there why we should exert ourselves in so great toils?*

singulīs vōbīs novēnōs ex turmīs manipulīque vestī similēs eligīte (Liv. xxi. 54), *for each of you pick out from the squadrons and maniples nine like yourselves.*

300. In a subordinate clause of a complex sentence there is a double use of Reflexives.

1. The reflexive may always be used to refer to the subject of its own clause (*Direct Reflexive*):—

īdićārī potest quantum ĕhabeat in sē bonī constantiā (B. G. i. 40), *it can be determined how much good firmness possesses* (has in itself).

[Caesar] nōluit eum locum vacāre, nē Germānī ē suīs finibus trānsīrent (id. i. 28), *Caesar did not wish this place to lie vacant, for fear the Germans would cross over from their territories.*

sī qua significātiō virtūtīs ēlūcēat ad quam sē similīs animus adplicit et adiungat (Lael. 48), *if any sign of virtue shine forth to which a similar disposition may attach itself.*
§ 300] REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS 181

2. If the subordinate clause expresses the words or thought of the subject of the main clause, the reflexive is regularly used to refer to that subject (Indirect Reflexive): —

petiérunt ut sibi licēret (B. G. i. 30), they begged that it might be allowed them (the petitioners).

Iccius nūntium mittit, nisi subsidium sibi submittātur (id. ii. 6), Iccius sends a message that unless relief be furnished him, etc.

decima legiō ei grātiās ēgit, quod dē sē optimum īndicum fēcisset (id. i. 41), the tenth legion thanked him because [they said] he had expressed a high opinion of them.

sī obsidēs ab ēis (the Helvetians) sībi (Cāsar, who is the speaker) dentur, sē (Cāsar) cum ēis pācem esse factūrum (id. i. 14), [Cāsar said that] if hostages were given him by them he would make peace with them.

Note.—Sometimes the person or thing to which the reflexive refers is not the grammatical subject of the main clause, though it is in effect the subject of discourse: Thus,—cum ipsī dēo nihil minus grātum futūrum sit quam nōn omnibus pātēre ad sē plācandum viam (Legg. ii. 25), since to God himself nothing will be less pleasing than that the way to appease him should not be open to all men.

a. If the subordinate clause does not express the words or thought of the main subject, the reflexive is not regularly used, though it is occasionally found: —

sunt ita multī ut ēōs carcer capare nōn possit (Cat. ii. 22), they are so many that the prison cannot hold them. [Here sē could not be used; so also in the example following.]

ibī in proximīs villīs ita bipartītō fuērunt, ut Tiberis inter ēōs et pōns inter- esset (id. iii. 5), there they stationed themselves in the nearest farm-houses, in two divisions, in such a manner that the Tiber and the bridge were between them (the divisions).

nōn fuit ēōs contentus quod ēī praeter spēm acciderat (Manil. 25), he was not content with that which had happened to him beyond his hope.

Compare: quī fit, Maecēnās, ut nēmō, quam sībi sortem seu ratiō dederit seu fors obiēcerit, illā contentus vivat (Hor. S. i. 1. 1), how comes it, Maecenas, that nobody lives contented with that lot which choice has assigned him or chance has thrown in his way? [Here sībi is used to put the thought into the mind of the discontented man.]

b. Ipsē is often (is rarely) used instead of an indirect reflexive, either to avoid ambiguity or from carelessness; and in later writers is sometimes found instead of the direct reflexive: —

cūr dē suā virtūte aut dē ipsīus diligentiā dēspērārent (B. G. i. 40), why (he asked) should they despair of their own courage or his diligence?

omnia aut ipsōs aut hostēs populātōs (Q. C. iii. 5. 6), [they said that] either they themselves or the enemy had laid all waste. [Direct reflexive.]
qui sē ex his minus timidōs existimārī volēbant, nōn sē hostem verērī, sed
angustiās itineris et māgnitūdinem silvārum quae intercēderent inter
ipsōs (the persons referred to by sē above) atque Ariovistum . . . timēre
dicēbant (B. G. i. 39), those of them who wished to be thought less timid
said they did not fear the enemy, but were afraid of the narrowa and the
vast extent of the forests which were between themselves and Ariovistus.
audītis nūper dicere lēgātōs Tyndaritānōs Mercurium qui sacrīs anniver-
sārīis apud eōs colērētur esse sublātum (Verr. iv. 84), you have just heard
the ambassadors from Tyndarīs say that the statue of Mercury which was
worshipped with annual rites among them was taken away. [Here Cicero
wavers between apud eōs colēbātur, a remark of his own, and apud sē
colērētur, the words of the ambassadors. eōs does not strictly refer to
the ambassadors, but to the people — the Tyndaritani.]

301. Special uses of the Reflexive are the following: —

a. The reflexive in a subordinate clause sometimes refers to the
subject of a suppressed main clause: —

Paetus omnīs librōs quōs frātēr suus reliquisset mihi dōnāvit (Att. ii. 1),
Paetus gave me all the books which (as he said in the act of donation)
his brother had left him.

b. The reflexive may refer to any noun or pronoun in its own clause
which is so emphasized as to become the subject of discourse: —

Sōcraτem civēs sūi interfēcērunt, Socrates was put to death by his own fellow-
citizens.

qui poterat salūs sua cuquam nōn probārī (Mil. 81), how can any one fail
to approve his own safety? [In this and the preceding example the
emphasis is preserved in English by the change of voice.]
hunc si secūtī erunt suī comitēs (Cat. ii. 10), this man, if his companions
follow him.

Note. — Occasionally the clause to which the reflexive really belongs is absorbed:
as, — studeō sānāre sībī ipsōs (Cat. ii. 17), I am anxious to cure these men for their own
benefit (i.e. ut sānī sībī sint).

c. Suus is used for one's own as emphatically opposite to that of
others, in any part of the sentence and with reference to any word
in it: —

suīs flammīs dēlēte Fīdēnās (Liv. iv. 33), destroy Fīdenā with its own fires
(the fires kindled by that city, figuratively). [Cf. Cat. i. 32.]

d. The reflexive may depend upon a verbal noun or adjective: —
suī laus, self-praise.
habētīs ducem memorem vestrī, oblītum suī (Cat. iv. 19), you have a leader
mindful of you, forgetful of himself.
perdīti homīnēs cum suī similibus servīs (Phil. i. 5), abandoned men with
slaves like themselves.
e. The reflexive may refer to the subject implied in an infinitive or verbal abstract used indefinitely: —

contentum suis rēbus esse maximae sunt dīvītiae (Par. 51), the greatest wealth is to be content with one’s own.
cui prōposita sit cōnservātiō suī (Fin. v. 37), one whose aim is self-preservation.

f. Inter sē (nōs, vōs), among themselves (ourselves, yourselves), is regularly used to express reciprocal action or relation: —
inter sē cōnfligunt (Cat. i. 25), contend with each other.
inter sē continentur (Arch. 2), are joined to each other.

Possessive Pronouns

302. The Possessive Pronouns are derivative adjectives, which take the gender, number, and case of the noun to which they belong, not those of the possessor: —

haec ċōrnāmenta sunt mea (Val. iv. 4), these are my jewels. [mea is neuter plural, though the speaker is a woman.]
mei sunt ōrdinēs, mea discrīptō (Cat. M. 59), mine are the rows, mine the arrangement. [mea is feminine, though the speaker is Cyrus.]
multa in nostrō collegiō praeclāra (id. 64), [there are] many fine things in our college. [nostro is neuter singular, though men are referred to.]
Germānī suās cópiās castrīs ēdūxērunt (B. G. i. 51), the Germans led their troops out of the camp.

a. To express possession and similar ideas the possessive pronouns are regularly used, not the genitive of the personal or reflexive pronouns (§ 343. a): —

domus mea, my house. [Not domus meī.]
pater noster, our father. [Not pater nostri.]
prātimōniuμ tuum, your inheritance. [Not tui.]

Note 1. — Exceptions are rare in classic Latin, common in later writers. For the use of a possessive pronoun instead of an Objective Genitive, see § 348. a.

Note 2. — The Interrogative Possessive cāius, -a, -um, occurs in poetry and early Latin: as, —cāium pecus (Ecl. iii. 1), whose flock? The genitive cāius is generally used instead.

b. The possessives have often the acquired meaning of peculiar to, favorable or propitious towards, the person or thing spoken of: —

[petere] ut suā clementiā ac mansuētūdine ětātur (B. G. ii. 14), they asked (they said) that he would show his [wonted] clemency and humanity.
ignōrantī quem portum petat nūllus suus ventus est (Sen. Ep. 71. 3), to him who knows not what port he is bound to, no wind is fair (his own).
tempore tūō pūgnāstī (Liv. xxxviii. 45. 10), did you fight at a fit time?

Note. — This use is merely a natural development of the meaning of the possessive, and the pronoun may often be rendered literally.
c. The possessives are regularly omitted (like other pronouns) when they are plainly implied in the context: —

socium fraudavit, he cheated his partner. [socium suum would be distinctive, his partner (and not another’s); suum socium, emphatic, his own partner.]

d. Possessive pronouns and adjectives implying possession are often used substantively to denote some special class or relation: —

nostri, our countrymen, or men of our party.
suus continēbat (B. G. i. 15), he held his men in check.
flamma extrēma meorum (Aen. ii. 431), last flames of my countrymen.
Sullāni, the veterans of Sulla’s army; Pompēiāni, the partisans of Pompey.

Note.—There is no reason to suppose an ellipsis here. The adjective becomes a noun like other adjectives (see § 288).

e. A possessive pronoun or an adjective implying possession may take an appositive in the genitive case agreeing in gender, number, and case with an implied noun or pronoun: —

meā sōlius causā (Ter. Heaut. 129), for my sake only.
in nostrō omnium flētū (Mil. 92), amid the tears of us all.
ex Annīānā Milōnis domō (Att. iv. 3. 3), out of Annius Milo’s house. [Equivalent to ex Annī Milōnis domō.]
nostra omnium patria, the country of us all.
suum ipsius rēgnum, his own kingdom.

For the special reflexive use of the possessive suus, see §§ 299, 300.

Relative Pronouns

303. A Relative Pronoun agrees with some word expressed or implied either in its own clause, or (often) in the antecedent (demonstrative) clause. In the fullest construction the antecedent is expressed in both clauses, with more commonly a corresponding demonstrative to which the relative refers: as,—iter in ea loca facere coepit, quibus in locīs esse Germanōs audībatur (B. G. iv. 7), he began to march into those places in which places he heard the Germans were. But one of these nouns is commonly omitted.

The antecedent is in Latin very frequently (rarely in English) found in the relative clause, but more commonly in the antecedent clause. Thus relatives serve two uses at the same time: —

1. As Nouns (or Adjectives) in their own clause: as,—eī quī Alesiae obsīdēbantur (B. G. vii. 77), those who were besieged at Alesia.

2. As Connectives: as,—T. Balventius, quī superiōre annō prīmum pīllum dūxerat (id. v. 35), Titus Balventius, who the year before had been a centurion of the first rank. When the antecedent is in a different sentence, the relative is often equivalent to a demonstrative with a conjunction: as,—quae cum īta sint (= et cum ea īta sint), [and] since this is so.

The subordinating force did not belong to the relative originally, but was developed from an interrogative or indefinite meaning specialized by use. But the subordinating and the later connective force were acquired by quī at such an early period that the steps of the process cannot now be traced.
304. A Relative Pronoun indicates a relation between its own clause and some substantive. This substantive is called the Antecedent of the relative.

Thus, in the sentence —

\[ \text{eum nihil délectábat quod fás esset (Mil. 43), nothing pleased him which was right,} \]

the relative quod connects its antecedent nihil with the predicate fás esset, indicating a relation between the two.

305. A Relative agrees with its Antecedent in Gender and Number; but its Case depends on its construction in the clause in which it stands: —

\[ \text{ea diēs quam cōnstituērat vēnit (B. G. i. 8), that day which he had appointed came.} \]

\[ \text{pontem quī erat ad Genāvam iubet rescindī (id. i. 7), he orders the bridge which was near Geneva to be cut down.} \]

\[ \text{Aduatuci, dē quibus suprā diximus, domum reverērunt (id. ii. 29), the Aduatuci, of whom we have spoken above, returned home.} \]

Note. — This rule applies to all relative words so far as they are variable in form: as, quālis, quantus, quīcumquē, etc.

\[ \text{a. If a relative has two or more antecedents, it follows the rules for the agreement of predicate adjectives (§§ 286, 287): —} \]

\[ \text{filium et filiam, quōs valdē dilēxit, unō tempore āmīsit, he lost at the same time a son and a daughter whom he dearly loved.} \]

\[ \text{grandēs nātā mātrēs et parvuli liberi, quōrum utrorumque āetas misericordiām nostram requīrit (Verr. v. 120), aged matrons and little children, whose time of life in each case demands our compassion.} \]

\[ \text{ōtium atque divitiāe, quae prīma mortālēs putant (Sall. Cat. 36), idleness and wealth, which men count the first (objects of desire).} \]

\[ \text{eae frūgēs et frūctūs quōs terra gignit (N. D. ii. 37), those fruits and crops which the earth produces.} \]

For the Person of the verb agreeing with the Relative, see § 316. a.

306. A Relative generally agrees in gender and number with an appositive or predicate noun in its own clause, rather than with an antecedent of different gender or number (cf. § 296. a): —

\[ \text{mare etiam quem Neptūnum esse dicēbās (N. D. iii. 52), the sea, too, which you said was Neptune. [Not quod.]} \]

\[ \text{Thēbae ipsae, quod Boeōtiae caput est (Liv. xlii. 44), even Thebes, which is the chief city of Boeotia. [Not quae.]} \]

Note. — This rule is occasionally violated: as, — flāmen quod appellātur Tamesis (B. G. v. 11), a river which is called the Thames.
a. A relative occasionally agrees with its antecedent in case (by attraction): —

si aliquid agäs eorum quorum consuéstī (Fam. v. 14), if you should do something of what you are used to do. [For eorum quae.]

Note.—Occasionally the antecedent is attracted into the case of the relative: — urben quam statnū vestra est (Aen.ish. 573), the city which I am founding is yours. Naucratem, quem conveniēre volui, in navī nōn erat (Pl. Am. 1009), Naucrates, whom I wished to meet, was not on board the ship.

b. A relative may agree in gender and number with an implied antecedent: —

quārtum genus . . . quī in vetere aere aliēnō vacillant (Cat. ii. 21), a fourth class, who are staggering under old debts.

unus ex eō numerō quī parātī erant (lug. 35), one of the number [of those] who were ready.

coniūrāvēre paucli, dé quā [i.e. coniūrātiōne] dicam (Sall. Cat. 18), a few have conspired, of which [conspiracy] I will speak.

Note.—So regularly when the antecedent is implied in a possessive pronoun: as, —nostra ācta, quōs tyrannōs vocās (Vat. 29), the deeds of us, whom you call tyrants. [Here quōs agrees with the nostrum (genitive plural) implied in nostrā.]

Antecedent of the Relative

307. The Antecedent Noun sometimes appears in both clauses; but usually only in the one that precedes. Sometimes it is wholly omitted.

a. The antecedent noun may be repeated in the relative clause: —
locī nātūra erat haec quem locum nostri délégerant (B. G. ii. 18), the nature of the ground which our men had chosen was this.

b. The antecedent noun may appear only in the relative clause, agreeing with the relative in case: —

quās rēs in consulātū nostrō gessimus attigit hīc versibus (Arch. 28), he has touched in verse the things which I did in my consulship.
quae prima innocentis mihi défensō est oblāta suscepī (Sull. 92), I undertook the first defence of an innocent man that was offered me.

Note.—In this case the relative clause usually comes first (cf. § 308. d) and a demonstrative usually stands in the antecedent clause: —

quae pars civitātīs calamitātem populō Rōmānō intulerat, ea prīnceps poenas persolvit (B. G. i. 12), that part of the state which had brought disaster on the Roman people was the first to pay the penalty.

quae grātia currum fuit vivis, eadem sequitur (Aen. vi. 653), the same pleasure that they took in chariots in their lifetime follows them (after death).

qui fit ut nēmō, quam sibī sortem ratiō dederit, illā contentus vivat (cf. Hor. S. i. 1. 1), how does it happen that no one lives contented with the lot which choice has assigned him?
c. The antecedent may be omitted, especially if it is indefinite: —
qui decimae legiōnis aquilam ferēbat (B. G. iv. 25), [the man] who bore the
eagle of the tenth legion.
qui coēgnōserent misit (id. i. 21), he sent [men] to reconnoitre.

d. The phrase id quod or quae rēs may be used (instead of quod
alone) to refer to a group of words or an idea: —
[obtrectatum est] Gabiniō dicam anne Pompēiō? an utērque — id quod est
vērius? (Manil. 57), an affront has been offered — shall I say to Gabinius
or to Pompey? or — which is truer — to both?
multum sunt in vēnātīōnibus, quae rēs virīs alīt (B. G. iv. 1), they spend
much time in hunting, which [practice] increases their strength.

Note. — But quod alone often occurs as: — Cassius noster, quod mihi māgnae volu-
tātī fuit, hostem rēlēcerat (Fam. ii. 10), our friend Cassius — which was a great satis-
faction to me — had driven back the enemy.

e. The antecedent noun, when in apposition with the main clause,
or with some word of it, is put in the relative clause: —
firmī [amicī], cūius generis est māgna pēnūria (Lael. 62), steadfast friends,
a class of which there is great lack (of which class there is, etc.).

f. A predicate adjective (especially a superlative) belonging to the
antecedent may stand in the relative clause: —
vāsa ea quae pulcherrima apud eum viderat (Verr. iv. 63), those most beauti-
ful vessels which he had seen at his house. [Nearly equivalent to the
vessels of which he had seen some very beautiful ones.]

Special Uses of the Relative

308. In the use of Relatives, the following points are to be observed: —

a. The relative is never omitted in Latin, as it often is in Eng-
lish: —
liber quem mihi dedisti, the book you gave me.
is sum quī semper fuit, I am the same man I always was.
eō in locō est dē quō tibi locūtus sum, he is in the place I told you of.

b. When two relative clauses are connected by a copulative con-
junction, a relative pronoun sometimes stands in the first and a
demonstrative in the last: —
erat profectus obviam legiōnibus Macedonici quattuor, quās sibi conciliāre
pecūniā cōgitābat ēaque ad urbem addūcere (Fam. xii. 23. 2), he had
set out to meet four legions from Macedonia, which he thought to win over
to himself by a gift of money and to lead (them) to the city.
c. A relative clause in Latin often takes the place of some other construction in English, — particularly of a participle, an appositive, or a noun of agency: —

lēgēs quae nunc sunt, the existing laws (the laws which now exist).
Caesar qui Galliam vicit, Caesar the conqueror of Gaul.
iũsta glōria qui est fructus virtūtis (Pison. 57), true glory [which is] the fruit of virtue.
ille qui petit, the plaintiff (he who sues).
qui legit, a reader (one who reads).

d. In formal or emphatic discourse, the relative clause usually comes first, often containing the antecedent noun (cf. § 307. b): —

quae pars civitātis Helvētiae insignem calamitātem populō Rōmānō intulerat,
ea prōinceps poenās persolvit (B. G. i. 12), the portion of the Helvetian state which had brought a serious disaster on the Roman people was the first to pay the penalty.

Note. — In colloquial language, the relative clause in such cases often contains a redundant demonstrative pronoun which logically belongs in the antecedent clause: as, — ille qui consulētē cavēt, diūtīnē ātī bene licet partum bene (Plaut. Rud. 1240), he who is on his guard, he may long enjoy what he has well obtained.

e. The relative with an abstract noun may be used in a parenthetical clause to characterize a person, like the English such: —

quae vestra prūdentia est (Cael. 45), such is your wisdom. [Equivalent to prō vestrā prūdentīā.]
audīssēs cómōedōs vel lēctōrem vel lyristēn, vel, quae mea liberālitās, omnēs (Plin. Ep. i. 15), you would have listened to comedians, or a reader, or a lyre-player, or — such is my liberality — to all of them.

f. A relative pronoun (or adverb) often stands at the beginning of an independent sentence or clause, serving to connect it with the sentence or clause that precedes: —

Caesar statuit exspectandam classem; quae ubi convěnit (B. G. iii. 14), Caesar decided that he must wait for the fleet; and when this had come together, etc.
quae quē audiēbant, and those who heard this (which things).
quae cum ītā sint, and since this is so.
quŏrum quod simile factum (Cat. iv. 13), what deed of theirs like this?
quŏ cum vēnisset, and when he had come there (whither when he had come).

Note. — This arrangement is common even when another relative or an interrogative follows. The relative may usually be translated by an English demonstrative, with or without and.

g. A relative adverb is regularly used in referring to an antecedent in the Locative case; so, often, to express any relation of place instead of the formal relative pronoun: —
mortuus Cumis quō sē contulerat (Liv. ii. 21), having died at Cume, whither he had retired. [Here in quam urbem might be used, but not in quās.] locus quō aditus nōn erat, a place to which (whither) there was no access. rēgna unde genus dūcis (Aen. v. 801), the kingdom from which you derive your race.

unde petitur, the defendant (he from whom something is demanded).

h. The relatives qui, quālis, quantus, quot, etc. are often rendered simply by as in English:—

idem quod semper, the same as always.
cum esset tālis quālem tē esse videō (Mur. 32), since he was such a man as I see you are.
tanta dīmicātiō quanta numquam fuit (Att. vii. 1. 2), such a fight as never was before.
tot mala quot sidera (Ov. Tr. i. 5. 47), as many troubles as stars in the sky.

i. The general construction of relatives is found in clauses introduced by relative adverbs: as, ubi, quō, unde, cum, quārē.

Indefinite Pronouns

309. The Indefinite Pronouns are used to indicate that some person or thing is meant, without designating what one.

310. Quis, quispiam, aliquis, quīdam, are particular indefinites, meaning some, a certain, any. Of these, quis, any one, is least definite, and quīdam, a certain one, most definite; aliquis and quispiam, some one, stand between the two:—

dixerit quis (quispiam), some one may say.
aliquī philōsophī īta putant, some philosophers think so. [quīdam would mean certain persons defined to the speaker’s mind, though not named.]
habitant hic quaedam mulieres paupercaules (Ter. Ad. 647), some poor women live here [i.e. some women he knows of; some women or other would be aliquae or nescio quae].

a. The indefinite quis is rare except in the combinations si quis, if any; nisi quis, if any . . . not; nē quis, lest any, in order that none; num quis (ecquis), whether any; and in relative clauses.

b. The compounds quispiam and aliquis are often used instead of quis after si, nisi, nē, and num, and are rather more emphatic:—

quid sī hoc quispiam voluit deus (Ter. Eun. 875), what if some god had desired this?
nisi alicui suōrum negotiōnum daret (Nep. Dion. 8. 2), unless he should employ some one of his friends.
cavebat Pompeius omnia, nē aliquid vōs timērētis (Mil. 66), Pompey took every precaution, so that you might have no fear.
311. In a particular negative aliquis (aliqui), some one (some), is regularly used, where in a universal negative quisquam, any one, or ullus, any, would be required: —

iustitiae numquam nocet cuiquam (Fin. i. 50), justice never does harm to anybody. [alicui would mean to somebody who possesses it.]
nón sine aliquō metū, not without some fear. But, — sine ullō metū, without any fear.
cum aliquid nón habeās (Tusc. i. 88), when there is something you have not.

Note. — The same distinction holds between quis and aliquis on the one hand, and quisquam (ullus) on the other, in conditional and other sentences when a negative is expressed or suggested: —
si quisquam, ille sapiēns fuit (Lael. 9), if any man was (ever) a sage, he was.
dum præsidia ullā fuērunt (Rosc. Am. 126), while there were any armed forces.
si quid in tē peccāvī (Att. iii. 15. 4), if I have done wrong towards you [in any particular case (see § 310)].

312. Quivis or quilibet (any one you will), quisquam, and the corresponding adjective ullus, any at all, are general indefinites.

Quivis and quilibet are used chiefly in affirmative clauses, quisquam and ullus in clauses where a universal negative is expressed or suggested: —
nón cuivis homīnī contingit adire Corinthum (Hor. Ep. i. 17. 36), it is not every man's luck to go to Corinth. [nón cuiquam would mean not any man's.]
quemlibet modo aliquem (Acad. ii. 132), anybody you will, provided it be somebody.
si quisquam est timidus, is ego sum (Fam. vi. 14. 1), if any man is timorous, I am he.
si tempus est ullum iūre hominis necandī (Mil. 9), if there is any occasion whatever when homicide is justifiable.

Note. — The use of the indefinites is very various, and must be learned from the Lexicon and from practice. The choice among them may depend merely on the point of view of the speaker, so that they are often practically interchangeable. The differences are (with few exceptions) those of logic, not of syntax.

313. The distributives quisque (every), uterque (each of two), and unus quisque (every single one) are used in general assertions: —

bonus liber melior est quisque quō máior (Plin. Ep. i. 20. 4), the larger a good book is, the better (each good book is better in proportion, etc.).
ambō exercitūs suās quisque abeunt domōs (Liv. ii. 7. 1), both armies go away, every man to his home.
uterque utrique erat exercitus in cōnspectū (B. G. vii. 35), each army was in sight of the other (each to each).
pōnite ante oculōs ūnum quemque rēgum (Par. i. 11), set before your eyes each of the kings.
a. *Quisque* regularly stands in a dependent clause, if there is one: —

quō *quisque* est sollertior, hōc docet irācundius (Rosc. Com. 31), the keener-witted a man is, the more impatiently he teaches.

**Note.** — *Quisque* is generally postpositive: as, suum cuique, to every man his own.

b. *Quisque* is idiomatically used with superlatives and with ordinal numerals:

nōbilissimus *quisque*, all the noblest (one after the other in the order of their nobility).²

prīmō *quōque* tempore (Rosc. Am. 36), at the very first opportunity.

antiquissimum *quoque* tempus (B. G. i. 45), the most ancient times.

decimus *quisque* (id. v. 52), one in ten.

**Note 1.** — Two superlatives with *quisque* imply a proportion: as, — sapientissimus quisque aequissīmō animō moritur (Cat. M. 83), the wisest men die with the greatest equanimity.

**Note 2.** — *Quotus quisque* has the signification of how many, pray? often in a disparaging sense (how few):

quotus enim quisque disertus? quotus quisque iūris perītus est (Planc. 62), for how few are eloquent! how few are learned in the law!

quotus enim istud quisque fēcisset (Lig. 26), for how many would have done this? [i.e. scarcely anybody would have done it].

---

### 314. Nēmō, no one, is used of persons only —

1. As a substantive:

nēminem accusat, he accuses no one.

2. As an adjective pronoun instead of *nūllus*:

vir nēmō bonus (Legg. ii. 41), no good man.

**Note.** — Even when used as a substantive, nēmō may take a noun in apposition. as, — nēmō scriptor, nobody [who is] a writer.

a. *Nūllus*, no, is commonly an adjective; but in the genitive and ablative singular it is regularly used instead of the corresponding cases of nēmō, and in the plural it may be either an adjective or a substantive:

nūllum mittitur tēlum (B. C. ii. 13), not a missile is thrown.

nūllō hoste prohibente (B. G. iii. 6), without opposition from the enemy.

nūllius insector calamitātem (Phil. ii. 98), I persecute the misfortune of no one.

nūllī adīuvante (id. x. 4), with the help of no one (no one helping).

nūllī erant praedaōnēs (Flacc. 28), there were no pirates.

nūlli eximentur (Pison. 94), none shall be taken away.

For nōn nēmō, nōn nūllus (nōn nūlli), see § 326. a.

---

¹ That is, it does not stand first in its clause.

² As, in taking things one by one off a pile, each thing is uppermost when you take it.
**Alius and Alter**

315. Alius means simply other, another (of an indefinite number); alter, the other (of two), often the second in a series; cēteri and reliquī, all the rest, the others; alteruter, one of the two: —

propterē quod aliūd iter habērent nūllum (B. G. i. 7), because (as they said) they had no other way.

ūnī epistulae respondī, veniō ad alteram (Fam. ii. 17. 6), one letter I have answered, I come to the other.

alterum genus (Cat. ii. 19), the second class.

iēcissem ipse mē potius in profundum ut cēterōs cōnservārem (Sest. 45), I should have rather thrown myself into the deep to save the rest.

Servilius cōnsul, reliquīque magistrātūs (B. C. iii. 21), Servilius the consul and the rest of the magistrates.

cum sit necesse alterum utrum vincere (Fam. vi. 3), since it must be that one of the two should prevail.

**Note.** — Alter is often used, especially with negatives, in reference to an indefinite number where one is opposed to all the rest taken singly: —

dum nē sit tē dītor alter (Hor. S. i. 1. 40), so long as another is not richer than you (lit. the other, there being at the moment only two persons considered).

nōn ut magis alter, amicus (id. i. 5. 33), a friend such that no other is more so.

**a.** The expressions alter . . . alter, the one . . . the other, alius . . . alius, one . . . another, may be used in pairs to denote either division of a group or reciprocity of action: —

alterī dīmicant, alterī victōrem timent (Fam. vi. 3), one party fights, the other fears the victor.

alteram alterī praesidiō esse iusserat (B. C. iii. 89), he had ordered each (of the two legions) to support the other.

alīī gladiīs adoriuntur, alīī fragmentīs saeptōrum (Sest. 79), some make an attack with swords, others with fragments of the railings.

alius ex aliō causam quaerit (B. G. vi. 37), they ask each other the reason.

alius aliūm percontāmur (Pl. Stich. 370), we keep asking each other.

**b. Alius and alter** are often used to express one as well as another (the other) of the objects referred to: —

alter consulum, one of the [two] consuls.

aliud est maledicere, aliud accusāre (Cael. 6), it is one thing to slander, another to accuse.

**c. Alius** repeated in another case, or with an adverb from the same stem, expresses briefly a double statement: —

alius aliud petit, one man seeks one thing, another another (another seeks another thing).

iussit aliōs aliībī fodore (Liv. xlv. 33), he ordered different persons to dig in different places.

aliō aliō locō resistēbant (B. C. ii. 39), some halted in one place, some in another.
VERBS

Agreement of Verb and Subject

316. A Finite Verb agrees with its Subject in Number and Person:

ego statuō, I resolve. senātus dēcrēvit, the senate ordered.
silent lēgēs inter arma (Mil. 11), the laws are dumb in time of war.

Note. — In verb-forms containing a participle, the participle agrees with the subject in gender and number (§ 286):

ōrātiō est habita, the plea was delivered. bellum exortum est, a war arose.

a. A verb having a relative as its subject takes the person of the expressed or implied antecedent:

adsūm qui fēcī (Aen. ix. 427), here am I who did it.
tū, qui scīs, omnem diligentiam adhibēbis (Att. v. 2. 3), you, who know, will use all diligence.
vidēte quam dēspiciāmur omnēs qui sumus e mūnicipiis (Phil. iii. 15), see how all of us are scorned who are from the free towns.

b. A verb sometimes agrees in number (and a participle in the verb-form in number and gender) with an appositive or predicate noun:

amantium īrae amoris integrātiō est (Ter. And. 555), the quarrels of lovers are the renewal of love.
nōn omnīs error stultitīa dīcenda est (Div. ii. 90), not every error should be called folly.
Corinthus lūmen Graeciae extinctum est (cf. Manil. 11), Corinth, the light of Greece, is put out.

Double or Collective Subject

317. Two or more Singular Subjects take a verb in the Plural:

pater et avus mortui sunt, his father and grandfather are dead.

Note. — So rarely (by synēsis, § 280. a) when to a singular subject is attached an ablative with cum: as, — dux cum aliquot prīncipibus capiuntur (Liv. xxi. 60), the general and several leading men are taken.

a. When subjects are of different persons, the verb is usually in the first person rather than the second, and in the second rather than the third:

si tū et Tullia valētis ego et Cicerō valēmus (Fam. xiv. 5), if you and Tullia are well, Cicero and I are well. [Notice that the first person is also first in order, not last, as by courtesy in English.]

Note. — In case of different genders a participle in a verb-form follows the rule for predicate adjectives (see § 287. 2-4).
b. If the subjects are connected by disjunctives (§ 223. a), or if they are considered as a single whole, the verb is usually singular:—

quam neque fidēs neque iūs īurandum neque illum misericordia repressit
(Ter. Ad. 306), *not faith, nor oath, not, nor mercy, checked him.*

senātus popularus Rōmānus intellegit (Fam. v. 8), *the Roman senate and people understand.*  [But, neque Caesar neque ego habītī essēmus (id. xi. 20), *neither Caesar nor I should have been considered.*]

fāma et vita innocentis défenditur (Rosc. Am. 15), *the reputation and life of an innocent man are defended.*

est in eō virtūs et probitās et summum officium summaque observantia (Fam. xiii. 28 a. 2), *in him are to be found worth, uprightness, the highest sense of duty, and the greatest devotion.*

Note.—So almost always when the subjects are abstract nouns.

c. When a verb belongs to two or more subjects *separately,* it often agrees with one and is understood with the others:—

intercēdit M. Antōniius Q. Cassius tribūnī plēbis (B. C. i. 2), *Mark Antony and Quintus Cassius, tribunes of the people, interpose.*

hōc mihi et Peripatētīci et vetus Acadēmīa concēdit (Acad. ii. 113), *this both the Peripatetic philosophers and the Old Academy grant me.*

d. A collective noun commonly takes a verb in the singular; but the plural is often found with collective nouns when *individuals* are thought of (§ 280. a):—

(1) senātus haec intellegit (Cat. i. 2), *the senate is aware of this.*

ad hiberna exercitus redit (Liv. xxi. 22), *the army returns to winter-quarters.*

plēbēs ā patribus sēcessit (Sall. Cat. 33), *the plebs seceded from the patricians.*

(2) pars praedās agēbant (Ing. 32), *a part brought in booty.*

cum tanta multītūdō lapidēs conicerent (B. G. ii. 6), *when such a crowd were throwing stones.*

Note 1.—The point of view may change in the course of a sentence: as, — equitātum omnem . . . quem habēbat praemittit, quī videant (B. G. i. 15), *he sent ahead all the cavalry he had, to see* (who should see).

Note 2.—The singular of a noun regularly denoting an individual is sometimes used collectively to denote a group: as, Poenus, *the Carthaginians;* miles, *the soldiery;* eques, *the cavalry.*

e. Quisque, *each,* and unus quisque, *every single one,* have very often a plural verb, but may be considered as in partitive apposition with a plural subject implied (cf. § 282. a):—

sibi quisque habeant quod suum est (Pl. Curc. 180), *let every one keep his own* (let them keep every man his own).

Note.—So also uterque, *each (of two),* and the reciprocal phrases alius . . . alium, alter . . . alterum (§ 315. a).
Omission of Subject or Verb

318. The Subject of the Verb is sometimes omitted: —

a. A Personal pronoun, as subject, is usually omitted unless emphatic: —
   loquor, I speak. But, ego loquor, it is I that speak.

b. An indefinite subject is often omitted: — crēderēs, you would have supposed; putāmus, we (people) think; dicunt, ferunt, perhibent, they say.

c. A passive verb is often used impersonally without a subject expressed or understood (§ 208. d): —
   diū atque ācriter pūgnātum est (B. G. i. 26), they fought long and vigorously.

319. The verb is sometimes omitted: —

a. Dico, facio, ago, and other common verbs are often omitted in familiar phrases: —
   quōrsum haec [spectant], what does this aim at?
   ex ungue leōnem [cōgnōscēs], you will know a lion by his claw.
   quid multa, what need of many words? (why should I say much?)
   quid? quod, what of this, that . . . ? (what shall I say of this, that . . . ?)
   [A form of transition.]
   Aēolus haec contrā (Aen. i. 76), Aēolus thus [spoke] in reply.
   tum Cotta [inquit], then said Cotta.
   di melīōra [duint]! (Cat. M. 47), Heaven forfend (may the gods grant better things)!
   unde [venīs] et quō [tendis]? (Hor. S. ii. 4. 1), where from and whither bound? [Cf. id. i. 9. 62 for the full form.]

b. The copula sum is very commonly omitted in the present indicative and present infinitive, rarely (except by late authors) in the subjunctive: —
   tū coniūnx (Aen. iv. 113), you [are] his wife.
   quid ergō? audācissimus ego ex omnibus (Rosc. Am. 2), what then? am I the boldest of all?
   omnia praeclāra rāra (Lael. 79), all the best things are rare.
   potest incidere saepe contentiō et comparātiō dē duōbus honestīs utrum honestius (Off. i. 152), there may often occur a comparison of two honorable actions, as to which is the more honorable. [Here, if any copula were expressed, it would be sit, but the direct question would be complete without any.]
   accipe quae peragenda prius (Aen. vi. 136), hear what is first to be accomplished. [Direct: quae peragenda prius?]
320. The proper function of Adverbs, as petrified case-forms, is to modify Verbs: as,—celeriter ire, to go with speed. It is from this use that they derive their name (adverbium, from ad, to, and verbum, verb; see § 241. b). They also modify adjectives, showing in what manner or degree the quality described is manifested: as, splendide mendāx, gloriously false. More rarely they modify other adverbs: as, nimis graviter, too severely. Many adverbs, especially relative adverbs, serve as connectives, and are hardly to be distinguished from conjunctions (see § 20. g. n.).

321. Adverbs are used to modify Verbs, Adjectives, and other Adverbs.

a. A Demonstrative or Relative adverb is often equivalent to the corresponding Pronoun with a preposition (see § 308. g):

   eō [= in ea] impōnit vāsa (lug. 75), upon them (thither, thereon, on the beasts) he puts the camp-utensils.
   eō militēs impōnere (B. G. i. 42), to put soldiers upon them (the horses).
   apud eōs quō [= ad quōs] sē contulit (Verr. iv. 38), among those to whom (whither) he resorted.
   quī eum necāsset unde [= quō] ipse nātus esset (Rosc. Am. 71), one who should have killed his own father (him whence he had his birth).
   ō condicīōnēs miserās administrāndārum prōvincīārum ubi [= in quibus] sevēritās pericūlōsa est (Flacc. 87), O! wretched terms of managing the provinces, where strictness is dangerous.

b. The participles dictum and factum, when used as nouns, are regularly modified by adverbs rather than by adjectives; so occasionally other perfect participles:

   praeclārē facta (Nep. Timoth. 1), glorious deeds (things gloriously done).
   multa facētē dicta (Off. i. 104), many witty sayings.

c. A noun is sometimes used as an adjective, and may then be modified by an adverb:

   victor exercitus, the victorious army.
   admodum puer, quite a boy (young).
   magis vir, more of a man (more manly).
   populum lātē rēgem (Aen. i. 21), a people ruling far and wide.

Note. — Very rarely adverbs are used with nouns which have no adjective force but which contain a verbal idea:

   hinc abitiō (Plant. Rud. 503), a going away from here.
   quid cōgitem dē obviam itiōne (Att. xiii. 50), what I think about going to meet (him). [Perhaps felt as a compound.]

1 For the derivation and classification of adverbs, see §§ 214-217.
A few adverbs appear to be used like adjectives. Such are obviam, palam, sometimes contrā, and occasionally others:—

fit obviam Clōdiō (Mil. 29), he falls in with (becomes in the way of) Clodius.

[ Cf. the adjective obvius: as, — sī ille obvius ei futūrus nōn erat (id. 47), if he was not likely to fall in with him. ]

haec commemorō quae sunt palam (Pison. 11), I mention these facts, which are well-known.

alia probābilia, contrā alia dicimus (Off. ii. 7), we call some things probable, others the opposite (not probable). [In this use, contrā contradicts a previous adjective, and so in a manner repeats it.]

erī semper lēnitās (Ter. And. 175), my master’s constant (always) gentleness.

[ An imitation of a Greek construction. ]

Note. — In some cases one can hardly say whether the adverb is treated as an adjective modifying the noun, or the noun modified is treated as an adjective (as in c above).

For proprius, prīdī, palam, and other adverbs used as prepositions, see § 432.

322. The following adverbs require special notice:—

a. Etiam (et iam), also, even, is stronger than quoque, also, and usually precedes the emphatic word, while quoque follows it:—

nōn verbīs sōlum sed etiam vī (Verr. ii. 64), not only by words, but also by force.

hoc quoque maleficium (Rosc. Am. 117), this crime too.

b. Nunc1 means definitely now, in the immediate present, and is rarely used of the immediate past.

Iam means now, already, at length, presently, and includes a reference to previous time through which the state of things described has been or will be reached. It may be used of any time. With negatives iam means (no) longer.

Tum, then, is correlative to cum, when, and may be used of any time. Tunc, then, at that time, is a strengthened form of tum (†tum-ce, cf. tunc):—

ut iam antē dixi, as I have already said before.

si iam satis aetātis atque rōboris habēret (Rosc. Am. 149), if he had attained a suitable age and strength (lit. if he now had, as he will have by and by).

nōn est iam lēnitātī locus, there is no longer room for mercy.

quod iam erat institūtum, which had come to be a practice (had now been established).

nunc quidem dēlēta est, tunc flōrēbat (Lael. 13), now (‘t is true) she [Greece] is ruined, then she was in her glory.

tum cum rēgnābat, at the time when he reigned.

1 For †num-ce ; cf. tunc (for †tum-ce).
c. Certō means certainly, certē (usually) at least, at any rate: —
certō sciō, I know for a certainty; ego certē, I at least.

d. Primum means first (first in order, or for the first time), and
implies a series of events or acts. Primo means at first, as opposed
to afterwards, giving prominence merely to the difference of time: —
hoc primo sentiō, this I hold in the first place.
aedis primō ruere rēbāmur, at first we thought the house was falling.

Note. — In enumerations, primum (or primo) is often followed by deinde, secondly, in
the next place, or by tum, then, or by both in succession. Deinde may be several times
repeated (secondly, thirdly, etc.). The series is often closed by dēnique or postremō,
lastly, finally. Thus, — primum dē genere belli, deinde dē magnitudine, tum dē im-
perātore dēligendo (Manil. 6), first of the kind of war, next of its magnitude, then of
the choice of a commander.

e. Quidem, indeed, gives emphasis, and often has a concessive mean-
ing, especially when followed by sed, autem, etc.: —
hoc quidem vidēre licet (Lael. 54), this surely one may see. [Emphatic.]
[sēcūritās] speciē quidem blanda, sed rēapse multīs locīs repudianda (id. 47),
(tranquillity) in appearance, it is true, attractive, but in reality to be
rejected for many reasons. [Concessive.]

f. Ne . . . quidem means not even or not . . . either. The emphatic
word or words must stand between nē and quidem: —
sed nē Iugurtha quidem quiētus erat (Iug. 51), but Iugurtha was not quiet
either.
egō autem nē Irāscī possūm quidem īs quōs valdē amō (Att. ii. 19. 1), but I
cannot even get angry with those whom I love very much.

Note. — Equidem has the same senses as quidem, but is in Cicero confined to the
first person. Thus, — equidem adprobāō (Fam. ii. 3. 2), I for my part shall approve.

CONJUNCTIONS

323. Copulative and Disjunctive Conjunctions connect similar
constructions, and are regularly followed by the same case or mood
that precedes them: —
scriptum senātui et populō (Cat. iii. 10), written to the senate and people.
ut eās [partis] sānārēs et cōnfirmārēs (Mil. 68), that you might cure and
strengthen those parts.
neque meā prūdentiā neque hūmānis cōnsilīs frētus (Cat. ii. 29), relying
neither on my own foresight nor on human wisdom.

1 For the classification of conjunctions, see §§ 223, 224.


\section*{Conjunctions}

\subsection*{a. Conjunctions of Comparison (as ut, quam, tamquam, quasi) also commonly connect similar constructions: —}

\begin{quote}
his igitur quam physicis potius credendum existimatas (Div. ii. 37), do you think these are more to be trusted than the natural philosophers?

hominem callidiorem vidi neminem quam Phormionem (Ter. Ph. 591), a shrewder man I never saw than Phormio (cf. § 407).

ut non omne vinum sic non omnis natūra vetustātēs coacēscit (Cat. M. 65), as every wine does not sour with age, so [does] not every nature.

in me quasi in tyrannum (Phil. xiv. 15), against me as against a tyrant.
\end{quote}

\subsection*{b. Two or more coördinate words, phrases, or sentences are often put together without the use of conjunctions (Asyndeton, § 601. c):}

\begin{quote}
omnes dī, homines, all gods and men.

summi, mediī, infimi, the highest, the middle class, and the lowest.

iūra, légēs, agrōs, libertātem nobis reliquērant (B. G. vii. 77), they have left us our rights, our laws, our fields, our liberty.
\end{quote}

\subsection*{c. 1. Where there are more than two coördinate words etc., a conjunction, if used, is ordinarily used with all (or all except the first): —}

\begin{quote}
aure aere aliēnō aut māgnitūdine tribūtōrum aut iniūriā potentiōrum (B. G. vi. 13), by debt, excessive taxation, or oppression on the part of the powerful.

at sunt mōrōsī et anxīī et frācundī et difficilēs senēs (Cat. M. 65), but (you say) old men are capricious, solicitous, choleric, and fussy.
\end{quote}

2. But words are often so divided into groups that the members of the groups omit the conjunction (or express it), while the groups themselves express the conjunction (or omit it): —

\begin{quote}
propodium illud et portentum, L. Antōnius insigne odium omnium hominum (Phil. xiv. 8), that wretch and monster, Lucius Antonius, the abomination of all men.

utrumque ēgit graviter, auctōritāte et offensīōne animī nōn acerbā (Lael. 77), he acted in both cases with dignity, without loss of authority and with no bitterness of feeling.
\end{quote}

3. The enclitic -que is sometimes used with the last member of a series, even when there is no grouping apparent: —

\begin{quote}
vōce voltū mōtūque (Brut. 110), by voice, expression, and gesture.

cūram consilium vigiliantiamque (Phil. vii. 20), care, wisdom, and vigilance.

quōrum auctōritātem dignitātem voluntātemque défenderās (Fam. i. 7. 2), whose dignity, honor, and wishes you had defended.
\end{quote}

\subsection*{d. Two adjectives belonging to the same noun are regularly connected by a conjunction: —}

\begin{quote}
multaet et gravēs causae, many weighty reasons.

vir liber ac fortis (Rep. ii. 34), a free and brave man.
\end{quote}
e. Often the same conjunction is repeated in two coördinate clauses:

et . . . et (-que . . . -que), both . . . and.
aut . . . aut, either . . . or.
vel . . . vel, either . . . or. [Examples in § 324. e.]
sive (seu) . . . sive (seu), whether . . . or. [Examples in § 324. f.]

f. Many adverbs are similarly used in pairs, as conjunctions, partly or wholly losing their adverbial force: —
nunc . . . nunc, tum . . . tum, iam . . . iam, now . . . now.
modo . . . modo, now . . . now.
simul . . . simul, at the same time . . . at the same time.
quā . . . quā, now . . . now, both . . . and, alike [this] and [that].
modo ait modo negat (Ter. Eun. 714), now he says yes, now no.
simul gratiās agit, simul gratulātur (Q. C. vi. 7. 15), he thanks him and at the same time congratulates him.
 ērumpunt saepe vitia amicōrum tum in ipsōs amicōs tum in aliēnōs (Lael. 76), the faults of friends sometimes break out, now against their friends themselves, now against strangers.
quā marīs quā fēminās (Pl. Mil. 1113), both males and females.

g. Certain relative and demonstrative adverbs are used correlatively as conjunctions: —

ut (rel.) . . . ita, sīc (dem.), as (while) . . . so (yet).
tam (dem.) . . . quam (rel.), so (as) . . . as.
cum (rel.) . . . tum (dem.), while . . . so also; not only . . . but also.

324. The following Conjunctions require notice: —

a. Et, and, simply connects words or clauses; -que combines more closely into one connected whole. -que is always enclitic to the word connected or to the first or second of two or more words connected:
cum coniugibus et liberis, with [their] wives and children.
ferrō ignīque, with fire and sword. [Not as separate things, but as the combined means of devastation.]
aquā et Igni interdictus, forbidden the use of water and fire. [In a legal formula, where they are considered separately.]

b. Atque (ac), and, adds with some emphasis or with some implied reflection on the word added. Hence it is often equivalent to and so, and yet, and besides, and then. But these distinctions depend very much upon the feeling of the speaker, and are often untranslatable: —
omnia honesta atque inhonestā, everything honorable and dishonorable (too, without the slightest distinction).
ūsus atque disciplina, practice and theory beside (the more important or less expected).
atque ego crēdō, and yet I believe (for my part).
c. Atque (ac), in the sense of as, than, is also used after words of comparison and likeness: —

simul atque, as soon as.
non secus (non aliter) ac si, not otherwise than if.
pro eō ac dēbui, as was my duty (in accordance as I ought).
aequē ac tū, as much as you.
hand minus ac iussī faciunt, they do just as they are ordered.

For and not, see § 328. a.

d. Sed and the more emphatic vērum or vērō, but, are used to introduce something in opposition to what precedes, especially after negatives (not this . . . but something else). At (old form ast) introduces with emphasis a new point in an argument, but is also used like the others; sometimes it means at least. At enim is almost always used to introduce a supposed objection which is presently to be overthrown. At is more rarely used alone in this sense.

Autem, however, now, is the weakest of the adversatives, and often marks a mere transition and has hardly any adversative force perceptible. Atquī, however, now, sometimes introduces an objection and sometimes a fresh step in the reasoning. Quod sī, but if, and if, now if, is used to continue an argument.

Note. — Et, -que, and atque (ac) are sometimes used where the English idiom would suggest but, especially when a negative clause is followed by an affirmative clause continuing the same thought: as, — impetum hostēs ferre non potuērunt ac terga vertērunt (B. G. iv. 35), the enemy could not stand the onset, but turned their backs.

e. Aut, or, excludes the alternative; vel (an old imperative of volō) and -ve give a choice between two alternatives. But this distinction is not always observed: —

sed quis ego sum aut quae est in mē facultās (Lael. 17), but who am I or what special capacity have I? [Here vel could not be used, because in fact a negative is implied and both alternatives are excluded.]

aut bibat aut abeat (Tusc. v. 118), let him drink or (if he won’t do that, then let him) quit. [Here vel would mean, let him do either as he chooses.]

vita tālis fuit vel fortūnā vel gloriā (Lael. 12), his life was such either in respect to fortune or fame (whichever way you look at it).

si propinquōs habeant imbēcillōrēs vel animō vel fortūnā (id. 70), if they have relatives beneath them either in spirit or in fortune (in either respect, for example, or in both).

aut deōrum aut rēgum filī (id. 70), sons either of gods or of kings. [Here one case would exclude the other.]

implicāti vel ĭsū diūtūrnō vel etiam officiis (id. 85), entangled either by close intimacy or even by obligations. [Here the second case might exclude the first.]
f. *Sive* (seu) is properly used in disjunctive conditions (*if either . . . or if*), but also with alternative words and clauses, especially with two names for the same thing: —

*sive* inrîdëns *sive* quod ita putatët (De Or. i. 91), *either laughingly or because he really thought so.*
*sive* deae seu sint volucrës (Aen. iii. 262), *whether they (the Harpies) are goddesses or birds.*

g. *Vel, even, for instance,* is often used as an intensive particle with no alternative force: as, — *vel minimus, the very least.*

h. *Nam* and *namque,* for, usually introduce a real reason, formally expressed, for a previous statement; *enim* (always postpositive), a less important explanatory circumstance put in by the way; *etënim* (*for, you see; for, you know; for, mind you*) and its negative *neque enim* introduce something self-evident or needing no proof.

( *ea vita* quae est sõla vita nôminanda. *nam* dum sumus inclusî in his compágibus corporis, mûnerë quodam necessitâtis et gravi òperë perfungimur; est *enim* animus caelestis, etc. (Cat. M. 77), (that life) which alone deserves to be called life; *for, so long as we are confined by the body's frame, we perform a sort of necessary function and heavy task.* *For the soul is from heaven.*

hârum trium sententiarum nûli prôrsus adsentior. nec *enim* illa prima vëra est (Lael. 57), *for of course that first one isn't true.*

i. *Ergô, therefore,* is used of things proved formally, but often has a weakened force. *Igitur, then, accordingly,* is weaker than *ergô* and is used in passing from one stage of an argument to another. *Itaque, therefore, accordingly, and so,* is used in proofs or inferences from the nature of things rather than in formal logical proof. *All of these are often used merely to resume a train of thought broken by a digression or parenthesis.* *Idcircô, for this reason, on this account,* is regularly followed (or preceded) by a correlative (as, *quia, quod, sì, ut, nè,* and refers to the special point introduced by the correlative.

*malum mihi vidêtur esse mors.* est miserum igitur, quoniam malum. certê. *ergô et ei quibus évênit iam ut morerentur et ei quibus évêntûrum est miseri. mihi ita vidêtur. nêmô ergô nôn miser.* (Tusc. i. 9.) *Death seems to me to be an evil. 'It is wretched, then, since it is an evil.' Certainly. 'Therefore, all those who have already died and who are to die hereafter are wretched.' So it appears to me. 'There is no one, therefore, who is not wretched.'*

*quia nâtûra mûtâri nôn potest, idcircô vërae amicitiae sempiternae sunt* (Lael. 32), *because nature cannot be changed, for this reason true friendships are eternal.*
j. Autem, enim, and vērō are postpositive¹; so generally igitur and often tamen.

k. Two conjunctions of similar meaning are often used together for the sake of emphasis or to bind a sentence more closely to what precedes: as, at vērō, but in truth, but surely, still, however; itaque ergō, accordingly then; namque, for; et-enim, for, you see, for of course (§ 324. h).

For Conjunctions introducing Subordinate Clauses, see Syntax.

Negative Particles ²

325. In the use of the Negative Particles, the following points are to be observed: —

326. Two negatives are equivalent to an affirmative: —

nēmō nōn audiet, every one will hear (nobody will not hear).
nōn possum nōn cōnfitēri (Fam. ix. 14. 1), I must confess.

ut . . . nē nōn timēre quidem sine aliqulō timōre possimus (Mil. 2), so that we cannot even be relieved of fear without some fear.

a. Many compounds or phrases of which nōn is the first part express an indefinite affirmative: —
nōn nūllus, some; nōn nūllī (= aliquī), some few.
nōn nīhil (= aliquid), something.
nōn nēmō (= aliquot), sundry persons.
nōn numquam (= aliquotīēns), sometimes.

b. Two negatives of which the second is nōn (belonging to the predicate) express a universal affirmative: —
nēmō nōn, nūllus nōn, nobody [does] not, i.e. everybody [does]. [Cf. nōn nēmō, not nobody, i.e. somebody.]
nīhil nōn, everything. [Cf. nōn nīhil, something.]
numquam nōn, never not, i.e. always. [Cf. nōn numquam, sometimes.]

c. A statement is often made emphatic by denying its contrary (Litotes, § 641): —
nōn semel (= saepissime), often enough (not once only).
nōn haec sine nūmine divōm ēveniunt (Aen. ii. 777), these things do not occur without the will of the gods.

haec nōn nīmis exqūrō (Att. vii. 18. 3), not very much, i.e. very little.

Note. — Compare nōn nūllus, nōn nēmō, etc., in a above.

¹ That is, they do not stand first in their clause.
² For a list of Negative Particles, see § 217. e.
327. A general negation is not destroyed —

1. By a following né . . . quidem, not even, or nōn modo, not only: —
   numquam tū nōn modo ōtium, sed né bellum quidem nisi nefārium concupīsti
   (Cat. i. 25), not only have you never desired repose, but you have never
   desired any war except one which was infamous.

2. By succeeding negatives each introducing a separate subordinate member: —
   eaque nesciēbant nec ubi nec quālia essent (Tusc. iii. 4), they knew not where
   or of what kind these things were.

3. By neque introducing a coordinate member: —
   nequeo satis mirari neque concere (Ter. Eun. 547), I cannot wonder enough
   nor conjecture.

328. The negative is frequently joined with a conjunction or
with an indefinite pronoun or adverb. Hence the forms of nega-
tion in Latin differ from those in English in many expressions: —
   nūlli (neutri) crēdō (not nōn crēdō ǔlli), I do not believe either (I believe
   neither).
   sine ǔllo periculō (less commonly cum nūlliō), with no danger (without any
   danger).
   nihil umquam audivi iūcundius, I never heard anything more amusing.
   Cf. negō haec esse vēra (not dicō nōn esse), I say this is not true (I deny, etc.).

   a. In the second of two connected ideas, and not is regularly ex-
   pressed by neque (nec), not by et nōn: —
   hostēs terga vertērunt, neque prius fugere dēstīērunt (B. G. i. 53), the enemy
   turned and fled, and did not stop fleeing until, etc.

   Note.—Similarly nec quisquam is regularly used for et nēmō; neque ǔllus for et
   nūllus; nec umquam for et umquam; nēve (neu), for et nē.

329. The particle immo, nay, is used to contradict some part of
a preceding statement or question, or its form; in the latter case,
the same statement is often repeated in a stronger form, so that
immo becomes nearly equivalent to yes (nay but, nay rather): —
   causa igitur nōn bona est? immo optima (Att. ix. 7. 4), is the cause then not
   a good one? on the contrary, the best.

   a. Minus, less (especially with sī, if, quō, in order that), and minimē,
   least, often have a negative force: —
   sī minus possunt, if they cannot. [For quō minus, see § 558. b.]
   audācissimus ego ex omnibus? minimē (Rosc. Am. 2), am I the boldest of
   them all? by no means (not at all).
QUESTIONS

Forms of Interrogation

330. Questions are either Direct or Indirect.

1. A Direct Question gives the exact words of the speaker: —
   quid est? what is it?
   ubi sum? where am I?

2. An Indirect Question gives the substance of the question, adapted to the form of the sentence in which it is quoted. It depends on a verb or other expression of asking, doubting, knowing, or the like: —
   rogavit quid esset, he asked what it was. [Direct: quid est, what is it?]
   nescio ubi sim, I know not where I am. [Direct: ubi sum, where am I?]

331. Questions in Latin are introduced by special interrogative words, and are not distinguished by the order of words, as in English.¹

   Note. — The form of Indirect Questions (in English introduced by whether, or by an interrogative pronoun or adverb) is in Latin the same as that of Direct; the difference being only in the verb, which in indirect questions is regularly in the Subjunctive (§ 574).

332. A question of simple fact, requiring the answer yes or no, is formed by adding the enclitic -ne to the emphatic word: —
   tünē id veritus es (Q. Fr. i. 3. 1), did you fear that?
   hícine vir usquam nisi in patriā moriētur (Mil. 104), shall this man die anywhere but in his native land?
   is tibi mortemnē vidētur aut dolōrem timēre (Tusc. v. 88), does he seem to you to fear death or pain?

   a. The interrogative particle -ne is sometimes omitted: —
   patēre tua cōnsilia nōn sentis (Cat. i. 1), do you not see that your schemes are manifest? (you do not see, eh?)

   Note. — In such cases, as no sign of interrogation appears, it is often doubtful whether the sentence is a question or an ironical statement.

   b. When the enclitic -ne is added to a negative word, as in nōnne, an affirmative answer is expected. The particle num suggests a negative answer: —
   nōnne animadvertis (N. D. iii. 89), do you not observe?
   num dubium est (Rosc. Am. 107), there is no doubt, is there?

   Note. — In Indirect Questions num commonly loses its peculiar force and means simply whether.

¹ For a list of Interrogative Particles, see § 217. d.
c. The particle -ne often when added to the verb, less commonly when added to some other word, has the force of nōnne: —
meministīne mē in senātū dicere (Cat. i. 7), don't you remember my saying in the Senate?
rectēne interpreter sententiam tuam (Tusc. iii. 37), do I not rightly interpret your meaning?

Note 1. — This was evidently the original meaning of -ne; but in most cases the negative force was lost and -ne was used merely to express a question. So the English interrogative no? shades off into eh?

Note 2. — The enclitic -ne is sometimes added to other interrogative words: as, utrumne, whether? anne, or; quantane (Hor. S. ii. 3. 317), how big? quōne malō (id. ii. 3. 295), by what curse?

333. A question concerning some special circumstance is formed by prefixing to the sentence an interrogative pronoun or adverb as in English (§ 152): —
quid exspectās (Cat. ii. 18), what are you looking forward to?
quō igitur haec spectant (Fam. vi. 6. 11), whither then is all this tending?
Īcare, ubi es (Ov. M. viii. 232), Icarus, where are you?
quod vectigal vōbīs tūtum fuit? quem socium dēfendistis? cui praesidiō classibus vestris fuistis? (Manil. 32), what revenue has been safe for you? what ally have you defended? whom have you guarded with your fleets?

Note. — A question of this form becomes an exclamation by changing the tone of the voice: as,—
quālis vir erat! what a man he was!
quō calamitātēs passi sumus! how many misfortunes we have suffered!
quō studiō cōnsentiunt (Cat. iv. 15), with what zeal they unite!

a. The particles -nam (enclitic) and tandem may be added to interrogative pronouns and adverbs for the sake of emphasis: —
quisnam est, pray who is it? [quis tandem est? would be stronger.]
ubinam gentium sumus (Cat. i. 9), where in the world are we?
in quā tandem urbe hōc disputant (Mil. 7), in what city, pray, do they maintain this?

Note — Tandem is sometimes added to verbs: —
aīn tandem (Fam. ix. 21), you don't say so! (say you so, pray?)
itane tandem uxorēm dūxit Antiphō (Ter. Ph. 231), so then, eh? Antiphō’s got married.

Double Questions

334. A Double or Alternative Question is an inquiry as to which of two or more supposed cases is the true one.

335. In Double or Alternative Questions, utrum or -ne, whether, stands in the first member; an, anne, or, annōn, necne, or not, in the second; and usually an in the third, if there be one: —
**DOUBLE QUESTIONS**

§ 335  

**utrum** nescis, an prō nihilō id putās (Fam. x. 26), *is it that you don’t know, or do you think nothing of it?*

vōsne L. Domitium an vōs Domitiō dēseruit (B. C. ii. 32), *did you desert Lucius Domitius, or did Domitius desert you?*

quaerō servōsne an liberōs (Rosc. Am. 74), *I ask whether slaves or free.*

**utrum** hostem an vōs an fortūnam utrūsque populi ignōrātis (Liv. xxi. 10), *is it the enemy, or yourselves, or the fortune of the two peoples, that you do not know?*

**Note.** — *Anne for an is rare. Necne is rare in direct questions, but in indirect questions it is commoner than anōn. In poetry -ne . . . -ne sometimes occurs.*

**a.** The interrogative particle is often omitted in the first member; in which case an or -ne (anne, necne) may stand in the second: —

Gabīniō dīcam anne Pompēiō an utrīque (Manil. 57), *shall I say to Gabinius, or to Pompey, or to both?*

sunt haec tua verba necne (Tusc. iii. 41), *are these your words or not?*

quaesivi ā Catilīnā in conventū apud M. Laecam fuisset necne (Cat. ii. 13), *I asked Catiline whether he had been at the meeting at Marcus Leca’s or not.***

**b.** Sometimes the first member is omitted or implied, and an (anne) alone asks the question, — usually with indignation or surprise: —

an tū miserōs putās illōs (Tusc. i. 13), *what! do you think those men wretched?*

an iste umquam dé sē bonam spem habuisset, nisi dé vōbīs malam opinīōnem animō imbibisset (Verr. i. 42), *would he ever have had good hopes about himself unless he had conceived an evil opinion of you?*

**c.** Sometimes the second member is omitted or implied, and utrum may ask a question to which there is no alternative: —

utrum est in clārissimīs civibus is, quem . . . (Flacc. 45), *is he among the noblest citizens, whom, etc.?*

**d.** The following table exhibits the various forms of alternative questions: —

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>utrum . . . an . . . an</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>utrum . . . annōn (necne, see § 335. n.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>— — — . . . an (anne)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ne . . . an</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>— — . . . -ne, necne</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ne . . . necne</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ne . . . -ne</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note.** — *From double (alternative) questions must be distinguished those which are in themselves single, but of which some detail is alternative. These have the common disjunctive particles aut or vel (-ve). Thus, — quaerō num iniūstē aut improbē fēcerit (Off. iii. 54), *I ask whether he acted unjustly or even dishonestly. Here there is no double question. The only inquiry is whether the man did either of the two things supposed, not which of the two he did.*
Question and Answer

336. There is no one Latin word in common use meaning simply yes or no. In answering a question affirmatively, the verb or some other emphatic word is generally repeated; in answering negatively, the verb, etc., with non or a similar negative:

valetne, is he well? valet, yes (he is well).
eratne tēcum, was he with you? nōn erat, no (he was not).
num quidnam novī? there is nothing new, is there? nihil sānē, oh! nothing.

a. An intensive or negative particle, a phrase, or a clause is sometimes used to answer a direct question:

1. For yes:

vērō, in truth, true, no doubt, yes. ita vērō, certainly (so in truth), etc.
etiam, even so, yes, etc.
ita, so, true, etc.
sānē, surely, no doubt, doubtless, etc.
certē, certainly, unquestionably, etc.
factum, true, it’s a fact, you’re right, etc. (lit., it was done).

2. For no:

nōn, not so.
nūllō modō, by no means.
minimē, not at all (lit., in the smallest degree, cf. § 329. a).
minimē vērō, no, not by any means; oh! no, etc.
nōn quidem, why, no; certainly not, etc.
nōn hercle vērō, why, gracious, no! (certainly not, by Hercules!)

Examples are:

aut etiam aut nōn respondēre (Acad. ii. 104), to answer (categorically) yes or no.
estne ut fertur forma? sānē (Ter. Eun. 361), is she as handsome as they say she is? (is her beauty as it is said?) oh! yes.
miser ergō Archelāus? certē si iniūstus (Tusc. v. 35), was Archelaus wretched then? certainly, if he was unjust.
an haec contemnitis? minimē (De Or. ii. 295), do you despise these things? not at all.
volucribusne et feris? minimē vērō (Tusc. i. 104), to the birds and beasts? why, of course not.
ex tui animi sententiā tū uxōrem habēs? nōn hercle, ex mei animi sententiā (De Or. ii. 260), Lord! no, etc.

337. In answering a double question, one member of the alternative, or some part of it, must be repeated:

vidisti an dē audītō nūntiās? — egomet vidi (Plaut. Merc. 902), did you see it or are you repeating something you have heard? — I saw it myself.
CONSTRUCTION OF CASES

§ 338. The Cases of nouns express their relations to other words in the sentence. The most primitive way of expressing such relations was by mere juxtaposition of unaffected forms. From this arose in time composition, i.e. the growing together of stems, by means of which a complex expression arises with its parts mutually dependent. Thus such a complex as armi-gero- came to mean arm-bearing; fidi-cren-, playing on the lyre. Later, Cases were formed by means of suffixes expressing more definitely such relations, and Syntax began. But the primitive method of composition still continues to hold an important place even in the most highly developed languages.

Originally the Indo-European family of languages, to which Latin belongs, had at least seven case-forms, besides the Vocative. But in Latin the Locative and the Instrumental were lost 1 except in a few words (where they remained without being recognized as cases), and their functions were divided among the other cases.

The Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative express the simplest and perhaps the earliest case-relations. The Nominative is the case of the Subject, and generally ends in -s. The Vocative, usually without a termination, or like the Nominative (§ 38. a), perhaps never had a suffix of its own. 2 The Accusative, most frequently formed by the suffix -m, originally connected the noun loosely with the verb-idea, not necessarily expressed by a verb proper, but as well by a noun or an adjective (see § 386).

The Genitive appears to have expressed a great variety of relations and to have had no single primitive meaning; and the same may be true of the Dative.

The other cases perhaps at first expressed relations of place or direction (to, from, at, with), though this is not clear in all instances. The earlier meanings, however, have become confused with each other, and in many instances the cases are no longer distinguishable in meaning or in form. Thus the Locative was for the most part lost from its confusion with the Dative and Ablative; and its function was often performed by the Ablative, which is freely used to express the place where (§ 421). To indicate the case-relations — especially those of place — more precisely, Prepositions (originally adverbs) gradually came into use. The case-endings, thus losing something of their significance, were less distinctly pronounced as time went on (see § 36, phonetic decay), and prepositions have finally superseded them in the modern languages derived from Latin. But in Latin a large and various body of relations was still expressed by case-forms. It is to be noticed that in their literal use cases tended to adopt the preposition, and in their figurative uses to retain the old construction. (See Ablative of Separation, §§ 402-404; Ablative of Place and Time, § 421 ff.)

The word cāsus, case, is a translation of the Greek πτώς, a falling away (from the erect position). The term πτώς was originally applied to the Oblique Cases (§ 35. g), to mark them as variations from the Nominative which was called ὄρθος, erect (cāsus rectus). The later name Nominative (cāsus nominātivus) is from nómiṇō, and means the naming case. The other case-names (except Ablative) are of Greek origin. The name Genitive (cāsus genetivus) is a translation of γενεύ (πτώς), from γένος (class), and refers to the class to which a thing belongs. Dative (cāsus dativus, from dō) is translated from δοτική, and means the case of giving. Accusative (accūsātīvus, from accūsō) is a mistranslation of aτρātīk (the case of causing), from aīrla, cause, and meant to the Romans the case of accusing. The name Vocative (vocātīvus, from vocābī) is translated from καλωτίκ (the case of calling). The name Ablative (ablātīvus, from ablāitus, auferō) means taking from. This case the Greek had lost.

1 Some of the endings, however, which in Latin are assigned to the dative and ablative are doubtless of locative or instrumental origin (see p. 34, footnote).
2 The e-vocative of the second declension is a form of the stem (§ 45. o).
SYNTAX: CONSTRUCTION OF CASES

NOMINATIVE CASE

339. The Subject of a finite verb is in the Nominative: —

Caesar Rhēnum trānsire décēverat (B. G. iv. 17), Caesar had determined to cross the Rhine.

For the omission of a pronominal subject, see § 295. a.

a. The nominative may be used in exclamations: —

ēn dextra fidēsque (Aen. iv. 597), lo, the faith and plighted word!
ecce tuae litterae dē Varrōne (Att. xiii. 16), lo and behold, your letters about Varro!

Note. — But the accusative is more common (§ 397. d).

VOCATIVE CASE

340. The Vocative is the case of direct address: —

Tiberine pater, tē, sāncte, precor (Liv. ii. 10), O father Tiber, thee, holy one, I pray.
res omnīs mihi tēcum erit, Hortēnśi (Verr. i. 33), my whole attention will be devoted to you, Hortensius.

a. A noun in the nominative in apposition with the subject of the imperative mood is sometimes used instead of the vocative: —
audi tū, populus Albānus (Liv. i. 24), hear, thou people of Alba.

b. The vocative of an adjective is sometimes used in poetry instead of the nominative, where the verb is in the second person: —
quō morītūre ruīs (Aen. x. 811), whither art thou rushing to thy doom?
cēnsōrem trabeāte salūtās (Pers. iii. 29), robed you salute the censor.

c. The vocative macte is used as a predicate in the phrase macte estō (vīrtūte), success attend your (valor): —
iūbērem tē macte vīrtūte esse (Liv. ii. 12), I should bid you go on and prosper in your valor.
macte novā vīrtūte puer (Aen. ix. 641), success attend your valor, boy!

Note. — As the original quantity of the final e in macte is not determinable, it may be that the word was an adverb, as in bene est and the like.

GENITIVE CASE

341. The Genitive is regularly used to express the relation of one noun to another. Hence it is sometimes called the adjective case, to distinguish it from the Dative and the Ablative, which may be called adverbial cases.
The uses of the Genitive may be classified as follows: —

I. Genitive with Nouns:
   1. Of Possession (§ 343).
   2. Of Material (§ 344).
   3. Of Quality (§ 345).
   4. Of the Whole, after words designating a Part (Partitive, § 346).
   5. With Nouns of Action and Feeling (§ 348).

II. Genitive with Adjectives:
   1. After Relative Adjectives (or Verbals) (§ 349).

III. Genitive with Verbs:
   1. Of Accusing, etc. (Charge or Penalty) (§ 352).

Genitive with Nouns

342. A noun used to limit or define another, and not meaning the same person or thing, is put in the Genitive.

This relation is most frequently expressed in English by the preposition of; sometimes by the English genitive (or possessive) case: —

libri Ciceronis, the books of Cicero, or Cicero's books.

inimici Caesaris, Caesar's enemies, or the enemies of Caesar.

talentum auris, a talent of gold.

But observe the following equivalents: —

cacatió laboris, a respite from toil.

petitió consulátus, candidacy for the consulship.

règnum civitátis, royal power over the state.

Possessive Genitive

343. The Possessive Genitive denotes the person or thing to which an object, quality, feeling, or action belongs: —

Alexandrí canis, Alexander's dog.

potentia Pompéi (Sall. Cat. 19), Pompey's power.

Ariovistí mors (B. G. v. 29), the death of Ariovistus.

perditórum temeritás (Mil. 22), the recklessness of desperate men.

Note 1. — The Possessive Genitive may denote (1) the actual owner (as in Alexander's dog) or author (as in Cicero's writings), or (2) the person or thing that possesses some feeling or quality or does some act (as in Cicero's eloquence, the strength of the bridge, Catiline's evil deeds). In the latter use it is sometimes called the Subjective Genitive; but this term properly includes the possessive genitive and several other genitive constructions (nearly all, in fact, except the Objective Genitive, § 347).

Note 2. — The noun limited is understood in a few expressions: —

ad Castoris [aedēs] (Quinct. 17), at the [temple] of Castor. [Cf. St. Paul's.]

Flaccus Claudi, Flaccus [slave] of Claudius.

Hectoris Andromachē (Aen. iii. 319), Hector's [wife] Andromache.
a. For the genitive of possession a possessive or derivative adjective is often used, — regularly for the possessive genitive of the personal pronouns (§ 302. a): —

liber meus, my book. [Not liber meī.]
aliēna pericula, other men's dangers. [But also aliōrum.]
Sullāna temporā, the times of Sulla. [Oftener Sullae.]

b. The possessive genitive often stands in the predicate, connected with its noun by a verb (Predicate Genitive): —
haec domus est patris meī, this house is my father's.
iam mē Pompēī totum esse scis (Fam. ii. 13), you know I am now all for Pompey (all Pompey's).
summa laus et tua et Brūtī est (Fam. xii. 4. 2), the highest praise is due both to you and to Brutus (is both yours and Brutus's).
compendī facere, to save (make of saving).
lucī facere, to get the benefit of (make of profit).

Note. — These genitives bear the same relation to the examples in § 343 that a predicate noun bears to an appositive (§§ 282, 283).

c. An infinitive or a clause, when used as a noun, is often limited by a genitive in the predicate: —
neque suī iūdicī [erat] discernere (B. C. i. 35), nor was it for his judgment to decide (nor did it belong to his judgment).
cūiusvis hominis est errāre (Phil. xii. 5), it is any man's [liability] to err.
negāvit mōris esse Graecōrum, ut in convivīō virōrum accumberent mulierēs (Verr. ii. 1. 66), he said it was not the custom of the Greeks for women to appear as guests (recline) at the banquets of men.
sed timidī est optāre necem (Ov. M. iv. 115), but 't is the coward's part to wish for death.
stultī erat spērāre, suādēre impudentis (Phil. ii. 28), it was folly (the part of a fool) to hope, effrontery to urge.
sapientis est pauca loquī, it is wise (the part of a wise man) to say little.
[Not sapiēns (neuter) est, etc.]

Note 1. — This construction is regular with adjectives of the third declension instead of the neuter nominative (see the last two examples).
Note 2. — A derivative or possessive adjective may be used for the genitive in this construction, and must be used for the genitive of a personal pronoun: —
mentirī nōn est meum [not meī], it is not for me to lie.
hūmānum [for hominis] est errāre, it is man's nature to err (to err is human).

d. A limiting genitive is sometimes used instead of a noun in apposition (Appositional Genitive) (§ 282): —
nōmen însānīae (for nōmen însānia), the word madness.
oppidum Antiochīae (for oppidum Antiochia, the regular form), the city of Antioch.
Genitive of Material

344. The Genitive may denote the Substance or Material of which a thing consists (cf. § 403): —

\[ \text{talentum auri, a talent of gold.} \quad \text{flūmina lactis, rivers of milk.} \]

Genitive of Quality

345. The Genitive is used to denote Quality, but only when the quality is modified by an adjective: —

\[ \text{vir summae virtūtis, a man of the highest courage. [But not vir virtūtis.]} \]
\[ \text{māgni formīca labōris (Hor. S. i. 1. 33), the ant [a creature] of great toil.} \]
\[ \text{ille autem sui iūdici (Nep. Att. 9), but he [a man] of independent (his own) judgment.} \]

\[ \text{Note. — Compare Ablative of Quality (§ 415). In expressions of quality, the genitive or the ablative may often be used indifferently: as, præstanti prūdentī vir, a man of surpassing wisdom; maximī animī homī, a man of the greatest courage. In classic prose, however, the genitive of quality is much less common than the ablative; it is practically confined to expressions of measure or number, to a phrase with ēius, and to nouns modified by māgnus, maximus, summus, or tantus. In general the Genitive is used rather of essential, the Ablative of special or incidental characteristics.} \]

\[ \text{a. The genitive of quality is found in the adjective phrases ēius modī, cūius modī (equivalent to tālis, such; quālis, of what sort): —} \]
\[ \text{ēius modī sunt tempestātēs cōnsecūtae, utī (B. G. iii. 29), such storms followed, that, etc.} \]

\[ \text{b. The genitive of quality, with numerals, is used to define measures of length, depth, etc. (Genitive of Measure): —} \]
\[ \text{fossa trium pedum, a trench of three feet [in depth].} \]
\[ \text{mūrus sēdecim pedum, a wall of sixteen feet [high].} \]

For the Genitive of Quality used to express indefinite value, see § 417.

Partitive Genitive

346. Words denoting a Part are followed by the Genitive of the Whole to which the part belongs.

\[ \text{a. Partitive words, followed by the genitive, are —} \]

1. Nouns or Pronouns (cf. also 3 below): —
\[ \text{pars militum, part of the soldiers. quis nostrum, which of us?} \]
\[ \text{nīhil erat reliquī, there was nothing left.} \]
\[ \text{nēmō eōrum (B. G. vii. 66), not a man of them.} \]
\[ \text{māgnam partem eōrum interfēcērunt (id. ii. 23), they killed a large part of them.} \]
2. Numerals, Comparatives, Superlatives, and Pronominal words like alius, alter, nihilus, etc.: —

únus tribūnōrum, one of the tribunes (see c below).
sapientum octāvus (Hor. S. ii. 3. 296), the eighth of the wise men.
milia passuum sescenta (B. G. iv. 3), six hundred miles (thousands of paces).
māior frātrum, the elder of the brothers.
animālīnum fortīōra, the stronger [of] animals.
Suēbōrum gēns est longē maxima et bellicosissima Germānōrum omnium (B. G. iv. 1), the tribe of the Suevi is far the largest and most warlike of all the Germans.
alter cōnsulum, one of the [two] consuls.
nūlla eārum (B.G. iv. 28), not one of them (the ships).

3. Neuter Adjectives and Pronouns, used as nouns: —
tantum spati, so much [of] space.
aliquid nummōrum, a few pence (something of coins).
id locī (or locōrum), that spot of ground; id temporis, at that time (§ 397. a).
plāna urbīs, the level parts of the town.
quid novī, what news? (what of new?)
plānum frūmentī (B. C. i. 78), a little grain.
plūs dolōris (B. G. i. 20), more grief.
sūi aliqūid timōris (B.C. ii. 29), some fear of his own (something of his own fear).

Note 1.—In classic prose neuter adjectives (not pronominal) seldom take a partitive genitive, except multum, tantum, quantum, and similar words.

Note 2.—The genitive of adjectives of the third declension is rarely used partitively: — nihil novī (genitive), nothing new; but, — nihil memorābile (nominative), nothing worth mention (not nihil memorābilis).

4. Adverbs, especially those of Quantity and of Place: —
parum ātī, not much ease (too little of ease).
satis pecūnīae, money enough (enough of money).
plūrium tōtius Galliae equitātū valet (B. G. v. 3), is strongest of all Gaul in cavalry.

ubicumque terrārum et gentium (Verr. v. 143), wherever in the whole world.
rès erat eō iam locī ut (Sest. 68), the business had now reached such a point that, etc.
eō miserīārum (Iug. 14. 3), to that [pitch] of misery.
inde locī, next in order (thence of place). [Poetical.]

5. The poets and later writers often use the partitive genitive after adjectives, instead of a noun in its proper case: —
sequimur tē, sāncte deōrum (Aen. iv. 576), we follow thee, O holy deity. [For sāncte deus (§ 49. g. n.)]
nigrae lānārum (Plin. H. N. viii. 193), black wools. [For nigræ lānæ.]
expeditī militūm (Liv. xxx. 9), light-armed soldiers. [For expeditī militēs.]
hominūm cūncōs (Ov. M. iv. 631), all men. [For cūncōs hominēs; cf. e.]
§ 346-348]

**OBJECTIVE GENITIVE**

**c.** Cardinal numerals (except *milia*) regularly take the Ablative with *ē* (ex) or *dē* instead of the Partitive Genitive. So also *quidam*, a certain one, commonly, and other words occasionally: —

únus ex tribūnis, one of the tribunes. [But also, únus tribūnōrum (cf. a. 2).] minunus ex illis (Lug. 11), the youngest of them.

medius ex tribūs (ib.), the middle one of the three.

*quidam* ex mīlitibus, certain of the soldiers.

únus dē multīs (Fin. ii. 66), one of the many.

paucī dē nostōris cadunt (B: G. i. 15), a few of our men fall.

hominem dē comitibus meis, a man of my companions.

d. **Uterque**, both (properly each), and **quisque**, each, with Nouns are regularly used as adjectives in agreement, but with Pronouns take a partitive genitive: —

uterque cōnsul, both the consuls; but, uterque nostrum, both of us.

únus quisque vestrum, each one of you.

utraque castra, both camps.

e. Numbers and words of quantity including the whole of any thing take a case in agreement, and not the partitive genitive. So also words denoting a part when only that part is thought of: —

nōs omnēs, all of us (we all). [Not omnēs nostrum.]

quot sunt hostēs, how many of the enemy are there?

cave inimīcōs, qui multī sunt, beware of your enemies, who are many.

multī militēs, many of the soldiers.

nēmō Rōmānus, not one Roman.

**Objective Genitive**

347. The Objective Genitive is used with Nouns, Adjectives, and Verbs.

348. Nouns of action, agency, and feeling govern the Genitive of the Object: —

cāritās tui, affection for you.

cāris deōrum, prayer to the gods.

cātūrāns homōrum, struggle for office.

cātūrāns homōrum, struggle for office.

cātūrāns homōrum, struggle for office.

Note. — This usage is an extension of the idea of belonging to (Possessive Genitive). Thus in the phrase *odium Caesaris*, hate of Caesar, the hate in a passive sense belongs to Cæsar, as *odium*, though in its active sense he is the object of it, as *hate* (cf. a). The distinction between the Possessive (subjective) and the Objective Genitive is very unstable and is often lost sight of. It is illustrated by the following example: the phrase *amor patris*, love of a father, may mean love felt by a father, a father’s love (subjective genitive), or love towards a father (objective genitive).
SYNTAX: CONSTRUCTION OF CASES

§§ 348, 349

a. The objective genitive is sometimes replaced by a possessive pronoun or other derivative adjective: —

mea invidia, my unpopularity (the dislike of which I am the object). [Cf. odium mei (Har. Resp. 5), hatred of me.]
laudatór meus (Att. i. 16. 5), my eulogist (one who praises me). [Cf. nostri laudatór (id. i. 14. 6).]
Clōdiānum crimen (Mil. 72), the murder of Clodius (the Clodian charge). [As we say, the Nathan murder.]
metus hostīlis (lug. 41), fear of the enemy (hostile fear).
ea quae faciēbat, tua sē fidūciā facere dīcebat (Verr. v. 176), what he was doing, he said he did relying on you (with your reliance).
neque neglegentiā tua, neque id odio fēcit tuō (Ter. Ph. 1016), he did this neither from neglect nor from hatred of you.

b. Rarely the objective genitive is used with a noun already limited by another genitive: —

animī multārum rērum percursiō (Tusc. iv. 31), the mind's traversing of many things.

b. A noun with a preposition is often used instead of the objective genitive: —

odium in Antōnium (Fam. x. 5. 3), hate of Antony.
merita ergā mē (id. i. 1. 1), services to me.
meam in tē pietātem (id. i. 9. 1), my devotion to you.
impetus in urbem (Phil. xii. 29), an attack on the city.
excessus ē vitā (Fin. iii. 60), departure from life. [Also, excessus vitae, Tusc. i. 27.]
adoptīō in Domitiō (Tac. Ann. xii. 25), the adoption of Domitius. [A late and bold extension of this construction.]

Note.—So also in late writers the dative of reference (cf. § 366. b): as, —longō bellō māteria (Tac. H. i. 89), resources for a long war.

GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

349. Adjectives requiring an object of reference govern the Objective Genitive.

a. Adjectives denoting desire, knowledge, memory, fulness, power, sharing, guilt, and their opposites govern the genitive: —

avidī laudīs (Manil. 7), greedy of praise.
fastidiōsus litterārum, disdaining letters.
iūris peritus, skilled in law. [So also the ablative, iūre, cf. § 418.]
memorem vestrī, oblitum suī (Cat. iv. 19), mindful of you, forgetful of himself.
ratiōnis et ōratiōnis expertēs (Off. i. 50), devoid of sense and speech.
nostrae cōnsuētūdinis imperīti (B. G. iv. 22), unacquainted with our customs.
plēnus fidei, full of good faith.
onnis spei egēnām (Tac. Ann. i. 53), destitute of all hope.
tempestātum potentem (Aen. i. 80), having sway over the storms.
im pertinentae (Liv. xxix. 9. 9), ungodly in anger.
coniurātōnīs particiēs (Cat. iii. 14), sharing in the conspiracy.
affinis reō capitālēs (Verr. ii. 2. 94), involved in a capital crime.
insōns culpae (Liv. xxii. 49), innocent of guilt.

b. Participles in -ns govern the genitive when they are used as
adjectives, i.e. when they denote a constant disposition and not a
particular act: —

si quem tui amantiōrem cōgnōvisti (Q. Fr. i. 1. 15), if you have become
acquainted with any one more fond of you.
multitūdō Insolēns bellī (B. C. ii. 36), a crowd unused to war.
erat Iugurtha appetēns glōriae militāris (lug. 7), Iugurtha was eager for mili-
tary glory.

Note 1. — Participles in -ns, when used as participles, take the case regularly gov-
erned by the verb to which they belong: as, — Sp. Maelium rēgnōtum appetētum inter-
ēmit (Cat. M. 56), he put to death Spurius Maelius, who was aspiring to royal power.

Note 2. — Occasionally participial forms in -ns are treated as participles (see note 1)
even when they express a disposition or character: as, — virtūs quam alīi ipsam tem-
perantiam dicunt esse, alīi obtemperantem temperantiae praecēptēs et cām subse-
tem (Tusc. iv. 30), observant of the teachings of temperance and obedient to her.

c. Verbals in -āx (§ 251) govern the genitive in poetry and later
Latin: —

iūstum et tenācem prōpositī virum (Hor. Od. iii. 3), a man just and steadfast
to his purpose.
circus capāx populi (Ov. A. A. i. 136), a circus big enough to hold the people.
cibī vinique capācissimus (Liv. ix. 16. 13), a very great eater and drinker
(very able to contain food and wine).

da. The poets and later writers use the genitive with almost any
adjective, to denote that with reference to which the quality exists
(Provincii of Specification): —
callidus reō militāris (Tac. H. ii. 32), skilled in soldiership.
apauper aquae (Hor. Od. iii. 30. 11), scant of water.
nōtus animī paternī (id. ii. 2. 6), famed for a paternal spirit.
fessī rērm (Aen. i. 178), weary of toil.
integer vitae scelerisque pūrus (Hor. Od. i. 22. 1), upright in life, and unstained
by guilt.

Note. — The Genitive of Specification is only an extension of the construction with
adjectives requiring an object of reference (§ 349). Thus callidus denotes knowledge;
apauper, want; pūrus, innocence; and so these words in a manner belong to the classes
under a.

For the Ablative of Specification, the prose construction, see § 418. For Adjectives
of likeness etc. with the Genitive, apparently Objective, see § 385. c. For Adjectives
with animā (locative in origin), see § 358.
GENITIVE WITH VERBS

Verbs of Remembering and Forgetting

350. Verbs of remembering and forgetting take either the Accusative or the Genitive of the object: —

a. Memini takes the Accusative when it has the literal sense of retaining in the mind what one has seen, heard, or learned. Hence the accusative is used of persons whom one remembers as acquaintances, or of things which one has experienced.

So obliviscor in the opposite sense, — to forget literally, to lose all memory of a thing (very rarely, of a person).

Cinnam memini (Phil. v. 17), I remember Cinna.
utinam avum tuum meminissēs (id. i. 34), oh! that you could remember your grandfather! (but he died before you were born).
Postumium, cūlius statuam in Isthmō meminisse té dicis (Att. xiii. 32), Postumius, whose statue you say you remember (to have seen) on the Isthmus.
omnia meminīt Siron Epicūrī dogmata (Acad. ii. 106), Siron remembers all the doctrines of Epicurus.

multa ab alīs audita meminērunt (De Or. ii. 355), they remember many things that they have heard from others.
tōtam causam oblivitus est (Brut. 217), he forgot the whole case.
hinc iam obliviscerē Graīös (Aen. ii. 148), from henceforth forget the Greeks (i.e. not merely disregard them, but banish them from your mind, as if you had never known them).

b. Memini takes the Genitive when it means to be mindful or regardful of a person or thing, to think of somebody or something (often with special interest or warmth of feeling).

So obliviscor in the opposite sense, — to disregard, or dismiss from the mind, — and the adjective oblivus, careless or regardless.
ipse suī meminerat (Verr. ii. 136), he was mindful of himself (of his own interests).
faciam ut hūius locī diēque mēque semper memineris (Ter. Eun. 801), I will make you remember this place and this day and me as long as you live.
nec mē meminisse pigēbit Elissae, dum memor ipse meī (Aen. iv. 335), nor shall I feel regret at the thought of Elissa, so long as I remember myself.
meminerint verēcundiae (Off. i. 122), let them cherish modesty.
hūmānae īnfirmitātis memini (Liv. xxx. 31. 6), I remember human weakness.
obliviscī temporum meōrum, meminisse āctīōnum (Fam. i. 9. 8), to disregard my own interests, to be mindful of the matters at issue.
nectamen Epicūrī licet obliviscī (Fin. v. 3), and yet I must not forget Epicurus.
obliviscerē caedis atque incendīōrum (Cat. i. 6), turn your mind from slaughter and conflagrations (dismiss them from your thoughts).
§§ 350, 351]  Genitive With Verbs  219

Note 1. — With both memini and obliviscor the personal and reflexive pronouns are regularly in the Genitive; neuter pronouns and adjectives used substantively are regularly in the Accusative; abstract nouns are often in the Genitive. These uses come in each instance from the natural meaning of the verbs (as defined above).

Note 2. — Memini in the sense of mention takes the Genitive: as, — eundem Achillam cæsius suprā meminimus (B. C. iii. 108), that same Achillas whom I mentioned above.

c. Reminisce is rare. It takes the Accusative in the literal sense of call to mind, recollect; the Genitive in the more figurative sense of be mindful of: —

dulcis moriēns reminiscitur Argōs (Aen. x. 782), as he dies he calls to mind his beloved Argos.
reminisce rētur et veteris incommodi populi Rōmānī et prīstīnāe virtūtis Helvētiōrum (B. G. i. 13), let him remember both the former discomfiture of the Roman people and the ancient valor of the Helvetians. [A warning, — let him bear it in mind (and beware)!]

d. Recordor, recollect, recall, regularly takes the Accusative: —
recordāre cōnsēnsum illum theatrī (Phil. i. 30), recall that unanimous agreement of the [audience in the] theatre.
recordāmini omnīs civīlis dissēniōnēs (Cat. iii. 24), call to mind all the civil wars.

Note. — Recordor takes the genitive once (Pison. 12); it is never used with a personal object, but may be followed by dē with the ablative of the person or thing (cf. § 351. n.): —
dē tē recordor (Scaur. 49), I remember about you.
dē īlliīs (lacrimīs) recordor (Planc. 104), I am reminded of those tears.

Verbs of Reminding

351. Verbs of reminding take with the Accusative of the person a Genitive of the thing; except in the case of a neuter pronoun, which is put in the accusative (cf. § 390. e).

So admoneō, commoneō, commonefaciō, commonefīō. But moneō with the genitive is found in late writers only.

Catilīna admonēbat alium egestātis, alium cupiditātis suae (Sall. Cat. 21),
Catiline reminded one of his poverty, another of his cupidity.
eōs hōc moneō (Cat. ii. 20), I give them this warning.
quod vōs īlex commonet (Verr. iii. 40), that which the law reminds you of.

Note. — All these verbs often take dē with the ablative, and the accusative of nouns as well as of pronouns is sometimes used with them: —
saepius tē admoneō dē syngraphā Sittīnānā (Fam. viii. 4. 5) I remind you again and again of Sittius’s bond.
officium vostrum ut vōs malō cōgātis commonērīer (Plaut. Ps. 150), that you may by misfortune force yourselves to be reminded of your duty.
Verbs of Accusing, Condemning, and Acquitting

352. Verbs of accusing, condemning, and acquitting, take the Genitive of the Charge or Penalty: —

arguit me furti, he accuses me of theft.
peculatīs damnātus (pecūniae publicae damnātus) (Flacc. 43), condemned for embezzlement.
video nōn tē absolūtum esse improbitātis, sed illōs damnātōs esse caedis (Verr. ii. 1. 72), I see, not that you were acquitted of outrage, but that they were condemned for homicide.

a. Peculiar genitives, under this construction, are —
capitis, as in damnāre capitis, to sentence to death.
māiestātis [laesae], treason (crime against the dignity of the state).
repetundārum [rērum], extortion (lit. of an action for reclaiming money).
vōti damnātus (or reus), bound [to the payment] of one's vow, i.e. successful in one's effort.
pecūniae (damnāre, iūdicāre, see note).
dupli etc., as in dupli condemnāre, condemn to pay twofold.

Note.—The origin of these genitive constructions is pointed at by pecūniae damnāre (Gell. xx. 1. 38), to condemn to pay money, in a case of injury to the person; quantae pecūniae iūdicāti essent (id.xx.1.47), how much money they were adjudged to pay, in a mere suit for debt; confessi aeras ac débiti iūdicāti (id. xx. 1. 42), adjudged to owe an admitted sum due. These expressions show that the genitive of the penalty comes from the use of the genitive of value to express a sum of money due either as a debt or as a fine. Since in early civilizations all offences could be compounded by the payment of fines, the genitive came to be used of other punishments, not pecuniary. From this to the genitive of the actual crime is an easy transition, inasmuch as there is always a confusion between crime and penalty (cf. Eng. guilty of death). It is quite unnecessary to assume an ellipsis of criminē or iūdicīō.

353. Other constructions for the Charge or Penalty are —

1. The Ablative of Price: regularly of a definite amount of fine, and often of indefinite penalties (cf. § 416): —

Frusinātēs tertīa parte agrī damnātī (Liv. x. 1), the people of Frusino condemned [to forfeit] a third part of their land.

2. The Ablative with dē, or the Accusative with inter, in idiomatic expressions: —
dē aleā, for gambling; dē ambitū, for bribery.
dē pecūnīis repetundis, of extortion (cf. § 352. a).
inter sicāriōs (Rosc. Am. 90), as an assassin (among the assassins).
dē vi et māiestātis damnātī (Phil. i. 21), convicted of assault and treason.

Note.—The accusative with ad and in occurs in later writers to express the penalty: as, — ad mortem (Tac. Ann. xvi. 21), to death; ad (in) metalla, to the mines.
Verbs of Feeling

354. Many verbs of feeling take the Genitive of the object which excites the feeling.

a. Verbs of pity, as miseror and miserescō, take the genitive: —
miserēmini familiae, iūdicēs, miserēmini patris, miserēmini filī (Flacc. 106),
have pity on the family, etc.
miserēre animi nōn digna ferentis (Aen. ii. 144), pity a soul that endures
unworthy things.
miserēscite rēgis (id. viii. 573), pity the king. [Poetical.]

Note.—But miseror, commiseror, bewail, take the accusative: as,
—
communem condicionem miserari (Mur. 55), bewail the common lot.

b. As impersonals, miseret, paenitet, piget, pudet, taedet (or pertaesum
est), take the genitive of the cause of the feeling and the accusative
of the person affected: —
quōs infāmiae suae neque pudet neque taedet (Verr. i. 35), who are neither
ashamed nor weary of their dishonor.
mē miseret parietum ipsōrum (Phil. ii. 69), I pity the very walls.
mē civitātis mōrūm piget taedetque (Iug. 4), I am sick and tired of the way:
of the state.
decemvirōrum vōs pertaesum est (Liv. iii. 67), you became tired of the decemvirs

c. With miseret, paenitet, etc., the cause of the feeling may be ex
pressed by an infinitive or a clause: —
neque mē paenitet mortālis inimicitiās habēre (Rab. Post. 32), nor am I sorry
to have deadly enmities.
nōn dedisse istunc pudet; mē quia nōn accēpi piget (Pl. Pseud. 282), he is
ashamed not to have given; I am sorry because I have not received.

Note.—Miseret etc. are sometimes used personally with a neuter pronoun as sub-
ject: as, — nōn tē haec pudent (Ter. Ad. 754), do not these things shame you?

Interest and Réfert

355. The impersonals interest and réfert take the Genitive of
the person (rarely of the thing) affected.
The subject of the verb is a neuter pronoun or a substantive
clause: —
Clōdi intererat Milōnem perīre (cf. Mil. 56), it was the interest of Clodius that
Milo should die.
aliquid quod illōrum magis quam suā rētulisse vidērētur (Iug. 111), something
which seemed to be more for their interest than his own.
videō enim quid meā intersit, quid utriusque nostrum (Fam. vii. 23. 4), for I
see what is for my good and for the good of us both.
a. Instead of the genitive of a personal pronoun the corresponding possessive is used in the ablative singular feminine after interest or referre:—

quid tu id referre? magni (Ter. Ph. 723), how does that concern you? much.

[See also the last two examples above.]

vehementer intererat vestra qui patres estis (Plin. Ep. iv. 13. 4), it would be very much to your advantage, you who are fathers.

Note. — This is the only construction with referre in classic prose, except in one passage in Sallust (see example above).

b. The accusative with ad is used with interest and referre to express the thing with reference to which one is interested:—

magni ad honorem nostrum interest (Fam. xvi. 1), it is of great consequence to our honor.

referre etiam ad fructus (Varr. R. R. i. 16. 6), it makes a difference as to the crop.

Note 1. — Very rarely the person is expressed by ad and the accusative, or (with referre) by the dative (probably a popular corruption):—

quid id ad me aut ad meam rem referre (Pl. Pers. 513), what difference does that make to me or to my interests?

quid referat intra naturae finis viventi (Hor. S. i. 1. 49), what difference does it make to me who live within the limits of natural desire?

non referre dedecori (Tac. Ann. xv. 65), that it makes no difference as to the disgrace.

Note 2. — The degree of interest is expressed by a genitive of value, an adverb, or an adverbial accusative.

Verbs of Plenty and Want

356. Verbs of Plenty and Want sometimes govern the genitive (cf. § 409. a. n.):—

convivium vicinorum compleo (Cat. M. 46, in the mouth of Cato), I fill up the banquet with my neighbors.

implentur veteris Bacchi pinguisque ferinae (Aen. i. 215), they fill themselves with old wine and fat venison.

nec quis auxili egeat (B. G. vi. 11), lest any require aid.

quid est quod defensionis indiget (Rosc. Am. 34), what is there that needs defence?

quae ad consolandum maloris ingenii et ad ferendum singularis virtutis indigent (Fam. vi. 4. 2), [sorrows] which for their comforting need more ability, and for endurance unusual courage.

Note. — Verbs of plenty and want more commonly take the ablative (see §§ 409. a, 401), except egeat, which takes either case, and indiget. But the genitive is by a Greek idiom often used in poetry instead of the ablative with all words denoting separation and want (cf. § 357. b. 3):—

abstinento irum (Hor. Od. iii. 27. 69), refrain from wrath.

operum solutis (id. iii. 17. 16), free from toils.

desine mollium querellarium (id. ii. 9. 17), have done with weak complaints.
Genitive with Special Verbs

357. The Genitive is used with certain special verbs.

a. The genitive sometimes follows potior, get possession of; as always in the phrase potirī rērum, to be master of affairs: —

illius rēgni potirī (Fam. i. 7. 5), to become master of that kingdom. 
Cleanthes sōlem dominārī et rērum potirī putat (Acad. ii. 126), Cleanthes thinks the sun holds sway and is lord of the universe.

Note.—But potior usually takes the ablative (see § 410).

b. Some other verbs rarely take the genitive —

1. By analogy with those mentioned in § 354: —

neque hūius sīs veritus fēminae prīmāriae (Ter. Ph. 971), and you had no respect for this high-born lady.

2. As akin to adjectives which take the genitive: —

fastidit meī (Plaut. Aul. 245), he disdains me. [Cf. fastidiosus.]

studet tuī (quoted N. D. iii. 72), he is zealous for you. [Cf. studiosus.]

3. In imitation of the Greek: —

iūstitiaene prius mīrēr, belline labōrum (Aen. xi. 126), shall I rather admire his justice or his toils in war?

labōrum dēcipitur (Hor. Od. ii. 13. 38), he is beguiled of his woes.

mē labōrum levās (Pl. Rud. 247), you relieve me of my troubles.

358. The apparent Genitive animī (really Locative) is used with a few verbs and adjectives of feeling and the like: —

Antiphō mē excruciāt animī (Ter. Ph. 187), Antiphō tortures my mind (me in my mind).

qui pendet animī (Tusc. iv. 35), who is in suspense.

mē animī fallit (Lucr. i. 922), my mind deceives me.

So, by analogy, dēsipiēbam mentis (Pl. Epid. 138), I was out of my head.

aeger animī, sick at heart; cōnfūsus animī, disturbed in spirit.

sānus mentis aut animī (Pl. Trin. 454), sound in mind or heart.

PECULIAR GENITIVES

359. Peculiar Genitive constructions are the following: —

a. A poetical genitive occurs rarely in exclamations, in imitation of the Greek (Genitive of Exclamation): —

dí immortālēs, mercimōnī lepidī (Pl. Most. 912), good heavens! what a charming bargain!

foederis heu taciti (Prop. iv. 7. 21), alas for the unspoken agreement!
b. The genitive is often used with the ablatives causā, grātiā, for the sake of; ergō, because of; and the indeclinable instar, like; also with pridiē, the day before; postridiē, the day after; tenus, as far as:

honōris causā, with due respect (for the sake of honor).
verbī grātiā, for example.
ēius lēgis ergō, on account of this law.
equus instar montis (Aen. ii. 15), a horse huge as a mountain (the image of a mountain).

laterum tenus (id. x. 210), as far as the sides.

Note 1. — Of these the genitive with causā is a development from the possessive genitive and resembles that in nōmen ĭnsānīae (§ 343.d). The others are of various origin.

Note 2. — In prose of the Republican Period pridiē and postridiē are thus used only in the expressions pridiē (postridiē) ēius diēī, the day before (after) that (cf. “the eve, the morrow of that day”). Tacitus uses the construction with other words: as, — postridiē insidiārum, the day after the plot. For the accusative, see § 432. a. Tenus takes also the ablative (p. 136).

**DATIVE CASE**

361. The Dative is probably, like the Genitive, a grammatical case, that is, it is a form appropriately to the expression of a variety of relations other than that of the direct object. But it is held by some to be a Locative with the primary meaning of to or towards, and the poetic uses (like it clāmor caelō, Aen. v. 451) are regarded as survivals of the original use.

In Latin the Dative has two classes of meanings: —

1. The Dative denotes an object not as caused by the action, or directly affected by it (like the Accusative), but as reciprocally sharing in the action or receiving it consciously or actively. Thus in dedit puerō librum, he gave the boy a book, or fēcit mihi inúriām, he did me a wrong, there is an idea of the boy’s receiving the book, and of my feeling the wrong. Hence expressions denoting persons, or things with personal attributes, are more likely to be in the dative than those denoting mere things. So in Spanish the dative is used whenever a person is the object of an action; yo veo al hombre, I see [to] the man. This difference between the Accusative and the Dative (i.e. between the Direct and the Indirect Object) depends upon the point of view implied in the verb or existing in the mind of the writer. Hence Latin verbs of similar meaning (to an English mind) often differ in the case of their object (see § 367. a).

2. The Dative is used to express the purpose of an action or that for which it serves (see § 382). This construction is especially used with abstract expressions, or those implying an action.

These two classes of Datives approach each other in some cases and are occasionally confounded, as in §§ 383, 384.

The uses of the Dative are the following: —

1. **Indirect Object** (general

1. With Transitives (§ 362).

1. Of Possession (with esse) (§ 373).
2. Of Agency (with Gerundive) (§ 374).

2. **Special or Idiomatic Uses:**

3. Of Reference (datīvus commodi) (§§ 376–381).
4. Of Purpose or End (predicate use) (§ 382).
5. Of Fitness etc. (with Adjectives) (§§ 383, 384).
§§ 361–363] DATIVE OF INDIRECT OBJECT

INDIRECT OBJECT

361. The Dative is used to denote the object indirectly affected by an action.

This is called the Indirect Object (§ 274). It is usually denoted in English by the objective with to: —

cedite temporī, yield to the occasion.
prōvincia Cicerōnī obtigit, the province fell by lot to Cicero.
inimicīs nōn crēdimus, we do not trust [to] our enemies.

INDIRECT OBJECT WITH TRANSITIVES

362. The Dative of the Indirect Object with the Accusative of the Direct may be used with any transitive verb whose meaning allows (see § 274): —

dō tibi librum, I give you a book.
illud tibi affirmō (Fam. i. 7. 5), this I assure you.
commendō tibi ēius omnia negotiā (id. i. 3), I put all his affairs in your hands (commit them to you).
dabis profectō misericordiās quod irācundiās negāvistī (Delot. 40), you will surely grant to mercy what you refused to wrath.
litterās ā tē mihi stator tuus reddidit (Fam. ii. 17), your messenger delivered to me a letter from you.

a. Many verbs have both a transitive and an intransitive use, and take either the Accusative with the Dative, or the Dative alone: —

mihi id aurum crēdidit (cf. Plaut. Aul. 15), he trusted that gold to me.
equō nē crēdite (Aen. ii. 48), put not your trust in the horse.
concessit senātus postulātiōnī tuae (Mur. 47), the senate yielded to your demand.
concedere amīcis quidquid velint (Lael. 38), to grant to friends all they may wish.

363. Certain verbs implying motion vary in their construction between the Dative of the Indirect Object and the Accusative of the End of Motion (§§ 426, 427): —

1. Some verbs implying motion take the Accusative (usually with ad or in) instead of the Indirect Object, when the idea of motion prevails: —

litterās quās ad Pompēium scripsi (Att. iii. 8. 4), the letter which I have written [and sent] to Pompey. [Cf. nōn quō habērem quod tibi scriberem (id. iv. 4. 1), not that I had anything to write to you.]
litterae extemplō Romam scriptae (Liv. xli. 16), a letter was immediately written
[and sent] to Rome.
hostīs in fugam dat (B. G. v. 51), he puts the enemy to flight. [Cf. ut mé dem
fugae (Att. vii. 23), to take to flight.]
omnēs rem ad Pompeium dēferi volunt (Fam. i. 1), all wish the matter to be
put in the hands of Pompey (referred to Pompey).

2. On the other hand, many verbs of motion usually followed by
the Accusative with ad or in, take the Dative when the idea of motion
is merged in some other idea: —
mihi litterās mittere (Fam. vii. 12), to send me a letter.
eum librum tibi mīsī (id. vii. 19), I sent you that book.
nec quicquam quod nōn mihi Caesar dētulerit (id. iv. 13), and nothing which
Caesar did not communicate to me.
cūrēs ut mihi vehantur (id. viii. 4. 5), take care that they be conveyed to me.
cum alius aliī subsidium ferrent (B. G. ii. 26), while one lent aid to another.

364. Certain verbs may take either the Dative of the person and
the Accusative of the thing, or (in a different sense) the Accusative
of the person and the Ablative of the thing: —
dōnāt corōnās suīs, he presents wreaths to his men; or,
dōnāt suōs corōnīs, he presents his men with wreaths.
vincula exuere sibī (Ov. M. vii. 772), to shake off the leash (from himself).
omnīs armīs exuīt (B. G. v. 51), he stripped them all of their arms.

Note 1. — Interdīcō, forbid, takes either (1) the Dative of the person and the Ablative
of the thing, or (2) in later writers, the Dative of the person and the Accusative of the thing: —
aquā et igni alīci interdicere, to forbid one the use of fire and water. [The regular
formula for banishment.]
interdixit histrīōnibus scaenam (Suet. Dom. 7), he forbade the actors [to appear on]
the stage (he prohibited the stage to the actors).
femīnīs (dat.) purpūrae ësū interdicēmus (Liv. xxxiv. 7), shall we forbid women
the wearing of purple?

Note 2. — The Dative with the Accusative is used in poetry with many verbs of
preventing, protecting, and the like, which usually take the Accusative and Ablative.
Interclūdō and prohibēō sometimes take the Dative and Accusative, even in prose: —
hisc omnīs adītūs ad Sullam interclūdēre (Rosc. Am. 110), to shut these men off
from all access to Sulla (close to them every approach). [Cf. uti commētātū
Caesarem interclūderet (B. G. i. 48), to shut Caesar off from supplies.]
hunc (oestrum) arcēbīs pecōri (Georg. iii. 154), you shall keep this away from the
flock. [Cf. illum arcuit Galliā (Phil. v. 37), he excluded him from Gaul.]
sōlstitium pecōri dēfendēte (Ecl. vii. 47), keep the summer heat from the flock. [Cf.
uti sē ā contumētiis inimicōrum dēfenderet (B. G. i. 22), to defend himself
from the slanders of his enemies.]

1 Such are dōnō, impertiō, induō, exuō, adspergō, Ḭispersgō, circumdō, and in poetry
accingō, implicō, and similar verbs.
365. Verbs which in the active voice take the Accusative and Dative retain the Dative when used in the passive: —

nuntiabant haec eadem Curiōni (B. C. ii. 37), these same things were announced to Curio. [Active: nuntiabant (quidam) haec eadem Curiōni.]
nec docendi Caesaris propinquus eius spatium datur, nec tribūnis plēbis suī periculi déprecandi facultās tribuitur (id. i. 5), no time is given Caesar's relatives to inform him, and no opportunity is granted to the tribunes of the plebs to avert danger from themselves.

prōvinciae privātīs dēcernuntur (id. i. 6), provinces are voted to private citizens.

INDIRECT OBJECT WITH INTRANSITIVES

366. The Dative of the Indirect Object may be used with any Intransitive verb whose meaning allows: —

cēdant arma togae (Phil. ii. 20), let arms give place to the gown.
Caesāri respondet, he replies to Caesar.
Caesāri respondētur, a reply is given to Caesar (Cæsar is replied to). [Cf. § 372.] respondi maximis criminibus (Phil. ii. 36), I have answered the heaviest charges.

Note 1. — Intransitive verbs have no Direct Object. The Indirect Object, therefore, in these cases stands alone as in the second example (but cf. § 362. a).

Note 2. — Cēdō, yield, sometimes takes the Ablative of the thing along with the Dative of the person: as, — cēdere alicui possessiōne hortōrum (cf. Mil. 75), to give up to one the possession of a garden.

a. Many phrases consisting of a noun with the copula sum or a copulative verb are equivalent to an intransitive verb and take a kind of indirect object (cf. § 367. a. n.²): —

auctor esse alicui, to advise or instigate one (cf. persuādeo).
quis huic rei testis est (Quinct. 37), who testifies (is witness) to this fact?
is finis populātiōnibus fuit (Liv. ii. 30. 9), this put an end to the raids.

b. The dative is sometimes used without a copulative verb in a sense approaching that of the genitive (cf. §§ 367. d, 377): —

lēgātus frātri (Mur. 32), a lieutenant to his brother (i.e. a man assigned to his brother).
ministrī sceleribus (Tac. Ann. vi. 36), agents of crime. [Cf. sēditiōnis ministri (id. i. 17), agents of sedition.]
imērii̧s suis remedium mortem exspectāre (Sall. Cat. 40), to look for death as a cure for their miseries. [Cf. sōlus meārum miseriārumst remedium (Ter. Ad. 294).]

Note. — The cases in a and b differ from the constructions of § 367. a. n.² and § 377 in that the dative is more closely connected in idea with some single word to which it serves as an indirect object.
Indirect Object with Special Verbs

367. Many verbs signifying to favor, help, please, trust, and their contraries; also to believe, persuade, command, obey, serve, resist, envy, threaten, pardon, and spare,\(^1\) take the Dative: —

cúr mihi invidēs, why do you envy me?
mihi parcit atque ignōscit, he spares and pardons me.
ignōscere patriō dolōri (Liv. iii. 48), excuse a father's grief.
subveni patriae, opitulāre conīgae (Fam. x. 10. 2), come to the aid of your country, help your colleague.
mihi nōn dissplicet (Clu. 144), it does not displease me.
nōn parcam opera (Fam. xiii. 27), I will spare no pains.
sic mihi persuāsi (Cat. M. 78), so I have persuaded myself.
mihi Fabius dēbēbit ignōscere sī minus ītus fāmae parcerē vidēbor quam antea consuelt (Tull. 3), Fabius will have to pardon me if I seem to spare his reputation less than I have heretofore regarded it.

In these verbs the Latin retains an original intransitive meaning. Thus: invidēre, to envy, is literally to look askance at; servire is to be a slave to; suādēre is to make a thing pleasant (sweet) to.

\(\text{a.}\) Some verbs apparently of the same meanings take the Accusative.
Such are iuvō, ađiuvō, help; laedō, injure; iubeō, order; dēficiō, fail; dēlectō, please: —

hic pulvis oculum meum laedit, this dust hurts my eye. [Cf. multa oculīs nocent, many things are injurious to the eyes.]

Note 1. — Fīōd and cōnfīdē take also the Ablative (§ 431): as, — muītum nāturā locī cōn fidēbant (B. G. iii. 9), they had great confidence in the strength of their position.
Note 2. — Some common phrases regularly take the dative precisely like verbs of similar meaning. Such are — praestō esse, be on hand (cf. adesse); mōrem gerere, humor (cf. mōrīgerāri); grātum facere, do a favor (cf. grātificāri); dictō audīēns esse, be obedient (cf. oboedīrē); cui fide m habēbat (E. G. i. 19), in whom he had confidence (cf. cōn fidēbant).

So also many phrases where no corresponding verb exists. Such are — bene (male, pulchrē, aegō, etc.) esse, be well (ill, etc.) off; iniūriam facere, do injustice to; diem dicere, bring to trial (name a day for, etc.); agere grātiās, express one's thanks; habère grātiām, feel thankful; referre grātiām, repay a favor; opus esse, be necessary; damnum dare, inflict an injury; acceptum (expēnsum) ferre (esse), credit (charge); honōrem habēre, to pay honor to.

\(^1\)These include, among others, the following: adversor, cēdō, crēdō, faveō, fīōdō, ignōscō, imperō, indulgeō, invideō, śrascor, minitor, noceō, parcō, pāreō, placeō, resistō, servīō, studēō, suādeō (persuādeō), suspēnseō, tempeō (obtempeō).
b. Some verbs are used transitively with the Accusative or intransitively with the Dative without perceptible difference of meaning.

Such are adūlōr, aemulor, dēspērō, praestōlor, medeor: —

adūlātus est Antōniō (Nep. Att. 8), he flattered Antony.
adūlāri Nerōnem (Tac. Ann. xvi. 19), to flatter Nero.
pācem nōn dēspērās (Att. viii. 15. 3), you do not despair of peace.
salāti dēspērāre vetuit (Clu. 68), he forbade him to despair of safety.

c. Some verbs are used transitively with the Accusative or intransitively with the Dative with a difference of meaning: —

parē civium cōnsulunt (Off. i. 85), they consult for a part of the citizens.
cum tē cōnsuluissem (Fam. xi. 29), when I had consulted you.
metuēns pueris (Plaut. Am. 1113), anxious for the children.
nec metuunt deōs (Ter. Hec. 772), they fear not even the gods. [So also timeō.]
prōspicite patriae (Cat. iv. 3), have regard for the state.
prōspicere sēdem senectūtī (Liv. iv. 49. 14), to provide a habitation for old age.
[So also prōvideō.]

d. A few verbal nouns (as insidiae, ambush; obtemperātiō, obedience) rarely take the dative like the corresponding verbs: —

Insidiae cōnsulī (Sall. Cat. 32), the plot against the consul (cf. insidior).
obtemperātiō lēgibus (Legg. i. 42), obedience to the laws (cf. obtemperō).
sibī ipsī responsīō (De Or. iii. 207), an answer to himself (cf. respondēō).

Note. — In these cases the dative depends immediately upon the verbal force of the noun and not on any complex idea (cf. § 366. a, b).

368. The Dative is used —

1. With the impersonals libet (lubet), it please, and licet, it is allowed: —

quod mihi maximē lubet (Fam. i. 8. 3), what most please me.
quasi tibi nōn licēret (id. vi. 8), as if you were not permitted.

2. With verbs compounded with satis, bene, and male: —

mihi ipse numquam satisfaciō (Fam. i. 1), I never satisfy myself.
optimō virō maledicere (Deiot. 28), to speak ill of a most excellent man.
pulchrum est benefacere reī pūblicae (Sall. Cat. 3), it is a glorious thing to benefit the state.

Note. — These are not real compounds, but phrases, and were apparently felt as such by the Romans. Thus, — satis officiō meō, satis illōrum voluntāti qui ā mē hoc petivērunt factum esse arbitrābor (Verr. v. 130), I shall consider that enough has been done for my duty, enough for the wishes of those who asked this of me.

1 See the Lexicon under caveō, conveniō, cupiō, īnstitō, manēō, praevertō, recipiō, re-nūntiō, solvō, succēdō.
3. With grátificor, grátulor, núbō, permittō, plaudō, probō, studeō, supplicō, excellō:—

Pompēio sē grátificāri putant (Fam. i. 1), they suppose they are doing Pompey a service.
grátulor tibi, mī Balbe (id. vi. 12), I congratulate you, my dear Balbus.
tibi permittō respondēre (N. D. iii. 4), I give you leave to answer.
mihi plaudō ipse domī (Hor. S. i. 1. 60), I applaud myself at home.
cum inimiā M. Fontēi vōbis ac populō Rōmānō minentur, amicī ac propinquī supplīcī vōbis (Font. 35), while the enemies of Marcus Fonteius are threatening you and the Roman people too, while his friends and relatives are beseeching you.

Note.—Misceō and iungō sometimes take the dative (see § 413. a. n.). Haecō usually takes the ablative, with or without in, rarely the dative: as,—haerentem capiti corōnam (Hor. S. i. 10. 49), a wreath clinging to the head.

a. The dative is often used by the poets in constructions which would in prose require a noun with a preposition. So especially with verbs of contending (§ 413. b):—

contendis Homērō (Prop. i. 7. 3), you vie with Homer. [In prose: cum Homērō.]
placitōne etiam pūgnābis amōri (Aen. iv. 38), will you struggle even against a love that pleases you?
tibi certat (Ecl. v. 8), vies with you. [tēcum.]
differit sermōnī (Hor. S. i. 4. 48), differs from prose. [a sermōne, § 401.]
laterī abdidit ēnsem (Aen. ii. 553), buried the sword in his side. [in latere, § 430.]

For the Dative instead of ad with the Accusative, see § 428. h.

369. Some verbs ordinarily intransitive may have an Accusative of the direct object along with the Dative of the indirect (cf. § 362. a):—

cui cum réx crucem minārētur (Tusc. i. 102), and when the king threatened him with the cross.
Crētēnisibus obsidēs imperāvit (Manil. 35), he exacted hostages of the Cretans.
omnia sibi ignōscere (Vell. ii. 30), to pardon one's self everything.
Ascaniōne pater Rōmānās invidet arcēs (Aen. iv. 234), does the father envy Ascanius his Roman citadels? [With invidēō this construction is poetic or late.]

a. With the passive voice this dative may be retained:—

qui iam nunc sanguinem meum sibi indulgēri aequum cēnset (Liv. xl. 15. 16),
who even now thinks it right that my blood should be granted to him as a favor.
singulis cēnōribus dēnāriī trecentī imperātī sunt (Verr. ii. 137), three hundred denarii were exacted of each censor.
Scaevolae concessa est fācundiae virtūs (Quint. xii. 3. 9), to Scaevola has been granted excellence in oratory.
Indirect Object with Compounds

370. Many verbs compounded with ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, super, and some with circum, admit the Dative of the indirect object:—

neque enim adsentior eis (Lael. 13), for I do not agree with them. quantum nātūra hominis pecudibus antecēdit (Off. i. 105), so far as man’s nature is superior to brutes.
sī sībi ipse consentit (id. i. 5), if he is in accord with himself.
virtūtēs semper voluptātibus inhaerent (Fin. i. 68), virtues are always connected with pleasures.

omnibus negotiis non interfuit sōlum sed praefuit (id. i. 6), he not only had a hand in all matters, but took the lead in them.

tempestātī obsequi artis est (Fam. i. 9. 21), it is a point of skill to yield to the weather.
nec umquam succumbet inimīcis (Deiot. 36), and he will never yield to his foes.
cum et Brūtus cuilibet ducum praefendūs vidērētur et Vatinius nullī nōn esset postferendus (Vell. ii. 69), since Brutus seemed worthy of being put before any of the generals and Vatinius deserved to be put after all of them.

a. In these cases the dative depends not on the preposition, but on the compound verb in its acquired meaning. Hence, if the acquired meaning is not suited to an indirect object, the original construction of the simple verb remains.

Thus in convocat suōs, he calls his men together, the idea of calling is not so modified as to make an indirect object appropriate. So hominem interficere, to make way with a man (kill him). But in praeficere imperātōrem bellō, to put a man as commander-in-chief in charge of a war, the idea resulting from the composition is suited to an indirect object (see also b, §§ 371, 388. b).

Note 1.—Some of these verbs, being originally transitive, take also a direct object: as,—nē offerāmus nōs periculis (Off. i. 83), that we may not expose ourselves to perils.

Note 2.—The construction of § 370 is not different in its nature from that of §§ 362, 366, and 367; but the compound verbs make a convenient group.

b. Some compounds of ad, ante, ob, with a few others, have acquired a transitive meaning, and take the accusative (cf. § 388. b):—

nōs oppuñgnat (Fam. i. 1), he opposes us.

quis andeat bene comitātum aggredī (Phil. xii. 25), who would dare encounter a man well attended?

mūnus obīre (Lael. 7), to attend to a duty.

1 Such verbs are aggredior, adeō, antecēdō, anteeō, antegredior, conveniō, ineō, obeō, offendō, oppuñgnō, praecēdō, subeō.
c. The adjective obvius and the adverb obviam with a verb take the dative:—

si ille obvius ei futurus non erat (Mil. 47), if he was not intending to get in his way.

mihi obviam vēnistī (Fam. ii. 16. 3), you came to meet me.

371. When place or motion is distinctly thought of, the verbs mentioned in § 370 regularly take a noun with a preposition:

inhaeret in visceribus (Tusc. iv. 24), it remains fixed in the vitals.

hominem coniunctō mēcum (Tull. 4), a man united to me.

cum hoc concurrerit ipse Eumenēs (Nep. Eum. 4. 1), with him Eumenēs himself engages in combat (runs together).

īnserite oculōs in cūriam (Font. 43), fix your eyes on the senate-house.

ignis qui est obōs offusus (Tim. 14), the fire which is diffused before the sight.

obicitur contrā istōrum impētus Macedonia (Font. 44), Macedonia is set to withstand their attacks. [Cf. si quis vōbis error objeactus (Caec. 5), if any mistake has been caused you.]

īn segetem flamma incidit (Aen. ii. 304), the fire falls upon the standing corn.

Note.—But the usage varies in different authors, in different words, and often in the same word and the same sense. The Lexicon must be consulted for each verb.

372. Intransitive verbs that govern the dative are used impersonally in the passive (§ 208. d). The dative is retained (cf. § 365):

cui parci potuit (Liv. xxi. 14), who could be spared?

nōn modo nōn invidētur illī aetātī vērum etiam favētur (Off. ii. 45), that age (youth) not only is not envied, but is even favored.

tempōri serviendum est (Fam. ix. 7), we must serve the exigency of the occasion.

Note.—In poetry the personal construction is sometimes found: as,—cūr invidēor (Hor. A. P. 56), why am I envied?

Dative of Possession

373. The Dative is used with esse and similar words to denote Possession:

est mihi domī pater (Ecl. iii. 33), I have a father at home (there is to me).

hominī cum deō similītūdō est (Legg. i. 25), man has a likeness to God.

quibus opēs nūllae sunt (Sall. Cat. 37), [those] who have no wealth.

Note.—The Genitive or a Possessive with esse emphasizes the possessor; the Dative, the fact of possession: as,—liber est meus, the book is mine (and no one’s else); est mihi liber, I have a book (among other things).

a. With nōmen est, and similar expressions, the name is often put in the Dative by a kind of apposition with the person; but the Nominative is also common:—
(1) cui Africānō fuit cognōmen (Liv. xxv. 2), whose (to whom) surname was Africanus.

puerō ab inopīa Egeriō inditum nōmen (id. i. 34), the name Egerius was given the boy from his poverty.

(2) puerō nōmen est Marcus, the boy's name is Marcus (to the boy is, etc.)

cui nōmen Arethūsa (Verr. iv. 118), [a fount] called Arethusa.

Note.—In early Latin the dative is usual; Cicero prefers the nominative, Livy the dative; Sallust uses the dative only. In later Latin the genitive also occurs (cf. §343.d): as,— Q. Metellō Macedonicī nōmen inditum est (Vell. i. 11), to Quintus Metellus the name of Macedonicus was given.

d. Dēsum takes the dative; so occasionally absum (which regularly has the ablative):

hoc ūnum Caesarī défuit (B.G. iv. 26), this only was lacking to Caesar.

quid huic abesse poterit (De Or. i. 48), what can be wanting to him?

Dative of the Agent

374. The Dative of the Agent is used with the Gerundive to denote the person on whom the necessity rests:

haec vōbis prōvincia est défendenda (Manil. 14), this province is for you to defend (to be defended by you).

mihi est pūgnandum, I have to fight (i.e. the need of fighting is to me: cf. mihi est liber, I have a book, §373. x.).

a. This is the regular way of expressing the agent with the Second or Passive Periphrastic Conjugation (§196).

Note 1.—The Ablative of the Agent with ab (§405) is sometimes used with the Second Periphrastic Conjugation when the Dative would be ambiguous or when a stronger expression is desired:

quibus est a vōbis cōnsulendum (Manil. 6), for whom you must consult. [Here two datives, quibus and vōbis, would have been ambiguous.]

rem ab omnibus vōbis prōvidendam (Rabir. 4), that the matter must be attended to by all of you. [The dative might mean for all of you.]

Note 2.—The Dative of the Agent is either a special use of the Dative of Possession or a development of the Dative of Reference (§376).

375. The Dative of the Agent is common with perfect participles (especially when used in an adjective sense), but rare with other parts of the verb:

mihi dēliberātum et cōnstitūtum est (Leg. Agr. i. 25), I have deliberated and resolved (it has been deliberated by me).

mihi rés prōvisa est (Verr. iv. 91), the matter has been provided for by me.

sic dissimillimīs bēstiiōs commūnitur cibus quaeritur (N. D. ii. 123), so by very different creatures food is sought in common.
a. The Dative of the Agent is used by the poets and later writers with almost any passive verb: —

neque cernitur ulla (Aen. i. 440), nor is seen by any.
fielix est dicta sorori (Ov. Fast. iii. 1. 597), she was called happy by her sister.
Aelia Paetina Narcissô fovēbätur (Tac. Ann. xii. 1), Aëlia Paetina was favored by Narcissus.

b. The dative of the person who sees or thinks is regularly used after videor, seem:

vidētur mihi, it seems (or seems good) to me.
dis aliter visum [est] (Aen. ii. 428), it seemed otherwise to the gods.
videor mihi perspicere ipsius animum (Fam. iv. 13. 5), I seem (to myself) to see the soul of the man himself.

Note.—The verb probēre, approve (originally a mercantile word), takes a Dative of Reference (§ 376), which has become so firmly attached that it is often retained with the passive, seemingly as Dative of Agent: —

haec sententia et illi et nōbis probābatur (Fam. i. 7. 5), this view met both his approval and mine (was made acceptable both to him and to me).
hoc consilium plērisque nōn probābatur (B. C. i. 72), this plan was not approved by the majority. [But also, cōnsilium ā cūntīs probābatur (id. i. 74).]

Dative of Reference

376. The Dative often depends, not on any particular word, but on the general meaning of the sentence (Dative of Reference).

The dative in this construction is often called the Dative of Advantage or Disadvantage, as denoting the person or thing for whose benefit or to whose prejudice the action is performed.

tibi arās (Plaut. Merc. 71), you plough for yourself.
tuās rēs tibi habētō (Plaut. Trin. 266), keep your goods to yourself (formula of divorce).
laudāvit mihi frārem, he praised my brother (out of regard for me; laudāvit frārem meum would imply no such motive).
meritōs mactāvit honōrēs, taurum Neptūnō, taurum tibi, pulcher Apollō (Aen. iii. 118), he offered the sacrifices due, a bull to Neptune, a bull to thee, beautiful Apollo.

Note.—In this construction the meaning of the sentence is complete without the dative, which is not, as in the preceding constructions, closely connected with any single word. Thus the Dative of Reference is easily distinguishable in most instances even when the sentence consists of only two words, as in the first example.

377. The Dative of Reference is often used to qualify a whole idea, instead of the Possessive Genitive modifying a single word:

1 Datīvus commodī aut incommōdi.
§§ 377-379

DATIVE OF REFERENCE

iter Poenis vel corporibus suis obstruere (Cat. M. 75), to block the march of the Carthaginians even with their own bodies (to block, etc., for the disadvantage of, etc.).

se in conspectum nautis dedit (Verr. v. 86), he put himself in sight of the sailors (he put himself to the sailors into sight).

versatür mihi ante oculos (id. v. 123), it comes before my eyes (it comes to me before the eyes).

378. The Dative is used of the person from whose point of view an opinion is stated or a situation or a direction is defined.

This is often called the Dative of the Person Judging,¹ but is merely a weakened variety of the Dative of Reference. It is used —

1. Of the mental point of view (in my opinion, according to me, etc.):

Plato mihi unus instar est centum milium (Brut. 191), in my opinion (to me) Plato alone is worth a hundred thousand.

erit ille mihi semper deus (Eel. i. 7), he will always be a god to me (in my regard).

quae est ista servitūs tam clārō homīnī (Par. 41), what is that slavery according to the view of this distinguished man?

2. Of the local point of view (as you go in etc.). In this use the person is commonly denoted indefinitely by a participle in the dative plural:

oppidum primum Thessaliae venientibus ab Ēpīrō (B. C. iii. 80), the first town of Thessaly as you come from Epirus (to those coming, etc.).

laevā parte sinum intrant! (Liv. xxvi. 26), on the left as you sail up the gulf (to one entering).

est urbe ēgressīs tumulus (Aen. ii. 713), there is, as you come out of the city, a mound (to those having come out).

Note. — The Dative of the Person Judging is (by a Greek idiom) rarely modified by nōlēns, volēns (participles of nōlō, volō), or by some similar word: —

ut quibusque bellum invītās ant cupiēntibus erat (Tac. Ann. i. 59), as each might receive the war reluctantly or gladly.

ut militibus labōs volentibus esset (Ing. 100), that the soldiers might assume the task willingly.

379. The Dative of Reference is used idiomatically without any verb in colloquial questions and exclamations: —

quō mihi fortūnam (Hor. Ep. i. 5. 12), of what use to me is fortune?

unde mihi lapidem (Hor. S. ii. 7. 116), where can I get a stone?

quō tibi, Tillī (id. i. 6. 24), what use for you, Tillius?

¹ Daīvus iūdicantis.
a. The dative of reference is sometimes used after interjections:

\text{ei (hei) mihi (Aen. ii. 274), ah me!}

\text{vae victis (Liv. v. 48), woe to the conquered.}

\text{em tibi, there, take that (there for you)! [Cf. § 380.]}  

\text{Note.—To express for—meaning instead of, in defence of, in behalf of—the ablative with prō is used:—}

\text{prō patriā morī (Hor. Od. iii. 2. 13), to die for one's country.}

\text{ego ībō prō tē (Plaut. Most. 1131), I will go instead of you.}

\text{Ethical Dative}

380. The Dative of the Personal Pronouns is used to show a certain interest felt by the person indicated.\textsuperscript{1}

This construction is called the Ethical Dative.\textsuperscript{2} It is really a faded variety of the Dative of Reference.

\text{quid mihi Celsus agit (Hor. Ep. i. 3. 15), pray what is Celsus doing?}

\text{suō sibi servit patrī (Plaut. Capt. 5), he serves his own father.}

\text{at tibi repente venit mihi Canīnius (Fam. ix. 2), but, look you, of a sudden comes to me Canīnius.}

\text{hem tibi talentum argenti (Pl. Truc. 60), hark ye, a talent of silver.}

\text{quid tibi vis, what would you have (what do you wish for yourself)?}

\text{Dative of Separation}

381. Many verbs of taking away and the like take the Dative (especially of a person) instead of the Ablative of Separation (§ 401).

Such are compounds of ab, dē, ex, and a few of ad:—

\text{aureum ei dētrāxit amiculum (N. D. iii. 83), he took from him his cloak of gold.}

\text{hunc mihi terrōrem ēripe (Cat. i. 18), take from me this terror.}

\text{vitam adulēscentibus vis aufert (Cat. M. 71), violence deprives young men of life.}

\text{nihil enim tibi dētrāxit senātus (Fam. i. 5 b), for the senate has taken nothing from you.}

\text{nec mihi hunc errōrem extorquēri volō (Cat. M. 85), nor do I wish this error wrested from me.}

\text{Note.—The Dative of Separation is a variety of the Dative of Reference. It represents the action as done to the person or thing, and is thus more vivid than the Ablative.}

\text{1 Compare "I'll rhyme you so eight years together." — As You Like It, iii. 2.}

\text{2 Dativus ethicus.}
a. The distinct idea of motion requires the ablative with a preposition—thus generally with names of things (§ 426. 1):—

illum ex periculō eripuit (B. G. iv. 12), he dragged him out of danger.

Note.—Sometimes the dative of the person and the ablative of the thing with a preposition are both used with the same verb: as,—mihi praedia dē manibus eripitur (Verr. ii. 1. 142), the booty is wrested from my hands.

Dative of the Purpose or End

382. The Dative is used to denote the Purpose or End, often with another Dative of the person or thing affected.

This use of the dative, once apparently general, remains in only a few constructions, as follows:—

1. The dative of an abstract noun is used to show that for which a thing serves or which it accomplishes, often with another dative of the person or thing affected:—

ref pūblicae clādī sunt (Iug. 85. 43), they are ruin to the state (they are for a disaster to the state).

māgnō īsui nostrīs fuit (B. G. iv. 25), it was of great service to our men (to our men for great use).

tertiam aciem nostrīs subsidiō mīsīt (id. i. 52), he sent the third line as a relief to our men.

sūs salātī fuit (id. vii. 50), he was the salvation of his men.

ēvēnit facile quod dis cordī esset (Liv. i. 39), that came to pass easily which was desired by the gods (was for a pleasure [lit. heart] to the gods).

Note 1.—This construction is often called the Dative of Service, or the Double Dative construction. The verb is usually sum. The noun expressing the end for which is regularly abstract and singular in number and is never modified by an adjective, except one of degree (magnus, minor, etc.), or by a genitive.

Note 2.—The word frūgi used as an adjective is a dative of this kind:—
cōgis mē dicere inimicum Frūgi (Font. 39), you compel me to call my enemy Honest.

hominēs satīs fortēs et plānē frūgi (Verr. iii. 67), men brave enough and thoroughly honest. Cf. erō frūgi bonae (Plaut. Pseud. 468), I will be good for something. [See § 122. b.]

2. The Dative of Purpose of concrete nouns is used in prose in a few military expressions, and with freedom in poetry:—

locum castrīs dēligīt (B. G. vii. 16), he selects a site for a camp.

receptū canēre, to sound a retreat (for a retreat).

receptū signum (Phil. xiii. 15), the signal for retreat.

optāvit locum rēgnō (Aen. iii. 109), he chose a place for a kingdom.

locum insidiā circumspectāre (Liv. xxi. 53), to look about for a place for an ambush. [Cf. locum sēditiōnīs quaerere (id. iii. 46).]

For the Dative of the Gerundive denoting Purpose, see § 505. b.
Dative with Adjectives

383. The Dative is used after Adjectives or Adverbs, to denote that to which the given quality is directed, for which it exists, or towards which it tends.

Note.—The dative with certain adjectives is in origin a Dative of Purpose or End.

384. The Dative is used with adjectives (and a few Adverbs) of fitness, nearness, likeness, service, inclination, and their opposites: ¹

nihil est tam nātūrae aptum (Lael. 17), nothing is so fitted to nature.
nihil difficile amantī putō (Or. 33), I think nothing hard to a lover.
castrīs idōneum locum délēgit (B. G. i. 49), he selected a place suitable for a camp.
tribūnī nōbīs sunt amīcī (Q. Fr. i. 2. 16), the tribunes are friendly to us.
esse propitius potest nēmini (N. D. i. 124), he can be gracious to nobody.
māgnīs autem virīs prosperae semper omnēs rēs (id. ii. 167), but to great men everything is always favorable.
sēdēs huic nostrō nōn importūna sermōnī (De Or. iii. 18), a place not unsuitable for this conversation of ours.
cui fundō erat affīnis M. Tullius (Tull. 14), to which estate Marcus Tullius was next neighbor.
convenienter nātūrae vivere (Off. iii. 13), to live in accordance with nature (ἀμολογομένως ἃγα ὕποτε). ²

Note 1.—So, also, in poetical and colloquial use, with idem: as, — invītum qui servat idem facit occīdenti (Hor. A. P. 467), he who saves a man against his will does the same as one who kills him.

Note 2.—Adjectives of likeness are often followed by atque (ac), as. So also the adverbs aeque, pariter, similiter, etc. The pronoun idem has regularly atque or a relative: —

si parem sapientiam habet ac formam (Plaut. Mil. 1251), if he has sense equal to his beauty (like as his beauty).
tē suspicor ēisdem rēbus quibus mē ipsum commovērī (Cat. M. 1), I suspect you are disturbed by the same things by which I am.

385. Other constructions are sometimes found where the dative might be expected: —

a. Adjectives of fitness or use take oftener the Accusative with ad to denote the purpose or end; but regularly the Dative of persons: —
aptus ad rem militārem, fit for a soldier’s duty.
locus ad insidiās aptior (Mil. 53), a place fitter for lying in wait.
nōbīs ūtile est ad hanc rem (cf. Ter. And. 287), it is of use to us for this thing.

¹ Adjectives of this kind are accommodātus, aptus; amīcus, inimīcus, instestus, inīsus, molestus; idēnēus, opportūnus, proprius; ūtilis, inūtilis; affīnis, finītīmus, propīngus, vicīnus; pār, dispār, similis, dissimilis; iūcundus, grātus; nōtus, ignōtus, and others.

² Adjectives of this kind are accommodātus, aptus; amīcus, inimīcus, instestus, inīsus, molestus; idēnēus, opportūnus, proprius; ūtilis, inūtilis; affīnis, finītīmus, propīngus, vicīnus; pār, dispār, similis, dissimilis; iūcundus, grātus; nōtus, ignōtus, and others.
b. Adjectives and nouns of inclination and the like may take the Accusative with in or ergā:

comis in uxōrem (Hor. Ep. ii. 2. 133), kind to his wife.
divina bonitās ergā hominēs (N. D. ii. 60), the divine goodness towards men.
dē benevolentia quam quisque habeat ergā nōs (Off. i. 47), in regard to each man's good will which he has towards us.
grātiōrem mē esse in tē (Fam. xi. 10), that I am more grateful to you.

c. Some adjectives of likeness, nearness, belonging, and a few others, ordinarily requiring the Dative, often take the Possessive Genitive:—

quod ut illī proprium ac perpetuum sit... optāre dēbētis (Manil. 48), which you ought to pray may be secure (his own) and lasting to him. [Dative.]
fuit hōc quondam proprium populi Rōmānī (id. 32), this was once the peculiar characteristic of the Roman people. [Genitive.]
cum utrique sis maximē necessārius (Att. ix. 7 λ), since you are especially bound to both. [Dative.]
prōcūrātor aequē utrīusque necessārius (Quinct. 86), an agent alike closely connected with both. [Genitive.]

1. The genitive is especially used with these adjectives when they are used wholly or approximately as nouns:—

amicus Cicerōnī, friendly to Cicero. But, Cicerōnīs amīcus, a friend of Cicero;
and even, Cicerōnīs amīcissimus, a very great friend of Cicero.
cretīcus et ēius aequālis paean (Or. 215), the cretic and its equivalent the paean.
hī erant affīnēs istiūs (Verr. ii. 36), these were this man’s fellows.

2. After similis, like, the genitive is more common in early writers. Cicero regularly uses the genitive of persons, and either the genitive or the dative of things. With personal pronouns the genitive is regular (meī, tuī, etc.), and also in vērī similis, probable:—

dominī similis es (Ter. Eun. 496), you’re like your master (your master’s like).
ut essēmus similēs deōrum (N. D. i. 91), that we might be like the gods.
est similis māiōrum suōm (Ter. Ad. 411), he’s like his ancestors.
patrī similis esse (Off. i. 121), to be like his father.
simia quam similis turpissima bēstia nōbis (N. D. i. 97, quoted from Enn.),
how like us is that wretched beast the ape!
sī enim hōc illī similē sit, est illud huic (id. i. 90), for if this is like that, that
is like this.

Note.—The genitive in this construction is not objective like those in § 349, but possessive (cf. § 343).

For the Dative or Accusative with propior, proximus, propius, proximē, see § 482. a.

1 Such are aequālis, affinis, aliēnus, amīcus, cōgnātus, commūnīs, cōnsanguineus, contrārius, dispār, familiāris, finitimus, inimicus, necessārius, pār, pecūliāris, propinquus, propius (regularly genitive), sacer, similis, superstes, vicīnus.
ACCUSATIVE CASE

386. The Accusative originally served to connect the noun more or less loosely with the verb-idea, whether expressed by a verb proper or by a verbal noun or adjective. Its earliest use was perhaps to repeat the verb-idea as in the Cognate Accusative (run a race, fight a battle, see § 390). From this it would be a short step to the Factitive Accusative (denoting the result of an act, as in make a table, drill a hole, cf. § 273. n.1). From this last could easily come the common accusative (of Affecting, break a table, plug a hole, see § 387. a). Traces of all these usages appear in the language, and the loose connection of noun with verb-idea is seen in the use of stems in composition (cf. § 265.3). It is impossible, however, to derive the various constructions of the accusative with certainty from any single function of that case.

The uses of the accusative may be classified as follows:

I. Primary Object:

1. Directly affected by the Action (§ 387. a).
2. Effect of the Action (§ 387. b).
3. Of Naming etc. (§ 393).

II. Two Accusatives:

1. Predicate Accusative (§ 396. c).
2. Of Conceiving (§ 396. d).
3. Of Concealing (§ 396. e).
4. Of Specification (Greek Accusative) (§ 397. b).
7. Subject of Infinitive (§ 397. e).

Direct Object

387. The Direct Object of a transitive verb is put in the Accusative (§ 274).

a. The Accusative of the Direct Object denotes (1) that which is directly affected, or (2) that which is caused or produced by the action of the verb:—

1. Brūtus Caesarem interfēcit, Brutus killed Caesar.
2. aedem facere, to make a temple. [Cf. proelium pūgnāre, to fight a battle, § 390.]

Note.—There is no definite line by which transitive verbs can be distinguished from intransitive. Verbs which usually take a direct object (expressed or implied) are called transitive, but many of these are often used intransitively or absolutely. Thus timeō, I fear, is transitive in the sentence inimicīum timeō, I fear my enemy, but intransitive (absolute) in nōl timēre, don’t be afraid. Again, many verbs are transitive in one sense and intransitive in another: as,—Helvētiōs superāverunt Rōmānī, the Romans overcame the Helvetians; but nihil superābat, nothing remained (was left over). So also many verbs commonly intransitive may be used transitively with a slight change of meaning: as,—rīdēs, you are laughing; but mē rīdēs, you’re laughing at me.

1 Compare armiger, armor-bearer, with arma gerere, to bear arms; fidicen, lyre-player, with fidibus canere, to (play on) sing to the lyre. Compare also istanc tāctō (Plaut.), the [act of] touching her, with istanc tangere, to touch her (§ 388. d. n.2).
§§ 387, 388]  ACCUSATIVE OF DIRECT OBJECT  241

b. The object of a transitive verb in the active voice becomes its subject in the passive, and is put in the nominative (§ 275):

Brutus Caesarem interfecit, Brutus killed Caesar.
Caesar a Bruto interfecst est, Caesar was killed by Brutus.
domum aedificat, he builds a house.
domus aedificatur, the house is building (being built).

388. Certain special verbs require notice.

a. Many verbs apparently intransitive, expressing feeling, take an accusative, and may be used in the passive:

meum cäsum lúctumque dolumérunt (Sest. 145), they grieved at my calamity and sorrow.
ši nón Acrisium risissent Juppiter et Venus (Hor. Od. iii. 16. 5), if Jupiter and Venus had not laughed at Acrisius.
ridétur ab omní conventu (Hor. S. i. 7. 22), he is laughed at by the whole assembly.

For the Cognate Accusative with verbs of taste, smell, and the like, see § 390. a.

Note.—Some verbs commonly intransitive may be used transitively (especially in poetry) from a similarity of meaning with other verbs that take the accusative:
gemëns ignómìniam (Georg. iii. 226), groaning at the disgrace. [Cf. dolé.]
festínàre fugam (Aen. iv. 575), to hasten their flight. [Cf. acceleró.]
cómptos ársit crinis (Hor. Od. iv. 9. 13), she burned with love for his well-combed locks. [Cf. adamó.]

b. Verbs of motion, compounds of circum, trâns, and praeter, and a few others, frequently become transitive, and take the accusative (cf. § 370. b):

mortem obíre, to die (to meet death).
cónsulátem ineunt (Liv. ii. 28), they enter upon the consulship.
némínem convénii (Fam. ix. 14), I met no one.
sì ínsulam adísset (B. G. iv. 20), if he should go to the island.
trânsire flúmen (id. ii. 29), to cross the river (cf. § 395).
civës qui circumstánt sensátem (Cat. i. 21), the citizens who stand about the senate.

Note.—Among such verbs are some compounds of ad, in, per, and sub.

c. The accusative is used after the impersonals decet, dëdecet, dëlecat-
tat, iuvat, oportet, fallit, fugit, praeterit:

ita ut vós decet (Plaut. Most. 729), so as befits you.
më pedibus dëlecat claudiere verba (Hor. S. ii. 1. 28), my delight is (it pleases me) to arrange words in measure.
nisi më fallit, unless I am mistaken (unless it deceives me).
iúvit më tibi tuás litérás prôfuisse (Fam. v. 21. 3), it pleased me that your literary studies had profited you.
të nón praeterit (Fam. i. 8. 2), it does not escape your notice.
Note 1.—So after latet in poetry and post-classical prose: as, —latet plērōsque (Plin. N. H. ii. 82), it is unknown to most persons.

Note 2.—These verbs are merely ordinary transitives with an idiomatic signification. Hence most of them are also used personally.

Note 3.—Decet and latet sometimes take the dative: —

Note 2. A few verbs in isolated expressions take the accusative from a forcing of their meaning. Such expressions are: —

ferire foedus, to strike a treaty (i.e. to sanction by striking down a victim).
vincere iūdicum (spōnsiōnem, rem, hōc), to prevail on a trial, etc. [As if the case were a difficulty to overcome; cf. vincere iter, Aen. vi. 688.]
aequor nāvigāre (Aen. i. 67), to sail the sea. [As if it were trānsire, § 388. b.]
maria aspera iūrō (id. vi. 351), I swear by the rough seas (cf. id. vi. 324). [The accusative with verbs of swearing is chiefly poetic.]

doctis dormiēre, to sleep [whole] nights (to spend in sleep).

Note 1.—These accusatives are of various kinds. The last example approaches the cognate construction (cf. the second example under § 390).

Note 2.—In early and popular usage some nouns and adjectives derived from transitive verbs retain verbal force sufficient to govern the accusative: —

quid tibi istanc tāctiō est (Plant. Poen. 1308), what business have you to touch her? [Cf. tāngō.]
mīrābundī bēstiam (Ap. Met. iv. 16), full of wonder at the creature. [Cf. mērōr.]
vitābundus castra (Liv. xxv. 13), trying to avoid the camp. [Cf. vitō.]

389. Many verbs ordinarily transitive may be used absolutely, having their natural object in the ablative with dē (§ 273. N. 2): —

priusquam Pompōnius dē ēius adventū cōgnōsceret (B. C. iii. 101), before Pomponius could learn of his coming. [Cf. ēius adventū cōgnitō, his arrival being discovered.]

For Accusative and Genitive after Impersonals, see § 354. b. For the Accusative after the impersonal Gerundive with esse, see § 500. 3.

Cognate Accusative

390. An intransitive verb often takes the Accusative of a noun of kindred meaning, usually modified by an adjective or in some other manner.

This construction is called the Cognate Accusative or Accusative of Kindred Signification: —

tātōrem vitam vivere (Verr. ii. 118), to live a safer life.
tertiam iam aetātem hominum vivēbat (Cat. M. 31), he was now living the third generation of men.
servītūtem servīre, to be in slavery.
cōēre societātem, to [go together and] form an alliance.
a. Verbs of *taste, smell*, and the like take a cognate accusative of the quality: —

vinum redolens (Phil. ii. 63), *smelling* [of] *wine.*
herbam mella sapiant (Plin. H. N. xi. 18), *the honey tastes* [of] *grass.*
olere malitiam (Rosc. Com. 20), *to have the odor of malice.*

Cordubae nâtis poëtis, pingue quiddam sonantibus atque peregrinum (Arch. 20), *to poets born at Cordova, whose speech had a somewhat thick and foreign accent.*

b. The cognate accusative is often loosely used by the poets: —

huic errore similis [errorem] insâniire (Hor. S. ii. 3. 62), *to suffer a delusion like this.*
saltâre Cyclopa (id. i. 5. 63), *to dance the Cyclops* (represent in dancing).

Amaryllida resouâre (Ecl. i. 5), *to reëcho [the name of] Amaryllis.*
intonuit laevum (Aen. ii. 693), *it thundered on the left.*

dulce ridentem, dulce loquentem (Hor. Od. i. 22. 23), *sweetly smiling, sweetly prattling.*

torvum clâmât (id. vii. 399), *he cries harshly.*

c. A neuter pronoun or an adjective of indefinite meaning is very common as cognate accusative (cf. §§ 214. d, 397. a): —

Empedocles multa alia peccat (N. D. i. 29), *Empedocles commits many other errors.*

ego illud adsentior Theophrastō (De Or. iii. 184), *in this I agree with Theophrastus.*

multum tē ista fêellit opinio (Verr. ii. 1. 88), *you were much deceived in this expectation* (this expectation deceived you much).

plûs valeō, *I have more strength.*
plûrimum potest, *he is strongest.*

quid mē ista laedunt (Leg. Agr. ii. 32), *what harm do those things do me?*
hóc tē moneō, *I give you this warning* (cf. d. n. 1).
id laecor, *I rejoice at this* (cf. d. n. 1).
quid moror, *why do I delay?*
quae hominês arant, naviânt, aedificat (Sall. Cat. ii. 7), *what men do in ploughing, sailing, and building.*

d. So in many common phrases: —
sī quid ille sē velit (B. G. i. 34), *if he should want anything of him* (if he should want him in anything).

numquid, Geta, aliud mē vis (Ter. Ph. 151), *can I do anything more for you, Geta* (there is nothing you want of me, is there)? [A common form of leave-taking.]
quid est quod, etc., *why is it that, etc.?* [Cf. hoc erat quod (Aen. ii. 664), *was it for this that, etc.?*]
Note 1.—In these cases substantives with a definite meaning would be in some other construction:—

in hoc eōdem peccat, he errs in this same point.
bonis rēbus laetāri, to rejoice at prosperity. [Also: in, dē, or ex.]
dē testāmentō monēre, to remind one of the will. [Later: genitive, § 351.]
officī admonēre, to remind one of his duty. [Also: dē officio.]

Note 2.—In some of these cases the connection of the accusative with the verb has so faded out that the words have become real adverbs: as, — multum, plús, plūrimum; plērumque, for the most part, generally; cēterum, cētera, for the rest, otherwise, but; prīnum, first; nihil, by no means, not at all; alique, somewhat; quid, why; facile, easily. So in the comparative of adverbs (§ 218). But the line cannot be sharply drawn, and some of the examples under b may be classed as adverbial.

Two Accusatives

391. Some transitive verbs take a second accusative in addition to their Direct Object.

This second accusative is either (1) a Predicate Accusative or (2) a Secondary Object.

Predicate Accusative

392. An accusative in the Predicate referring to the same person or thing as the Direct Object, but not in apposition with it, is called a Predicate Accusative.

393. Verbs of naming, choosing, appointing, making, esteeming, showing, and the like, may take a Predicate Accusative along with the direct object:—

ō Spartace, quern enim tē potius appellem (Phil. xiii. 22), O Spartacus, for what else shall I call you (than Spartacus)?
Cicerōnem cōnsulem créare, to elect Cicero consul.
mē augurem nōmināvērunt (Phil. ii. 4), they nominated me for augur.
cum grātiās ageret quod sē cōnsulem fēcisset (De Or. ii. 268), when he thanked him because he had made him consul (supported his candidacy).
hominem prae sē nēminem putāvit (Rosc. Am. 135), he thought nobody a man in comparison with himself.
ducem sē praebuit (Vat. 33), he offered himself as a leader.

Note.—The predicate accusative may be an adjective: as, — hominēs mūtis red-didit et mānsuētōs (Inv. i. 2), has made men mild and gentle.

a. In changing from the active voice to the passive, the Predicate Accusative becomes Predicate Nominative (§ 284):—

rēx ab sui appellātur (B. G. viii. 4), he is called king by his subjects. [Active: sūi eum rēgem appellant.]
Secondary Object

394. The Accusative of the Secondary Object is used (along with the direct object) to denote something more remotely affected by the action of the verb.

395. Transitive verbs compounded with prepositions sometimes take (in addition to the direct object) a Secondary Object, originally governed by the preposition:—

Caesar Germānōs fūmen trāicīt (B. C. i. 83), Cāsar throws the Germans across the river.

idem iūs iūrandum adigit Afrāniūm (id. i. 76), he exacts the same oath from Afrānius.

quōs Pompēius omnia sua praesidia circumduīxit (id. iii. 61), whom Pompey conducted through all his garrison.

Note 1.—This construction is common only with trāducō, trāiciō, and trānsportō. The preposition is sometimes repeated with compounds of trāns, and usually with compounds of the other prepositions. The ablative is also used:—

dōnec rēs suās trāns Halyn fūmen trāicerent (Liv. xxxviii. 25), till they should get their possessions across the river Halys.

(exercitus) Pādō trāiectus Cremonām (id. xxxi. 56), the army was conveyed across the Po to Cremona (by way of the Po, § 429. a).

Note 2.—The secondary object may be retained with a passive verb: as,—Belgae Rhēnum trāducti sunt (B. G. ii. 4), the Belgians were led over the Rhine.

Note 3.—The double construction indicated in § 395 is possible only when the force of the preposition and the force of the verb are each distinctly felt in the compound, the verb governing the direct, and the preposition the secondary object.

But often the two parts of the compound become closely united to form a transitive verb of simple meaning. In this case the compound verb is transitive solely by virtue of its prepositional part and can have but one accusative,—the same which was formerly the secondary object, but which now becomes the direct. So trāiciō comes to mean either (1) to pierce (anybody) [by hurling] or (2) to cross (a river etc.):—

gladiō hominem trāicīt, he pierced the man with a sword. [Here iāciō has lost all transitive force, and serves simply to give the force of a verb to the meaning of trāns, and to tell the manner of the act.]

Rhodanum trāicīt, he crossed the Rhone. [Here iāciō has become simply a verb of motion, and trāiciō is hardly distinguishable from trānsō.]

In these examples hominem and Rhodanum, which would be secondary objects if trāicīt were used in its primary signification, have become the direct objects. Hence in the passive construction they become the subjects and are put in the nominative:—

homō trāiectus est gladiō, the man was pierced with a sword.

Rhodanus trāiectus est, the Rhone was crossed.

The poetical trāiectus lōra (Aen. ii. 273), pierced with thongs, comes from a mixture of two constructions: (1) eum trāicīt lōra, he rove thongs through him,1 and (2) eum trāicīt lōris, he pierced him with thongs. In putting the sentence into a passive form, the direct object of the former (lōra) is irregularly kept, and the direct object of the latter (eum) is made the subject.

1 Perhaps not found in the active, but cf. trāiectō fūne (Aen. v. 488).
396. Some verbs of asking and teaching may take two accusatives, one of the Person (direct object), and the other of the Thing (secondary object):

mē sententiam rogāvit, he asked me my opinion.
ōtium divōs rogat (Hor. Od. ii. 16. 1), he prays the gods for rest.
haec praetūrem postulābās (Tull. 39), you demanded this of the praetor.
aedīlis populum rogāre (Liv. vi. 42), to ask the people [to elect] ædiles.
docere puérōs elementa, to teach children their A B C's.

Note. — This construction is found in classical authors with ὁρό, poscō, roposcoh, ῥόγο, interrogō, ἕλαγιτό, docēō.

a. Some verbs of asking take the ablative of the person with a preposition instead of the accusative. So, always, petō (ab), quaerō (ex, ab, dē); usually poscō (ab), ἕλαγιτο (ab), postulō (ab), and occasionally others:

pācem ab Rōmānīs petērunt (B. G. ii. 13), they sought peace from the Romans.
quod quaesivit ex mē P. Apuleius (Phil. vi. 1), what Publius Apuleius asked of me.

b. With the passive of some verbs of asking or teaching, the person or the thing may be used as subject (cf. c. n. 2):

Caesar sententiam rogātus est, Caesar was asked his opinion.
id ab eō ἕλαγιταβάτου (B. C. i. 71), this was urgently demanded of him.

Note. — The accusative of the thing may be retained with the passive of ῥόγο, and of verbs of teaching, and occasionally with a few other verbs:

fuerant hōc ῥόγατι (Cael. 64), they had been asked this.
poscor meum Laelapa (Ov. M. vii. 771), I am asked for my Laelaps.
Cicerō cānctā ēdoctus (Sall. Cat. 45), Cicero, being informed of everything.

But with most verbs of asking in prose the accusative of the thing becomes the subject nominative, and the accusative of the person is put in the ablative with a preposition: as,—nē postulantur quidem virēs ā senectūte (Cat. M. 34), strength is not even expected of an old man (asked from old age).

c. The verb cēlō, conceal, may take two accusatives, and the usually intransitive lateō, lie hid, an accusative of the person:

nōn tē cēlāvi sermōnem T. Ampī (Fam. ii. 16. 3), I did not conceal from you the talk of Titus Ampius.
nec latuēre doli frātrem Iūnnōnis (Aen. i. 130), nor did the wiles of Juno escape the notice of her brother.

Note 1. — The accusative of the person with lateō is late or poetical (§ 388. c. n. 1).
Note 2. — All the double constructions indicated in § 396 arise from the wavering meaning of the verbs. Thus docēō means both to show a thing, and to instruct a person; cēlō, to keep a person in the dark, and to hide a thing; ῥόγο, to question a person, and to ask a question or a thing. Thus either accusative may be regarded as the direct object, and so become the subject of the passive (cf. b above), but for convenience the accusative of the thing is usually called secondary.
§ 397. IDIOMATIC USES OF THE ACCUSATIVE

Idiomatic Uses

397. The Accusative has the following special uses: —

a. The accusative is found in a few adverbial phrases (Adverbial Accusative): —

id temporis, at that time; id (istuc) aetātis, at that age.

id (quod) genus, of that (what) sort (perhaps originally nominative).

meam vicem, on my part.

id (quod) genus, of that (what) sort (perhaps originally nominative).

meam vicem, on my part.

b. The so-called synecdochical or Greek Accusative, found in poetry and later Latin, is used to denote the part affected: —

caput nectentur (Aen. v. 309), their heads shall be bound (they shall be bound about the head).

ārdentis oculōs suffecti sanguine et igni (id. ii. 210), their glaring eyes blood-shot and blazing with fire (suffused as to their eyes with blood and fire).

nuda genū (id. i. 320), with her knee bare (bare as to the knee).

femur tràgulī ictus (Liv. xxı. 7. 10), wounded in the thigh by a dart.

Note. — This construction is also called the Accusative of Specification.

c. In many apparently similar expressions the accusative may be regarded as the direct object of a verb in the middle voice (§ 156. a): —

inútile ferrum cingitur (Aen. ii. 510), he girds on the useless steel.

nodō sinūs collecta fluentis (id. i. 320), having her flowing folds gathered in a knot.

umerōs insternor pelle leōnis (id. ii. 722), I cover my shoulders with a lion’s skin.

prōtinus induitur faciem cultumque Dianae (Ov. M. ii. 425), forthwith she assumes the shape and garb of Diana.

d. The Accusative is used in Exclamations: —

ō fortūnātam rem pūblicam, O fortunate republic! [Cf. ō fortūnāta mors (Phil. xiv. 31), oh, happy death! (§ 339. a).]

ō mē īnfelīcem (Mil. 102), oh, unhappy I!

mē miserum, ah, wretched me!

ēn quattuor ārās (Ecl. v. 65), to, four altars!

ellum (= em illum), there he is! [Cf. § 146. a. n. 2.]

eccōs (= ecce eōs), there they are, look at them!

prō deum fidem, good heavens (O protection of the gods)!

hōcine saeclum (Ter. Ad. 304), O this generation!

huncine hominem (Verr. v. 62), this man, good heavens!
Note 1.—Such expressions usually depend upon some long-forgotten verb. The substantive is commonly accompanied by an adjective. The use of -ne in some cases suggests an original question, as in quid? what? why? tell me.

Note 2.—The omission of the verb has given rise to some other idiomatic accusatives. Such are:—

salūtem (sc. dicit) (in addressing a letter), greeting.
mē dius fidius (sc. adivet), so help me heaven (the god of faith).
unde mihi lapidem (Hor. S. ii. 7. 116), where can I get a stone?
quo mihi fortunām (Hor. Ep. i. 5. 12), of what use to me is fortune? [No verb thought of.]

e. The subject of an infinitive is in the accusative:—

intellegō tē sapere (Fam. vii. 32. 3), I perceive that you are wise.
eās rēs iactāri nōlēbat (B. G. i. 18), he was unwilling that these matters should be discussed.

Note.—This construction is especially common with verbs of knowing, thinking, telling, and perceiving (§ 580).

j. The accusative in later writers is sometimes used in apposition with a clause:—

dēserunt tribunal... manūs intentantēs, causam discordiae et initium armōrum (Tac. Ann. i. 27), they abandon the tribunal shaking their fists, a cause of dissension and the beginning of war.

Note.—This construction is an extension (under Greek influence) of a usage more nearly within the ordinary rules, such as,—Eumenem prodiidēre Antiochō, pācis mercēdem (Sall. Ep. Mith. 8), they betrayed Eumenes to Antiochus, the price of peace. [Here Eumenes may be regarded as the price, although the real price is the betrayal.]

For the Accusative of the End of Motion, see § 427. 2; for the Accusative of Duration of Time and Extent of Space, see §§ 423, 425; for the Accusative with Prepositions, see § 220.

ABLATIVE CASE

398. Under the name Ablative are included the meanings and, in part, the forms of three cases,—the Ablative proper, expressing the relation from; the Locative, in; and the Instrumental, with or by. These three cases were originally not wholly distinct in meaning, and their confusion was rendered more certain (1) by the development of meanings that approached each other and (2) by phonetic decay, by means of which these cases have become largely identical in form. Compare, for the first, the phrases à parte dexterā, on the right; quam ob causam, from which cause; ad fānam, at (in consequence of) the report; and, for the second, the like forms of the dative and ablative plural, the old dative in -e of the fifth declension (§ 96), and the loss of the original -d of the ablative (§ 49. 6; cf. §§ 43. N. 1, 92. f, 214. a. n.).

The relation of from includes separation, source, cause, agent, and comparison; that of with or by, accompaniment, instrument, means, manner, quality, and price; that of in or at, place, time, circumstance. This classification according to the original cases (to which, however, too great a degree of certainty should not be attached) is set forth in the following table:—

1 Thus the Ablative of Cause may be, at least in part, of Instrumental origin, and the Ablative Absolute appears to combine the Instrumental and the Locative.
I. Ablative Proper (from) (Separative):
   1. Of Separation, Privation, and Want (§ 400).
   2. Of Source (participles of origin etc.) (§ 403).
   3. Of Cause (labōrē, exsiliō, etc.) (§ 404).
   4. Of Agent (with ab after Passives) (§ 405).
   5. Of Comparison (than) (§ 406).

II. Instrumental Ablative (with):
   1. Of Separation, Privation, and Want (§ 400).
   2. Of Source (participles of origin etc.) (§ 403).
   3. Of Cause (labōrē, exsiliō, etc.) (§ 404).
   4. Of Agent (with ab after Passives) (§ 405).
   5. Of Comparison (than) (§ 406).

III. Locative Ablative (in, on, at):
   1. Of Place where (commonly with in) (§ 421).
   2. Of Time and Circumstance (§ 423).

399. The Ablative is used to denote the relations expressed in English by the prepositions from; in, at; with, by: —

liberāre metū, to deliver from fear.
excultus doctrīnā, trained in learning.
hōc ipsō tempore, at this very time.
caecus avāritiā, blind with avarice.
occīsus gladiō, slain by the sword.

USES OF THE ABLATIVE PROPER

Ablative of Separation

400. Words signifying Separation or Privation are followed by the ablative.

401. Verbs meaning to remove, set free, be absent, deprive, and want, take the Ablative (sometimes with ab or ex): —

oculis sē privāvit (Fin. v. 87), he deprived himself of eyes.
omnī Gallīa Rōmānīs interdicit (B. G. i. 46), he (Ariovistus) bars the Romans from the whole of Gaul.
eī aquā et īgni interdicitur (Vell. ii. 45), he is debarred the use of fire and water. — [The regular formula of banishment.]
voluptātibus carēre (Cat. M. 7), to lack enjoyments.
nōn egeō medicīnā (Lael. 10), I want no physic.
levāmur superstitiōne, liberāmur mortis metū (Fin. i. 63), we are relieved from superstition, we are freed from fear of death.
solūtū ā cupiditātibus (Leg. Agr. i. 27), freed from desires.
multōs ex īs incommōdis pecūniā sē liberāsse (Verr. v. 23), that many have freed themselves by money from these inconveniences.

For the Genitive with verbs of separation and want, see § 356. n.
402. Verbs compounded with ā, ab, dē, ex, (1) take the simple Ablative when used figuratively; but (2) when used literally to denote actual separation or motion, they usually require a preposition (§ 426. 1):

(1) cōnātī désistere (B. G. i. 8), to desist from the attempt.
dēsine commūnibus locīs (Acad. ii. 80), quit commonplaces.
abīre magistrātū, to leave one’s office.
abstīnērē inīriā, to refrain from wrong.
(2) ā prōpositō aberrāre (Fin. v. 83), to wander from the point.
dē prōvinciā déscēdere (Verr. ii. 48), to withdraw from one’s province.
ab īūre abīre (id. ii. 114), to go outside of the law.

ex cīvitāte excessēre (B. G. vi. 8), they departed from the state. [But cf. finibus suīs excesserant (id. iv. 18), they had left their own territory.]
ā māgnō démissum nōmen Iūlō (Aen. i. 288), a name descended (sent down) from great Iulus.

For the Dative used instead of the Ablative of Separation, see § 381. For the Ablative of the actual place whence in idiomatic expressions, see §§ 427. 1, 428. f.

a. Adjectives denoting freedom and want are followed by the ablative:

urbs nūda praeśidiō (Att. vii. 13), the city naked of defence.
immūnis miliātī (Liv. i. 43), free of military service.
plēbs orba tribūnīs (Leg. iii. 9), the people deprived of tribunes.

Note.—A preposition sometimes occurs:
ā culpā vacuus (Sall. Cat. 14), free from blame.
liberi ā déliquīs (Leg. Agr. i. 27), free from luxuries.
Messāna ab his rēbus vacua atque nūda est (Verr. iv. 3), Messana is empty and bare of these things.

For the Genitive with adjectives of want, see § 349. a.

Ablative of Source and Material

403. The Ablative (usually with a preposition) is used to denote the Source from which anything is derived, or the Material of which it consists:

1. Source:

Rhenus oritur ex Lepontiīs (B. G. iv. 10), the Rhine rises in (from) the country of the Lepontii.
ab his sērmō oritur (Lael. 5), the conversation is begun by (arises from) them.
cūius ratiōnis vīm atque utīlitātem ex illō caelestī Epicūrī volumīne accepimus (N. D. i. 43), of this reasoning we have learned the power and advantage from that divine book of Epicurus.

suāvitātem odōrum qui afflèrentur ē flōribus (Cat. M. 59), the sweetness of the odors which breathed from the flowers.
2. Material: —

erat totus ex fraude et mendaciō factus (Clu. 72), he was entirely made up of fraud and falsehood.

valvās māgnificentiōrés, ex aurō atque ebore perfectiōrés (Verr. iv. 124), more splendid doors, more finely wrought of gold and ivory.

factum dē cautibus antrum (Ov. M. i. 575), a cave formed of rocks.

templum dē marmore pōnām (Georg. iii. 13), I'll build a temple of marble.

Note 1.—In poetry the preposition is often omitted.

Note 2.—The Ablative of Material is a development of the Ablative of Source. For the Genitive of Material, see § 344.

a. Participles denoting birth or origin are followed by the Ablative of Source, generally without a preposition: —

love nātus et Māīa (N. D. iii. 56), son of Jupiter and Maia.

ēdite régibus (Hor. Od. i. 1. 1), descendant of kings.

quō sanguine crētus (Aen. ii. 74), born of what blood.

genitae Pandione (Ov. M. vi. 666), daughters of Pandion.

Note 1.—A preposition (ab, dē, ex) is usually expressed with pronouns, with the name of the mother, and often with that of other ancestors:

ex mē hic nātus nōn est sed ex frātre meō (Ter. Ad. 40), this is not my son, but my brother's (not born from me, etc.).

cum ex utrāque [uxōre] filius nātus esset (De Or. i. 183), each wife having had a son (when a son had been born of each wife).

Bēlus et omnēs ā Bēō (Aen. i. 730), Belus and all his descendants.

Note 2.—Rarely, the place of birth is expressed by the ablative of source: as, —
dēsiderāvit C. Fleginātēm Placentiā, A. Grāniōrum Puteōnis (B. C. iii. 71), he lost Caius Fleginas of Placentia, Aulus Granius of Puteoli.

Note 3.—The Roman tribe is regularly expressed by the ablative alone: as, —
Q. Verrem Rōmīliā (Verr. i. 23), Quintus Verres of the Romilian tribe.

b. Some verbs may take the Ablative of Material without a preposition. Such are cōnstāre, cōnsistere, and continēri. But with cōn-
stāre, ex is more common: —

domūs amoenitās nōn aedificā sed silvā cōnstābat (Nep. Att. 13), the charm of the house consisted not in the buildings but in the woods.

ex animō cōnstāmus et corpore (Fin. iv. 19), we consist of soul and body.

vīta corpore et spiritū continētur (Marc. 28), life consists of body and spirit.

c. The Ablative of Material without a preposition is used with facere, fieri, and similar words, in the sense of do with, become of: —

quid hōc homine faciātis (Verr. ii. 1. 42), what are you going to do with this man?

quid Tulliā meā fiet (Fam. xiv. 4. 3), what will become of my dear Tullia?

quid tē futūrum est (Verr. ii. 155), what will become of you?

1 As nātus, satus, editus, genitus, ortus, prōgnātus, generātus, crētus, crēatus, oriundus.

2 The ablative with cōnsistere and continēri is probably locative in origin (cf. § 431).
a. The Ablative of Material with *ex*, and in poetry without a preposition, sometimes depends directly on a noun: —
   nōn paucas pōculas *ex aurō* (Verr. iv. 62), *not a few cups of gold.*
   scopulis pendentibus antrum (Aen. i. 166), *a cave of hanging rocks.*

For Ablative of Source instead of Partitive Genitive, see § 346. c.

**Ablative of Cause**

404. The Ablative (with or without a preposition) is used to express Cause: —

1 neglegentia plectimur (Lael. 85), *we are chastised for negligence.*
   gubernātōris ars utilitāte nōn arte laudātur (Fin. i. 42), *the pilot's skill is praised for its service, not its skill.*
   certiś dē causis, *for cogent reasons.*
   *ex vulnere aeger* (Rep. ii. 38), *disabled by (from) a wound.*
   mare ā sōle lucet (Acad. ii. 105), *the sea gleams in the sun (from the sun).*

a. The Ablative of Cause without a preposition is used with *labōrō* (also with *ex*), *exsiliō, exsultō, triumphō, lacrimō, ārdeō*:

   doleō tē aliis malōs labōrāre (Fam. iv. 3), *I am sorry that you suffer with other ills.* [Cf. *ex aere aliēnō labōrāre* (B. C. iii. 22), *to labor under debt* (from another's money).]
   exsultāre laetitiā, triumphāre gaudiō coeptī (Clu. 14), *she began to exult in gladness, and triumph in joy.*
   exsiluī gaudiō (Fam. xvi. 16), *I jumped for joy.* [Cf. lacrimō gaudiō (Ter. Ad. 409), *I weep for joy.*]
   ārdēre dolōre et īrā (Att. ii. 19. 5), *to be on fire with pain and anger.*

For gaudēō and glōrior, see § 431.

b. The *motive* which influences the mind of the person acting is expressed by the ablative of cause; the *object* exciting the emotion often by *ob* ² or *propter* with the accusative: —

   nōn ob praedam aut spoliandī cupidinē (Tac. H. i. 63), *not for booty or through lust of plunder.*
   amicitia ex sē et propter sē expetenda (Fin. ii. 83), *friendship must be sought of and for itself.*

**Note.**—But these constructions are often confused: as, — pārēre lēgibus propter metum (Par. 34), *to obey the laws on account of fear.* [Here metum is almost equivalent to "the terrors of the law," and hence propter is used, though the ablative would be more natural.]

1 *The cause,* in the ablative, is originally *source,* as is shown by the use of *ab, dē,* *ex*; but when the accusative with *ad, ob,* is used, the idea of cause arises from *nearness.* Occasionally it is difficult to distinguish between *cause* and *means* (which is the old Instrumental case) or *circumstance* (which is either the Locative or the Instrumental).

2 Originally a mercantile use: cf. *ob decem minās,* *for the price of ten minās.*
c. The ablatives causā and grātiā, for the sake of, are used with a genitive preceding, or with a pronoun in agreement: —

eā causā, on account of this; qua grātiā (Ter. Eun. 99), for what purpose?
meā causā, for my sake; meā grātiā (Plaut.), for my sake.
ex meā et reī pūblīcae causā, for my own sake and the republic's.
praedictīonis causā (N. D. iii. 5), by way of prophecy.
exemplī grātiā (verbī grātiā), for example.
sui pūrgândī grātiā, for the sake of clearing themselves.

Note.—But grātiā with possessives in this use is rare.

Ablative of Agent

405. The Voluntary Agent after a passive verb is expressed by the Ablative with ā or ab: —

laudātur ab his, culpātur ab illīs (Hor. S. i. 2. 11), he is praised by those,
blamed by those.

ab animō tuō quidquid agitur id agitur ā tē (Tusc. i. 52), whatever is done by
your soul is done by yourself.

ā filīs in iūdicum vocātus est (Cat. M. 22), he was brought to trial by his sons.
cum ā cūncō cōnssessū plausus esset multiplex datūs (id. 64), when great
applause had been given by the whole audience.

nē virtūs ab audāciā vincētur (Sest. 92), that valor might not be overborne
by audacity. [Audācia is in a manner personified.]

Note 1.—This construction is developed from the Ablative of Source. The agent
is conceived as the source or author of the action.

Note 2.—The ablative of the agent (which requires ā or ab) must be carefully
distinguished from the ablative of instrument, which has no preposition (§ 409). Thus
—occīsus gladiō, slain by a sword; but, occīsus ab hoste, slain by an enemy.

Note 3.—The ablative of the agent is commonest with nouns denoting persons, but
it occurs also with names of things or qualities when these are conceived as performing
an action and so are partly or wholly personified, as in the last example under the rule.

a. The ablative of the agent with ab is sometimes used after intransitive verbs that have a passive sense: —

perīre ab hoste, to be slain by an enemy.

b. The personal agent, when considered as instrument or means,
is often expressed by per with the accusative, or by operā with a
genitive or possessive: —

ab explōrātōribus certior factus est (B. G. i. 21), he was informed by scouts (in
person). But, —

per explōrātōres Caesar certior factus est (id. i. 12), Cæsar was informed by
(means of) scouts.

ēlautae operā Neptūnī (Plaut. Rud. 699), washed clean by the services of Neptune.
nōn meā operā ēvēnit (Ter. Hec. 228), it hasn't happened through me (by my
exertions). [Cf. ēius operā, B. G. v. 27.]
Note 1.—The ablative of means or instrument is often used instead of the ablative of agent, especially in military phrases: as,—haec exubítōribus tenēbantur (B. G. vii. 69), these (redoubts) were held by means of sentinels.

Note 2.—An animal is sometimes regarded as the means or instrument, sometimes as the agent. Hence both the simple ablative and the ablative with ab occur:—
equō vehi, to ride on horseback (be conveyed by means of a horse). [Not ab equō.]
clepēs ā mūribus esse dērōsōs (Div. i. 99), that the shields were gnawed by mice.

For the Dative of the Agent with the Gerundive, see § 374.

Ablative of Comparison

406. The Comparative degree is often followed by the Ablative¹ signifying than: —

Catō est Cicerōne eloquentior, Cato is more eloquent than Cicero.

quid nōbis duōbus labōriōsius est (Mil. 5), what more burdened with toil than we two?

vīlius argentum est aurō, virtūtibus aurum (Hor. Ep. i. 1. 52), silver is less precious than gold, gold than virtue.

a. The idiomatic ablatives opiniōne, spē, solitō, dictō, aequō, crēdibilī, and iūstō are used after comparatives instead of a clause: —
celerius opiniōne (Fam. xiv. 23), faster than one would think.

sērius spē omnium (Liv. xxvi. 26), later than all hoped (than the hope of all).
amnis solitō čitātior (id. xxiii. 19. 11), a stream swifter than its wont.
gravius aequō (Sall. Cat. 51), more seriously than was right.

407. The comparative may be followed by quam, than. When quam is used, the two things compared are put in the same case:
nōn calllidior es quam hic (Rosc. Am. 49), you are not more cunning than he.
cōntiōnibus accommodātior est quam iūdiciis (Clu. 2), fitter for popular assemblies than for courts.

misericordiā dignior quam contumēliā (Pison. 32), more worthy of pity than of disgrace.

a. The construction with quam is required when the first of the things compared is not in the Nominative or Accusative.

Note 1.—There are several limitations on the use of the ablative of comparison, even when the first of the things compared is in the nominative or accusative. Thus the quam construction is regularly used (1) when the comparative is in agreement with a genitive, dative, or ablative: as,—senex est eō meliōre condicioне quam adulēscěns (Cat. M. 68), an old man is in this respect in a better position than a young man; and (2) when the second member of the comparison is modified by a clause: as,—minor fuit aliquantō is qui primus fabulam dedit quam ei qui, etc. (Brut. 73), he who first presented a play was somewhat younger than those who, etc.

¹ This is a branch of the Ablative of Separation. The object with which anything is compared is the starting-point from which we reckon. Thus, "Cicero is eloquent"; but, starting from him, we come to Cato, who is "more so than he."
Note 2.—The poets sometimes use the ablative of comparison where the prose construction requires quam: as,—pāne egeō iam mellītis potiōre placentīs (Hor. Ep. i. 10. 11), I now want bread better than honey-cakes.

Note 3.—Relative pronouns having a definite antecedent never take quam in this construction, but always the ablative: as,—rēx erat Aenēās nōbīs, quō fūstior alter nec, etc. (Aen. i. 544), Aeneas was our king, than whom no other [was] more righteous.

b. In sentences expressing or implying a general negative the ablative (rather than quam) is the regular construction when the first member of the comparison is in the nominative or accusative:—
nihil dētestābilis dēdecorum, nihil foedius servītūtē (Phil. iii. 36), nothing is more dreadful than disgrace, nothing viler than slavery.
nēminem esse cāriōrem tē (Att. x. 8 a. 1), that no one is dearer than you.

c. After the comparatives plūs, minus, amplius, longius, without quam, a word of measure or number is often used with no change in its case:—
plūs septingentī captī (Liv. xli. 12), more than seven hundred were taken.  [Nominative.]
plūs tertiā parte interfectā (B. G. iii. 6), more than a third part being slain.  [Ablative Absolute.]
aditus in lātitūdinem nōn amplius ducentōrum pedum relinquébātur (id. ii. 29), an approach of not more than two hundred feet in width was left.  [Genitive of Measure: § 345. b.]

Note.—The noun takes the case required by the context, without reference to the comparative, which is in a sort of apposition: ‘seven hundred were taken [and] more.’

d. Alius is sometimes followed by the ablative in poetic and colloquial use; in formal prose it is followed by ac (atque), et, more rarely by nisi, quam:—
nec quicquam aliud libertāte commūnī (Fam. xi. 2), nothing else than the common liberty.
alius Lysippō (Hor. Ep. ii. 1. 240), another than Lysippus.
num aliud vidētur esse ac meōrum bonōrum direptiō (Dom. 51), does it seem anything different from the plundering of my property?
erat historia nihil aliud nisi annālīum confectīō (De Or. ii. 52), history was nothing else but a compiling of records.

e. The comparative of an adverb is usually followed by quam, rarely by the ablative except in poetry:—
tempus tē citius quam ōrātiō dēficeret (Rosc. Am. 89), time would fail you sooner than words.  But,—
cur olivum sanguine vīperīnō cautius vītāt (Hor. Od. i. 8. 9), why does he shun oil more carefully than viper’s blood?

Note.—Prepositions meaning before or beyond (as ante, prae, praeter, supra) are sometimes used with a comparative: as,—scelere ante aliōs immānior omnis (Aen. i. 347), more monstrous in crime than all other men.
USES OF THE ABLATIVE AS INSTRUMENTAL

408. Means, Instrument, Manner, and Accompaniment are denoted by the Instrumental Ablative (see § 398), but some of these uses more commonly require a preposition. As they all come from one source (the old Instrumental Case) no sharp line can be drawn between them, and indeed the Romans themselves can hardly have thought of any distinction. Thus, in omnibus precibus ἡραβαντ, they entreated with every [kind of] prayer, the ablative, properly that of means, cannot be distinguished from that of manner.

Ablative of Means or Instrument

409. The Ablative is used to denote the means or instrument of an action:—

certantēs pūgnīs, calcibus, unguibus, morsū dēnique (Tusc. v. 77), fighting with fists, heels, nails, and even teeth.
cum pūgnīs et calcibus concīsus esset (Verr. iii. 56), when he had been pummelled with their fists and heels.
meīs labōribus ineritū rem publicam liberāvī (Sull. 33), by my toils I have saved the state from ruin.
multae istārum arborum meā manū sunt satae (Cat. M. 59), many of those trees were set out with my own hands.
vi victa vis, vel potius oppressa virtūte audācia est (Mil. 30), violence was overcome by violence, or rather, boldness was put down by courage.

a. The Ablative of Means is used with verbs and adjectives of filling, abounding, and the like:—

Deus bonīs omnibus explēvit mundum (Tim. 3), God has filled the world with all good things.
aggere et crātibus fossās explent (B. G. vii. 86), they fill up the ditches with earth and fascines.
tōtum montem hominibus completōvit (id. i. 24), he filled the whole mountain with men.
opīmus praedā (Verr. ii. 1. 132), rich with spoils.
vita plēna et cōnferta voluptātibus (Sest.23), life filled and crowded with delights.
Forum Appī differtum nautīs (Hor. S. i. 5. 4), Forum Appii crammed with bargemen.

Note. — In poetry the Genitive is often used with these words. Compleō and implēō sometimes take the genitive in prose (cf. § 356); so regularly plēnus and (with personal nouns) complētus and refertus (§ 349. a):—

omnia plēna luctūs et maerōris fuērunt (Sest. 128), everything was full of grief and mourning.
oālām dēnāriōrum implēre (Fam. ix. 18), to fill a pot with money. [Here evidently colloquial, otherwise rare in Cicero.]
convivium vicinōrum compleō (Cat. M. 46, in the mouth of Cato), I fill up the banquet with my neighbors.
cum complētus mercātōrum carcer esset (Verr. v. 147), when the prison was full of traders.
410. The deponents ātōr, fruor, fungor, potiōr, vescor, with several of their compounds,¹ govern the Ablative: —

ūtār vestrā benignitāte (Arch. 18), I will avail myself of your kindness.
ita mihi salvā ré publicā vōbiscum perfruī liceat (Cat. iv. 11), so may I enjoy with you the state secure and prosperous.
fungi inānī mūnerae (Aen. vi. 885), to perform an idle service.
aurū hērōs potitur (Ov. M. vii. 156), the hero takes the gold.
lacte et ferinā carne vescēbantur (Iug. 89), they fed on milk and game.

**Note.** — This is properly an Ablative of Means (instrumental) and the verbs are really in the middle voice (§ 156. a). Thus ātōr with the ablative signifies I employ myself (or avail myself) by means of, etc. But these earlier meanings disappeared from the language, leaving the construction as we find it.

**a. Potiōr** sometimes takes the Genitive, as always in the phrase potiīr rērum, to get control or be master of affairs (§ 357. a): —

tōtīus Galliae sēscī potiīrī posse spērānt (B. G. i. 3), they hope they can get possession of the whole of Gaul.

**Note 1.** — In early Latin, these verbs are sometimes transitive and take the accusative: —

functus est officium (Ter. Ph. 281), he performed the part, etc.
ille patria potitur commoda (Ter. Ad. 871), he enjoys his ancestral estate.

**Note 2.** — The Gerundive of these verbs is used personally in the passive as if the verb were transitive (but cf. § 500. 3): as, — Hēraklīō omnia ūtenda ac possidenda trā-diderat (Verr. ii. 46), he had given over everything to Heraclius for his use and possession (to be used and possessed).

411. Opus and ūsus, signifying need, take the Ablative: — ²

magistrātibus opus est (Leg. iii. 5), there is need of magistrates.
nunc virībus ūsus (Aen. viii. 441), now there is need of strength.

**Note.** — The ablative with ūsus is not common in classic prose.

**a. With opus** the ablative of a perfect participle is often found, either agreeing with a noun or used as a neuter abstract noun: —

opus est tuā exprōmpťā malitiā atque astūtiā (Ter. And. 723), I must have your best cunning and cleverness set to work.

properātō opus erat (cf. Mil. 49), there was need of haste.

**Note 1.** — So rarely with ūsus in comedy: as, — quid istis ūsusūtā conscriptās (Pl. Bacch. 749), what's the good of having them in writing?

**Note 2.** — The omission of the noun gives rise to complex constructions: as, — quid opus factūst (cf. B. G. i. 42), what must be done? [Cf. quō opus est fieri? with quō factō opus est?]

1 These are abūtōr, deītōr (very rare), dēfungor, dēfruīr, perfruīr, perfuīr, perfuīr, perfuīr, perfuīr, perfuīr, perfuīr, perfuīr.

2 This construction is properly an instrumental one, in which opus and ūsus mean work and service, and the ablative expresses that with which the work is performed or the service rendered. The noun ūsus follows the analogy of the verb ātōr, and the ablative with opus est appears to be an extension of that with ūsus est.
b. Opus is often found in the predicate, with the thing needed in the nominative as subject:—

dux nōbis et auctor opus est (Fam. ii. 6. 4), we need a chief and responsible adviser (a chief, etc., is necessary for us).
si quid ipsi opus esset (B. G. i. 34), if he himself wanted anything (if anything should be necessary for him).
quae opus sunt (Cato R. R. 14. 3), things which are required.

Ablative of Manner

412. The Manner of an action is denoted by the Ablative; usually with cum, unless a limiting adjective is used with the noun:

cum celeritāte vēnit, he came with speed. But,—
summā celeritāte vēnit, he came with the greatest speed.
quid rēfert quā mē ratiōne cōgātis (Lael. 26), what difference does it make in what way you compel me?

a. But cum is often used even when the ablative has a limiting adjective:—

quantō id cum periculō fēcerit (B. G. i. 17), at what risk he did this.
nōn minōre cum taediō recubant (Plin. Ep. ix. 17. 3), they recline with no less weariness.

b. With such words of manner as modo, pactō, ratiōne, ritū, vi, viā, and with stock expressions which have become virtually adverbs (as silentiō, iūre, iniūriā), cum is not used:—

apis Matinae mōre modōque carmina fingō (Hor. Od. iv. 2. 28), in the style and manner of a Matinian bee I fashion songs.

Note.—So in poetry the ablative of manner often omits cum; as,—insequitur cum mulō aquae mōns (Aen. i. 105), a mountain of water follows in a mass. [Cf. murmure (id. i. 124); rimīs (id. i. 123).]

Ablative of Accompaniment

413. Accompaniment is denoted by the Ablative, regularly with cum:—

cum coniugibus ac libēris (Att. viii. 2. 3), with wives and children.
cum funditōribus sagittāriīisque flāmen trānsgressī (B. G. ii. 19), having crossed the river with the archers and slingers.
quae supplicātiō sī cum cēterīs cōnferātur (Cat. iii. 15), if this thanksgiving be compared with others.
quae [lēx] esse cum tēāo vetāt (Mil. 11), the law which forbids [one] to go armed (be with a weapon).
sī sēcum suōs ēdūxerit (Cat. i. 30), if he leads out with him his associates. [For sēcum, see § 144. b. n.1.]
**§§ 413, 414**  ABLATIVE OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE 259

* a. The ablative is used without *cum* in some military phrases, and here and there by early writers: —

subsequēbatur omnibus cōpiās (B. G. ii. 19), *he followed close with all his forces*. [But also *cum omnibus cōpiās*, id. i. 26.]

hoc præsidīō profectus est (Verr. ii. 1. 86), *with this force he set out.*

**Note.** — Miscē and iungō, with some of their compounds, and confundō take either (1) the Ablative of Accompaniment with or without *cum*, or (2) sometimes the Dative (mostly poetical or late): —

mixtā dolōre voluptās (B. Al. 56), *pleasure mingled with pain.*

cūius animum cum suō miscat (Lael. 81), *whose soul he may mingle with his own.*

fletūnumque cruōr miscuit (Ov. M. iv. 140), *and mingled tears with blood.*

Cæsar ēas cohortēs cum exercitū suō coniúnxit (B. C. i. 18), *Cæsar united those cohorts with his own army.*

āēr coniūnctus terrīs (Lucr. v. 562), *air united with earth.*

hūmānō capiti cervicem equīnam iungere (Hor. A. P. 1), *to join to a human head a horse's neck.*

*b. Words of Contention and the like require *cum*: —

armīs cum hoste certāre (Off. iii. 87), *to fight with the enemy in arms.*

libenter haec *cum* Q. Catulō disputāreōm (Manil. 66), *I should gladly discuss these matters with Quintus Catulus.*

**Note.** — But words of contention may take the Dative in poetry (see § 368. *a*).*

Ablative of Degree of Difference

414. With Comparatives and words implying comparison the ablative is used to denote the Degree of Difference: —

quinque milibus passuum distat, *it is five miles distant.*

ā milibus passuum circiter duōbus (B. G. v. 32), *at a distance of about two miles.* [For ā as an adverb, see § 433. 3.]

aliquot ante annis (Tusc. i. 4), *several years before.*

aliquantō post suspexit (Rep. vi. 9), *a while after, he looked up.*

multō mē vigilāre ācrices (Cat. i. 8), *that I watch much more sharply.*

nihilō erat ipse Cyclops quam ariēs prōdentior (Tusc. v. 115), *the Cyclops himself was not a whit wiser than the ram.*

*a. The ablatives quō . . . eō (hoc), and quantō . . . tantō, are used correlatively with comparatives, like the English the . . . the 1:* —

quō minus cupiditātis, eō plus auctōritātis (Liv. xxiv. 28), *the less greed, the more weight (by what the less, by that the more).*

quantō erat gravior oppūgnātiō, tantō crēbriōrēs litterae mittēbantur (B. G. v. 45), *the severer the siege was, the more frequently letters were sent.*

1 In this phrase *the* is not the definite article but a pronominal adverb, being the Anglo-Saxon *thē*, the instrumental case of the pronoun *thet*, *that*. This pronoun is used both as relative (*by which, by how much*) and as demonstrative (*by that, by so much*). Thus *the . . . the* corresponds exactly to *quō . . . eō.*
Note.—To this construction are doubtless to be referred all cases of quō and eō (hoc) with a comparative, even when they have ceased to be distinctly felt as degree of difference and approach the Ablative of Cause:—
eōque mē minus paenitet (N. D. i. 8), and for that reason I regret less, etc. (by so much the less I regret).
haec eō facilius faciēbant, quod (B. G. iii. 12), this they did the more easily for this reason, because, etc. [Cf. hoc māiōre spē, quod (id. iii. 9).]

6. The Ablative of Comparison (§ 406) and the Ablative of Degree of Difference are sometimes used together with the same adjective:—
paulō minus ducentis (B. C. iii. 28), a little less than two hundred.
patria, quae mihi vitā meā multō est cārior (Cat. i. 27), my country, which is much dearer to me than life.

But the construction with quam is more common.

### Ablative of Quality

415. The quality of a thing is denoted by the Ablative with an adjective or genitive modifier.

This is called the Descriptive Ablative or Ablative of Quality:—

animō meliōre sunt gladiātōrēs (Cat. ii. 26), the gladiators are of a better mind.

quae cum esset cīvitās aequissimō iūre ac foedere (Arch. 6), as this was a city with perfectly equal constitutional rights.
muliērem eximiā pulchritūdine (Verr. ii. 1. 64), a woman of rare beauty.
Aristotelēs, vir summō iungiō, scientiā, cōpiā (Tusc. i. 7), Aristotle, a man of the greatest genius, learning, and gift of expression.
dē Domitiō dixit versum Graecum eādem sententiā (Deiot. 25), concerning Domitius he recited a Greek line of the same tenor.

Note.—The Ablative of Quality (like the Genitive of Quality, § 345) modifies a substantive by describing it. It is therefore equivalent to an adjective, and may be either attributive or predicate. In this it differs from other ablatives, which are equivalent to adverbs.

a. In expressions of quality the Genitive or the Ablative may often be used indifferently; but physical qualities are oftener denoted by the Ablative (cf. § 345. n.):—
capillō sunt prōmissō (B. G. v. 14), they have long hair.

ut capite opertō sit (Cat. M. 34), to have his head covered (to be with covered head).

quam fuit inbēcillus P. Āfricānī filius, quam tenuī aut nūllā potius valētūdine (id. 35), how weak was the son of Africanus, of what feeble health, or rather none at all!

1 It was originally instrumental and appears to have developed from accompaniment (§ 413) and manner (§ 412).
Ablative of Price

416. The price of a thing is put in the Ablative: —
agrum vêndidit sêstertium sex milibus, he sold the land for 6000 sesterces.
Antônios rêgna addixit pecûniâ (Phîl. vii. 15), Antony sold thrones for money.
logós ridiculôs: quis cênâ poscit (Pl. Stîch. 221), jokes: who wants them for
(at the price of) a dinner?
mâgni illi ea cûncâtîiô stetit (Liv. ii. 36), that hesitation cost him dear.
Note. — To this head is to be referred the Ablative of the Penalty (§ 353. 1).

417. Certain adjectives of quantity are used in the Genitive to
denote indefinite value. Such are mâgni, parvi, tanti, quanti, plûris,
minôris: —
meâ mâgni interest, it is of great consequence to me.
illude parvi rêfert (Manîl. 18), this is of small account.
est mîhi tantî (Cat. ii. 15), it is worth the price (it is of so much).
Verrêsne tibi tantî fuit (Verr. ii. 1. 77), was Verrès of so much account to
you?
tantône minôris decumae vêniérunt (id. iii. 106), were the tithes sold for so
much less?

Note. — These are really Genitives of Quality (§ 345. b).

a. The genitive of certain colorless nouns is used to denote indefi-
nite value. Such are nihîli (nîli), nothing; assis, a farthing (rare);
flocci (a lock of wool), a straw: —
non flocci faciô (Att. xiii. 50), I care not a straw. [Colloquial.]
utilinam ego istuc abs tê factum nîli penderem (Ter. Eun. 94), O that I cared
nothing for this being done by you! [Colloquial.]

b. With verbs of exchanging, either the thing taken or the thing
given in exchange may be in the Ablative of Price. Such are mútô,
commûtô, permûtô, vertô: —

fidem suam et religionem pecūniâ commûtâre (Clu. 129), to barter his faith
and conscience for money.
exsilium patriâ sêde mûtâvit (Q. C. iii. 7. 11), he exchanged his native land
for exile (he took exile in exchange for his native land).
vêlôx saepe Lucretîlem mútât Lycaô Faunus (Hor. Od. i. 17. 1), nimble
Faunus often changes Lycaûs for Lucretîlis. [He takes Lucretîlis at
the price of Lycaûs, i.e. he goes from Lycaûs to Lucretîlis.]
vertère funeribus triumphôs (id. i. 35. 4), to change the triumph to the funeral
train (exchange triumphs for funerals). [Poetical.]
SYNTAX: CONSTRUCTION OF CASES  

Note. — With verbs of exchanging cum is often used, perhaps with a different conception of the action: as, — ariēs . . . cum croceō mútābit vellera lūtō (Ecl. iv. 44), the ram shall change his fleece for [one dyed with] the yellow saffron.

c. With verbs of buying and selling the simple Ablative of Price must be used, except in the case of tanti, quanti, pluris, minōris: —


Ablative of Specification

418. The Ablative of Specification denotes that in respect to which anything is or is done: —

virtute praecedunt (B. G. i. 1), they excel in courage.
claudus alterō pede (Nep. Ages. 8), lame of one foot.
linguā haesitantēs, vōce absoni (De Or. i. 115), hesitating in speech, harsh in voice.
sunt enim hominēs nōn rē sed nōmine (Off. i. 105), for they are men not in fact, but in name.
māior nātū, older; minor nātū, younger (cf. § 131. c).
paulum aētāte prōgressī (Cat. M. 32), somewhat advanced in age.
corpore senex esse poterit, animō nūmquam erit (id. 38), he may be an old man in body, he never will be [old] at heart.

a. To this head are to be referred many expressions where the ablative expresses that in accordance with which anything is or is done: —

meō iūre, with perfect right; but, meō modō, in my fashion.
meō sententiā, in my opinion; but also more formally, ex meō sententiā.
[Here the sense is the same, but the first ablative is specification, the second source.]
propinquitāte coniūnctōs atque nātūrā (Lael. 50), closely allied by kindred and nature. [Here the ablative is not different in sense from those above, but no doubt is a development of means.]
quī vincit viribus (id. 55), who surpasses in strength. [Here it is impossible to tell whether viribus is the means of the superiority or that in respect to which one is superior.]

Note. — As the Romans had no such categories as we make, it is impossible to classify all uses of the ablative. The ablative of specification (originally instrumental) is closely akin to that of manner, and shows some resemblance to means and cause.

For the Supine in -ū as an Ablative of Specification, see § 510.

b. The adjectives dignus and indignus take the ablative: —

vir patre, avō, māōrībus suīs dignissimus (Phil. iii. 25), a man most worthy of his father, grandfather, and ancestors.
tē omnī honōre indignissimum iūdīcāvit (Vat. 39), he judged you entirely unworthy of every honor.
Ablative Absolute

419. A noun or pronoun, with a participle in agreement, may be put in the Ablative to define the time or circumstances of an action. This construction is called the Ablative Absolute: —

Caesar, acceptis litteris, nuntium mittit (B. G. v. 46), having received the letter, Caesar sends a messenger (the letter having been received).

quibus rebus cognitis Caesar apud militēs continentur (B. C. i. 7), having learned this, Caesar makes a speech to the soldiers.

fugātō omnē equitātū (B. G. vii. 68), all the cavalry being put to flight.

interfectā Indūtiomārō (id. vi. 2), upon the death of Indutiomarus.

nōndum hieme confectā in finīs Nerviōrum contendit (id. vi. 3), though the winter was not yet over, he hastened into the territory of the Nervii.

compressō [sunt] conātūs nullō tumultū públicē concitātō (Cat. i. 11), the attempts were put down without exciting any general alarm.

nē vōbis quidem omnibus rē etiam tum probātā (id. ii. 4), since at that time the facts were not yet proved even to all of you.

Note. — The ablatival absolute is an adverbial modifier of the predicate. It is, however, not grammatically dependent on any word in the sentence: hence its name absolute (absolutus, i.e. free or unconnected). A substantive in the ablative absolute very seldom denotes a person or thing elsewhere mentioned in the same clause.

a. An adjective, or a second noun, may take the place of the participle in the Ablative Absolute construction: —

exiguā parte aestātis reliquā (B. G. iv. 20), when but a small part of the summer was left (a small part of the summer remaining).

L. Domitiō Ap. Claudiō consulibus (id. v. 1), in the consulship of Lucius Domitius and Appius Claudius (Lucius Domitius and Appius Claudius [being] consuls). [The regular way of expressing a date, see § 424. g.]

nīl desperandum Teucrō duce et auspice Teucrō (Hor. Od. i. 7. 27), there should be no despair under Teucer's leadership and auspices (Teucer being leader, etc.).

1 The Ablative Absolute is perhaps of instrumental origin. It is, however, sometimes explained as an outgrowth of the locative, and in any event certain locative constructions (of place and time) must have contributed to its development.

2 The present participle of esse, wanting in Latin (§ 170. b), is used in Sanskrit and Greek as in English.
b. A phrase or clause, used substantively, sometimes occurs as ablative absolute with a participle or an adjective:—

incertō quid peterent (Liv. xxviii. 36), as it was uncertain what they should aim at (it being uncertain, etc.).

compertō vānum esse formidinēm (Tac. Ann. i. 66), when it was found that the alarm was groundless.

cūr praeterēatur dēmōnstrātō (Inv. ii. 34), when the reason for omitting it has been explained (why it is passed by being explained).

Note. — This construction is very rare except in later Latin.

c. A participle or an adjective is sometimes used adverbially in the ablative absolute without a substantive:—

cōnsūltō (Off. i. 27), on purpose (the matter having been deliberated on).

mihi optātō vēneris (Att. xiii. 28. 3), you will come in accordance with my wish.

serēnō (Liv. xxxi. 12), under a clear sky (it [being] clear).

nec auspicātō nec lītātō (id. v. 38), with no auspices or favorable sacrifice.

tranquillō, ut āiunt, quilibet gubernātor est (Sen. Ep. 85. 34), in good weather, as they say, any man’s a pilot.

420. The Ablative Absolute often takes the place of a Subordinate Clause.

Thus it may replace —

1. A Temporal Clause (§ 541 ff.):—

patre interfectō, [his] father having been killed. [This corresponds to cum pater interfactus esset, when his father had been killed.]

recentibus sceleris ēius vestigīs (Q. C. vii. 1. 1), while the traces of the crime were fresh. [Cf. dum recentia sunt vestigia.]

2. A Causal Clause (§ 540):—

at eī quī Alesiae obsēdēbantur praeterītā dīē quā auxilia suōrum exspectāverant, cōnsūmpō omnī frīmentō, conciliō coāctō cōnsūltābant (B. G. vii. 77), but those who were under siege at Alesia, since the time, etc., had expired, and their grain had been exhausted, calling a council (see 5 below), consulted together. [Cf. cum dīēs praeterīsset, etc.]

Dārēus, dēspērātā pāce, ad reparandās vīrīs intendit animum (Q. C. iv. 6. 1), Darius, since he despaired of peace, devoted his energies to recruiting his forces. [Cf. cum pācem dēspērāret.]

3. A Concessive Clause (§ 527):—

at eō repūguante fiēbat (cōnsul), immo vērō eō fiēbat magis (Mil. 34), but though he (Clodins) opposed, he (Milo) was likely to be elected consul; nay, rather, etc.

turribus excitātīs, tamen hās altitūdō puppium ex barbarīs nāvibus suerābat (B. G. iii. 14), although towers had been built up, still the high sterns of the enemy’s ships rose above them.
occurrēbat ei, mancam et dēbīlem praetūram futūram suam, cōnsule Milōne (Mil. 25), it occurred to him that his prætorship would be maimed and feeble, if Milo were consul. [si Milō cōnsul esset.]
quā (regiōne) subāctā licēbit dēcurrere in illud mare (Q. C. ix. 3. 13), if this region is subdued, we shall be free to run down into that sea.
quā quidem dērāctā (Arch. 28), if this be taken away.

5. A Clause of Accompanying Circumstance: —
ego haec ā Chrŷsogonō mēa sponte, remōtō Sex. Rōsciō, quaeō (Rosc. Am. 130), of my own accord, without reference to Sextus Roscius (Sextus Roscius being put aside), I ask these questions of Chrysogonus.
nec imperante nec sciente nec praesente domīnō (Mil. 29), without their master’s giving orders, or knowing it, or being present.

Note. — As the English Nominative Absolute is far less common than the Ablative Absolute in Latin, a change of form is generally required in translation. Thus the present participle is oftenest to be rendered in English by a relative clause with when or while; and the perfect passive participle by the perfect active participle. These changes may be seen in the following example: —

At illī, intermissō spatīō, imprudentībus nostriis atque occupātīs in mūniōne castrōrum, subitō sē ex silvis iēcērunt; impetūque in ēōs factō quī erant in statīōne prō castrīs conlocāti, ācrīter pūgnāvērunt; duābusque missīs subsidio cohortībus ā Caesare, cum hae (pereξi- 

421. The Locative Case was originally used (literally) to denote the place where and (figuratively) to denote the time when (a development from the idea of place). But this case was preserved only in names of towns and a few other words, and the place where is usually denoted by the Ablative. In this construction the Ablative was, no doubt, used at first without a preposition, but afterwards it became associated in most instances with the preposition in.

422. In expressions of Time and Place the Latin shows a variety of idiomatic constructions (Ablative, Accusative, and Locative), which are systematically treated in § 423 ff.
TIME AND PLACE

Time

423. Time when, or within which, is expressed by the Ablative; time how long by the Accusative.

1. Ablative:
   constituta die, on the appointed day; prima luce, at daybreak.
   quot hora, at what o'clock? tertia vigilia, in the third watch.
   tribus proximis annis (Iug. 11), within the last three years.
   diebus viginti quinque aggerem exstruxerunt (B. G. vii. 24), within twenty-five days they finished building a mound.

2. Accusative:
   diec continuos triginta, for thirty days together.
   cum triduum iter fecisset (B. G. ii. 16), when he had marched three days.

Note. — The Ablative of Time is locative in its origin (§ 421); the Accusative is the same as that of the extent of space (§ 425).

424. Special constructions of time are the following:

a. The Ablative of time within which sometimes takes in, and the Accusative of time how long per, for greater precision:
   in diebus proximis decem (Iug. 28), within the next ten days.
   ludí per decem dies (Cat. iii. 20), games for ten days.

b. Duration of time is occasionally expressed by the Ablative:
   milités quinque hóris proelium sustinuerant (B. C. i. 47), the men had sustained the fight five hours.

Note. — In this use the period of time is regarded as that within which the act is done, and it is only implied that the act lasted through the period. Cf. inter annós quattuordecim (B. G. i. 36), for fourteen years.

c. Time during which or within which may be expressed by the Accusative or Ablative of a noun in the singular, with an ordinal numeral:
   quintō die, within [just] four days (lit. on the fifth day). [The Romans counted both ends, see § 631. d.]
   régnavit iam septuannum, he has reigned going on six years.

d. Many expressions have in Latin the construction of time when, where in English the main idea is rather of place:
   pugna Cannensii (or, apud Cannás), in the fight at Cannæ.
   lúdis Rómanis, at the Roman games.
   omnibus Gallicis bellis, in all the Gallic wars.
§§ 424, 425] TIME AND PLACE 267

e. In many idiomatic expressions of time, the Accusative with ad, in, or sub is used. Such are the following: —

supplicatō dēcrēta est in kalendās iānuāriās, a thanksgiving was voted for the first of January.

convēnērunt ad diem, they assembled on the [appointed] day.

ad vesperum, till evening; sub vesperum, towards evening.

sub idem tempus, about the same time; sub noctem, at nightfall.

f. Distance of time before or after anything is variously expressed:

post (ante) trēs annōs, post tertium annum, trēs post annōs, tertium post annum, tribus post annōs, tertio post annum (§ 414), three years after.

tribus annis (tertiō annō) post exsilium (postquam ēlectus est), three years after his exile.

hīs tribus proximīs annīs, within the last three years.

paucīs annīs, a few years hence.

abhinc annōs trēs (tribus annīs), ante hōs trēs annōs, three years ago.

triennium est cum (trēs annī sunt cum), it is three years since.

octāvō mēnse quam, the eighth month after (see § 434. n.).

g. In Dates the phrase ante diem (a. d.) with an ordinal, or the ordinal alone, is followed by an accusative, like a preposition; and the phrase itself may also be governed by a preposition.

The year is expressed by the names of the consuls in the ablative absolute, usually without a conjunction (§ 419. a): —

is diēs erat a. d. v. kal. Apr. (quintum kalendās Aprilīs) L. Pisōne A. Gabīniō cōnsulibus (B. G. i. 6), that day was the 5th before the calends of April (March 28), in the consulship of Piso and Gabinius.

in a. d. v. kal. Nov. (Cat. i. 7), to the 5th day before the calends of November (Oct. 28).

xv. Kal. Sextilīs, the 15th day before the calends of August (July 18). [Full form: quintō decimō diē ante kalendās.]

For the Roman Calendar, see § 631.

Extent of Space

425. Extent of Space is expressed by the Accusative: —

fossās quīndecim pedēs lātās (B. G. vii. 72), trenches fifteen feet broad.

prōgressus milia passuum circiter duodecim (id. v. 9), having advanced about twelve miles.

in omnī vitā suā quemque ā rectā cōnscientiā trānsversum unguem nōn oportet discēdere (quoted in Att. xiii. 20), in all one’s life, one should not depart a nail’s breadth from straightforward conscience.

Note. — This Accusative denotes the object through or over which the action takes place, and is kindred with the Accusative of the End of Motion (§ 427. 2).
SYNTAX: CONSTRUCTION OF CASES [§§ 425, 426]

a. Measure is often expressed by the Genitive of Quality (§ 345. b): vāllum duodecim pedem (B. G. vii. 72), a rampart of twelve feet (in height).

b. Distance when considered as extent of space is put in the Accusative; when considered as degree of difference, in the Ablative (§ 414): —

milia passuum tria ab eōrum castris castra pōnit (B. G. i. 22), he pitches his camp three miles from their camp.

quīnque diērūm iter abest (Liv. xxx. 29), it is distant five days' march.

triginta milibus passuum intra eum locum (B. G. vi. 35), thirty miles below that place (below by thirty miles).

Relations of Place

426. Relations of Place 1 are expressed as follows: —

1. The place from which, by the Ablative with ab, dē, or ex.

2. The place to which (or end of motion), by the Accusative with ad or in.

3. The place where, by the Ablative with in (Locative Ablative).

Examples are: —

1. Place from which: —

a septentrione, from the north.

cum a vōbis discesserō (Cat. M. 79), when I leave you.
dē prōvinciā dēcēdere, to come away from one's province.
dē monte, down from the mountain.
negōtiātor ex Āfricā (Verr. ii. 1. 14), a merchant from Africa.

ex Britanniā obsidēs misērunt (B. G. iv. 38), they sent hostages from Britain.

Mōsa prōfluit ex monte Vosēgō (id. iv. 10), the Meuse (flows from) rises in the Vosges mountains.

2. Place to which (end of motion): —

nocte ad Nerviōs pervēnērunt (B. G. ii. 17), they came by night to the Nervii.
adībam ad istum fundum (Caec. 82), I was going to that estate.
in Āfricam nāvigāvit, he sailed to Africa; in Ītaliam profectus, gone to Italy.
lēgātum in Treverōs mittit (B. G. iii. 11), he sends his lieutenant into the [country of the] Treveri.

1 Originally all these relations were expressed by the cases alone. The accusative, in one of its oldest functions, denoted the end of motion; the ablative, in its proper meaning of separation, denoted the place from which, and, in its locative function, the place where. The prepositions, originally adverbs, were afterwards added to define more exactly the direction of motion (as in to usward, toward us), and by long association became indispensable except as indicated below.
3. Place where: —

   in hac urbe vitam dēgit, he passed his life in this city.

   sī in Galliā remanērent (B. G. iv. 8), if they remained in Gaul.

dum haec in Venetis geruntur (id. iii. 17), while this was going on among the

   Veneti.

   oppidum in īnsulā positum (id. vii. 58), a town situated on an island.

427. With names of towns and small islands, and with domus and rūs, the Relations of Place are expressed as follows: —

1. The place from which, by the Ablative without a preposition.
2. The place to which, by the Accusative without a preposition.
3. The place where, by the Locative.¹

Examples are: —

1. Place from which: —

   Rōmā profectus, having set out from Rome; Rōmā abesse, to be absent from

   Rome.

domō abire, to leave home; rūre reversus, having returned from the country.

2. Place to which: —

   cum Rōmam sextō diē Mutinā vēnisset (Fam. xi. 6. 1), when he had come to

   Rome from Modena in five days (on the sixth day).

   Dēlō Rhodum nāvigāre, to sail from Delos to Rhodes.

   rūs ībō, I shall go into the country.

domum iit, he went home.² [So, suās domōs abire, to go to their homes.]

3. Place where (or at which): —

   Rōmae, at Rome (Rōma).

   Rhodi, at Rhodes (Rhodus).

   Samī, at Samos.

   Tiburī or Tibure, at Tibur.

   Philippīs, at Philippi.

   domi (rarely domui), at home.

   Athēnās, at Athens (Athēnae).

   Lānuvi, at Lanuvium.

   Cyprī, at Cyprus.

   Cūribus, at Cures.

   Capreīs, at Capri (Capreae).

   rūrī, in the country.

a. The Locative Case is also preserved in the following nouns, which are used (like names of towns) without a preposition: —

   belli, militiae (in contrast to domi), abroad, in military service.

   humī, on the ground. vesperī (-e), in the evening.

   foris, out of doors.

   herī (-e), yesterday.

   animi (see § 358).

   temperi, betimes.

Cf. infelīcī arborī (Liv. i. 26), on the ill-omened (barren) tree; terrā marique, by land and sea.

¹ The Locative has in the singular of the first and second declensions the same form as the Genitive, in the plural and in the third declension the same form as the Dative or Ablative. (See p. 34, footnote.)

² The English home in this construction is, like domum, an old accusative of the end of motion.
428. Special uses of place from which, to which, and where are
the following: —

\textit{a.} With names of towns and small islands \textit{ab} is often used to
denote from the vicinity of, and \textit{ad} to denote towards, to the neighborhood of: —

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textit{ut à Mutinā discēderet (Phil. xiv. 4), that he should retire from Modena (which he was besieging).}
  \item \textit{erat à Gergoviā dēspectus in castra (B. G. vii. 45), there was from about Gergovia a view into the camp.}
  \item \textit{ad Alesiam proficiscuntur (id. vii. 76), they set out for Alesia.}
  \item \textit{ad Alesiam perveniunt (id. vii. 79), they arrive at Alesia (i.e. in the neighborhood of the town).}
  \item \textit{D. Laelius cum classe ad Brundisium vēnit (B. C. iii. 100), Decimus Laelius came to Brundisium with a fleet (arriving in the harbor).}
\end{itemize}

\textit{b.} The general words \textit{urbs, oppidum, insula} require a preposition
to express the place from which, to which, or where: —

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textit{ab (ex) urbe, from the city. in urbe, in the city.}
  \item \textit{ad urbem, to the city. Rōmæ in urbe, in the city of Rome.}
  \item \textit{in urbem, into the city. Rōmā ex urbe, from the city of Rome.}
  \item \textit{ad urbem Rōmam (Rōmam ad urbem), to the city of Rome.}
\end{itemize}

\textit{c.} With the name of a country, \textit{ad} denotes to the borders; in with
the accusative, into the country itself. Similarly \textit{ab} denotes away
from the outside; \textit{ex}, out of the interior.

Thus \textit{ad Ìtaliam pervēnit} would mean he came to the frontier, regardless of
the destination; \textit{in Ìtaliam, he went to Italy, i.e. to a place within it, to Rome, for instance.}

So \textit{ab Ìtaliiā profectus est} would mean he came away from the frontier, regardless of
the original starting-point; \textit{ex Ìtaliiā, he came from Italy, from within, as from Rome, for instance.}

\textit{d.} With all names of places \textit{at}, meaning near (not in), is expressed
by \textit{ad} or \textit{apud} with the accusative.

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textit{pūagna ad Cannās, the fight at Cannae.}
  \item \textit{conchās ad Cāiētam legunt (De Or. ii. 22), at Caieta (along the shore).}
  \item \textit{ad (apud) inferōs, in the world below (near, or among, those below).}
  \item \textit{ad foris, at the doors. ad iānūam, at the door.}
\end{itemize}

\textbf{Note 1.} — In the neighborhood of may be expressed by \textit{circā} with the accusative;
among, by \textit{apud} with the accusative: —

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textit{apud Graecōs, among the Greeks. apud mē, at my house.}
  \item \textit{apud Solēnēs (Leg. ii. 41), at Soli. circā Capuam, round about Capua.}
\end{itemize}

\textbf{Note 2.} — In citing an author, \textit{apud} is regularly used; in citing a particular \textit{work},
in. Thus, — \textit{apud Xenophōntem, in Xenophon; but, in Xenophōntis Oeconomicō, in
Xenophon’s Economicus.}
§ 428] RELATIONS OF PLACE 271

e. Large islands, and all places when thought of as a territory and not as a locality, are treated like names of countries:—

in Siciliā, in Sicily.
in Ithacā leporēs illātī moriuntur (Plin. H. N. viii. 226), in Ithaca hares, when carried there, die. [Ulysses lived at Ithaca would require Ithacae.]

f. The Ablative without a preposition is used to denote the place from which in certain idiomatic expressions:—
cessisset patriā (Mil. 68), he would have left his country.
patriā pellere, to drive out of the country.
manū mittere, to emancipate (let go from the hand).

g. The poets and later writers often omit the preposition with the place from which or to which when it would be required in classical prose:

mānis Acheronte remissōs (Aen. v. 99). the spirits returned from Acheron.
Scythiā prefectī (Q. C. iv. 12. 11), setting out from Scythia.
Italiam Lāviniāque vēnit litora (Aen. i. 2), he came to Italy and the Lavinian shores.
terram Hesperiam veniēs (id. ii. 781), you shall come to the Hesperian land.
Aegyptum proficiscitur (Tac. Ann. ii. 59), he sets out for Egypt.

h. In poetry the place to which is often expressed by the Dative, occasionally also in later prose:—
it clāmor caelo (Aen. v. 451), a shout goes up to the sky.
facilis dēscensus Avernō (id. vi. 126), easy is the descent to Avernus.
diādēma capiti repōnere iussit (Val. Max. v. 1. 9), he ordered him to put back the diadem on his head.

i. The preposition is not used with the supine in -um (§ 509) and in the following old phrases:—
exsequiās ire, to go to the funeral. Infitiās ire, to resort to denial.
pessum ire, to go to ruin. Pessum dare, to ruin (cf. perdō).
vēnum dare, to sell (give to sale). [Hence vēndere.]
vēnum ire, to be sold (go to sale). [Hence vēnire.]
forās (used as adverb), out: as, — forās ēgredī, to go out of doors.
suppētiās advenire, to come to one's assistance.

j. When two or more names of place are used with a verb of motion, each must be under its own construction:—

quadriduō quō haec gesta sunt rēs ad Chrysogonum in castra L. Sullae Volaterrās dēfertur (Rosc. Am. 20), within four days after this was done, the matter was reported to Chrysogonus in Sulla's camp at Volaterrae.

Note.—The accusative with or without a preposition is often used in Latin when motion to a place is implied but not expressed in English (see k, n.).
h. Domum denoting the place to which, and the locative domi, may be modified by a possessive pronoun or a genitive:—

domum rēgis (Deiot. 17), to the king's house. [But also in M. Laecae domum (Cat. i. 8), to Marcus Leca's house.]
domi meae, at my house; domī Caesaris, at Caesar's house.
domi suae vel aliēnae, at his own or another's house.

Note. — At times when thus modified, and regularly when otherwise modified, in domum or in domō is used:—
in domum privātam conveniunt (Tac. H. iv. 55), they come together in a private house.
in Mārci Crassī castissimā domō (Cael. 9), in the chaste home of Marcus Crassus.
[Cf. ex Anniānā Milōnis domō, § 302. e.]

429. The place where is denoted by the Ablative without a preposition in the following instances:—

1. Often in indefinite words, such as locō, parte, etc.:—
quibus locō positis (De Or. iii. 153), when these are set in position.
quā parte belli vicerant (Liv. xxi. 22), the branch of warfare in which they were victorious.
locīs certūs horrea constituit (B. C. iii. 32), he established granaries in particular places.

2. Frequently with nouns which are qualified by adjectives (regularly when tōtus is used):—
mediā urbe (Liv. i. 33), in the middle of the city.
tōtā Siciliā (Verr. iv. 51), throughout Sicily (in the whole of Sicily).
tōtā Tarracīnā (De Or. ii. 240), in all Tarracina.
cūntā Asiā atque Graeciā (Manil. 12), throughout the whole of Asia and Greece too.

3. In many idiomatic expressions which have lost the idea of place: pendēmus animīs (Tusc. i. 96), we are in suspense of mind (in our minds).
socius periculīs vōbiscum aderō (Lug. 85. 47), I will be present with you, a companion in dangers.

4. Freely in poetry:—
litore curvō (Aen. iii. 16), on the winding shore.
antrō sēclūsa relinquit (id. iii. 446), she leaves them shut up in the cave.
Ēpirō, Hesperiā (id. iii. 503), in Epirus, in Hesperia.
premit altum corde dolōrem (id. i. 209), he keeps down the pain deep in his heart.

a. The way by which is put in the Ablative without a preposition: viā breviōre equitēs praemīsī (Fam. x. 9), I sent forward the cavalry by a shorter road.
Aegaeō mari trālēcit (Liv. xxxvii. 14), he crossed by way of the Aēgean Sea.
prōvehimur pelagō (Aen. iii. 506), we sail forth over the sea.

Note. — In this use the way by which is conceived as the means of passage.
§§ 429-431]

RELATIONS OF PLACE

273

6. Position is frequently expressed by the Ablative with ab (rarely ex), properly meaning from: —

ā tergō, in the rear; ā sinistrā, on the left hand. [Cf. hinc, on this side.]

ā parte Pompēiānā, on the side of Pompey.
ex alterā parte, on the other side.
magnā ex parte, in a great degree (from, i.e. in, a great part).

430. Verbs of placing, though implying motion, take the construction of the place where:

Such are pōnō, locō, collocō, statuō, constitūō, etc.: —

qui in sēde ac domō collocavit (Par. 25), who put [one] into his place and home.

statuitur eques Rōmānus in Aprōnī convīvō (Verr. iii. 62), a Roman knight is brought into a banquet of Apronius.

insula Dēlos in Aegaeō mari posita (Manil. 55), the island of Delos, situated in the Ægean Sea.

si in ūnō Pompēiō omnia pōnerētis (id. 59), if you made everything depend on Pompey alone.

Note.—Compounds of pōnō take various constructions (see the Lexicon under each word).

431. Several verbs are followed by the Ablative.

These are acquiescō, délector, laetōr, gaudeō, glōrior, nītor, stō, maneō, fido, confido, consistō, contineō.

nōminibus veterum glōriāntur (Or. 169), they glory in the names of the ancients.

[Also, dē divitiis (in virtūte, circā rem, alicquid, haec) glōriāri.]

spē nīti (Att. iii. 9), to rely on hope.

prūdentia fidēns (Off. i. 81), trusting in prudence.

Note.—The ablative with these verbs sometimes takes the preposition in (but fido in is late), and the ablative with them is probably locative. Thus, — in quibus causa nītitur (Cael. 25), on whom the case depends.

With several of these verbs the neuter Accusative of pronouns is often found. For fido and confido with the Dative, see § 367.

a. The verbals frētus, contentus, and laetus take the Locative Ablative:

frētus grātiā Brūtī (Att. v. 21. 12), relying on the favor of Brutus.

laetus praedā, rejoicing in the booty.

contentus sorte, content with his lot. [Possibly Ablative of Cause.]

nōn fuit contentus glōriā (Dom. 101), he was not content with the glory.

Note.—So intentus, rarely: as, — alicuō negotiō intentus (Sall. Cat. 2), intent on some occupation.

1 Apparently the direction whence the sensuous impression comes.
**SPECIAL USES OF PREPOSITIONS**

**Adverbs and Prepositions**

432. Certain Adverbs and Adjectives are sometimes used as Prepositions: —

a. The adverbs *pridie, postridie, propius, proxime*, less frequently the adjectives *propior* and *proximus*, may be followed by the Accusative: —

*pridie Nōnas Māías* (Att. ii. 11), *the day before the Nones of May* (see § 631).

*postridie lūdōs* (Att. xvi. 4), *the day after the games.*

*propior* *periculum* (Liv. xxii. 1), *nearer to danger.*

*proxime* *mare* *oceanum* (B. G. iii. 7), *nearest the ocean.*

**Note.** — *Pridie* and *postridie* take also the Genitive (§ 359. b). *Propior, propius, proximē,* and *proxime,* take also the Dative, or the Ablative with *ab*: —

*propior Tiberi quam Thermopylēs* (Nep. Hann. 8), *nearer to the Tiber than to Thermopylē.*

*Sugambri qui sunt proximi Rhēnō* (B. G. vi. 35), *the Sugambri, who are nearest to the Rhine.*

*proximus ā postrēmō* (Or. 217), *next to the last.*

b. *Úsque* sometimes takes the Accusative, but *úsque ad* is much more common: —

*terminōs úsque Libyae* (Iust. i. 1. 5), *to the bounds of Libya.*

*úsque ad castra* *hostium* (B. G. i. 51), *to the enemy's camp.*

c. The adverbs *palam, procul, simul,* may be used as prepositions and take the Ablative: —

*rem crēditōrī palam populō solvit* (Liv. vi. 14), *he paid the debt to his creditor in the presence of the people.*

*haud procul castris in modum āmunicipī exstrēcta* (Tac. H. iv. 22), *not far from the camp, built up like a town.*

*simul nōbis habitat barbarus* (Ov. Tr. v. 10. 29), *close among us dwells the barbarian.*

**Note.** — But *simul* regularly takes *cum*; *procul* is usually followed by *ab* in classic writers; and the use of *palam* as a preposition is comparatively late.

d. The adverb *clam* is found in early Latin with the Accusative, also once with the Genitive and once in classical Latin with the Ablative: —

*clam mātrem suam* (Pl. Mil. 112), *unknown to his mother.*

*clam patris* (id. Merc. 43), *without his father's knowledge.*

*clam vōbis* (B. C. ii. 32. 8), *without your knowledge.*

---

1 For a list of Prepositions with their ordinary uses, see § 221.
§ 433. Prepositions often retain their original meaning as Adverbs:

1. **Ante** and **post** in relations of time:
   quos paulo ante diximus (Brut. 32), whom I mentioned a little while ago.
   post tribus dieibus, three days after (cf. § 424. f).

2. **Adversus**, **circiter**, **prope**:
   nemo adversus ibat (Liv. xxxvii. 13. 8), no one went out in opposition.
   circiter pars quarta (Sall. Cat. 56), about the fourth part.
   prope examinantus, nearly lifeless.

3. A or ab, off, in expressions of distance, with the Ablative of Degree of Difference (§ 414):
   a milibus passuum circiter duobus Rômânorum adventum exspectabant
   (B. G. v. 32), at a distance of about two miles (about two miles off) they
   awaited the approach of the Romans.

4. In general, prepositions ending in -a:
   Aeolus haec contrâ (Aen. i. 76), thus Aeolus in reply.
   forte fuit iûxtâ tumulus (id. iii. 22), there happened to be a mound close by.

§ 434. Some Prepositions and Adverbs which imply comparison are followed, like comparatives, by quam, which may be separated by several words, or even clauses.

Such words are ante, prius, post, posteâ, pridië, postridië; also magis and prae in compounds:

   neque ante dimisit eum quam fidem dedit (Liv. xxxix. 10), nor did he let him
   go until he gave a pledge.
   post diem tertium quam dixerat (Mil. 44), the third day after he said it.
   Catô ipse iam servire quam pûgnäre mâvult (Att. vii. 15), Cato himself by this
   time had rather be a slave than fight.
   Gallorùm quam Rômânorûm imperia praefere (B. G. i. 17), [they] prefer the
   rule of Gauls to that of Romans.

Note.—The ablative of time is sometimes followed by quam in the same way
(§ 424. f): as,—octâvô mënse quam (Liv. xxi. 15), within eight months after, etc.

§ 435. The following Prepositions sometimes come after their nouns: ad, citrâ, circum, contrâ, dê, è (ex), inter, iûxtâ, penes, propter, ultrâ; so regularly tenus and versus, and occasionally others:

   [ûsus] quem penes arbitrium est et iûs et norma loquendi (Hor. A. P. 72),
   custom, under whose control is the choice, right, and rule of speech.
   cûlius a më corpus est cremâtûm, quod contrâ decuit ab illô meum (Cat. M. 84),
   whose body I burned [on the funeral pile], while on the contrary
   (contrary to which) mine should have been burned by him.
SYNTAX OF THE VERB

MOODS AND TENSES

436. The Syntax of the Verb relates chiefly to the use of the Moods (which express the manner in which the action is conceived) and the Tenses (which express the time of the action). There is no difference in origin between mood and tense; and hence the uses of mood and tense frequently cross each other. Thus the tenses sometimes have modal significations (compare indicative in apodosis, § 517. c; future for imperative, § 449. b); and the moods sometimes express time (compare subjunctive in future conditions, § 516. b, and notice the want of a future subjunctive).

The parent language had, besides the Imperative mood, two or more forms with modal signification. Of these, the Subjunctive appears with two sets of terminations, -a-m, -a-s, in the present tense (moneam, dicam), and -e-m, -e-s, in the present (amem) or other tenses (essem, dixissem). The Optative was formed by iē-, i-, with the present stem (sim, duim) or the perfect (dixerim). (See details in §§ 168, 169.)

Each mood has two general classes or ranges of meaning. The uses of the Subjunctive may all be classed under the general ideas of will or desire and of action vividly conceived; and the uses of the Optative under the general ideas of wish and of action vaguely conceived.

It must not be supposed, however, that in any given construction either the subjunctive or the optative was deliberately used because it denoted conception or possibility. On the contrary, each construction has had its own line of development from more tangible and literal forms of thought to more vague and ideal; and by this process the mood used came to have in each case a special meaning, which was afterwards habitually associated with it in that construction. Similar developments have taken place in English. Thus, the expression I would do this has become equivalent to a mild command, while by analysis it is seen to be the apodosis of a present condition contrary to fact (§ 517): if I were you, etc. By further analysis, I would do is seen to have meant, originally, I should have wished (or I did wish) to do.

In Latin, the original Subjunctive and the Optative became confounded in meaning and in form, and were merged in the Subjunctive, at first in the present tense. Then new tense-forms of the subjunctive were formed, and to these the original as well as the derived meanings of both moods became attached (see § 438). All the independent uses of the Latin subjunctive are thus to be accounted for.

The dependent uses of the subjunctive have arisen from the employment of some independent subjunctive construction in connection with a main statement. Most frequently the main statement is prefixed to a sentence containing a subjunctive, as a more complete expression of a complex idea (§ 268). Thus a question implying a general negative (quin rogēm? why should n't I ask?) might have the general negative expressed in a prefixed statement (nulla causa est, there is no reason); or abeat, let him go away, may be expanded into sine abeat. When such a combination comes into habitual use, the original meaning of the subjunctive partially or wholly disappears and a new meaning arises by implication. Thus, in mīsit lēgātōs quī dicerent, he sent ambassadors to say (i.e. who should say), the original hortatory sense of the subjunctive is partially lost, and the mood becomes in part an expression of purpose. Similar processes may be seen in the growth of Apodosis. Thus, tolle hanc opinōnem, lūctum sustuleris, remove this notion, you will have done away with grief (i.e. if you remove, etc.).

1 For the signification of the tense-endings, see §§ 168, 169.
The Infinitive is originally a verbal noun (§ 451), modifying a verb like other nouns: velā vidēre, lit. "I wish for-seeing": compare English "what went ye out for to see?" But in Latin it has been surprisingly developed, so as to have forms for tense, and some proper modal characteristics, and to be used as a substitute for finite moods.

The other noun and adjective forms of the verb have been developed in various ways, which are treated under their respective heads below.

The proper Verbal Constructions may be thus classified:—

I. Indicative: Direct Assertion or Question (§ 437).

   a. Independent Uses:
      1. Exhortation or Command (§ 439).
      2. Concession (§ 440).
      3. Wish (§ 441).
      4. Question of Doubt etc. (§ 444).
      5. Possibility or Contingency (§ 446).

II. Subjunctive:

   b. Dependent Uses:
      1. Conditions { Future (less vivid) (§ 516. b, c).
                       Contrary to Fact (§ 517).
      2. Purpose (with ut, ne) (§ 531).
      3. Characteristic (Relative Clause) (§ 535).
      4. Result (with ut, ut non) (§ 537).
      5. Time (with cum) (§ 546).
      7. Indirect Questions or Commands (§§ 574, 588).

III. Imperative:

   1. Direct Commands (often Subjunctive) (§ 448).
   2. Statutes, Laws, and Wills (§ 449. 2).
   3. Prohibitions (early or poetic use) (§ 450. a).

   a. Subject of esse and Impersonal Verbs (§§ 452, 454).

   b. Objective Constructions:
      2. Indirect Discourse (with Subject Accusative) (§ 580).

IV. Infinitive:

   c. Idiomatic Uses:
      1. Purpose (poetic or Greek use) (§ 460).
      2. Exclamation (with Subject Accusative) (§ 462).
      3. Historical Infinitive (§ 463).

MOODS

INDICATIVE MOOD

437. The Indicative is the mood of direct assertions or questions when there is no modification of the verbal idea except that of time.

   a. The Indicative is sometimes used where the English idiom would suggest the Subjunctive:—

       longum est, it would be tedious [if, etc.]; satius erat, it would have been better [if, etc.]; perseveri possum, I might follow up [in detail].

Note.—Substitutes for the Indicative are (1) the Historical Infinitive (§ 463), and (2) the Infinitive in Indirect Discourse (§ 580).

For the Indicative in Conditions, see §§ 515, 516; for the Indicative in implied Commands, see § 449. b.
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

438. The Subjunctive in general expresses the verbal idea with some modification\(^1\) such as is expressed in English by auxiliaries, by the infinitive, or by the rare subjunctive (§ 157. b).

\(a\). The Subjunctive is used independently to express —
1. An Exhortation or Command (Hortatory Subjunctive: § 439).
3. A Wish (Optative Subjunctive: § 441).
4. A Question of Doubt etc. (Deliberative Subjunctive: § 444).
5. A Possibility or Contingency (Potential Subjunctive: § 446).

For the special idiomatic uses of the Subjunctive in Apodosis, see § 514.

\(b\). The Subjunctive is used in dependent clauses to express —
1. Condition: future or contrary to fact (§§ 516. b, c, 517).
2. Purpose (Final, § 531).
4. Result (Consecutive, § 537).
5. Time (Temporal, § 546).
6. Indirect Question (§ 574).

\(c\). The Subjunctive is also used with Conditional Particles of Comparison (§ 524), and in subordinate clauses in the Indirect Discourse (§ 580).

SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDEPENDENT SENTENCES

Hortatory Subjunctive

439. The Hortatory Subjunctive is used in the present tense to express an exhortation or a command. The negative is ne.

hōs latrōnēs interficiāmus (B. G. vii. 38), let us kill these robbers.
caveant intemperantiam, meminerint verēcundiae (Off. i. 122), let them shun excess and cherish modesty.

**Note 1.** — The hortatory subjunctive occurs rarely in the perfect (except in prohibitions: § 450): as, — Epicurus hōc viderit (Acad. ii. 19), let Epicurus look to this.

**Note 2.** — The term hortatory subjunctive is sometimes restricted to the first person plural, the second and third persons being designated as the jussive subjunctive; but the constructions are substantially identical.

\(^1\) These modifications are of various kinds, each of which has had its own special development (cf. § 436). The subjunctive in Latin has also many idiomatic uses (as in clauses of Result and Time) where the English does not modify the verbal idea at all, but expresses it directly. In such cases the Latin merely takes a different view of the action and has developed the construction differently from the English.
Note 3.—Once in Cicero and occasionally in the poets and later writers the negative with the hortatory subjunctive is non: as, — a legibus non recedamus (Clu. 155), let us not abandon the laws.

a. The Second Person of the hortatory subjunctive is used only of an indefinite subject, except in prohibitions, in early Latin, and in poetry:

iniurias fortunae, quas ferre nequeas, defectuendae relinquas (Tusc. v. 118), the wrongs of fortune, which you cannot bear, leave behind by flight.
exoriare aliquis ultor (Aen. iv. 625), rise, some avenger.
isti bono utare dum asis, cum absit ne requiras (Cat. M. 33), use this blessing while it is present; when it is wanting do not regret it.
doceas iter et sacra ostia pandas (Aen. vi. 109), show us the way and lay open the sacred portals.

For Negative Commands (prohibitions), see § 450.

b. The Imperfect and Pluperfect of the hortatory subjunctive denote an unfulfilled obligation in past time:

moreretur, inquiés (Rab. Post. 29), he should have died, you will say.
potius doceret (Off. iii. 88), he should rather have taught.
né poposcessés (Att. ii. 1. 3), you should not have asked.
saltem aliquid de pondere detraxisset (Fin. iv. 57), at least he should have taken something from the weight.

Note 1.—In this construction the Pluperfect usually differs from the Imperfect only in more clearly representing the time for action as momentary or as past.

Note 2.—This use of the subjunctive is carefully to be distinguished from the potential use (§ 446). The difference is indicated by the translation, should or ought (not would or might).

440. The Hortatory Subjunctive is used to express a concession. The Present is used for present time, the Perfect for past. The negative is né.

sit fur, sit sacrilegus: at est bonus imperator (Verr. v. 4), grant he is a thief, a godless wretch: yet he is a good general.
fuérit alis; tibi quandò esse coepit (Verr. ii. 1. 37), suppose he was [so] to others; when did he begin to be to you?
némo is umquam fuit: né fuerit (Or. 101), there never was such a one [you will say]: granted (let there not have been).
né sit summum malum dolor, malum certe est (Tusc. ii. 14), granted that pain is not the greatest evil, at least it is an evil.

Note.—The concessive subjunctive with quamvis and licet is originally hortatory (§ 527. a, b).

For other methods of expressing Concession, see § 527.
For the Hortatory Subjunctive denoting a Proviso, see § 528. a.

1 Many scholars regard the concessive subjunctive as a development of the Optative Subjunctive in a wish.
Optative Subjunctive

441. The Optative Subjunctive is used to express a Wish. The present tense denotes the wish as *possible*, the imperfect as *unaccomplished* in present time, the pluperfect as *unaccomplished* in past time. The negative is *nē*:

"ita vivam (Att. v. 15), as true as I live, so may I live.
ne vivam sī scīō (id. iv. 16, 8), I wish I may not live if I know.
dī tē perduint (Deiot. 21), the gods confound thee!
valeant, valeant civēs mel; sint incolumēs (Mil. 93), farewell, farewell to my fellow-citizens; may they be secure from harm.
dī facerent sine patre forem (Ov. M. viii. 72), would that the gods allowed me to be without a father (but they do not)!

*a*. The perfect subjunctive in a wish is archaic:

dī faxint (Fam. xiv. 3, 3), may the gods grant.
quod dī ōmen āverterint (Phil. xii. 14, in a religious formula), and may the gods avert this omen.

442. The Optative Subjunctive is often preceded by the particle *utinam*; so regularly in the imperfect and pluperfect:

"falsus utinam vātēs sim (Liv. xxi. 10, 10), I wish I may be a false prophet.
utinam Clōdius vīveret (Mil. 103), would that Clodius were now alive.
utinam mē mortuum vidēssēs (Q. Fr. i. 3, 1), would you had seen me dead.
utinam nē vērē scriberem (Fam. v. 17, 3), would that I were not writing the truth.

Note.—*Utinam* nōn is occasionally used instead of *utinam nē*: as,—*utinam* susceptus nōn essēm (Att. ix. 9, 3), *would that I had not been born*.

*a*. In poetry and old Latin utī or ut often introduces the optative subjunctive; and in poetry sī or ē sī with the subjunctive sometimes expresses a wish:

"ut pereat posītum rōbīgīne tēlum (Hor. S. ii. 1, 43), may the weapon unused perish with rust.
ō sī angulus ille accēdat (id. ii. 6, 8), O if that corner might only be added!
sī nunc sē nōbīs ille aureus rāmus ostendat (Aen. vi. 187), if now that golden branch would only show itself to us!

Note 1.—The subjunctive with utī (ut) or utinam was originally deliberative, meaning *how may I*, etc. (§ 444). The subjunctive with sī or ē sī is a protasis (§ 512. a), the apodosis not being expressed.

Note 2.—The subjunctive of wish without a particle is seldom found in the imperfect or pluperfect except by sequence of tenses in Indirect Discourse (§ 555): as,—*ac venerāta Cērēs, ita culmō surgeret altō* (Hor. S. ii. 2, 124), *and Ceres worshipped* [with libations] *that so she might rise with tall stalk*. [In addressing the goddess directly the prayer would be: īta surgās.]
b. Velim and vellem, and their compounds, with a subjunctive or infinitive, are often equivalent to an optative subjunctive:—

velim tibi persuādeās (Fam. ix. 13. 2), I should like to have you believe (I should wish that you would persuade yourself).

dē Menedēmō vellem vērum fuisset, dē rēginā velim vērum sit (Att. xv. 4. 4), about Menedemus I wish it had been true; about the queen I wish it may be.
nōllem accidisset tempus (Fam. iii. 10. 2), I wish the time never had come.

māllem Cerberum metuerēs (Tusc. i. 12), I had rather have had you afraid of Cerberus (I should have preferred that you feared Cerberus).

Note. — Velim etc., in this use, are either potential subjunctives, or apodoses with the protasis omitted (§ 447. 1. n.). The thing wished may be regarded as a substantive clause used as object of the verb of wishing (§ 565. n. 1).

Deliberative Subjunctive

443. The Subjunctive was used in sentences of interrogative form, at first when the speaker wished information in regard to the will or desire of the person addressed. The mood was therefore hortatory in origin. But such questions when addressed by the speaker to himself, as if asking his own advice, become deliberative or, not infrequently, merely exclamatory. In such cases the mood often approaches the meaning of the Potential (see § 445). In these uses the subjunctive is often called Deliberative or Dubitative.

444. The Subjunctive is used in questions implying (1) doubt, indignation, or (2) an impossibility of the thing’s being done. The negative is nōn.

quid agam, iūdiceś? quō mē vertam (Verr. v. 2), what am I to do, judges? whither shall I turn?
etiamne eam salūtem (Pl. Rud. 1275), shall I greet her?
quid hōc homine faciās? quod supplicium dignum libidini ēius inveniās (Verr. ii. 40), what are you to do with this man? what fit penalty can you devise for his wantonness?
an ego nōn venīrem (Phil. ii. 3), what, should I not have come?
quid dicerem (Att. vi. 3. 9), what was I to say?
quis enim cēlāverit ignem (Ov. H. xv. 7), who could conceal the flame?

Note. — The hortatory origin of some of these questions is obvious. Thus,—quid faciāmus? = faciāmus [aliquid], quid? let us do—what? (Compare the expanded form quid vīs faciāmus? what do you wish us to do?) Once established, it was readily transferred to the past: quid faciam? what am I to do? quid facerem? what was I to do? Questions implying impossibility, however, cannot be distinguished from Apodosis (cf. § 517).

a. In many cases the question has become a mere exclamation, rejecting a suggested possibility:

mihi unquam bonōrum praesidium dēfutūrum putārem (Mil. 94), could I think that the defence of good men would ever fail me!

Note. — The indicative is sometimes used in deliberative questions: as,—quid agō, what am I to do?
Potential Subjunctive

445. Of the two principal uses of the Subjunctive in independent sentences (cf. § 436), the second, or Potential Subjunctive, is found in a variety of sentence-forms having as their common element the fact that the mood represents the action as merely conceivable or possible, not as desired (hortatory, optative) or real (indicative). Some of these uses are very old and may go back to the Indo-European parent speech, but no satisfactory connection between the Potential and the Hortatory and Optative Subjunctive has been traced. There is no single English equivalent for the Potential Subjunctive; the mood must be rendered, according to circumstances, by the auxiliaries would, should, may, might, can, could.

446. The Potential Subjunctive is used to suggest an action as possible or conceivable. The negative is non.

In this use the Present and the Perfect refer without distinction to the immediate future; the Imperfect (occasionally the Perfect) to past time; the Pluperfect (which is rare) to what might have happened.

447. The Potential Subjunctive has the following uses:—

1. In cautious or modest assertions in the first person singular of expressions of saying, thinking, or wishing (present or perfect):—

pæce tuā dixerim (Mil. 103), I would say by your leave.
haud sciam an (Lael. 51), I should incline to think.
tū velim sic existimēs (Fam. xii. 6), I should like you to think so.
certum affirmāre nōn ausim (Liv. iii. 23), I should not dare to assert as sure.

Note.—Vellem, nōllem, or māllēm expressing an unfulfilled wish in present time may be classed as independent potential subjunctive or as the apodosis of an unexpressed condition (§ 521): as — vellem adeset M. Antōniius (Phil. i. 16), I could wish Antony were here.

2. In the indefinite second person singular of verbs of saying, thinking, and the like (present or imperfect):—

crēdās nōn dē puerō scriptum sed ā puerō (Plin. Ep. iv. 7. 7), you would think that it was written not about a boy but by a boy.

crederēs victōs (Liv. ii. 43. 9), you would have thought them conquered.
reōs dicerēs (id. ii. 35. 5), you would have said they were culprits.
vidērēs susurrōs (Hor. S. ii. 8. 77), you might have seen them whispering (lit. whispers).

fretō assimilāre possīs (Ov. M. v. 6), you might compare it to a sea.

3. With other verbs, in all persons, when some word or phrase in the context implies that the action is expressed as merely possible or conceivable:—

1 The name Potential Subjunctive is not precisely descriptive, but is fixed in grammatical usage.
nil ego contulerim iūcundō sānus amīcō (Hor. S. i. 5. 44), when in my senses I should compare nothing with an interesting friend.

fortūnam citius reperiās quam retineās (Pub. Syr. 168), you may sooner find fortune than keep it.

aliquis dicat (Ter. And. 640), somebody may say.

Note.—In this use the subjunctive may be regarded as the apodosis of an undeveloped protasis. When the conditional idea becomes clearer, it finds expression in a formal protasis, and a conditional sentence is developed.

a. Forsitan, perhaps, regularly takes the Potential Subjunctive except in later Latin and in poetry, where the Indicative is also common:

forsitan quaerātis qui iste terror sit (Rosc. Am. 5), you may perhaps inquire what this alarm is.

forsitan temerē fēcerim (id. 31), perhaps I have acted rashly.

Note.—The subjunctive clause with forsit (= fors sit an) was originally an Indirect Question: it would be a chance whether, etc.

b. Fortasse, perhaps, is regularly followed by the Indicative; sometimes, however, by the Subjunctive, but chiefly in later Latin:

quaerēs fortasse (Fam. xv. 4. 13), perhaps you will ask.

Note.—Other expressions for perhaps are (1) forsan (chiefly poetical; construed with the indicative or the subjunctive, more commonly the indicative), fors (rare and poetical; construed with either the indicative or the subjunctive). Forsit (or fors sit) occurs once (Hor. S. i. 6. 49) and takes the subjunctive. Fortasse is sometimes followed by the infinitive with subject accusative in Plautus and Terence. Fortassēs (rare; construed like fortasse) and fortasse an (very rare; construed with the subjunctive) are also found.

**IMPERATIVE MOOD**

448. The Imperative is used in Commands and Entreaties:

cōnsulite vōbis, prōspicite patriae, cōnservāte vōs (Cat. iv. 3), have a care for yourselves, guard the country, preserve yourselves.
dīc, Mārce Tulli, sententiam, Marcus Tullius, state your opinion.
tē ipsum concute (Hor. S. i. 3. 35), examine yourself.
vīve, valēque (id. ii. 5. 110), farewell, bless you (live and be well)!
miserēre animī nōn digna ferentis (Aen. ii. 144), pity a soul bearing undeserved misfortune.

a. The third person of the imperative is antiquated or poetic:

ollis salūs populi suprēma lēx estō (Legg. iii. 8), the safety of the people shall be their first law.

īusta imperia suntō, eisque civēs modestē pārentō (id. iii. 6), let there be lawful authorities, and let the citizens strictly obey them.

Note.—In prose the Hortatory Subjunctive is commonly used instead (§ 439).
449. The Future Imperative is used in commands, etc., where there is a distinct reference to future time:—

1. In connection with some adverb or other expression that indicates at what time in the future the action of the imperative shall take place. So especially with a future, a future perfect indicative, or (in poetry and early Latin) with a present imperative:—

   crās petitō, dabitur (Pl. Merc. 769), ask to-morrow [and] it shall be given.
   cum valētūdīnī consulueris, tum consultō navigātiōnī (Fam. xvi. 4. 3), when you have attended to your health, then look to your sailing.
   Phyllida mitte mihi, meas est nātālis, Iollā; cum faciam vitulā prō frūgibus, ipse venīō (Ecl. iii. 76), send Phyllis to me, it is my birthday, Iollas; when I [shall] sacrifice a heifer for the harvest, come yourself.
   dīc quibus in terris, etc., et Phyllida sōlus habētō (id. iii. 107), tell in what lands, etc., and have Phyllis for yourself.

2. In general directions serving for all time, as Precepts, Statutes, and Wills:—

   is iūris civīlis cūstōs estō (Legg. iii. 8), let him (the prētor) be the guardian of civil right.
   Boreā flante, nē arātō, sēmen nē iacītō (Plin. H. N. xviii. 334), when the north wind blows, plough not nor sow your seed.

a. The verbs sciō, meminī, and habēō (in the sense of consider) regularly use the Future Imperative instead of the Present:—

   filiolō mé auctum scitō (Att. i. 2), learn that I am blessed with a little boy.
   sīc habētō, mī Tīrō (Fam. xvi. 4. 4), so understand it, my good Tīro.
   dē pallā mementō, amābō (Pl. Asin. 939), remember, dear, about the gown.

b. The Future Indicative is sometimes used for the imperative; and quīn (why not?) with the Present Indicative may have the force of a command:—

   sī quid acciderit novi, faciēs ut sciam (Fam. xiv. 8), you will let me know if anything new happens.
   quīn accipis (Ter. Haut. 832), here, take it (why not take it?).

c. Instead of the simple Imperative, cūrā ut, fac (fac ut), or velim, followed by the subjunctive (§ 565), is often used, especially in colloquial language:—

   cūrā ut Rōmae sis (Att. i. 2), take care to be at Rome.
   fac ut valetūdīnem cūrēs (Fam. xiv. 17), see that you take care of your health.
   domī adsitīs facite (Ter. Eun. 506), be at home, do.
   eum mihi velim mittās (Att. viii. 11), I wish you would send it to me.

For commands in Indirect Discourse, see § 588.
For the Imperative with the force of a Conditional Clause, see § 521. b.
Prohibition (Negative Command)

450. Prohibition is regularly expressed in classic prose (1) by neūi with the Infinitive, (2) by cavē with the Present Subjunctive, or (3) by ne with the Perfect Subjunctive: —

(1) neūi putāre (Lig. 33), do not suppose (be unwilling to suppose).
neūi impudēns esse (Fam. xii. 30. 1), don’t be shameless.
neūtēe cōgere sociōs (Verr. ii. 1. 82), do not compel the allies.

(2) cavē putēs (Att. vii. 20), don’t suppose (take care lest you suppose).
cavē ignōscās (Lig. 14), do not pardon.

(3) ne necesse habueris (Att. xvi. 2. 5), do not regard it as necessary.
ne sīs admirātus (Fam. vii. 18. 3), do not be surprised.
hōc faciō; hōc nē fecēris (Div. ii. 127), thou shalt do this, thou shalt not do that.
ne Apellae quidem dixeris (Fam. vii. 25. 2), do not tell Apella even.
ne vōs quidem mortem timueritis (Tusc. i. 98), nor must you fear death.

All three of these constructions are well established in classic prose. The first, which is the most ceremonious, occurs oftenest; the third, though not discourteous, is usually less formal and more peremptory than the others.

Note 1.—Instead of neūi the poets sometimes use other imperatives of similar meaning (cf. § 457. a): —
parce piās seclērāre manūs (Aen. iii. 42), forbear to defile your pious hands.
cētera mitte loqui (Hor. Epod. 13. 7), forbear to say the rest.
fuge quaerere (Hor. Od. i. 9. 13), do not inquire.

Note 2.—Cavē ne is sometimes used in prohibitions; also vidē ne and (colloquially) fac ne: as, — fac ne quid aliud cūrēs (Fam. xvi. 11), see that you attend to nothing else.

Note 3.—The present subjunctive with ne and the perfect with cavē are found in old writers; ne with the present is common in poetry at all periods: —
ne exspectētis (Pl. Ps. 1234), do not wait.
ne metuās (Mart. Ep. i. 70. 13), do not fear.
cave quicquam responderis (Pl. Am. 608), do not make any reply.

Note 4.—Other negatives sometimes take the place of ne: —
nihīl ignōveris (Mur. 65), grant no pardon (pardon nothing).
nec mihi illud dixeris (Fin. i. 25), and do not say this to me.

Note 5.—The regular connective, and do not, is nēve.

α. The Present Imperative with ne is used in prohibitions by early writers and the poets: —
ne timē (Pl. Curc. 520), don’t be afraid.
niminum ne crēde colōri (Ecl. ii. 17), trust not too much to complexion.
equō ne crēdite (Aen. ii. 48), trust not the horse.

β. The Future Imperative with ne is used in prohibitions in laws and formal precepts (see § 449. 2).

1 In prohibitions the subjunctive with ne is hortatory; that with cavē is an object clause (cf. §§ 450. n. 2, 565. n. 1).
INFinitive MOOD

451. The infinitive is properly a noun denoting the action of the verb abstractly. It differs, however, from other abstract nouns in the following points: (1) it often admits the distinction of tense; (2) it is modified by adverbs, not by adjectives; (3) it governs the same case as its verb; (4) it is limited to special constructions.

The Latin infinitive is the dative or locative case of such a noun and was originally used to denote purpose; but it has in many constructions developed into a substitute for a finite verb. Hence the variety of its use.

In its use as a verb, the infinitive may take a subject accusative (§ 397. e), originally the object of another verb on which the infinitive depended. Thus inbō tē valēre is literally I command you for being well (cf. substantive clauses, § 562. n.).

Infinitive as Noun

452. The infinitive, with or without a subject accusative, may be used with est and similar verbs (1) as the subject, (2) in apposition with the subject, or (3) as a predicate nominative.2

1. As Subject:

 dolēre malum est (Fin. v. 84), to suffer pain is an evil.
 bellum est sua vitia nōsse (Att. ii. 17), it's a fine thing to know one's own faults.
 praestat compōnere fluctūs (Aen. i. 135), it is better to calm the waves.

2. In apposition with the subject:

 proinde quasi iniūriam facere id dēcum esset imperiō ētī (Sall. Cat. 12), just as if this and this alone, to commit injustice, were to use power.
 [Here facere is in apposition with id.]

3. As predicate nominative:

 id est convenienser nātūrae vīvere (Fin. iv. 41), that is to live in conformity with nature. [Cf. ētī in the last example.]

Note 1.—An infinitive may be used as direct object in connection with a predicate accusative (§ 393), or as appositive with such direct object:

 istuc ipsum nōn esse cum fueris miserrimum putō (Tusc. i. 12), for I think this very thing most wretched, not to be when one has been. [Here istuc ipsum belongs to the noun nōn esse.]
 miserāri, invidēre, gestīre, laetāri, haec omnia morbōs Graeci appellant (id. iii. 7), to feel pity, envy, desire, joy,—all these things the Greeks call diseases. [Here the infinitives are in apposition with haec.]

1 The ending -ē (amāre, monēre, regere, audīre) was apparently locative, the ending -ī (amāri, monēri, regi, audīri) apparently dative; but this difference of case had no significance for Latin syntax. The general Latin restriction of the ē-infinitives to the passive was not a primitive distinction, but grew up in the course of time.

2 In these constructions the abstract idea expressed by the infinitive is represented as having some quality or belonging to some thing.
Note 2.—An Appositive or Predicate noun or adjective used with an infinitive in any of these constructions is put in the Accusative, whether the infinitive has a subject expressed or not. Thus,—nōn esse cupidum pecúnia est (Par. 51), to be free from desires (not to be desirous) is money in hand. [No Subject Accusative.]

α. The infinitive as subject is not common except with est and similar verbs. But sometimes, especially in poetry, it is used as the subject of verbs which are apparently more active in meaning:

quōs omnis eadem cupere, eadem ōdisse, eadem metuere, in unum coēgit (lūg. 31), all of whom the fact of desiring, hating, and fearing the same things has united into one.
ingenuası didicisse fidéliter artis ēmollit mōrēs (Ov. P. ii. 9. 48), faithfully to have learned liberal arts softens the manners.
posse loqui ēripitūr (Ov. M. ii. 483), the power of speech is taken away.

453. Rarely the Infinitive is used exactly like the Accusative of a noun:

beātē vívere aliī in aliō, vōs in voluptāte pōnitūs (Fin. ii. 86), a happy life different [philosophers] base on different things, you on pleasure.
quam multa . . . facimus causā amicōrum, precāri ab indignō, supplicāre, etc. (Lael. 57), how many things we do for our friends' sake, ask favors from an unworthy person, resort to entreaty, etc.
nihil explōratūm habēās, né amāre quidem aut amāri (id. 97), you have nothing assured, not even loving and being loved.

Note.—Many complementary and other constructions approach a proper accusative use of the infinitive, but their development has been different from that of the examples above. Thus,—avāritia . . . superbiam, crudēlitātem, deōs neglegere, omnia vēnālia habēre edocuit (Sall. Cat. 10), avarice taught pride, cruelty, to neglect the gods, and to hold everything at a price.

Infinitive as Apparent Subject of Impersonals

454. The Infinitive is used as the apparent Subject with many impersonal verbs and expressions:

Such are libet, licet, oportet, decent, placet, visum est, pudet, piget, necesse est, opus est, etc.:

libet mihi cōnsiderāre (Quinct. 48), it suits me to consider.
necesse est mōri (Tusc. ii. 2), it is necessary to die.
quid attinet glōriōse loquī nisi cōnsanter loquāre (Fin. ii. 89), what good does it do to talk boastfully unless you speak consistently?
neque mē vīxisse paenitet (id. 84), I do not feel sorry to have lived.
gubernāre mē taedēbat (Att. ii. 7. 4), I was tired of being pilot.

Note.—This use is a development of the Complementary Infinitive (§ 456); but the infinitives approach the subject construction and may be conveniently regarded as the subjects of the impersonals.
455. With impersonal verbs and expressions that take the Infinitive as an apparent subject, the personal subject of the action may be expressed —

1. By a Dative, depending on the verb or verbal phrase: —
rogant ut id sibi facere liceat (B. G. i. 7), they ask that it be allowed them to do this.
nôn lubet enim mihi dēplōrāre vitam (Cat. M. 84), for it does not please me to lament my life.
visum est mihi dē senectūte aliquid cōnscribere (id. 1), it seemed good to me to write something about old age.
quid est tam secundum nātūram quam senibus ēmori (id. 71), what is so much in accordance with nature as for old men to die?
exstingui hominī suō tempore optābile est (id. 85), for a man to die at the appointed time is desirable.

2. By an Accusative expressed as the subject of the infinitive or the object of the impersonal: —
si liceat vivere eum quem Sex. Naevius nôn volt (Quinct. 94), if it is allowed a man to live against the will of Sextus Naevius.
nônnine oportuit praescisse mē ante (Ter. And. 239), ought I not to have known beforehand?
ōrātōrem Īrāscī minimē decet (Tusc. iv. 54), it is particularly unbecoming for an orator to lose his temper.
pudēret mē dicere (N. D. i. 109), I should be ashamed to say.
cōnsilia ineunt quōrum eōs in vestīgiō paenitēre necesse est (B. G. iv. 5), they form plans for which they must at once be sorry.

Note. — Libet, placet, and visum est take the dative only; oportet, pudet, piget, and generally decet, the accusative only; liceat and necesse est take either case.

a. A predicate noun or adjective is commonly in the Accusative; but with licet regularly, and with other verbs occasionally, the Dative is used: —
expedit bonās esse vōbis (Ter. Haut. 388), it is for your advantage to be good.
licuit esse ōtiōsō Themistocli (Tusc. i. 33), Themistocles might have been inactive (it was allowed to Themistocles to be inactive).
mihi neglegenti esse nōn licet (Att. i. 17. 6), I must not be negligent. [But also neglegentem.]
cūr his esse liberōs nōn licet (Flacc. 71), why is it not allowed these men to be free?
nōn est omnibus stantibus necesse dicere (Marc. 33), it is not necessary for all to speak standing.

Note. — When the subject is not expressed, as being indefinite (one, anybody), a predicate noun or adjective is regularly in the accusative (cf. § 452. 3. n. 2): as, — vel pāce vel bello clārum fieri licet (Sall. Cat. 3), one can become illustrious either in peace or in war.
Complementary Infinitive

456. Verbs which imply another action of the same subject to complete their meaning take the Infinitive without a subject accusative.

Such are verbs denoting to be able, dare, undertake, remember, forget, be accustomed, begin, continue, cease, hesitate, learn, know how, fear, and the like:

hoc quō dicere (Cat. M. 32), this I can say.
mittō quaerere (Rosc. Am. 53), I omit to ask.
vereor laudāre praesentem (N. D. i. 58), I fear to praise a man to his face.
ōrō ut mātūres venire (Att. iv. 1), I beg you will make haste to come.
obliviscī nōn possum quae volō (Fin. ii. 104), I cannot forget that which I wish.
dēsine id mē docēre (Tusc. ii. 29), cease to teach me that.
dicere solēbat, he used to say.
audeō dicere, I venture to say.
loquī posse coepī, I began to be able to speak.

Note.—The peculiarity of the Complementary Infinitive construction is that no Subject Accusative is in general admissible or conceivable. But some infinitives usually regarded as objects can hardly be distinguished from this construction when they have no subject expressed. Thus volō dicere and volō mē dicere mean the same thing, I wish to speak, but the latter is object-infinitive, while the former is not apparently different in origin and construction from quō dicere (complementary infinitive), and again volō eum dicere, I wish him to speak, is essentially different from either (cf. § 563. b).

457. Many verbs take either a Subjunctive Clause or a Complementary Infinitive, without difference of meaning.

Such are verbs signifying willingness, necessity, propriety, resolve, command, prohibition, effort, and the like (cf. § 563):—

dēcernere optābat (Q. C. iii. 11. 1), he was eager to decide.
optāvit ut tollerētur (Off. iii. 94), he was eager to be taken up.
oppūgnāre contendit (B. G. v. 21), he strove to take by storm.
contendit ut caperet (id. v. 8), he strove to take.
bellum gerēre cōnstituit (id. iv. 6), he decided to carry on war.
cōnstitueram ut manērem (Att. xvi. 10. 1), I had decided to remain.

Note 1.—For the infinitive with subject accusative used with some of these verbs instead of a complementar infinitive, see § 563.

Note 2.—Some verbs of these classes never take the subjunctive, but are identical in meaning with others which do:—
eōs quōs tūtāri dēbent dēserunt (Off. i. 28), they forsake those whom they ought to protect.
avēō pūgnāre (Att. ii. 18. 3), I'm anxious to fight.
a. In poetry and later writers many verbs may have the infinitive, after the analogy of verbs of more literal meaning that take it in prose: —

furit tē reperīre (Hor. Od. i. 15. 27), he rages to find thee. [A forcible way of saying cupid (§§ 457, 563, b).]
saevit exstinguere nōmen (Ov. M. i. 200), he rages to blot out the name.
fuge quaerere (Hor. Od. i. 9. 13), forbear to ask (cf. § 450. n. 1).
parce piās scelerāre manūs (Aen. iii. 42), forbear to defile your pious hands.

458. A Predicate Noun or Adjective after a complementary infinitive takes the case of the subject of the main verb: —
fierique studebām ēius prudentiā doctōr (Lael. 1), I was eager to become more wise through his wisdom.
sciō quam soleās esse occupātus (Fam. xvi. 21. 7), I know how busy you usually are (are wont to be).
brevīs esse labōrō, obscurus fīō (Hor. A. P. 25), I struggle to be brief, I become obscure.

Infinitive with Subject Accusative

459. The Infinitive with Subject Accusative is used with verbs and other expressions of knowing, thinking, telling, and perceiving (Indirect Discourse, § 579) : —
dicit montem ab hostibus tenēri (B. G. i. 22), he says that the hill is held by the enemy. [Direct: mōns ab hostibus tenētur.]

Infinitive of Purpose

460. In a few cases the Infinitive retains its original meaning of Purpose.

a. The infinitive is used in isolated passages instead of a subjunctive clause after habeō, dō, ministrō : —
tantum habeō pollicēri (Fam. i. 5 A. 3), so much I have to promise. [Here the more formal construction would be quod pollicēar.]
ut Iovi bibere ministrāret (Tusc. i. 65), to serve Jove with wine (to drink). meridiē bibere datō (Cato R. R. 89), give (to) drink at noonday.

b. Parātus, suētus, and their compounds, and a few other participles (used as adjectives), take the infinitive like the verbs from which they come: —
id quod parātī sunt facere (Quint. 8), that which they are ready to do.
adsuēfacti superārī (B. G. vi. 24), used to being conquered.
currū succēdere suētī (Aen. iii. 541), used to being harnessed to the chariot.
cōpiās bellāre cōnsuētās (B. Afr. 73), forces accustomed to fighting.
Note.—In prose these words more commonly take the Gerund or Gerundive construction (§ 503 ff.) either in the genitive, the dative, or the accusative with ad:—
isuētus nāvigandī (B. G. v. 6), unused to making voyages.
alēdis liberis suētī (Tac. Ann. xiv. 27), accustomed to supporting children.
corpora insuētā ad onera portandā (B. C. i. 78), bodies unused to carry burdens.

c. The poets and early writers often use the infinitive to express purpose when there is no analogy with any prose construction:—
fillus intrō it vitēre quid agat (Ter. Hec. 345), your son has gone in to see what he is doing. [In prose: the supine visum.]
nōn ferrō Libyca populae Penātis vēnimus (Aen. i. 527), we have not come
to lay waste with the sword the Libyan homes.
lōricam dōnat habēre virō (id. v. 202), he gives the hero a breastplate to wear.
[In prose: habendam.]
Note.—So rarely in prose writers of the classic period.
For the Infinitive used instead of a Substantive Clause of Purpose, see § 457.
For tempus est abīre, see § 504. n. 2.

Peculiar Infinitives

461. Many Adjectives take the Infinitive in poetry, following a Greek idiom:—
dūrus compōnerē versūs (Hor. S. i. 4. 8), harsh in composing verse.
cantāri dignus (Ecl. v. 54), worthy to be sung. [In prose: qui cantētur.]
fortis trāctāre serpētis (Hor. Od. i. 37. 26), brave to handle serpents.
cantāre perittē (Ecl. x. 32), skilled in song.
faciēs aurem praebēre (Prop. iii. 14. 15), ready to lend an ear.
nescia vincī pectora (Aen. xii. 527), hearts not knowing how to yield.
tē vidēre aegrotē (Plaut. Trin. 75), sick of seeing you.

a. Rarely in poetry the infinitive is used to express result:—
fingit equum docilem magister īre viam quā mōnstret eques (Hor. Ep. i. 2. 64),
the trainer makes the horse gentle so as to go in the road the rider points out.
hōc levāre ... pauperem labōribus vocātus audit (Hor. Od. ii. 18. 38), he,
when called, hears, so as to relieve the poor man of his troubles.

Note.—These poetic constructions were originally regular and belong to the Infinitive as a noun in the Dative or Locative case (§ 451). They had been supplanted, however, by other more formal constructions, and were afterwards restored in part through Greek influence.

b. The infinitive occasionally occurs as a pure noun limited by a demonstrative, a possessive, or some other adjective:—
hōc nōn dolēre (Fin. ii. 18), this freedom from pain. [Cf. tōtum hoc beātē vivere (Tusc. v. 33), this whole matter of the happy life.]
nōstrum vivere (Pers. i. 9), our life (to live).
scriē tuum (id. i. 27), your knowledge (to know).
Exclamatory Infinitive

462. The Infinitive, with Subject Accusative,\(^1\) may be used in Exclamations (cf. § 397. \(d\)):

\[\text{tē in tantās aerumnās propter mē incidisse (Fam. xiv. 1), alas, that you should have fallen into such grief for me!} \]

\[\text{mēne inceptō dēsistere victam (Aen. i. 37), what! I beaten desist from my purpose?} \]

**Note 1.** — The interrogative particle -ne is often attached to the emphatic word (as in the second example).

**Note 2.** — The Present and the Perfect Infinitive are used in this construction with their ordinary distinction of time (§ 486).

\(a.\) A subjunctive clause, with or without ut, is often used elliptically in exclamatory questions. The question may be introduced by the interrogative -ne:

\[\text{quamquam quid loquor? tē ut ālla rēs frangat (Cat. i. 22), yet why do I speak? [the idea] that anything should bend you!} \]
\[\text{egone ut tē interpellem (Tusc. ii. 42), what, I interrupt you?} \]
\[\text{ego tibi īrāscerem (Q. Fr. i. 3), I angry with you?} \]

**Note.** — The Infinitive in exclamations usually refers to something actually occurring; the Subjunctive, to something contemplated.

Historical Infinitive

463. The Infinitive is often used for the Imperfect Indicative in narration, and takes a subject in the Nominative:

\[\text{tum Catilīna pollicēri novās tabulās (Sall. Cat. 21), then Catiline promised abolition of debts (clean ledgers).} \]
\[\text{ego instāre ut mihi respondēret (Verr. ii. 188), I kept urging him to answer me.} \]
\[\text{pars cēdere, allī īnsequi; neque signa neque ōrdinēs observāre; ubi quemque periculum cēperat, ibi resistere ac prōpulsāre; arma, tēla, equi, viri, hostēs atque civēs permixtī; nihil cōnsiliō neque imperiō agī; fors omnia regere (Iug. 51), a part give way, others press on; they hold neither to standards nor ranks; where danger overtook them, there each would stand and fight; arms, weapons, horses, men, foe and friend, mingled in confusion; nothing went by counsel or command; chance ruled all.} \]

**Note.** — This construction is not strictly historical, but rather descriptive, and is never used to state a mere historical fact. It is rarely found in subordinate clauses. Though occurring in most of the writers of all periods, it is most frequent in the historians Sallust, Livy, Tacitus. It does not occur in Suetonius.

\(^1\) This construction is elliptical; that is, the thought is quoted in Indirect Discourse, though no verb of *saying* etc. is expressed or even, perhaps, implied (compare the French *dire que*). Passages like hancine ego ad rem nātam miseram mē memorābō? (Plaut. Rud. 188) point to the origin of the construction.
TENSES

464. The number of possible Tenses is very great. For in each of the three times, Present, Past, and Future, an action may be represented as going on, completed, or beginning; as habitual or isolated; as defined in time or indefinite (aoristic); as determined with reference to the time of the speaker, or as not itself so determined but as relative to some time which is determined; and the past and future times may be near or remote. Thus a scheme of thirty or more tenses might be devised.

But, in the development of forms, which always takes place gradually, no language finds occasion for more than a small part of these. The most obvious distinctions, according to our habits of thought, appear in the following scheme:—

1. Definite (fixing the time of the action)  
2. Indefinite

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INCOMPLETE</th>
<th>COMPLETE</th>
<th>NARRATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present:</td>
<td>a. I am writing.</td>
<td>d. I have written.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past:</td>
<td>b. I was writing.</td>
<td>e. I had written.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future:</td>
<td>c. I shall be writing.</td>
<td>f. I shall have written.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Most languages disregard some of these distinctions, and some make other distinctions not here given. The Indo-European parent speech had a Present tense to express a and g, a Perfect to express d, an Aorist to express h, a Future to express c and i, and an Imperfect to express b. The Latin, however, confounded the Perfect and Aorist in a single form (the Perfect scripsi), thus losing all distinction of form between d and h, and probably in a great degree the distinction of meaning. The nature of this confusion may be seen by comparing dixi, dicavi, and didici (all Perfects derived from the same root, dic), with ἔδειξα, Skr. adiksham, δέδειξα, Skr. dideça. Latin also developed two new forms, those for e (scripseram) and f (scripserō), and thus possessed six tenses, as seen in § 154. c.

The lines between these six tenses in Latin are not hard and fast, nor are they precisely the same that we draw in English. Thus in many verbs the form corresponding to I have written (d) is used for those corresponding to I am writing (a) and I write (g) in a slightly different sense, and the form corresponding to I had written (e) is used in like manner for that corresponding to I was writing (b). Again, the Latin often uses the form for I shall have written (f) instead of that for I shall write (i). Thus, nōvi, I have learned, is used for I know; cōnstiterat, he had taken his position, for he stood; cōgnōverō, I shall have learned, for I shall be aware. In general a writer may take his own point of view.

TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE

INCOMPLETE ACTION

PRESENT TENSE

465. The Present Tense denotes an action or state (1) as now taking place or existing, and so (2) as incomplete in present time, or (3) as indefinite, referring to no particular time, but denoting a general truth:—
senátus haec intellegit, cónsul videt, híc tamen vivit (Cat. i. 2), the senate
knows this, the consul sees it, yet this man lives.
tibi concédó meas sédís (Div. i. 104), I give you my seat (an offer which may
or may not be accepted).
exspectó quid velís (Ter. And. 34), I await your pleasure (what you wish).
tú àctionem instituis, ille aciem instruit (Mur. 22), you arrange a case, he
arrays an army. [The present is here used of regular employment.]
minóra di neglegunt (N. D. iii. 86), the gods disregard trifles. [General
truth.]
obsequeúm amícós, vérítas odium parit (Ter. And. 68), flattery gains friends,
truth hatred. [General truth.]

Note.—The present of a general truth is sometimes called the Gnomic Present.

\(\alpha\). The present is regularly used in quoting writers whose works are extant:

Epicúrus vērō ea dicit (Tusc. ii. 17), but Epicurus says such things.
apúd illum Ulixēs lāmentātur in volnere (id. ii. 49), in him (Sophocles)
Ulysses laments over his wound.
Polyphēnum Homērus cum ariete colloquientem facit (id. v. 115), Hōmer
brings in (makes) Polyphemus talking with his ram.

Present with `iam diū` etc.

466. The Present with expressions of duration of time (especially `iam diū`, `iam dūdum`) denotes an action continuing in the present, but begun in the past (cf. § 471. \(\beta\)).

In this use the present is commonly to be rendered by the perfect in English:

iam diū ignórō quid agás (Fam. vii. 9), for a long time I have not known what
you were doing.
tē iam dūdum hortor (Cat. i. 12), I have long been urging you.
patimur multōs iam annōs (Verr. v. 126), we suffer now these many years.
[The Latin perfect would imply that we no longer suffer.]
anni sunt octō cum ista causa versātur (cf. Clu. 82), it is now eight years
that this case has been in hand.
annum iam audis Cratippum (Off. i. 1), for a year you have been a hearer of
Cratippus.
adhúc Plancius mē retinet (Fam. xiv. 1. 3), so far Plancius has kept me here.

Note 1.—The difference in the two idioms is that the English states the beginning
and leaves the continuance to be inferred, while the Latin states the continuance and
leaves the beginning to be inferred. Compare he has long suffered (and still suffers)
with he still suffers (and has suffered long).

Note 2.—Similarly the Present Imperative with `iam dūdum` indicates that the
action commanded ought to have been done or was wished for long ago (cf. the Per-
fect Imperative in Greek): as,—`iam dūdum sūmite poenās` (Aen. ii. 103), exact the
penalty long delayed.
Conative Present

467. The Present sometimes denotes an action attempted or begun in present time, but never completed at all (Conative Present, cf. § 471. c):

iam iamque manū tenet (Aen. ii. 530), and now, even now, he attempts to grasp him.

dēnsōs fertur in hostīs (id. ii. 511), he starts to rush into the thickest of the foe.
dēcernō quīnquāginta diērum supplicationēs (Phil. xiv. 29), I move for fifty days' thanksgiving. [Cf. senātus dēcrēvit, the senate ordained.]

Present for Future

468. The Present, especially in colloquial language and poetry, is often used for the Future:

imōsne sessum (De Or. iii. 17), shall we take a seat? (are we going to sit?)
hodiē uxōrem dūcis (Ter. And. 321), are you to be married to-day?
quad sī fīt, pereō funditus (id. 244), if this happens, I am utterly undone.
cequid mē adivās (Clu. 71), won't you give me a little help?
in īūs vocō tē. nōn eō. nōn is (Pl. Asin. 480), I summon you to the court. I won't go. You won't go.

Note.—Eō and its compounds are especially frequent in this use (cf. where are you going to-morrow? and the Greek ἐὰν in a future sense). Verbs of necessity, possibility, wish, and the like (as possum, volō, etc.) also have reference to the future.

For other uses of the Present in a future sense, see under Conditions (§ 516. a. n.), antequam and priusquam (§ 551. c), dum (§ 553. n. 2), and § 444. a. n.

Historical Present

469. The Present in lively narrative is often used for the Historical Perfect:

affertur nūntius Syrācūsās; curritur ad praetōrium; Cleomenēs in públicō esse nōn audent; inclūdit sē domī (Verr. v. 92), the news is brought to Syracuse; they run to headquarters; Cleomenes does not venture to be abroad; he shuts himself up at home.

Note.—This usage, common in all languages, comes from imagining past events as going on before our eyes (repraesentātiō, § 583. b. n.).

For the Present Indicative with dum, while, see § 556.

α. The present may be used for the perfect in a summary enumeration of past events (Annalistic Present):

Rōma interim crēscit Albae ruīnīs: duplicātur civium numerus; Caelius addītur urbi mōns (Liv. i. 30), Rome meanwhile grows as a result of the fall of Alba: the number of citizens is doubled; the Caelian hill is added to the town.
470. The Imperfect denotes an action or a state as continued or repeated in past time: —

hunc audībant anteā (Manil. 13), they used to hear of him before.
[Σοκράτης] ἵνα κἂν ἦν άκτις δισερυτο (Tusc. i. 72), Socrates thought so (habitually), and so he spoke (then).

prūdēns esse putābātur (Lael. 6), he was (generally) thought wise. [The perfect would refer to some particular case, and not to a state of things.]
iamque rubescēbat Aurōra (Aen. iii. 521), and now the dawn was blushing.
āra vetus stābat (Ov. M. vi. 326), an old altar stood there.

Note.—The Imperfect is a descriptive tense and denotes an action conceived as in progress or a state of things as actually observed. Hence in many verbs it does not differ in meaning from the Perfect. Thus rēx erat and rēx fuit may often be used indifferently; but the former describes the condition while the latter only states it. The English is less exact in distinguishing these two modes of statement. Hence the Latin Imperfect is often translated by the English Preterite: —

Haedui graviter ferēbant, neque lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittere audēbant (B. G. v. 6), the Haedui were displeased, and did not dare to send envoys to Caesar.
[Here the Imperfects describe the state of things.] But,—
id tūlit factum graviter Indutiōmārus (id. v. 4), Indutiomarus was displeased at this action. [Here the Perfect merely states the fact.]
aedificia vīcōsque habēbant (id. iv. 4), they had buildings and villages.

471. The Imperfect represents a present tense transferred to past time. Hence all the meanings which the Present has derived from the continuance of the action belong also to the Imperfect in reference to past time.

a. The Imperfect is used in descriptions: —
erant omnīnō itinera duo ... mōnēs altissimus impendēbat (B. G. i. 6), there were in all two ways ... a very high mountain overhung.

b. With iam diū, iam dūdum, and other expressions of duration of time, the Imperfect denotes an action continuing in the past but begun at some previous time (cf. § 466).
In this construction the Imperfect is rendered by the English Pluperfect: —
im dūdum flēbam (Ov. M. iii. 656), I had been weeping for a long time.
cōpiās quās diū comparābant (Fam. xi. 13. 5), the forces which they had long been getting ready.

c. The Imperfect sometimes denotes an action as begun (Inceptive Imperfect), or as attempted or only intended (Conative Imperfect; cf. § 467): —
in exsilium eiciēbam quem iam ingressum esse in bellum vidēbam (Cat. ii. 14), was I trying to send into exile one who I saw had already gone into war?

hunc igitur diem sibi prōpōnēns Milō, cruentīs manibus ad illa augusta centuriārum auspicia veniēbat (Mil. 43), was Milo coming (i.e. was it likely that he would come), etc.?

si licitum esset veniēbant (Verr. v. 129), they were coming if it had been allowed (they were on the point of coming, and would have done so if, etc.).

**Note.** — To this head may be referred the imperfect with iam, denoting the beginning of an action or state: as, — iamque arva tenēbant ultima (Aen. vi. 477), and now they were just getting to the farthest fields.

d. The Imperfect is sometimes used to express a surprise at the present discovery of a fact already existing:

ō tū quoque aderās (Ter. Ph. 558), oh, you are here too!

ehem, tūn hic erās, mī Phaedriā (Ter. Eun. 86), what! you here, Phaedria? a miser! quantā labōrābās Charybdi (Hor. Od. i. 27. 19), unhappy boy, what a whirlpool you are struggling in [and I never knew it]!

e. The Imperfect is often used in dialogue by the comic poets where later writers would employ the Perfect:

ad amicum Calliclem quo rem aibat mandāsse hic suam (Pl. Trin. 956), to his friend Callicles, to whom, he said, he had intrusted his property.

praesāgībat mī animus frūstrā mē ire quem exībam domō (Pl. Aul. 178), my mind mistrusted when I went from home that I went in vain.

**Note.** — So, in conversation the imperfect of verbs of saying (cf. as I was a-saying) is common in classic prose:

at medici quoque, ita enim diēbās, saepe falluntur (N. D. iii. 15), but physicians also, — for that is what you were saying just now, — are often mistaken.

haec mihi fērē in mentem veniēbant (id. ii. 67, 168), this is about what occurred to me, etc. [In a straightforward narration this would be vēnērunt.]

f. The Imperfect with negative words often has the force of the English auxiliary could or would:

itaque (Dāmoclēs) nec pulchrōs illōs ministrātōrēs aspiciēbat (Tusc. v. 62), therefore he could not look upon those beautiful slaves. [In this case did not would not express the idea of continued prevention of enjoyment by the overhanging sword.]

nec enim dum eram vōbiscum animum meum vidēbatis (Cat. M. 79), for, you know, while I was with you, you could not see my soul. [Here the Perfect would refer only to one moment.]

Lentulus satis erat fortis ōratōr, sed cogitandi nōn ferēbat labōrem (Brut. 268), Lentulus was bold enough as an orator, but could not endure the exertion of thinking hard.

For the Epistolary Imperfect, see § 479; for the Imperfect Indicative in apodosis contrary to fact, see § 517. b, c.
FUTURE TENSE

472. The Future denotes an action or state that will occur hereafter.

a. The Future may have the force of an Imperative (§ 449. b).

b. The Future is often required in a subordinate clause in Latin where in English futurity is sufficiently expressed by the main clause:

cum aderit vidēbit, when he is there he will see (cf. § 547).
sānābimur si volēmus (Tusc. iii. 13), we shall be healed if we wish (cf. § 516. a).

Note. — But the Present is common in future protases (§ 516. a. n.).

COMPLETED ACTION

PERFECT TENSE

Perfect Definite and Historical Perfect

473. The Perfect denotes an action either as now completed (Perfect Definite), or as having taken place at some undefined point of past time (Historical or Aoristic Perfect).

The Perfect Definite corresponds in general to the English Perfect with have; the Historical Perfect to the English Preterite (or Past):

(1) ut ego fēcī, qui Graecās litterās senex didici (Cat. M. 26), as I have done,
who have learned Greek in my old age.
diūturnī silenti finem hodiernus diēs attulit (Marc. 1), this day has put an
end to my long-continued silence.

(2) tantum bellum extrēmā hieme apparāvit, ineunte vēre suscēpit, medīā
aestāte cōnfēcit (Manil. 35), so great a war he made ready for at the end of winter, undertook in early spring, and finished by midsummer.

Note. — The distinction between these two uses is represented by two forms in most other Indo-European languages, but was almost if not wholly lost to the minds of the Romans. It must be noticed, however, on account of the marked distinction in English and also because of certain differences in the sequence of tenses.

a. The Indefinite Present, denoting a customary action or a general truth (§ 465), often has the Perfect in a subordinate clause referring to time antecedent to that of the main clause:

qui in compedibus corporis semper fuērunt, etiam cum solūtī sunt tardius
ingrediuntur (Tusc. i. 75), they who have always been in the fetters of the
body, even when released move more slowly.
simul ac mihi collībitum est, praestō est imāgō (N. D. i. 108), as soon as I
have taken a fancy, the image is before my eyes.
§§ 473-476]  

PERFECT TENSE  

299

haec morte effugiuntur, etiam si nōn évēnerunt, tamen quia possunt évēnire (Tusc. i. 86), these things are escaped by death even if they have not [yet] happened, because they still may happen.

Note. — This use of the perfect is especially common in the protasis of General Conditions in present time (§ 518. b).

474. The Perfect is sometimes used emphatically to denote that a thing or condition of things that once existed no longer exists:

fuit ista quondam in hac rē pūblicā virtūs (Cat. i. 3), there was once such virtue in this commonwealth.

habuit, nōn habet (Tusc. i. 87), he had, he has no longer.

filium habeō... immo habui; nunc habeam necne incertumst (Ter. Haut. 93), I have a son, no, I had one; whether I have now or not is uncertain.

fuimus Trōes, fuit Îlium (Aen. ii. 325), we have ceased to be Trojans, Troy is no more.

Special Uses of the Perfect

475. The Perfect is sometimes used of a general truth, especially with negatives (Gnomic Perfect): —

quī studet contingere mētam multa tuit tēctique (Hor. A. P. 412), he who aims to reach the goal, first bears and does many things.

nōn aeris acervus et aurī dēdūxit corpore febris (id. Ep. i. 2. 47), the pile of brass and gold removes not fever from the frame.

Note. — The gnomic perfect strictly refers to past time; but its use implies that something which never did happen in any known case never does happen, and never will (cf. the English "Faint heart never won fair lady"); or, without a negative, that what has once happened will always happen under similar circumstances.

a. The Perfect is often used in expressions containing or implying a negation, where in affirmation the Imperfect would be preferred: —

dīcēbat melius quam scripsit Hortēnsius (Or. 132), Hortēnsius spoke better than he wrote. [Here the negative is implied in the comparison: compare the use of quīsquam, īllus, etc. (§§ 311, 312), and the French ne after comparatives and superlatives.]

476. The completed tenses of some verbs are equivalent to the incomplete tenses of verbs of kindred meaning.

Such are the preteritive verbs ōdī, I hate; memīnī, I remember; nōvī, I know; cōnsuevī, I am accustomed,1 with others used preteritively, as vēnerat (= aderat, he was at hand, etc.), cōnstitērunt, they stand firm (have taken their stand), and many inceptives (see § 263. 1): —

1 Cf. dētestor, reminīscor, sciō, soleō.
qui diēs aestūs maximōs efficere cōnsuēvit (B. G. iv. 29), which day generally makes the highest tides (is accustomed to make).

cūius splendor obsolēvit (Quinct. 59), whose splendor is now all faded.

Note. — Many other verbs are occasionally so used: as, — dum oculōs certāmen āverterat (Liv. xxxii. 24), while the contest had turned their eyes (kept them turned).

[Here āverterat = tenēbat.]

**PLUPERFECT TENSE**

477. The Pluperfect is used (1) to denote an action or state completed in past time; or (2) sometimes to denote an action in indefinite time, but prior to some past time referred to:

(1) loći nātūra erat haec, quem locum nostrī castrīs délēgerant (B. G. ii. 18), this was the nature of the ground which our men had chosen for a camp.

Viridovīx summam imperī tenēbat ēārum omnium civitātum quae défēce-raunt (id. iii. 17), Viridovīx held the chief command of all those tribes which had revolted.

(2) neque vérō cum aliquid mandāverat cōnfectum putābat (Cat. iii. 16), but when he had given a thing in charge he did not look on it as done.

quae si quandō adepta est id quod el fuerat concupītum, tum fert alacrītātem (Tusc. iv. 15), if it (desire) ever has gained what it had [previously] desired, then it produces joy.

For the Epistolary Pluperfect, see § 479.

**FUTURE PERFECT TENSE**

478. The Future Perfect denotes an action as completed in the future:

ut sēmentem fēceris, ita metēs (De Or. ii. 261), as you sow (shall have sown), so shall you reap.

carmina tum meliōs, cum vēnerit ipse, canēmus (Ecl. ix. 67), then shall we sing our songs better, when he himself has come (shall have come).

sī illius insidiae clāriōres hāc lūce fuerint, tum dēnique obsecrābō (Mil. 6), when the plots of that man have been shown to be as clear as daylight, then, and not till then, shall I conjure you.

ego certē meum officium praestiterō (B. G. iv. 25), I at least shall have done my duty (i.e. when the time comes to reckon up the matter, I shall be found to have done it, whatever the event).

Note. — Latin is far more exact than English in distinguishing between mere future action and action completed in the future. Hence the Future Perfect is much commoner in Latin than in English. It may even be used instead of the Future, from the fondness of the Romans for representing an action as completed: —

quid inventum sit paulō post viderō (Acad. ii. 76), what has been found out I shall see presently.

quī Antōnium oppresserit bellum taeterrīnum cōnsectīrit (Fam. x. 19), whoever crushes (shall have crushed) Antony will finish (will have finished) a most loathsome war.
EPISTOLARY TENSES

479. In Letters, the Perfect Historical or the Imperfect may be used for the present, and the Pluperfect for any past tense, as if the letter were dated at the time it is supposed to be received:—

neque tamen, haec cum scribēbam, eram nescius quantis oneribus premerēre (Fam. v. 12. 2), nor while I write this am I ignorant under what burdens you are weighed down.

ad tuās omnis [epistulās] rescripseram prīdiē (Att. ix. 10. 1), I answered all your letters yesterday.

cum quod scriberem ad tē nihil habērem, tamen hās dēdī litterās (Att. ix. 16),

though I have nothing to write to you, still I write this letter.

Note.—In this use these tenses are called the Epistolary Perfect, Imperfect, and Pluperfect. The epistolary tenses are not employed with any uniformity, but only when attention is particularly directed to the time of writing (so especially scribēbam, dabam, etc.).

TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE

480. The tenses of the Subjunctive in Independent Clauses denote time in relation to the time of the speaker.

The Present always refers to future (or indefinite) time, the Imperfect to either past or present, the Perfect to either future or past, the Pluperfect always to past.

481. The tenses of the Subjunctive in Dependent Clauses were habitually used in certain fixed connections with the tenses of the main verb.

These connections were determined by the time of the main verb and the time of the dependent verb together. They are known, collectively, as the Sequence of Tenses.

Note.—The so-called Sequence of Tenses is not a mechanical law. Each tense of the subjunctive in dependent clauses (as in independent) originally denoted its own time in relation to the time of the speaker, though less definitely than the corresponding tenses of the indicative. Gradually, however, as the complex sentence was more strongly felt as a unit, certain types in which the tenses of the dependent clause seemed to accord with those of the main clause were almost unconsciously regarded as regular, and others, in which there was no such agreement, as exceptional. Thus a pretty definite system of correspondences grew up, which is codified in the rules for the Sequence of Tenses. These, however, are by no means rigid. They do not apply with equal stringency to all dependent constructions, and they were frequently disregarded, not only when their strict observance would have obscured the sense, but for the sake of emphasis and variety, or merely from carelessness.
Sequence of Tenses

482. The tenses of the Subjunctive in Dependent Clauses follow special rules for the Sequence of Tenses.

With reference to these rules all tenses when used in independent clauses are divided into two classes,—Primary and Secondary.

1. PRIMARY. — The Primary Tenses include all forms that express present or future time. These are the Present, Future, and Future Perfect Indicative, the Present and Perfect Subjunctive, and the Present and Future Imperative.

2. SECONDARY. — The Secondary Tenses include all forms that refer to past time. These are the Imperfect, Perfect, and Pluperfect Indicative, the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive, and the Historical Infinitive.

Note. — To these may be added certain forms less commonly used in independent clauses:—(1) Primary: Present Infinitive in Exclamations; (2) Secondary: Perfect Infinitive in Exclamations (see §§ 462, 485. a. n.).

The Perfect Definite is sometimes treated as primary (see § 485. a).

For the Historical Present, see § 485. e; for the Imperfect Subjunctive in Apodosis, see § 485. h.

483. The following is the general rule for the Sequence of Tenses:—

In complex sentences a Primary tense in the main clause is followed by the Present or Perfect in the dependent clause, and a Secondary tense by the Imperfect or Pluperfect:—

Primary Tenses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rogō,</td>
<td>I ask, am asking</td>
<td>quid faciās, what you are doing.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rogābō,</td>
<td>I shall ask</td>
<td>quid fēceris, what you did, were doing, have done, have been doing.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rogāvī (sometimes), I have asked</td>
<td>quid factūrus sis, what you will do.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rogāvērō,</td>
<td>I shall have asked</td>
<td>ut nōs moneat, to warn us.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scribit,</td>
<td>he writes</td>
<td>ut nōs moneās, to warn us.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scribet,</td>
<td>he will write</td>
<td>quasi oblitus sit, as if he had forgotten.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scribe (scribitō),</td>
<td>write</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scribit,</td>
<td>he writes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
§§ 483-485]

SEQUENCE OF TENSES

Secondary Tenses

rogābam,  
rogāvi,  
rogāveram,  
scripsit,  
scripsit,  

\[ I \text{ asked, was asking } \quad \text{quid facerēs, what you were doing.} \]
\[ I \text{ asked, have asked } \quad \text{quid fēcissēs, what you had done, had been doing.} \]
\[ I \text{ had asked } \quad \text{quid factūrus essēs, what you would do.} \]
\[ \text{he wrote } \quad \text{ut nōs monēret, to warn us.} \]
\[ \text{he wrote } \quad \text{quasi oblītus esset, as if he had forgotten.} \]

484. In applying the rule for the Sequence of Tenses, observe—

1. Whether the main verb is (a) primary or (b) secondary.

2. Whether the dependent verb is to denote completed action (i.e. past with reference to the main verb) or incomplete action (i.e. present or future with reference to the main verb). Then—

\( a. \) If the leading verb is primary, the dependent verb must be in the Present if it denotes incomplete action, in the Perfect if it denotes completed action.

\( b. \) If the leading verb is secondary, the dependent verb must be in the Imperfect if it denotes incomplete action, in the Pluperfect if it denotes completed action:

\( 1. \) He writes [primary] to warn [incomplete action] us, scribit ut nōs moneat. I ask [primary] what you were doing [now past], rogō quid fēcēris.

\( 2. \) He wrote [secondary] to warn [incomplete] us, scripsit ut nōs monēret. I asked [secondary] what you were doing [incomplete], rogāvi quid facerēs.

\( c. \) Notice that the Future Perfect denotes action completed (at the time referred to), and hence is represented in the Subjunctive by the Perfect or Pluperfect:

\( He \ shows \ that \ if \ they \ come \ (shall \ have \ come), \ many \ will \ perish, \ dēmōnstrat, \ sī vēnerint, \ multōs \ interītūrōs. \)

\( He \ showed \ that \ if \ they \ should \ come \ (should \ have \ come), \ many \ would \ perish, \ dēmōnstrāvit, \ sī vēnissent, \ multōs \ interītūrōs. \)

485. In the Sequence of Tenses the following special points are to be noted:

\( a. \) The Perfect Indicative is ordinarily a secondary tense, but allows the primary sequence when the present time is clearly in the writer's mind:

\[ ut \ satis \ esset \ præsidī \ prōvisum \ est \ (Cat. \ ii. \ 26), \ provision \ has \ been \ made \ that \ there \ should \ be \ ample \ guard. \ \text{[Secondary sequence.]} \]

\[ addūxi \ hominem \ in \ quō \ satisfacere \ exteris \ nātīonibus \ possētis \ (Verr. \ i. \ 2), \ I \ have \ brought \ a \ man \ in \ whose \ person \ you \ can \ make \ satisfaction \ to \ foreign \ nations. \ \text{[Secondary sequence.]} \]
est enim rés iam in eum locum adducta, ut quamquam multum intersit inter eōrum causās quī dimicant, tamen inter victōriās nōn multum interfutūrum putem (Fam. v. 21. 3), for affairs have been brought to such a pass that, though there is a great difference between the causes of those who are fighting, still I do not think there will be much difference between their victories. [Primary sequence.]

ea adhibita doctrina est quae vel vitīōsissimam nātūram excolere possit (Q. Fr. i. 1. 7), such instruction has been given as can train even the faultiest nature. [Primary sequence.]

Note.—The Perfect Infinitive in exclamations follows the same rule:—
quemquamne fuisse tam scelerātum quī hoc ſingeret (Phil. xiv. 14), was any one so abandoned as to imagine this? [Secondary.]

adeōn rem redisse patrem ut extimēscam (Ter. Ph. 153), to think that things have come to such a pass that I should dread my father! [Primary.]

b. After a primary tense the Perfect Subjunctive is regularly used to denote any past action. Thus the Perfect Subjunctive may represent—

1. A Perfect Definite:—
nōn dubitō quin omnēs tui scripserint (Fam. v. 8), I do not doubt that all your friends have written. [Direct statement: scripsērunt.]
quā rē nōn ignōrō quid accidat in ultimīs terrīs, cum audierim in Italīā que-rellās civīum (Q. Fr. i. 1. 33), therefore I know well what happens at the ends of the earth, when I have heard in Italy the complaints of citizens. [Direct statement: audīvi.]

2. A Perfect Historical:—
mē autem hīc laudat quod rettulerim, nōn quod patefēcerim (Att. xii. 21), me he praises because I brought the matter [before the senate], not because I brought it to light. [Direct statement: rettulit.]

3. An Imperfect:—
si forte cecidērunt, tum intellegitur quam fuerint inopēs amicōrum (Lael. 53), if perchance they fall (have fallen), then one can see how poor they were in friends. [Direct question: quam inopēs erant?]

qui status rērum fuerit cum hās litterās dedi, scire poteris ex C. Titiō Stra-bōne (Fam. xii. 6), what the condition of affairs was when I wrote this letter, you can learn from Strabo. [Direct question: qui status erat?]

quam civitātā cārūs fuerit maerōre fūneris indicātum est (Lael. 11), how dear he was to the state has been shown by the grief at his funeral. [Direct question: quam cārūs erat?]

ex epistulis intellegi licet quam frequēns fuerit Platónis auditor (Or. 15), it may be understood from his letters how constant a hearer he was of Plato. [Direct question: quam frequēns erat?]

Note.—Thus the Perfect Subjunctive may represent, not only a Perfect Definite or a Perfect Historical of a direct statement or question, but an Imperfect as well. This comes from the want of any special tense of the subjunctive for continued past action after a primary tense. Thus, mirō quid ſecerit may mean (1) I wonder what he has done, (2) I wonder what he did (hist. perf.), or (3) I wonder what he was doing.
c. In clauses of Result, the Perfect Subjunctive is regularly (the Present rarely) used after secondary tenses:—

Hortensius ardebat dicendi cupiditāte sic ut in nullō umquam flagrantius studium viserim (Brut. 302), Hortensius was so hot with desire of speaking that I never seen a more burning ardor in any man.

[Siciliam Verrēs] per triennium ita vexavit ac perdidit ut ea restitui in antiquum statum nullō modō possit (Verr. i. 12), for three years Verres so racked and ruined Sicily that she can in no way be restored to her former state. [Here the Present describes a state of things actually existing.]

videor esse consecūtus ut non possit Dolabella (Fam. xii. 14. 2), I seem to have brought it about that Dolabella cannot come into Italy.

Note 1.—This construction emphasizes the result; the regular sequence of tenses would subordinate it.

Note 2.—There is a special fondness for the Perfect Subjunctive to represent a Perfect Indicative:—

Thorius erat ita nōn superstitiōsus ut illa plūrīma in suā patriā et sacrificia et fāna contemneret; ita nōn timidus ad mortem ut in aciē sit ob rem publicam interfectus (Fīn. ii. 63), Thorius was so little superstitious that he despised [contemnēbat] the many sacrifices and shrines in his country; so little timorous about death that he was killed [interfectus est] in battle, in defence of the state.

d. A general truth after a past tense follows the sequence of tenses: ex his quae tribuisset, sibi quam mūtābilis esset reputābat (Q. C. iii. 8. 20), from what she (Fortune) had bestowed on him, he reflected how inconstant she is. [Direct: mūtābilis est.]

ibi quantam vim ad stimulandōs animōs īra habēret appāruit (Liv. xxxiii. 37), here it appeared what power anger has to goad the mind. [Direct: habet.]

Note.—In English the original tense is more commonly kept.

e. The Historical Present (§ 469) is sometimes felt as a primary, sometimes as a secondary tense, and accordingly it takes either the primary or the secondary sequence:—

rogat ut cūret quod āŭisset (Quinct. 18), he asks him to attend to the thing he had spoken of. [Both primary and secondary sequence.]

Note.—After the historical present, the subjunctive with cum temporal must follow the secondary sequence:—

quō cum vēnisset cógnōscit (B. C. i. 34), when he had come there he learns.

cum esset pūgnātum hōris quīnque, nostriqua gravius premerentur, impetum in cohortēs faciunt (id. i. 46), when they had fought for five hours, and our men were pretty hard pressed, they make an attack on the cohorts.

f. The Historical Infinitive regularly takes the secondary sequence:—

interim cotidiē Caesar Haeduōs frūmentum, quod essent polliciti, flagitāre (B. G. i. 16), meanwhile Cēsar demanded of the Hoedui every day the grain which they had promised.
g. The Imperfect and Pluperfect in conditions contrary to fact (§ 517) and in the Deliberative Subjunctive (§ 444) are not affected by the sequence of tenses:

quia tāle sit, ut vel si ignōrārent id hominēs vel si obmutuissent (Fin. ii. 49),

because it is such that even if men were ignorant of it, or had been silent about it.

quaerō ā tē curr. C. Corneliūm nōn dēfenderem (Vat. 5), I ask you why I was not to defend Caius Cornelius? [Direct: curr. nōn dēfenderem?]

h. The Imperfect Subjunctive in present conditions contrary to fact (§ 517) is regularly followed by the secondary sequence:

si aliī consūlēs essent, ad tē potissimum, Paule, mittērem, ut eōs mihi quam amicissimōs redderēs (Fam. xv. 13. 3), if there were other consuls, I should send to you, Paulus, in preference to all, that you might make them as friendly to me as possible.

si sōlōs eōs dicērēs miserōs quibus moriendum esset, nēminem exciperēs (Tusc. i. 9), if you were to call only those wretched who must die, you would except no one.

i. The Present is sometimes followed by a secondary sequence, seemingly because the writer is thinking of past time:

sed si rēs cōget, est quiddam tertium, quod neque Seliciō nec mihi displicēbat: ut neque iacēre rem paterēmur, etc. (Fam. i. 5 a. 3), but if the case shall demand, there is a third [course] which neither Selicius nor myself disapproved, that we should not allow, etc. [Here Cicero is led by the time of displicēbat.]

sed tamen ut scriēs, haec tibi scribō (Fam. xiii. 47), but yet that you may know, I write thus. [As if he had used the epistolary imperfect scribēbam (§ 479).] cūlius praeceptī tanta vis est ut ea nōn homini cuipiam sed Delphicō dēō triburētur (Legg. i. 58), such is the force of this precept, that it was ascribed not to any man, but to the Delphic god. [The precept was an old one.]

j. When a clause depends upon one already dependent, its sequence may be secondary if the verb of that clause expresses past time, even if the main verb is in a primary tense:

sed tamen quārē acciderit ut ex meis superīoribus litteris id suspicārēre nesciō (Fam. ii. 16), but yet how it happened that you suspected this from my previous letter, I don't know.

tantum prōfēcisse vidēmur ut ā Graecis né verbōrum quidem cōpiā vincēmur (N. D. i. 8), we seem to have advanced so far that even in abundance of words we are not surpassed by the Greeks.

Note. — So regularly after a Perfect Infinitive which depends on a primary tense (§ 585. a).
TENSES OF THE INFINITIVE

486. Except in Indirect Discourse, only the Present and Perfect Infinitives are used.

The Present represents the action of the verb as in progress without distinct reference to time, the Perfect as completed.

For the Tenses of the Infinitive in Indirect Discourse see § 584.

a. With past tenses of verbs of necessity, propriety, and possibility (as debuéi, oportuit, potui), the Present Infinitive is often used in Latin where the English idiom prefers the Perfect Infinitive: —

numne, si Coriôlânus habuit amícos, ferre contrá patriam arma illi cum Coriôlânô débuerunt (Lael. 36), if Coriolanus had friends, ought they to have borne arms with him against their fatherland?

tametsí statim vicisset débeó (Rosc. Am. 73), although I ought to win my case at once (to be regarded as having won it).

bellum quod possimus ante hiemem perfécisse (Liv. xxxvii. 19. 5), a war which we can have completed before winter.

nil ego, si peccem, possum nescisse (Ov. H. xvi. 47), if I should go wrong, I cannot have done it in ignorance (am not able not to have known).

Note.—With the past tenses of these verbs the perfect infinitive is apparently due to attraction: —

quod iam pridem factum esse oportuit (Cat. i. 5), (a thing) which ought to have been done long ago.

haec facta ab illo oportébat (Ter. Haut. 536), this ought to have been done by him.

tum decuit metuisset (Aen. x. 94), then was the time to fear (then you should have feared).

b. With verbs of necessity, propriety, and possibility, the Perfect Infinitive may be used to emphasize the idea of completed action: —

Coriolanus quod possumus esse consuluisse, nisi eum vitae cursum tenuissem à pueritià (Rep. i. 10), how could I have become consul had I not from boyhood followed that course of life?

Note.—With the past tenses of these verbs the perfect infinitive is apparently due to attraction: —

quod iam pridem factum esse oportuit (Cat. i. 5), (a thing) which ought to have been done long ago.

haec facta ab illo oportébat (Ter. Haut. 536), this ought to have been done by him.

tum decuit metuisset (Aen. x. 94), then was the time to fear (then you should have feared).

c. In archaic Latin and in legal formulas the Perfect Active Infinitive is often used with nólô or volô in prohibitions: —

Chaldaeum nêquem cõnsuluisse velit (Cato R. R. v. 4), let him not venture to have consulted a soothsayer.

nîllô dévellîsse (Pl. Poen. 872), do not have them plucked.

nêquis humâssé velit Âiâcem (Hor. S. ii. 3. 187), let no one venture to have buried Ajax.

NEIQVIS EORVM BACANAL HABVISE VELET (S. C. de Bac. 1), let no one of them venture to have had a place for Bacchanalian worship.
**d.** With verbs of *wishing* the Perfect Passive Infinitive (commonly without *esse*) is often used emphatically instead of the Present:

domesticā cūrā tē levātum volō (Q. Fr. iii. 9. 3), *I wish you relieved of private care.*

illōs monītōs volō (Cat. ii. 27), *I wish them thoroughly warned.*

qui illam [patriam] extinctam cupit (Fin. iv. 66), *who is eager for her utter destruction.*

illud tē esse admonitum volō (Cael. 8), *I wish you to be well advised of this.*

qui sé ab omnibus désertōs potius quam abs tē défensōs esse mālunt (Caecil. 21), *who prefer to be deserted by all rather than to be defended by you.*

Note.—The participle in this case is rather in predicate agreement (with or without *esse*) than used to form a strict perfect infinitive, though the full form can hardly be distinguished from that construction.

**e.** In late Latin, and in poetry (often for metrical convenience), rarely in good prose, the Perfect Active Infinitive is used emphatically instead of the Present, and even after other verbs than those of *wishing*:

nēmō eōrum est qui nōn perīsse tē cupiāt (Verr. ii. 149), *there is no one of them who is not eager for your death.*

haud equidem premendō alium mē extulisse velim (Liv. xxii. 59. 10), *I would not by crushing another exalt myself.*

sunt qui nōlint tetigisse (Hor. S. i. 2. 28), *there are those who would not touch.*

commīsīsse cavet (Hor. A. P. 168), *he is cautious of doing.*

nunc quem tetigisse timērent, anguis erās (Ov. M. viii. 733), *again you became a serpent which they dreaded to touch.*

frātresque tendentēs opācō Pēlion imposīsse Olympō (Hor. Od. iii. 4. 51), *and the brothers striving to set Pelion on dark Olympus.*

**f.** After verbs of *feeling* the Perfect Infinitive is used, especially by the poets, to denote a completed action.

So also with *satis est, satis habeō, melius est, contentus sum,* and in a few other cases where the distinction of time is important:—

nōn paenitēbat intercapēdinem scribendi fēcisse (Fam. xvi. 21), *I was not sorry to have made a respite of writing.*

pudet mē nōn praestītisse (id. xiv. 3), *I am ashamed not to have shown.*

sunt quōs pulverem Olympicum col·līgisse iuvat (Hor. Od. i. 1. 3), *some delight to have stirred up the dust at Olympia.*

quiēsse erit melius (Liv. iii. 48), *it will be better to have kept quiet.*

ac sī quis amet scripsisse (Hor. S. i. 10. 60), *than if one should choose to have written.*

id sōlum dixisse satis habeō (Vell. ii. 124), *I am content to have said only this.*

1 Volō, and less frequently nōlō, mālō, and cupō.
PARTICIPLES

487. The several Noun and Adjective forms associated with the verb are employed as follows:—

I. Participles:
   a. Present and Perfect:
      1. Attributive (§ 494).
      2. Simple Predicate (§ 495).
      3. Periphrastic Perfect (passive) (§ 495. n.).
      4. Predicate of Circumstance (§ 496).
      5. Descriptive (Indirect Discourse) (§ 497 d).
   b. Future
      1. Periphrastic with esse (§ 498. a).
      2. Periphrastic with fui (= Pluperfect Subjunctive) (§ 498. b).
   c. Gerundive
      1. As Descriptive Adjective (§ 500. 1).
      2. Periphrastic with esse (§ 500. 2).
      3. Of Purpose with certain verbs (§ 500. 4).

II. Gerund or Gerundive:
   1. Genitive as Subjective or Objective Genitive (§ 504).
   2. Dative, with Adjectives (of Fitness), Nouns, Verbs (§ 505).
   3. Accusative, with certain Prepositions (§ 506).
   4. Ablative, of Means, Comparison, or with Prepositions (§ 507).

III. Supine:
   1. Accusative Supine (in -um), with Verbs of Motion (§ 509).
   2. Ablative Supine (in -a), chiefly with Adjectives (§ 510).

PARTICIPLES

488. The Participle expresses the action of the verb in the form of an Adjective, but has a partial distinction of tense and may govern a case.

Note.—Thus the participle combines all the functions of an adjective with some of the functions of a verb. As an Adjective, it limits substantives and agrees with them in gender, number, and case (§ 286). As a Verb, it has distinctions of time (§ 489) and often takes an object.

Distinctions of Tense in Participles

489. Particlples denote time as present, past, or future with respect to the time of the verb in their clause.

Thus the Present Participle represents the action as in progress at the time indicated by the tense of the verb, the Perfect as completed, and the Future as still to take place.

490. The Present Participle has several of the special uses of the Present Indicative. Thus it may denote—

1. An action continued in the present but begun in the past (§ 466): quarenti mihi iam diit certa res nulla veniebat in mentem (Fam. iv. 13), though I had long sought, no certain thing came to my mind.

1 For the Syntax of the Infinitive, see §§ 451 ff., 486.
2. Attempted action (§ 467):—
C. Flämînîo restitit agrum Picentem dividenti (Cat. M. 11), he resisted Flaminius when attempting to divide the Picene territory.

3. Rarely (in poetry and later Latin) futurity or purpose, with a verb of motion:—

Eurypylum scìtantem òrácula mittimus (Aen. ii. 114), we send Eurypylus to consult the oracle. [Cf. § 468.]

491. The Perfect Participle of a few deponent verbs is used nearly in the sense of a Present.

Such are, regularly, ratus, solitus, veritus; commonly, arbitratus, fisus, ausus, secütus, and occasionally others, especially in later writers:—

rem incrédidîbelm rati (Sall. Cat. 48), thinking the thing incredible.
insidiâs veritus (B. G. ii. 11), fearing an ambuscade.
cohortâtus milites docuit (B. C. iii. 80), encouraging the men, he showed.
irâtus dixisti (Mur. 62), you spoke in a passion.
ad pûgnam congressî (Liv. iv. 10), meeting in fight.

492. The Latin has no Present Participle in the passive.
The place of such a form is supplied usually by a clause with dum or cum:—

obiere dum calciantur mâtâtînô duo Caesarés (Plin. N. H. vii. 181), two Cæsars died while having their shoes put on in the morning.
mêque ista délectricum cum Latînè dicuntur (Acad. i. 18), those things please me when they are spoken in Latin.

Note. — These constructions are often used when a participle might be employed:—
dic, hospes, Spartae nôs tê hic vidisse iacentis, dum sanctis patriae légibus obsequîmûr (Tusc. i. 101), tell it, stranger, at Sparta, that you saw us lying here obedient to our country’s sacred laws. [Here dum obsequîmûr is a translation of the Greek present participle πεθομενον.]
dum [Ulixës] sibi, dum sociîs reditum parat (Hor. Ep. i. 2. 21), Ulysses, while securing the return of himself and his companions. [In Greek: ἀπρομένον.]

493. The Latin has no Perfect Participle in the active voice.
The deficiency is supplied—

1. In deponents by the perfect passive form with its regular active meaning:—

nam singulâs [nâvis] nostrî consécâtâs expûgnâverunt (B. G. iii. 15), for our men, having overtaken them one by one, captured them by boarding.

Note. — The perfect participle of several deponent verbs may be either active or passive in meaning (§ 190. b).
2. In other verbs, either by the perfect passive participle in the ablative absolute (§ 420. n.) or by a temporal clause (especially with cum or postquam):

itaque convocátis centuriònibus militès certiorès facit (B. G. iii. 5), and so, having called the centurions together, he informs the soldiers (the centurions having been called together).

cum vênisset animadvertit collem (id. vii. 44), having come (when he had come), he noticed a hill.

postquam id animum advertit cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem subdúcit (B. G. i. 24), having observed this (after he had observed this) Caesar led his troops to the nearest hill.

Uses of Participles

494. The Present and Perfect Participles are sometimes used as attributives, nearly like adjectives:

aeger et flagrāns animus (Tac. Ann. iii. 54), his sick and passionate mind.

cum antiquissīsimam sententiam tum comprobātam (Div. i. 11), a view at once most ancient and well approved.

signa numquam fere mentientia (id. i. 15), signs hardly ever deceitful.

auspicīs útuntur coāctīs (id. i. 27), they use forced auspices.

a. Participles often become complete adjectives, and may be compared, or used as nouns:

quō mulieri esset rēs cautior (Caec. 11), that the matter might be more secure for the woman.

in illis artibus praestantissīmus (De Or. i. 217), preëminent in those arts.

sibi indulgentēs et corporī déservientēs (Legg. i. 39), the self-indulgent, and slaves to the body (indulging themselves and serving the body).

rēctē facta paria esse dēbent (Par. 22), right deeds (things rightly done) ought to be like in value (see § 321. b).

male parta male dilābuntur (Phil. ii. 65), ill got, ill spent (things ill acquired are ill spent).

cōnsuētūdō valentis (De Or. ii. 186), the habit of a man in health.

495. Participles are often used as Predicate Adjectives. As such they may be joined to the subject by esse or a copulative verb (see § 283):

Gallia est divīsa (B. G. i. 1), Gaul is divided.

locus qui nunc saeptus est (Liv. i. 8), the place which is now enclosed.

vidētīs ut senectūs sit operōsa et semper agēns alīquid et mōlēns (Cat. M. 26), you see how busy old age is, always aiming and trying at something.

nēmō adhūc convenire mé voluit cui fuerim occupātus (id. 32), nobody hitherto has [ever] wished to converse with me, to whom I have been "engaged."
Note.—From this predicate use arise the compound tenses of the passive,—the participle of completed action with the incomplete tenses of esse developing the idea of past time: as, interfectus est, he was (or has been) killed, lit. he is having-been-killed (i.e. already slain).

The perfect participle used with fuī etc. was perhaps originally an intensified expression in the popular language for the perfect, pluperfect, etc.

At times these forms indicate a state of affairs no longer existing:—

cōtem quoque eōdem locō sitam fuisset memorant (Liv. i. 36. 5), they say that a whetstone was (once) deposited in this same place. [At the time of writing it was no longer there.]

arma quae fixa in parietibus fuerant, humī inventa sunt (Div. i. 74), the arms which had been fastened on the walls were found upon the ground.

But more frequently they are not to be distinguished from the forms with sum etc.

The construction is found occasionally at all periods, but is most common in Livy and later writers.

496. The Present and Perfect Participles are often used as a predicate, where in English a phrase or a subordinate clause would be more natural.

In this use the participles express time, cause, occasion, condition, concession, characteristic (or description), manner, means, attendant circumstances:—

volventēs hostília cadāvera amīcum reperībant (Sall. Cat. 61), while rolling over the corpses of the enemy they found a friend. [Time.]

paululum commorātus, signa canare iubet (id. 59), after delaying a little while, he orders them to give the signal. [Time.]

longius prōsequī veritus, ad Cicerōnem pervēnit (B. G. v. 52), because he feared to follow further, he came to Cicero. [Cause.]

quiā scīret laxās dare iussus habēnās (Aen. i. 63), who might know how to give them loose rein when bidden. [Occasion.]

damnātum poenam sequī oportēbat (B. G. i. 4), if condemned, punishment must overtake him. [Condition.]

salūtem inspērantibus reddidisti (Marc. 21), you have restored a safety for which we did not hope (to [us] not hoping). [Concession.]

Dardanius caput ecce puer dētēctus (Aen. x. 133), the Trojan boy with his head uncovered. [Description.]

nec trepidēs in úsum poscentis aevī paucā (Hor. Od. ii. 11. 5), be not anxious for the needs of age that demands little. [Characteristic.]

incitātī fugā montis altissimōs petēbant (B. C. iii. 93), in headlong flight they made for the highest mountains. [Manner.]

militēs sublevāti allī ab allīs māgnam partem ītineris conficerent (id. i. 68), the soldiers, helped up by each other, accomplished a considerable part of the route. [Means.]

hōc laudāns, Pompēius idem īfurāvit (id. iii. 87), approving this, Pompey took the same oath. [Attendant Circumstance.]

aut sedēns aut ambulāns disputābam (Tusc. i. 7), I conducted the discussion either sitting or walking. [Attendant Circumstance.]
§§ 496, 497] Uses of Participles

Note 1.—These uses are especially frequent in the Ablative Absolute (§ 420).
Note 2.—A coördinate clause is sometimes compressed into a perfect participle: —

\[ \text{instructōs ordinēs in locum aquae dēdūcit} \] (Sall. Cat. 59), \text{he draws up the lines, and leads them to level ground.} \]

\[ \text{ut hōs trāductōs necāret} \] (B. G. v. 6), \text{that he might carry them over and put them to death.} \]

Note 3.—A participle with a negative often expresses the same idea which in English is given by without and a verbal noun: as, —\[ \text{miserum est nihil prōdīcentem angit} \] (N. D. iii. 14), \text{it is wretched to vex oneself without effecting anything.} \]

Note 4.—Acceptum and expēnsum as predicates with ferre and referre are bookkeeping terms: as, —\[ \text{quās pecūnīas ferēbat eis expēnsās} \] (Verr. ii. 170), \text{what sums he charged to them.} \]

497. A noun and a passive participle are often so united that the participle and not the noun contains the main idea: —

\[ \text{ante condītām condendamve urbem} \] (Liv. Pref.), \text{before the city was built or building.} \]

\[ \text{illī libertātem imminētam civium Rōmānōrum nōn tulērunt; vōs ēreptam vitam neglegētis} \] (Manil. 11), \text{they did not endure the infringement of the citizens' liberty; will you disregard the destruction of their lives?} \]

\[ \text{post nātōs hominēs} \] (Brut. 224), \text{since the creation of man.} \]

\[ \text{iam ā condītā urbe} \] (Phil. iii. 9), \text{even from the founding of the city.} \]

\[ \text{opus factō est viāticō} \] (Pl. Trin. 887), \text{there is need of laying in provision.} \]

\[ \text{mātūrātō opus est} \] (Liv. viii. 13. 17), \text{there is need of haste.} \]

\[ \text{a.} \] The perfect participle with a noun in agreement, or in the neuter as an abstract noun, is used in the ablative with opus, need (cf. § 411. a): —

\[ \text{opus factō est viāticō} \] (Pl. Trin. 887), \text{there is need of laying in provision.} \]

\[ \text{mātūrātō opus est} \] (Liv. viii. 13. 17), \text{there is need of haste.} \]

\[ \text{b.} \] The perfect participle with habēō (rarely with other verbs) has almost the same meaning as a perfect active, but denotes the continued effect of the action of the verb: —

\[ \text{fidem quam habent spectātam iam et diū cōgnitam} \] (Caecil. 11), \text{my fidelity, which they have proved and long known.} \]

\[ \text{cohorts in aciē lxxx cōnstitūtās habēbat} \] (B. C. iii. 80), \text{he had eighty cohorts stationed in line of battle.} \]

\[ \text{nēfāriōs ducēs captōs iam et comprehēnsōs tenētis} \] (Cat. iii. 16), \text{you have now captured the infamous leaders and hold them in custody.} \]

\[ \text{c.} \] A verb of effecting or the like may be used in combination with the perfect participle of a transitive verb to express the action of that verb more forcibly: —

---

1 Compare the participle in indirect discourse in Greek (Goodwin's Greek Grammar, § 1588); and the English "'T was at the royal feast for Persia won" (Dryden), i.e. for the conquest of Persia.

2 The perfect with have, in modern languages of Latin stock, has grown out of this use of habēō.
praefectōs suōs multī missōs fēcērunt (Verr. iii. 134), many discharged their
officers (made dismissed).
hīc trānsāctum reddet omne (Pl. Capt. 345), he will get it all done (restore it
finished).
adēmptum tibi iam faxō omnem metum (Ter. Haut. 341), I will relieve you
of all fear (make it taken away).
illam tibi incēnsam dāō (Ter. Ph. 974), I will make her angry with you.

Note. — Similarly volō (with its compounds) and cupiō, with a perfect participle
without esse (cf. § 486. d).

d. After verbs denoting an action of the senses the present participle in agreement with the object is nearly equivalent to the infinitive of indirect discourse (§ 580), but expresses the action more vividly:

ut eum nēmō umquam in equō sedentem viderit (Verr. v. 27), so that no one
ever saw him sitting on a horse. [Cf. Tusc. iii. 31.]

Note. — The same construction is used after faciō, indūco, and the like, with the
name of an author as subject: as,—Xenophōn facit Socratem disputantem (N. D. i.
31), Xenophon represents Socrates disputing.

**Future Participle (Active)**

498. The Future Participle (except futūrus and ventūrus) is
rarely used in simple agreement with a noun, except by poets and
later writers.

a. The future participle is chiefly used with the forms of esse
(often omitted in the infinitive) in the Active Periphrastic Conjugation (see § 195):

morere, Diagorā, nōn enim in caelum adscēnsūrus es (Tusc. i. 111), die,
Diagoras, for you are not likely to rise to heaven.

spērat adulēscēns diū sē vīctūrum (Cat. M. 68), the young man hopes to live
long (that he shall live long).

neque petitūrus umquam cōnsulātum vidērētur (Off. iii. 79), and did not seem
likely ever to be a candidate for the consulship.

b. With the past tenses of esse in the indicative, the future participle is often equivalent to the pluperfect subjunctive (§ 517. d). For futūrum fuisse, see § 589. b.

499. By later writers and the poets the Future Participle is
often used in simple agreement with a substantive to express —

1. Likelihood or certainty: —

rem ausus plūs fāmæ habitūram (Liv. ii. 10), having dared a thing which would
have more repute.
2. Purpose, intention, or readiness: —

egreditur castris Römänus vällum invásürus (Liv. iii. 60. 8), *the Roman comes out of the camp with the intention of attacking the rampart.*

dispersós per agrós milités equitibus invásüris (id. xxxi. 36), *while the horse were ready to attack the soldiers scattered through the fields.*
si periturus abls (Aen. ii. 675), *if you are going away to perish.*

3. Apodosis: —
dedit mihi quantum maximum potuit, datürus amplius si potuisset (Plin. Ep. iii. 21. 6), *he gave me as much as he could, ready to give me more if he had been able.* [Here datürus is equivalent to dedisset.]

Gerundive (Future Passive Participle)

Note. — The participle in -dus, commonly called the Gerundive, has two distinct uses: —

1. Its predicate and attribute use as Participle or Adjective (§ 500).
2. Its use with the meaning of the Gerund (§ 503). This may be called its gerundive use.

500. The Gerundive when used as a Participle or an Adjective is always passive, denoting necessity, obligation, or propriety.

In this use of the Gerundive the following points are to be observed: —

1. The gerundive is sometimes used, like the present and perfect participles, in simple agreement with a noun: —

fortem et cõnservandum virum (Mil. 104), *a brave man, and worthy to be preserved.*

gravis inïurïa facta est et nõn ferenda (Flacc. 84), *a grave and intolerable wrong has been done.*

2. The most frequent use of the gerundive is with the forms of esse in the Second (or passive) Periphrastic Conjugation (see § 196): —
nõn agitanda rës erit (Verr. v. 179), *will not the thing have to be agitated?*

3. The neuter gerundive of both transitive and intransitive verbs may be used impersonally in the second periphrastic conjugation.

With verbs that take the dative or ablative, an object may be expressed in the appropriate case; with transitive verbs, an object in the accusative is sometimes found: —

tempori serviendum est (Fam. ix. 7. 2), *one must obey the time.*
légibus pärendum est, *the laws must be obeyed.*
ütendum exercitâtiônibus modicis (Cat. M. 36), *we must use moderate exercise.*
agitandumst vigiliâs (Pl. Trin. 869), *I have got to stand guard.*
via quam nóbis ingrediendum sit (Cat. M. 6), *the way we have to enter.*
4. After verbs signifying *to give, deliver, agree for, have, receive, undertake, demand,*\(^1\) a gerundive in agreement with the object is used to express purpose: —

redemptor qui columnam illam condaxterat faciendam (Div. ii. 47), *the contractor who had undertaken to make that column.* [The regular construction with this class of verbs.]

aedem Castoris habuit tuendam (Verr. ii. 1. 150), *he had the temple of Castor to take care of.*

nāvis atque onera adservanda cūrābat (id. v. 146), *he took care that the ships and cargoes should be kept.*

**GERUND**

501. The Gerund is the neuter of the Gerundive, used substantively in the Genitive, Dative, Accusative, and Ablative.

502. The Gerund expresses an action of the verb in the form of a verbal noun.

As a *noun* the gerund is itself governed by other words; as a *verb* it may take an object in the proper case: —

ars bene disserendē et vēra ac falsa diūdicandē (De Or. ii. 157), *the art of discoursing well, and distinguishing the true and the false.*

**Note.** — The Nominative of the gerund is supplied by the Infinitive. Thus in the example above, the verbal nouns *discoursing* and *distinguishing,* if used in the nominative, would be expressed by the infinitives disserere and diūdicāre.

The Gerund is the neuter of the gerundive used impersonally, but retaining the verbal idea sufficiently to govern an object. It may therefore be regarded as a noun (cf. mātūrātō opus est, § 497. a) with a verbal force (cf. istanc tāctiō, p. 240, footnote).

**GERUND AND GERUNDIVE**

503. When the Gerund would have an object in the Accusative, the Gerundive\(^2\) is generally used instead. The gerundive agrees with its noun, which takes the case that the gerund would have had: —

parātiōres ad omnia pericula subeunda (B. G. i. 5), *readier to undergo all dangers.* [Here *subeunda* agrees with *pericula,* which is itself governed by *ad.* The (inadmissible) construction with the gerund would be *ad subeundum pericula;* *ad* governing the gerund, and the gerund governing the accusative *pericula.*] For details, see §§ 504-507.

---

\(^1\) Such verbs are accipio, adnotō, attribuo, condūcō, cūrō, dēnōtō, dēposco, dō, dividō, dōnō, dīcō, dōceo, ferō, habēo, locō, mandō, obiciō, permittō, petō, pōnō, praebēō, prōpōnō, relinquō, rogō, suscipio, trādō, voveō.

\(^2\) The gerundive construction is probably the original one.
Note 1.—In this use the gerund and the gerundive are translated in the same way, but have really a different construction. The gerundive is a passive participle, and agrees with its noun, though in translation we change the voice, just as we may translate vigiliae agitandae sunt (guard must be kept) by I must stand guard.

Note 2.—In the gerundive construction the verbs utor, fruir, etc., are treated like transitive verbs governing the accusative, as they do in early Latin (§ 410. a. n. 1): as, —ad perfruendās voluptātēs (Off. i. 25), for enjoying pleasures.

a. The following examples illustrate the parallel constructions of Gerund and Gerundive: —

Gen. cōnsilium \{ urbem capiendī urbis capiendae \} a design of taking the city.

Dat. dat operam \{ agrīs colegendō agrīs coledīs \} he attends to tilling the fields.

Acc. veniunt ad \{ mihi pārendum pācem petendam \} they come \{ to obey me. to seek peace.\n
Abl. terit tempus \{ scribendō epistulās scribendīs epistulis \} he spends time in writing letters.

Note 1.—The gerund with a direct object is practically limited to the Genitive and the Ablative (without a preposition); even in these cases the gerundive is commoner.

Note 2.—The gerund or gerundive is often found coordinated with nominal constructions, and sometimes even in apposition with a noun: —

1) in forō, in curiā, in amicōrum periculis prūpsandīs (Phil. vii. 7), in the forum, in the senate-house, in defending my friends in jeopardy. (2) ad rēs diversissimās, pārendum atque imperandum (Liv. xxii. 4), for the most widely different things, obeying and commanding.

Genitive of the Gerund and Gerundive

504. The Genitive of the Gerund and Gerundive is used after nouns or adjectives, either as subjective or objective genitive: —

vivendī finis est optimus (Cat. M. 72), it is the best end of living. [Subjective.]

neque cōnsili habendī neque arma capiendī spatiō datō (B. G. iv. 14), time being given neither for forming plans nor for taking arms. [Objective.]

nōn tam commūtandārum quam ēvertendārum rērum cupidōs (Off. ii. 3), desirous not so much of changing as of destroying the state. [Objective.]

Note 1.—In these uses the gerund and the gerundive are about equally common.

Note 2.—In a few phrases the Infinitive is used with nouns which ordinarily have the genitive of the gerund or gerundive: as, —tempus est abīre, it is time to go.

a. The genitive of the gerund sometimes takes a direct object, especially a neuter pronoun or a neuter adjective used substantively: —

nulla causa īusta cuiquam esse potest contra patriam arma capiendī (Phil. ii. 58), no one can have a just cause for taking up arms against his country. artem véræ ac falsa diūdicandī (De Or. ii. 157), the art of distinguishing true from false.
Note 1. — The genitive of the gerund or gerundive is used (especially in later Latin) as a predicate genitive. When so used it often expresses purpose: —
quae postquam gloriösa modo neque belii patrandi cognovit (Iug. 88), when he perceived that these were only brilliant deeds and not likely to end the war.
Aegyptum proficiscitur cognoscentae antiquitatis (Tac. Ann. ii. 59), he sets out for Egypt to study old times.

b. The genitive of the gerund or gerundive with causă or gratiā expresses purpose (§ 533. b): —
pabulandī aut frumentandi causā prōgressī (B. C. i. 48), having advanced for the purpose of collecting fodder or supplies.
vitandae suspicionis causā (Cat. i. 19), in order to avoid suspicion.
simulandī grātiā (Iug. 37), in order to deceive.
exercendae memōriae grātiā (Cat. M. 38), for the sake of training the memory.

c. The genitive of the gerund is occasionally limited by a noun or pronoun (especially a personal pronoun in the plural) in the objective genitive instead of taking a direct object: —
reiciendi trium iūdicum potestās (Verr. ii. 77), the power of challenging three jurors (of the rejecting of three jurors).
sui colligendi facultās (B. G. iii. 6), the opportunity to recover themselves.

Dative of the Gerund and Gerundive

505. The Dative of the Gerund and Gerundive is used in a few expressions after verbs: —
diem praestitit operi faciendō (Verr. ii. 1. 148), he appointed a day for doing the work.
praeesse agrō coiendō (Rosc. Am. 50), to take charge of cultivating the land.
esse solvendō, to be able to pay (to be for paying).

Note. — The dative of the gerund with a direct object is never found in classic Latin, but occurs twice in Plautus.

a. The dative of the gerund and gerundive is used after adjectives,2 especially those which denote fitness or adaptability: —
genus armōrum aptum tegendīs corporibus (Liv. xxxii. 10), a sort of armor suited to the defence of the body.
reliqua tempora dēmetendīs fructibus et percipiendīs accommodāta sunt (Cat. M. 70), the other seasons are fitted to reap and gather in the harvest.
perferendīs militum mandātīs idōneus (Tac. Ann. i. 23), suitable for carrying out the instructions of the soldiers.

Note. — This construction is very common in Livy and later writers, infrequent in classical prose.

1 Such are praesse, operam dare, diem dicere, locum capere.
2 Such are accommodātus, aptus, ineptus, bonus, habilitus, idōneus, pār, ūtilis, inūtilis.
But the accusative with ad is common with most of these (cf. § 385. a).
b. The dative of the gerund and gerundive is used in certain legal phrases after nouns meaning *officers, offices, elections*, etc., to indicate the function or scope of the office etc.: —
comitia cōnsulībus rogandīs (Div. i. 33), *elections for nominating consuls.*
triumvir colōniās dēdūcundīs (ług. 42), *a triumvir for planting colonies.*
triumvīri rēī pūblīcās cōnstituentās (title of the Triumvirate), *triumvirs (a commission of three) for settling the government.*

**Accusative of the Gerund and Gerundive**

506. The Accusative of the Gerund and Gerundive is used after the preposition *ad*, to denote *Purpose* (cf. § 533): —
mē vocās *ad scribendum* (Or. 34), *you summon me to write.*
vīvis nōn *ad dēpōnendam sed ad cōnfirmandam audāciām* (Cat. i. 4), *you live not to put off but to confirm your daring.*
nactus aditūs *ad ea cōnanda* (B. C. i. 31), *having found means to undertake these things.*

**Note 1.**—Other prepositions appear in this construction; *inter and ob* a few times, *circa, in, ante,* and a few others very rarely: *as, inter agendum* (Ecl. ix. 24), *while driving.*

**Note 2.**—The Accusative of the gerund with a preposition never takes a direct object in classic Latin.

**Ablative of the Gerund and Gerundive**

507. The Ablative of the Gerund and Gerundive is used (1) to express *manner,¹ means, cause,* etc.; (2) after Comparatives; and (3) after the propositions *ab, dē, ex, in,* and (rarely) *prō*: —

(1) multa pollicendā persuādet (Iug. 46), *he persuades by large promises.*
Latinē loquendō cuivis pār (Brut. 128), *equal to any man in speaking Latin.*
his īpsīs legendīs (Cat. M. 21), *by reading these very things.*
obsūcrām atque humilem conciendō ad sē multitūdinem (Liv. i. 8), *calling to them a mean and obscure multitude.*

(2) nūllum officium referendā grātiā magis necessārium est (Off. i. 47), *no duty is more important than repaying favors.*

(3) in rē gerendā versārī (Cat. M. 17), *to be employed in conducting affairs.*

**Note 1.**—The Ablative of the Gerund and Gerundive is also very rarely used with verbs and adjectives: *as, — nec continuandō abstitit magistrātū* (Liv. ix. 34), *he did not desist from continuing his magistracy.*

**Note 2.**—The ablative of the gerund rarely takes a direct object in classic prose.

¹ In this use the ablative of the gerund is, in later writers nearly, and in mediaeval writers entirely, equivalent to a present participle: *as, — cum ūnā diērūm flendiō sēdis-set, quidam miles generōsus īuxtā eam equitandō vēnit* (Gesta Romanorum, 66 [58]), *as one day she sat weeping, a certain knight came riding by* (compare § 507, fourth example). Hence come the Italian and Spanish forms of the present participle (as *mandando, esperando*), the true participial form becoming an adjective in those languages.
SUPINE

508. The Supine is a verbal abstract of the fourth declension (§ 94. b), having no distinction of tense or person, and limited to two uses. (1) The form in -um is the Accusative of the end of motion (§ 428. f). (2) The form in -ā is usually Dative of purpose (§ 382), but the Ablative was early confused with it.

509. The Supine in -um is used after verbs of motion to express purpose. It may take an object in the proper case: —

quid est, ìmusne sessum? etsì adnominum vénimus tē, nōn fāgitātum (De Or. iii. 17), how now, shall we be seated? though we have come to remind, not to entreat you.

nūptum dare (collocāre), to give in marriage.

vēnērunt questum iniūriās (Liv. iii. 25), they came to complain of wrongs.

Note 1.—The supine in -um is especially common with ēō, and with the passive infinitive ērī forms the future passive infinitive: —

fuēre civēs quī rem pūblicam perditum irent (Sall. Cat. 36), there were citizens who went about to ruin the republic.

sī scīret sē trucidātum ērī (Div. ii. 22), if he (Pompey) had known that he was going to be murdered. [Rare except in Cicero. For the more usual way of expressing the passive future infinitive, see § 569. 3. a.]

Note 2.—The supine in -um is occasionally used when motion is merely implied.

510. The Supine in -ā 1 is used with a few adjectives and with the nouns fās, nefās, and opus, to denote an action in reference to which the quality is asserted: —

rem nōn modo visū foedam, sed etiam audītū (Phil. ii. 63), a thing not only shocking to see, but even to hear of.

quaerunt quid optīnum factū sit (Verr. ii. 1. 68), they ask what is best to do.

sī hōc fās est dictū (Tusc. v. 38), if this is lawful to say.

vidētis nefās esse dictū miseram fuisse tālem senectūtem (Cat. M. 13), you see it is a sin to say that such an old age was wretched.

Note 1.—The supine in -ā is thus used in appearance an Ablative of Specification (§ 418).

Note 2.—The supine in -ā is found especially with such adjectives as indicate an effect on the senses or the feelings, and those which denote ease, difficulty, and the like. But with facīlis, diffīcilis, and iūcundus, ad with the gerund is more common: —

nec visū facīlis nec dictū adfābilis ūllī (Aen. iii. 621), he is not pleasant for any man to look at or address.

diffīcilis ad distinguendum similītūdō (De Or. ii. 212), a likeness difficult to distinguish.

Note 3.—With all these adjectives the poets often use the Infinitive in the same sense: as, — facileās auren praeβēre (Prop. ii. 21. 15), indulgent to lend an ear.

Note 4.—The supine in -ā with a verb is extremely rare: as, — pudet dictū (Tac. Agr. 32), it is a shame to tell. [On the analogy of pudendum dictū.]

1 The only common supines in -ā are audītū, dictū, factū, inventū, memorātū, nātū, visū. In classic use this supine is found in comparatively few verbs. It is never followed by an object-case.
CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

511. The Conditional Sentence differs from other complex sentences in this, that the form of the main clause (Apodosis) is determined in some degree by the nature of the subordinate clause (Protasis) upon the truth of which the whole statement depends. Like all complex sentences, however, the Conditional Sentence has arisen from the use of two independent sentence-forms to express the parts of a thought which was too complicated to be fully expressed by a simple sentence. But because the thoughts thus expressed are in reality closely related, as parts of a single whole, the sentences which represent them are also felt to be mutually dependent, even though the relation is not expressed by any connecting word. Thus, *Speak the word: my servant shall be healed* is a simpler and an earlier form of expression than *If thou speak the word, etc.*

The Conditional Particles were originally pronouns without conditional meaning: thus, *sì, if*, is a weak demonstrative of the same origin as *sic*, so (*sì-ce like hì-ce*, see § 215. 5), and had originally the meaning of *in that way, or in some way*. Its relative sense (*if*) seems to have come from its use with *sic* to make a pair of correlatives: *thus . . . thus* (see § 512. 5).

In its origin the Conditional Sentence assumed one of two forms. The condition was from the first felt to be a condition, not a fact or a command; but, as no special sentence-form for a condition was in use, it employed for its expression either a statement of *fact* (with the Indicative) or a statement of *mitil command* (the Subjunctive). From the former have come all the uses of the Indicative in protasis; from the latter all the uses of the Subjunctive in protasis. The Apodosis has either (1) the Indicative, expressing the conclusion as *a fact*, and the Present and Perfect Subjunctive, expressing it originally as *future* — and hence more or less *doubtful* — or (2) the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive expressing it as *futūrum in praeritō* 1 and so unfulfilled in the present or past. Thus, *ridēs, māiore cachinnō concutitur, you laugh, he shakes with more boisterous laughter*, is the original form for the Indicative in protasis and apodosis; *sì ridēs originally means merely you laugh in some way or other, and so, later, if you laugh*. So *rogēs Aristōnem, neget, ask Aristo, he would say no*, is the original form of the subjunctive in protasis and apodosis; *sì rogēs would mean ask in some way or other*. In *sì rogāres, negāret, the Imperfect rogāres transfers the command of rogēs to past time*, 2 with the meaning *suppose you had asked*, and *sì would have the same meaning as before*; while *negāret transfers the future idea of neget to past time, and means he was going to deny*. Now the stating of this supposition at all gives rise to the implication that it is *untrue in point of fact*, — because, if it were true, there would ordinarily be no need to state it as a supposition: for it would then be a simple fact, and as such would be put in the indicative. 3 Such a condition or conclusion

1 The *futūrum in praeritō* is a tense *future relatively to a time absolutely past*. It denotes a future act transferred to the point of view of past time, and hence is naturally expressed by a past tense of the Subjunctive: thus *dixisset, he would have said* = *dictūrus futī, he was about to say* [but did not]. As that which looks towards the future from some point in the past has a natural limit in present time, such a tense (the imperfect subjunctive) came naturally to be used to express a *present condition* purely ideal, that is to say, contrary to fact.

2 Compare *potius diceret, he should rather have said* (§ 439. b).

3 There are, however, some cases in which this implication does not arise: as, *— deciēns centēna dedissēs, nil erat in locūs* (Hor. S. i. 3. 15), *if you'd given him a million, there was nothing in his coffers*.  
(originally past, meaning *suppose you had asked* [yesterday], *he was going to deny*) came to express an unfulfilled condition in the present: *suppose (or if) you were now asking, he would [now] deny* — just as in English *ought*, which originally meant *owed*,¹ has come to express a present obligation.

For the classification of Conditional Sentences, see § 513.

**PROTASIS AND APODOSIS**

512. A complete Conditional Sentence consists of two clauses, the Protasis and the Apodosis.

The clause containing the *condition* is called the **Protasis**; the clause containing the *conclusion* is called the **Apodosis**: —

*si qui exire volunt* [protasis], *coniàvere possum* [apodosis] (Cat. ii. 27), *if* any wish to depart, I can keep my eyes shut.

*si est in exsilio* [protasis], *quid amplius postulatis* [apodosis] (Lig. 13), *if* he is in exile, what more do you ask?

It should be carefully noted that the Apodosis is the *main* clause and the Protasis the *dependent* clause.

**a.** The Protasis is regularly introduced by the conditional particle *si, if*, or one of its compounds.

**Note.** — These compounds are *sin, nisi, etiam si, etsi, tametsi, tamenetsi* (see Conditional and Concessive Particles, p. 138). An Indefinite Relative, or any relative or concessive word, may also serve to introduce a conditional clause: see Conditional Relative Clauses (§§ 519, 542); Concessive Clauses (§ 527).

**b.** The Apodosis is often introduced by some correlative word or phrase: *as, ita, tum* (rarely *sic*), or *ea condicioñe* etc.: —

*ita enim senectüs honesta est, si sē ipsa dēfendant* (Cat. M. 38), *on this condition is old age honorable, if it defends itself.*

*si quidem mē amāret, tum istuc prōdesset* (Ter. Eun. 446), *if he loved me, then this would be profitable.*

*sic scribēs aliquid, sī vacābis* (Att. xii. 38. 2), *if you are (shall be) at leisure, then you will write something.*

**c.** The Apodosis is the principal clause of the conditional sentence, but may at the same time be subordinate to some other clause, and so appear in the form of a Participle, an Infinitive, or a Phrase: —

*sepultūrā quoque prohibitūri, nī rēx humāri iussisset* (Q. C. viii. 2. 12), *intending also to deprive him of burial, unless the king had ordered him to be interred.*

¹ "There was a certain lender which ought him five hundred pieces." — Tyndale's New Testament.
quod si praeterea nēmō sequātur, tamen sē cum sōlā decimā legiōne itūrum [esse] (B. G. i. 40. 14), but if no one else should follow, he would go with the tenth legion alone.

si quōs adversum proelium commovēret, hōs reperīre posse (id. 40. 8), if the loss of a battle alarmed any, they might find, etc.

Note.—When the Apodosis itself is in Indirect Discourse, or in any other dependent construction, the verb of the Protasis is regularly in the Subjunctive (as in the above examples, see § 589).

CLASSIFICATION OF CONDITIONS

513. Conditions are either (1) Particular or (2) General.

1. A Particular Condition refers to a definite act or series of acts occurring at some definite time.

2. A General Condition refers to any one of a class of acts which may occur (or may have occurred) at any time.

514. The principal or typical forms of Conditional Sentences may be exhibited as follows: —

PARTICULAR CONDITIONS

A. SIMPLE CONDITIONS (nothing implied as to fulfilment)

1. Present Time

Present Indicative in both clauses:—

si adest, bene est, if he is [now] here, it is well.

2. Past Time

Imperfect or Perfect Indicative in both clauses:—

si aderat, bene erat, if he was [then] here, it was well.

si adfuit, bene fuit, if he has been [was] here, it has been [was] well.

B. FUTURE CONDITIONS (as yet unfulfilled)

1. More Vivid

a. Future Indicative in both clauses:—

si aderit, bene erit, if he is (shall be) here, it will be well.

b. Future Perfect Indicative in protasis, Future Indicative in apodosis:—

si adfuerit, bene erit, if he is (shall have been) here, it will [then] be well.
2. Less Vivid

a. Present Subjunctive in both clauses: —
   si adsit, bene sit, if he should be (or were to be) here, it would be well.

b. Perfect Subjunctive in protasis, Present Subjunctive in apodosis: —
   si adfuerit, bene sit, if he should be (should have been) here, it would [then] be well.

C. Conditions Contrary to Fact

1. Present Time

Imperfect Subjunctive in both clauses: —
   si adesset, bene esset, if he were [now] here, it would be well (but he is not here).

2. Past Time

Pluperfect Subjunctive in both clauses: —
   si adfuisset, bene fuisset, if he had [then] been here, it would have been well (but he was not here).

Note.—The use of tenses in Protasis is very loose in English. Thus if he is alive now is a present condition, to be expressed in Latin by the Present Indicative; if he is alive next year is a future condition, expressed in Latin by the Future Indicative. Again, if he were here now is a present condition contrary to fact, and would be expressed by the Imperfect Subjunctive; if he were to see me thus is a future condition less vivid, to be expressed by the Present Subjunctive; and so too, if you advised him, he would attend may be future less vivid.1

D. General Conditions

General Conditions do not usually differ in form from Particular Conditions (A, B, and C), but are sometimes distinguished in the cases following: —

1. Present General Condition (Indefinite Time)

a. Present Subjunctive second person singular (Indefinite Subject) in protasis, Present Indicative in apodosis: —
   si hóc dicās, crēditur, if any one [ever] says this, it is [always] believed.

b. Perfect Indicative in protasis, Present Indicative in apodosis: —
   si quid dixit, crēditur, if he [ever] says anything, it is [always] believed.

1 In most English verbs the Preterite (or Past) Subjunctive is identical in form with the Preterite Indicative. Thus in such a sentence as if he loved his father, he would not say this, the verb loved is really a Preterite Subjunctive, though this does not appear from the inflection. In the verb to be, however, the Subjunctive were has been preserved and differs in form from the indicative was.
2. Past General Condition (Repeated Action in Past Time)

a. Pluperfect Indicative in protasis, Imperfect Indicative in apodosis:

si quid dixerat, crēdēbātur, if he [ever] said anything, it was [always] believed.

b. Imperfect Subjunctive in protasis, Imperfect Indicative in apodosis:

si quid diceret, crēdēbātur, if he [ever] said anything, it was [always] believed (= whatever he said was always believed).

PARTICULAR CONDITIONS

Simple Present and Past Conditions — Nothing Implied

515. In the statement of Present and Past conditions whose falsity is not implied, the Present and Past tenses of the Indicative are used in both Protasis and Apodosis:

si tū exercitusque valētis, bene est (Fam. v. 2), if you and the army are well, it is well. [Present Condition.]

haec igitur, si Rōmae es; sin abes, aut etiam si abes, haec negotia sic sē habent (Att. v. 18), this, then, if you are at Rome; but if you are away — or even if you are there — these matters are as follows. [Present Condition.]

si Caesarem probātis, in mē offenditis (B. C. ii. 32. 10), if you favor Caesar, you find fault with me. [Present Condition.]

si quī māgnis ingeniis in eō genere exstītērunt, nōn satis Graecōrum gloriæ respondērunt (Tusc. i. 3), if any have shown themselves of great genius in that department, they have failed to compete with the glory of the Greeks. [Past General Condition, not distinguished in form from Particular.]

accēpi Rōmā sine epistulā tuā fasciculum litterārum in quō, si modo valuisti et Rōmae fuisti, Philōtīmī dīcē esse culpam nōn tuam (Att. v. 17), I have received from Rome a bundle of letters without any from you, which, provided you have been well and at Rome, I take to be the fault of Philōtimus, not yours. [Mixed: Past condition and Present conclusion.]

quās litterās, si Rōmae es, vidēbis putēsne reddendās (id. v. 18), as to this letter, if you are at Rome, you will see whether in your opinion it ought to be delivered. [Mixed: Present and Future.]

si nēmō impetrāvit, adroganter rogō (Lig. 30), if no one has succeeded in obtaining it, my request is presumptuous. [Past and Present.]

1 Cf. the Greek forms corresponding to the various types of conditions: —

A. 1. el πράσσει τοῦτο, καλῶς ἔχει. 2. el ἔπρασσε τοῦτο, καλῶς ἔχει.
B. 1. ἔδω πράσω τοῦτο, καλῶς ἔχει. 2. el πράσων τοῦτο, καλῶς ἄν ἔχοι.
C. 1. el ἔπρασσε τοῦτο, καλῶς ἄν εἶχεν. 2. el ἔπραξε τοῦτο, καλῶς ἄν σχεν.
D. 1. ἔδω τις κλέπτη, κολάζεται. 2. el τις κλέπτω, ἐκολάζετο.
alpha. In these conditions the apodosis need not always be in the Indicative, but may assume any form, according to the sense:—

si placet . . . videamus (Cat. M. 15), if you please, let us see. [Hortatory Subjunctive, § 459.]
si nōndum satis cernitis, recordāmini (Mil. 61), if you do not yet see clearly, recollect. [Imperative.]
si quid habēs certius, velim scire (Att. iv. 10), if you have any trustworthy information, I should like to know it. [Subjunctive of Modesty, § 447.1]

Note.—Although the form of these conditions does not imply anything as to the truth of the supposition, the sense or the context may of course have some such implication:—

nōlite, si in nostrō omnium flētū nūllam lacrimam aspexitis Milōnis, hōc minus ei parcere (Mil. 92), do not, if amid the weeping of us all you have seen no tear [in the eyes] of Milo, spare him the less for that.

peṭimus a vōbris, lūdicēs, si qua divīna in tantis ingeniīs commendātīō dēbet esse, ut cum in vestram accipītās fidem (Arch. 31), we ask you, judges, if there ought to be anything in such genius to recommend it to us as by a recommendation of the gods, that you receive him under your protection.

In these two passages, the protasis really expresses cause: but the cause is put by the speaker in the form of a non-committal condition. His hearers are to draw the inference for themselves. In this way the desired impression is made on their minds more effectively than if an outspoken causal clause had been used.

Future Conditions

516. Future Conditions may be more vivid or less vivid.

1. In a more vivid future condition the protasis makes a distinct supposition of a future case, the apodosis expressing what will be the logical result.

2. In a less vivid future condition, the supposition is less distinct, the apodosis expressing what would be the result in the case supposed.

alpha. In the more vivid future condition the Future Indicative is used in both protasis and apodosis:—

sānābimur, si volēmus (Tusc. iii. 13), we shall be healed if we wish.

quod si legere aut audire volētis, . . . reperītis (Cat. M. 20), if you will [shall wish to] read or hear, you will find.

Note.—In English the protasis is usually expressed by the Present Indicative, rarely by the Future with shall. Often in Latin the Present Indicative is found in the protasis of a condition of this kind (cf. § 468):—

si vincimus, omnia nōbīs tūta erunt; si mētū cesserimus, eadem illa adversa fient (Sall. Cat. 58), if we conquer, all things will be safe for us; but if we yield through fear, those same things will become hostile.

si percēs, homīnum manibus perīssē lūvābit (Aen. iii. 606), if I perish, it will be pleasant to have perished at the hands of men.
b. In the less vivid future condition the Present Subjunctive is used in both protasis and apodosis:—

haec si tēcum patria loquātur, nōnne impetrāre dēbeat (Cat. i. 19), if your country should thus speak with you, ought she not to prevail?

quod si quis deus mihi largiātur, . . . valdē recūsem (Cat. M. 83), but if some god were to grant me this, I should stoutly refuse.

Note.—The Present Subjunctive sometimes stands in protasis with the Future (or the Present) Indicative in apodosis from a change in the point of view:—1

si diligenter attendāmus, intellegēmus (Inv. ii. 44), if we attend (should attend) carefully, we shall understand.

nisi hoc dicat, "īūre fāci," nōn habet dēfēsionēm (id. i. 18), unless he should say this, "I acted justifiably," he has no defence.

c. If the conditional act is regarded as completed before that of the apodosis begins, the Future Perfect is substituted for the Future Indicative in protasis, and the Perfect Subjunctive for the Present Subjunctive:—

si cum potuerō nōn vēnerō, tum erit inimicus (Att. ix. 2 A. 2), but if I do not come when I can, he will be unfriendly.

si ā corōnā relictus sim, nōn queam dicere (Brut. 192), if I should be deserted by the circle of listeners, I should not be able to speak.

Note.—The Future Perfect is often used in the apodosis of a future condition: as,—velhemen ter mihi grātum fēceris, sī hunc adulēscen tem hūmānītāte tuā comprehenderis (Fam. xiii. 15), you will do (will have done) me a great favor, if you receive this young man with your usual courtesy.

d. Any form denoting or implying future time may stand in the apodosis of a future condition. So the Imperative, the participles in -dus and -rus, and verbs of necessity, possibility, and the like:—

alia finis cōnstituendus est, sī prius quid maximē reprehendere Scipió solitus sit dīxerō (Lael. 59), another limit must be set, if I first state what Scipio was wont most to find fault with.

sī mē praeceperit fātum, vōs mandāsse mēmēntō (Q. C. ix. 6. 26), if fate cuts me off too soon, do you remember that I ordered this.

nisi oculis videritis insidiās Milōnī ā Clōdiō factās, nec dēprecātūri sumus nec postulātūri (Mil. 6), unless you see with your own eyes the plots laid against Milo by Clodius, I shall neither beg nor demand, etc.

nōn possum istum accūsāre, sī cupiam (Verr. iv. 87), I cannot accuse him, if I should (so) desire.

1 It often depends entirely upon the view of the writer at the moment, and not upon the nature of the condition, whether it shall be stated vividly or not; as in the proverbial "If the sky falls, we shall catch larks" the impossible condition is ironi
cally put in the vivid form, to illustrate the absurdity of some other supposed condi
tion stated by some one else.
e. Rarely the Perfect Indicative is used in apodosis with a Present or even a Future (or Future Perfect) in protasis, to represent the conclusion rhetorically as *already accomplished*:

\[\text{sí hoc bene fixum in animó est, vicistis (Liv. xxi. 44), if this is well fixed in your minds, you have conquered. [For you will have conquered.]}\]

\[\text{sí eundem [animum] habueritis, victímus (id. xxi. 43), if you shall have kept the same spirit, we have conquered.}\]

f. A future condition is frequently thrown back into past time, without implying that it is contrary to fact (§ 517). In such cases the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive may be used:

\[\text{nón poterat, nisi décertáre vellet (B. C. iii. 44), he was not able, unless he wished to fight.}\]

\[\text{tumulus appáruit, \ldots sí lúce palam írétur hostis praeventárus erat (Liv. xxii. 24), a hill appeared \ldots if they should go openly by daylight, the enemy would prevent. [The first two appear like Indirect Discourse, but are not. An observer describing the situation in the first example as present would say nón potest nisi velit (see d), and no indirect discourse would be thought of.]}\]

\[\text{Caesar sí peteret, \ldots nón quicquam próficeret (Hor. S. i. 3. 4), if even Caesar were to ask, he would gain nothing. [Here the construction is not contrary to fact, but is simply sí petat, nón próficiat, thrown into past time.]}\]

**Conditions Contrary to Fact**

517. In the statement of a supposition *impliedly false*, the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive are used in both protasis and apodosis.\(^1\) The Imperfect refers to present time, the Pluperfect to past:

\[\text{sí viveret, verba éius audírétis (Rosc. Com. 42), if he were living, you would hear his words. [Present.]}\]

\[\text{nisi tú ámisisses, numquam recépissem (Cat. M. 11), unless you had lost it, I should not have recovered it. [Past.]}\]

\[\text{sí meum cónsiliúm valuisset, tú hodié egérés, réspública nón tot duces ámbisisset (Phil. ii. 37), if my judgment had prevailed [as it did not], you would this day be a beggar, and the republic would not have lost so many leaders. [Mixed Present and Past.]}\]

\(^1\) The implication of falsity, in this construction, is not inherent in the subjunctive; but comes from the transfer of a future condition to past time. Thus the time for the happening of the condition has, at the moment of writing, already passed; so that, if the condition remains a condition, it must be contrary to fact. So past forms of the indicative implying a future frequently take the place of the subjunctive in apodosis in this construction (see c, d, below, and § 511).
a. In conditions contrary to fact the Imperfect often refers to past time, both in protasis and apodosis, especially when a repeated or continued action is denoted, or when the condition if true would still exist:
sī nihil litteris adiuvārentur, numquam sē ad eārum studium contulissent (Arch. 16), if they had not been helped at all by literature, they never would have given their attention to the study of it. [Without the condition, adiuvābantur.]
hīc sī mentis esset suae, ausus esset ēdūcere exercitum (Pison. 50), if he were of sane mind, would he have dared to lead out the army? [Here esset denotes a continued state, past as well as present.]
nōn concidissent, nisi illud receptāculum classibus nostrīs patēret (Verr. ii. 3), [the power of Carthage] would not have fallen, unless that station had been [constantly] open to our fleets. [Without the condition, patēbat.]

b. In the apodosis of a condition contrary to fact the past tenses of the Indicative may be used to express what was intended, or likely, or already begun. In this use, the Imperfect Indicative corresponds in time to the Imperfect Subjunctive, and the Perfect or Pluperfect Indicative to the Pluperfect Subjunctive:

sī licitum esset, mātrēs veniēbant (Verr. v. 129), the mothers were coming if it had been allowed.

in amplexīs filiae ruēbant, nisi lictōrēs obstītissent (Tac. Ann. xvi. 32), he was about rushing into his daughter’s arms, unless the lictors had opposed.

iam tūta tenēbam, nī gēns crudēlis ferrō invāsisset (Aen. vi. 358), I was just reaching a place of safety, had not the fierce people attacked me.

Note 1.—Here the apodosis may be regarded as elliptical. Thus,—mātrēs veniēbant (et vēnissent), the matrons were coming (and would have kept on) if, etc.

Note 2.—With pāne (and sometimes prope), almost, the Perfect Indicative is used in the apodosis of a past condition contrary to fact: as,—pons iter pāne hostibus dēdit, nī ìnus vir fuisset (Liv. ii. 10), the bridge had almost given a passage to the foe, if it had not been for one hero.

c. Verbs and other expressions denoting necessity, propriety, possibility, duty, when used in the apodosis of a condition contrary to fact, may be put in the Imperfect or Perfect Indicative.

Such are oportet, decet, dēbeō, possum, necesse est, opus est, and the Second Periphrastic Conjunction:—¹

nōn potuit fieri sapiēns, nisi nātus esset (Fin. ii. 103), he could not have become a sage, if he had not been born.

sī privātus esset hoc tempore, tamen is erat dēligendus (Manil. 50), if he were at this time a private citizen, yet he ought to be appointed.

1 Observe that all these expressions contain the idea of futurity (cf. p. 328, footnote). Thus, decet mē [hodiē] ēre crās, means it is proper for me [to-day] to go to-morrow; and, decēbat mē [heri] ēre hodiē, it was proper for me [yesterday] to go to-day, usually with the implication that I have not gone as I was bound to do.
quod esse caput dēbēbat, si probārī posset (Fin. iv. 23), what ought to be the main point, if it could be proved.

si ita putāset, certē optābilius Milōnī fuit (Mil. 31), if he had thought so, surely it would have been preferable for Milo.

Note 1.—In Present conditions the Imperfect Subjunctive (oportēret, possem, etc.) is the rule, the Indicative being rare; in Past conditions both the Subjunctive (usually Pluperfect) and the Indicative (usually Perfect) are common.

For pār erat, melius fuit, and the like, followed by the infinitive, see § 521. n.

Note 2.—The Indicative construction is carried still further in poetry: as,—si nōn alium iactāret odōrem, laurus erat (Georg. ii. 133), it were a laurel, but for giving out a different odor.

d. The participle in -ūrus with eram or fui may take the place of an Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive in the apodosis of a condition contrary to fact:—

quid enim futūrum fuit [= fuisset], si . . . (Liv. ii. 1), what would have happened if, etc.

relictūrī agrōs erant, nisi ad eōs Metellus litterās misisset (Verr. iii. 121), they would have abandoned their fields, if Metellus had not sent them a letter.

neque ambigitur quin . . . id factūrus fuerit, si . . . (Liv. ii. 1), nor is there any question that he would have done it, if, etc. [Direct: fēcisset.]

adeō parāta sēditiō fuit ut Othonem raptūrī fuerint, ni incerta noctis timuisset (Tac. H. i. 26), so far advanced was the conspiracy that they would have seized upon Otho, had they not feared the hazards of the night. [In a main clause: rapuissent, ni timuissent.]

e. The Present Subjunctive is sometimes used in poetry in the protasis and apodosis of conditions contrary to fact:—

nī comes admoneat, inruat (Aen. vi. 293), had not his companion warned him, he would have rushed on. [Cf. tū si hic sīs, aliter sentiās (Ter. And. 310), if you were in my place, you would think differently.]

Note 1.—This is probably a remnant of an old construction (see next note).

Note 2.—In old Latin the Present Subjunctive (as well as the Imperfect) is used in present conditions contrary to fact and the Imperfect (more rarely the Pluperfect) in past conditions of the same kind. Thus it appears that the Imperfect Subjunctive, like the Imperfect Indicative, once denoted past time, even in conditional sentences. Gradually, however, in conditional sentences, the Present Subjunctive was restricted to the less vivid future and the Imperfect (in the n. sin) to the present contrary to fact, while the Pluperfect was used in past conditions of this nature. The old construction, however, seems to have been retained as an archaism in poetry.

f. In Plautus and Terence absque mē (tē, etc.) is sometimes used to introduce conditions contrary to fact:—

absque tē esset, hodiē nusquam vivērem (Pl. Men. 1022), if it were not for you, I should not be alive to-day.

absque eō esset, rēctē ego mihi vidīssem (Ter. Ph. 188), if it had not been for him, I should have looked out for myself.
GENERAL CONDITIONS

518. General Conditions (§ 513. 2) have usually the same forms as Particular Conditions. But they are sometimes distinguished in the following cases:—

a. The Subjunctive is often used in the second person singular, to denote the act of an indefinite subject (you = any one). Here the Present Indicative of a general truth may stand in the apodosis:—

vita húmána prope utí ferrum est: si exercéas, conteritur; si nón exercéas, tamen róbígo interfícit (Cato de M.), human life is very like iron: if you use it, it wears away; if you don't use it, rust still destroys it.

virtútém necessárió glória, etiamst tú id nón agás, cónsequitur (Tusc. i. 91), glory necessarily follows virtue, even if that is not one's aim.

si prohibita ímpúne trànscederis, neque metus últrá neque pudor est (Tac. Ann. iii. 54), if you once overstep the bounds with impunity, there is no fear or shame any more.

b. In a general condition in present time, the protasis often takes the Perfect Indicative, and the apodosis the Present Indicative. For past time, the Pluperfect is used in the protasis, and the Imperfect in the apodosis:—

si quós aliquá parte membrórum inútilis nótáverunt, necárí iubent (Q. C. ix. 1. 25), if they [ever] mark any infirm in any part of their limbs, they [always] order them to be put to death. [Present.]

si á persequendó hostís détérre nequiverant, ab tergo circumveniébant (Iug. 50), if [ever] they were unable to prevent the enemy from pursuing, they [always] surrounded them in the rear. [Past.]

c. In later writers (rarely in Cicero and Cæsar), the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive are used in protasis, with the Imperfect Indicative in apodosis, to state a repeated or customary action in past time (Iterative Subjunctive):—

si quis á dominó prehenderéstur, concursú militúm éripiébátur (B. C. iii. 110), if any (runaway) was arrested by his master, he was (always) rescued by a mob of soldiers.

accusátóres, si facultás incideret, poenis adficiébántur (Tac. Ann. vi. 30), the accusers, whenever opportunity offered, were visited with punishment.

si quis collégam appelláset, ab eó ita discédébat ut paenitéret nón prióris décréto stetisse (Liv. iii. 36. 8), if any one appealed to a colleague, he [always] came off in such case that he repented not having submitted to the decree of the former decemvir. [Cf. Socrátès, quam sē cumque in partem dédisse, omnium fuit facile princeps (De Or. iii. 60), in whatever direction Socrates turned himself, he was (always) easily the foremost (if in any, etc.).]
Conditional Relative Clauses

519. A clause introduced by a Relative Pronoun or Relative Adverb may express a condition and take any of the constructions of Protasis¹ (§ 514):

qui enim vitīs modum adpōnit, is partem suscipit vitīorum (Tusc. iv. 42), he who [only] sets a limit to faults, takes up the side of the faults. [§§ 83, 519.]

qui mentiri solet, pēierāre cōnsuēvit (Rosc. Com. 46), whoever is in the habit of lying, is accustomed to swear falsely. [§§ 83, 519.]

quicquid potuit, potuit ipsa per sē (Leg. Agr. i. 20), whatever power she had, she had by herself. [§§ 83, 519.]

quod qui faciet, nōn aegritūdine sōlum vacābit, sed, etc. (Tusc. iv. 38), and he who does (shall do) this, will be free not only, etc. [§§ 83, 519.]

quisquis hue vēnerit, vāpulābit (Pl. Am. 309), whoever comes here shall get a thrashing. [§§ 83, 519.]

quiō volēs, sequar (Clu. 71), whithersove you wish (shall wish), I will follow. [§§ 83, 519.]

philosophia, cui qui pāreart, omne tempus aetātissine molestīa possit dēgerē (Cat. M. 2), philosophy, which if any one should obey, he would be able to spend his whole life without vexation. [§§ 83, 519.]

quaecumque vōs causa hūc attulisset, laetārē (De Or. ii. 15), I should be glad, whatever cause had brought you here (i.e. if any other, as well as the one which did). [§§ 83, 519.]

The relative in this construction is always indefinite in meaning, and very often in form.

520. The special constructions of General Conditions are sometimes found in Conditional Relative Clauses:

1. The Second Person Singular of the Subjunctive in the protasis with the Indicative of a general truth in the apodosis (§ 518. a):—

bonus tantum modo sēgniōr fit ubi neglegās, at malus improbior (lug. 31. 28), a good man merely becomes less diligent when you don't watch him, but a bad man becomes more shameless. [Present General Condition.]

2. The Perfect or Pluperfect Indicative in the protasis and the Present or Imperfect Indicative in the apodosis (§ 518. b):—

cum hūc vēnī, hoc ipsum nihil agere mē dēlectat (De Or. ii. 24), whenever I come here, this very doing nothing delights me (whenever I have come, etc.). [Present General Condition.]

¹ As in the Greek ὅσ ἄρ, ἦταν, etc.; and in statutes in English, where the phrases if any person shall and whoever shall are used indifferently.
cum rosam viderat, tum incipere ver arbitrabatur (Verr. v. 27), whenever he 
saw (had seen) a rose, then he thought spring was beginning. [Past 
General Condition.]

3. In later writers (rarely in Cicero and Cæsar) the Imperfect or 
Pluperfect Subjunctive in the protasis and the Imperfect Indicative 
in the apodosis (§ 518. c): —

ubi imbécillitās materiae postulāre vidērētur, pilae interpōnuntur (B. C. ii. 
16), wherever the weakness of the timber seemed to require, piles were put 
between. [Past General Condition: interpōnuntur = interpōnēbantur.]
quōcumque sē intulisset, victoriam sēcum trahēbat (Liv. vi. 8), wherever he 
avanced, he carried victory with him. [Past General Condition.]

Condition Disguised

521. In many sentences properly conditional, the Protasis is 
not expressed by a conditional clause, but is stated in some other 
form of words or implied in the nature of the thought.

a. The condition may be implied in a Clause, or in a Participle, 
Noun, Adverb, or some other word or phrase: —

facile mē paterer — illō ipsō iūdice quaerente — pró Sex. Rōscī dīcere (Rosc. 
Am. 85), I should readily allow myself to speak for Roscius if that very 
judge were conducting the trial. [Present contrary to fact: sī quaereret, 
paterer.]
nōn mihi, nisi admonētō, vēnisset in mentem (De Or. ii. 180), it would not have 
come into my mind unless [I had been] reminded. [Past contrary to fact: nisi admonitus essem.]
nūlla alia ġēns tantā mōle clādis nōn obrēt esset (Liv. xxii. 54), there is no 
other people that would not have been crushed by such a weight of disaster. 
[Past contrary to fact: sī alia fuisse.]
nēmō unquam sine māgnā spē immortālītātīs sē pró patriā offerret ad mortem 
(Tusc. i. 32), no one, without great hope of immortality, would ever expose 
himself to death for his country. [Present contrary to fact: nisi māgnam 
spem habēret.]

quid hunc paucōrum annōrum accessīō iuvāre potuisset (Lael. 11), what good 
could the addition of a few years have done him (if they had been added) ? 
[Past contrary to fact: sī accessīssent.]

quid igitur mihi ferārum laniātus oberrit nihil sentiēntī (Tusc. i. 104), what 
harm will the mangling by wild beasts do me if I don't feel anything 
(feeling nothing)? [Future more vivid: sī nihil sentiam.]

incitāta semel prōclīvi lābuntur sustinērīque nūllō modō possunt (id. iv. 42), 
if once given a push, they slide down rapidly and can in no way be 
checked. [Present General: sī incitāta sunt.]
**Note.**—In several phrases denoting *necessity, propriety*, or the like, the *Imperfect, Perfect, or Pluperfect Indicative of esse* is used in the apodosis of a condition contrary to fact, the protasis being implied in a subject *ininitive* (cf. 517. o):—

quantō melius fuerat prōmissum nōn esse servātum (Off. iii. 94), *how much better would it have been if the promise had not been kept!* [prōmissum . . . servātum = sī prōmissum nōn esse servātum.]

morī praeclārum fuit (Att. viii. 2. 2), *it would have been honorable to die.*

sed erat aequius Triārium aliquid dē dissēnsione nostrā iūdicāre (Fin. ii. 119), *but it would be more equitable if Triarius passed judgment on our dispute.* [Triārium iūdicāre = sī Triarius iūdicāret.]

satius fuit āmittere militēs (Inv. ii. 73), *it would have been better to lose the soldiers.* [āmittere = sī āmisisset.]

**b.** The condition may be contained in a wish (*Optative Subjunctive*), or expressed as an exhortation or command (*Hortatory Subjunctive* or *Imperative*):—

utinam quidem fuissem! molestus nōbīs nōn esset (Fam. xii. 3), *I wish I had been [chief]: he would not now be troubling us (i.e. if I had been).* [Optative Subjunctive.]

nātūram expellās furēa, tamen ūsequse recurret (Hor. Ep. i. 10. 24), *drive out nature with a pitchfork, still she will ever return.* [Hortatory.]

rogēs enim Aristōnem, neget (Fin. iv. 69), *for ask Aristotle, he would deny.* manent ingenia senibus, modo permaneat studium et industria (Cat. M. 22), *old men keep their mental powers, only let them keep their zeal and diligence* (§ 528. n.). [Hortatory.]

tolle hanc opūnōnem, lūctum sustuleris (Tusc. i. 30), *remove this notion, and you will have done away with grief.* [Imperative.]

**Note.**—The so-called *Concessive Subjunctive* with *ut* and *nē* often has the force of protasis (§ 527. a. n.): as,—*ut enim ratīōnem Platō nūllam ādferret, ipsā auctorītāte mē frangeret* (Tusc. i. 49), *even if Plato gave no reasons, [still] he would overpower me by his mere authority.*

**c.** Rarely the condition takes the form of an *independent clause*:

ridēs: mālōre cachinnō concutitur (Juv. iii. 100), *you laugh; he shakes with louder laughter (= if you laugh, he shakes).*

commovē: sentīēs (Tusc. iv. 54), *stir him up, [and] you'll find,* etc.

dē paupertāte agitūr: multi patientēs pauperēs commemorantur (id. iii. 57), *we speak of poverty; many patient poor are mentioned.*

For Conditional Relative Clauses, see §§ 519, 520.

**Condition Omitted**

522. The Protasis is often wholly omitted, but may be inferred from the course of the argument:—

poterat Sextilius impūne negāre: quis enim redargueret (Fin. ii. 55), *Sextilius might have denied with impunity; for who would prove him wrong (if he had denied)?
§§ 522, 523]

COMPLEX CONDITIONS

335

a. In expressions signifying necessity, propriety, and the like, the Indicative may be used in the apodosis of implied conditions, either future or contrary to fact: —

quod contrā decuit ab illé meum [corpus cremārī] (Cat. M. 84), whereas on the other hand mine ought to have been burnt by him.

nam nōs decēbat domum lūgēre ubi esset aliquis in lūcem ēditus (Tusc. i. 115), for it were fitting for us to mourn the house where a man has been born (but we do not).

quantō melius fuerat (Off. iii. 94), how much better it would have been.

illud erat aptius, aequum cuique concēdere (Fin. iv. 2), it would be more fitting to yield each one his rights.

ipsum enim exspectāre māgnum fuit (Phil. ii. 103), would it have been a great matter to wait for the man himself?

longum est ea dicere, sed . . . (Sest. 12), it would be tedious to tell, etc. [Future.]

Note 1.—In this construction, the Imperfect Indicative refers to present time; the Pluperfect to simple past time, like the Perfect. Thus oportēbat means it ought to be [now], but is not; oportuerat means it ought to have been, but was not.

Note 2.—In many cases it is impossible to say whether a protasis was present to the mind of the speaker or not (see third example above).

Complex Conditions

523. Either the Protasis or the Apodosis may be a complex idea in which the main statement is made with expressed or implied qualifications. In such cases the true logical relation of the parts is sometimes disguised: —

sī quis hōrum dixisset . . . sī verbum dē ré pūblicā fēcisset . . . multa plūra dixisse quam dixisset putārētur (Rosc. Am. 2), if any of these had spoken, in case he had said a word about politics he would be thought to have said much more than he did say. [Here the apodosis of dixisset is the whole of the following statement (sī . . . putārētur), which is itself conditioned by a protasis of its own: sī verbum, etc.].

quod sī in hōc mundō fieri sine deō nōn potest, nē in sphaērā quidem eōsdem mōtūs sine divīnō ingeniō potuisset imitārī (Tusc. i. 63), now if that cannot be done in this universe without divine agency, no more could [Archimedes] in his orrery have imitated the same revolutions without divine genius. [Here sī potest (a protasis with nothing implied) has for its apodosis the whole clause which follows, but potuisset has a contrary-to-fact protasis of its own implied in sine . . . ingeniō.]

peream male sī nōn optimum erat (Hor. S. ii. 1. 6), confound me (may I perish wretchedly) if it would n't be better. [Here peream is apodosis to the rest of the sentence, while the true protasis to optimum erat, contrary to fact, is omitted.]
Clauses of Comparison (Conclusion Omitted)

524. Conditional Clauses of Comparison take the Subjunctive, usually in the Present or Perfect unless the sequence of tenses requires the Imperfect or Pluperfect.

Such clauses are introduced by the comparative particles tamquam, tamquam si, quasi, ac si, ut si, velut si (later velut), poetic ceu (all meaning as if), and by quam si (than if):

tamquam clausa sit Asia (Fam. xii. 9), as if Asia were closed.
tamquam si claudus sim (Pl. Asin. 427), just as if I were lame.
ita hős [honöres] petunt, quasi honeste vixerint (Iug. 85), they seek them (offices) just as if they had lived honorably.
. quasi věrō nón speciē visā judicentur (Acad. ii. 58), as if forsooth visible things were not judged by their appearance.
similiter faciis ac si mě rogēs (N. D. iii. 8), you do exactly as if you asked me.
crūdēlītatem horrērent velut si cōram adesset (B. G. i. 32), they dreaded his cruelty (they said), as if he were present in person.
hīc ingentem pūgnām cernimus ceu cētera nusquam bella forent (Aen. ii. 438),
here we saw a great battle, as if there were no fighting elsewhere. [But sometimes with the indicative in poetry, as id. v. 88.]
magis ā mē abesse vidēbāre quam si domī essės (Att. vi. 5), you seemed to be absent from me more than if you were at home.

Note 1.—These subjunctive clauses are really future conditions with apodosis implied in the particle itself. Thus in tamquam si claudus sim the protasis is introduced by si, and the apodosis implied in tamquam.

Note 2.—The English idiom would lead us to expect the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive (contrary to fact) with these particles; but the point of view is different in the two languages. Thus the second example above is translated just as if I were lame,—as if it were a present condition contrary to fact; but it really means just as [it would be] if I should [at some future time] be lame, and so is a less vivid future condition requiring the Present Subjunctive. Similarly quasi honeste vixerint, as if they had lived honorably, is really as [they would do in the future] if they should have lived honorably and so requires the Perfect Subjunctive (§ 516. c).

a. Even after a primary tense, the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive (contrary to fact) is often used in conditional clauses of comparison:

aequē ā tē petō ac si mea negotiā essent (Fam. xiii. 43), I entreat you as much as if it were my own business.
ēius negotiām sīc velim suscipīās ut si esset rēs meā (id. vii. 20. 1), I would have you undertake his business as though it were my affair.

Note.—The practice differs with the different particles. Thus in Cicero a clause with tamquam or quasi almost always observes the sequence of tenses, but with quam si the Imperfect or Pluperfect is the rule.
Use of *sì* and its Compounds

525. The uses of some of the more common Conditional Particles may be stated as follows: —

α. *Sì* is used for *affirmative*, *nisi* (nī) and *sì nōn* for *negative conditions*.

1. With *nisi* (generally *unless*) the apodosis is stated as *universally true except* in the single case supposed, in which case it is (impliedly) *not true*: —

   *nisi* Conōn adest, maerea, *unless Conon is here, I mourn* (i.e. I am always in a state of grief except in the single case of Conon's presence, in which case I am not).

2. With *sì nōn* (*if not*) the apodosis is only stated as true in the (negative) case supposed, but as to other cases no statement is made: —

   *sì* Conōn nōn adest, maerea, *if Conon is not here, I mourn* (i.e. I mourn in the single case of Conon's absence, nothing being said as to other cases in which I may or may not mourn).

Note. — It often makes no difference in which of these forms the condition is stated.

3. Sometimes *nisi sì, except if, unless*, occurs: —

   nōlī putāre mē ad quemquam longiōrēs epistulās scribere, *nisi sì quis ad mē plūra scripsit* (Fam. xiv. 2), . . . except in case one writes more to me.

Note. — *Nī* is an old form surviving in a few conventional phrases and reappearing in poets and later writers.

β. *Nisi vērō* and *nisi forte* regularly introduce an objection or exception *ironically*, and take the Indicative: —

   *nisi vērō* L. Caesar crūdelior visus est (Cat. iv. 13), *unless indeed Lucius Caesar seemed too cruel*.

   *nisi forte volumus* Epicūrēorum opinīōnem sequī (Fat. 37), *unless, to be sure, we choose to follow the notion of the Epicureans*.

Note. — This is the regular way of introducing a *reductio ad absurdum* in Latin. *Nisi* alone is sometimes used in this sense: as, — *nisi ünum hōc faciam ut in puteō cēnām coquant* (Pl. Aul. 365), *unless I do this one thing, [make them] cook dinner in the well*.

γ. *Sīve (seu) . . . sive (seu)*, *whether . . . or*, introduce a condition in the form of an *alternative*. They may be used with any form of condition, or with different forms in the two members. Often also they are used without a verb: —

   nam illō locō libentissimē soleō ľīti, *sīve quid mēcum ipse cōgitō, sīve quid scribō aut legō* (Legg. ii. 1), *for I enjoy myself most in that place, whether I am thinking by myself, or am either writing or reading*.

Note. — *Sīve . . . seu and seu . . . sīve* are late or poetic.
d. Sin, but if, often introduces a supposition contrary to one that precedes: —

\[ \text{accusātor illum défendet si poterit; sin minus poterit, nēgābit (Inv. ii. 88),} \]

\[ \text{the accuser will defend him if he can; but if he cannot, he will deny.} \]

e. Nisi is often used loosely by the comic poets in the sense of only when a negative (usually nesciō) is expressed, or easily understood, in the main clause: —

\[ \text{nesciō: nisi mē dixisse nēmini certō sciō (Ter. Ph. 952), I don't know: only I am sure that I have n't told anybody.} \]

CONCESSIVE CLAUSES

526. The concessive idea is rather vague and general, and takes a variety of forms, each of which has its distinct history. Sometimes concession is expressed by the Hortatory Subjunctive in a sentence grammatically independent (§ 440), but it is more frequently and more precisely expressed by a dependent clause introduced by a concessive particle. The concessive force lies chiefly in the Conjunctions (which are indefinite or conditional in origin), and is often made clearer by an adversative particle (tamen, certo) in the main clause. As the Subjunctive may be used in independent clauses to express a concession, it is also employed in concessive clauses, and somewhat more frequently than the indicative.

527. The Particles of Concession (meaning although, granting that) are quamvis, ut, licet, etsi, tametsi, etiam si, quamquam, and cum.

Some of these take the Subjunctive, others the Indicative, according to the nature of the clause which each introduces.

a. Quamvis and ut take the Subjunctive: —

\[ \text{quamvis ipsī infantēs sint, tamēn . . . (Or. 76), however incapable of speaking:} \]

\[ \text{they themselves may be, yet, etc.} \]

\[ \text{quamvis scelerātī illī fuissent (De Or. i. 230), however guilty they might have been.} \]

\[ \text{quamvis cōmis in amīcis tuendīs fuit (Fin. ii. 80), amiable as he may have been in keeping his friends.} \]

\[ \text{ut nēminem aliun rogāset (Mil. 46), even if he had asked no other.} \]

\[ \text{ut enim nōn efficiās quod vis, tamēn mors ut malum nōn sit efficiēs (Tusc. i. 16), for even if you do not accomplish what you wish, still you will prove that death is not an evil.} \]

\[ \text{ut ratīōnem Platō nūllam adferet (id. i. 49), though Plato adduced no reasons.} \]

Note. — Quamvis means literally as much as you will. Thus in the first example above, let them be as incapable as you will, still, etc. The subjunctive with quamvis is hortatory, like that with nē (§ 440); that with ut (ut nōn) is of uncertain origin.

b. Licet, although, takes the Present or Perfect Subjunctive: —

\[ \text{licet omnēs mihi terrōrēs periculaque impendeaunt (Bosc. Am. 31), though all terrors and perils should menace me.} \]
Note. — Licet is properly a verb in the present tense, meaning it is granted. Hence the subjunctive clause is by the sequence of tenses limited to the Present and Perfect. The concessive clause with licet is hortatory in origin, but may be regarded as a substantive clause serving as the subject of the impersonal verb (§ 565. n. 1).

c. Etsi, etiam si, tametsi, even if, take the same constructions as si (see § 514): —

etsi abest mätüritas, tamen nōn est inútile (Fam. vi. 18. 4), though ripeness of age is wanting, yet it is not useless, etc.

etsi numquam dubium fuit, tamen perspiciō (id. v. 19), although it has never been doubtful, yet I perceive, etc.

etsi statueram (id. v. 5), though I had determined.

etsi nihil aliud abstulissētis, tamen contentōs vōs esse oportēbat (Sull. 90), even if you had taken away nothing else, you ought to have been satisfied.

etiam si quod scribās nōn habēbis, scribitō tamen (Fam. xvi. 26), even if you [shall] have nothing to write, still write.

sed ea tametsi vōs parvī pendēbātis (Sall. Cat. 52. 9), but although you regarded those things as of small account.

Note 1. — Tametsi with the subjunctive is very rare.

Note 2. — A protasis with si often has a concessive force: as, — ego, si essent immīdiae mihi cum C. Caesare, tamen hoc tempore rei publicae consulere... débērem (Prov. Cons. 47), as for me, even if I had private quarrels with Caesar, it would still be my duty to serve the best interests of the state at this crisis.

d. Quamquam, although, introduces an admitted fact and takes the Indicative: —

 omnibus — quamquam ruit ipse suis clādibus — pestem dēnūntiat (Phil. xiv. 8), though he is breaking down under his disasters, still he threatens all with destruction.

Note. — Quamquam more commonly means and yet, introducing a new proposition in the indicative: as, — quamquam haec quidem iam tolerābilia vidēbantur, etsi, etc. (Mil. 76), and yet these, in truth, seemed now bearable, though, etc.

e. The poets and later writers frequently use quamvis and quamquam like etsi, connecting them with the Indicative or the Subjunctive, according to the nature of the condition: —

quamquam movērētur (Liv. xxxvi. 34), although he was moved.

Pollio amat nostram, quamvis est rūstica, mūsam (Ecl. iii. 84), Pollio loves my muse, though she is rustic.

quamvis pervēnerās (Liv. ii. 40), though you had come.

f. Ut, as, with the Indicative, may be equivalent to a concession:

vērum ut errāre potuisti, sic dēcīpi té nōn potuisses quis nōn videt (Fam. x. 20. 2), suppose you could have been mistaken, who does not see that you cannot have been deceived in this way?

For cum concessive, see § 549; for qui concessive, see § 535. e. For concession expressed by the Hortatory Subjunctive (negative ne), see § 440.
CLAUSES OF PROVISO

528. Dum, modo, dummodo, and tantum ut, introducing a Proviso, take the Subjunctive. The negative with these particles is nē:

öderint dum metuant (Off. i. 97), let them hate, if only they fear.
valētūdō modo bona sit (Brut. 64), provided the health be good.
dummodo inter nē atque tē mūrus intersit (Cat. i. 10), provided only the wall (of the city) is between us.
tantum ut sciant (Att. xvi. 11. 1), provided only they know.
modo nē sit ex pecudum genere (Off. i. 105), provided [in pleasure] he be not of the herd of cattle.
id faciat saepē, dum nē lassus fiat (Cato R. R. v. 4), let him do this often, provided he does not get tired.
dummodo ea (sevēritās) nē variētur (Q. Fr. i. 1. 20), provided only it (strictness) be not allowed to swerve.
tantum nē noceat (Ov. M. ix. 21), only let it do no harm.

Note.—The Subjunctive with modo is hortatory or optative; that with dum and dummodo, a development from the use of the Subjunctive with dum in temporal clauses, § 553 (compare the colloquial so long as my health is good, I don't care).

a. The Hortatory Subjunctive without a particle sometimes expresses a proviso:

sint Maecēnātēs, non deerunt Marōnēs (Mart. viii. 56. 5), so there be Mæcenas, Virgils will not be lacking.

b. The Subjunctive with ut (negative nē) is sometimes used to denote a proviso, usually with ita in the main clause:

probāta condiciō est, sed ita ut ille praesidia dēdīc(eret) (Att. vii. 14. 1), the terms were approved, but only on condition that he should withdraw the garrisons.

Note.—This is a development of the construction of Characteristic or Result. For a clause of Characteristic expressing Proviso, see § 535. d.

CLAUSES OF PURPOSE (FINAL CLAUSES)

529. The Subjunctive in the clause of Purpose is hortatory in origin, coming through a kind of indirect discourse construction (for which see § 592). Thus, misit lēgātōs qui dīcerent means he sent ambassadors who should say, i.e. who were directed to say; in the direct orders the verb would be dicite, which would become dicant in the Indirect Discourse of narrative (§ 588) or dicent in the past (cf. hortatory subjunctive in past tenses, § 439. b). The Subjunctive with ut and nē is, in general, similar in origin.

530. A clause expressing purpose is called a Final Clause.
531. Final Clauses take the Subjunctive introduced by ut (utī), negative nē (ut nē), or by a Relative Pronoun or Adverb:—
1. Pure Clauses of Purpose, with ut (utī) or nē (ut nē), express the purpose of the main verb in the form of a modifying clause:—

ab arātrō abdūxĕrant Cincinnātum, ut dictātor esset (Fin. ii. 12), they brought Cincinnatus from the plough that he might be dictator.

ut sint auxiliō suis, subsistunt (B. C. i. 80), they halt in order to support (be an aid to) their own men.

nē militēs oppidum inrumperent, portās obstruīt (id. i. 27), he barricaded the gates, in order that the soldiers might not break into the town.

scālās parāri iubet, nē quam facultātem dimittat (id. i. 28), he orders scaling-ladders to be got ready, in order not to let slip any opportunity.

ut nē sit impūne (Mil. 31), that it be not with impunity.

Note 1.—Sometimes the conjunction has a correlative (ideō, idcirco, eō cōnsiliō, etc.) in the main clause (cf. § 561. a):—

lēgum idcirco servī sumus, ut liberi simus (Clu. 146), for this reason we are subject to the laws, that we may be free.

cōpīs trānsdūxit eō cōnsiliō, ut castellum expūgnāret (cf. B. G. ii. 9), he led the troops across with this design—to storm the fort.

Note 2.—Ut nōn sometimes occurs in clauses of purpose when nōn belongs to some particular word: as, — ut plūra nōn dicam (Manil. 44); to avoid unnecessary talk.

2. Relative Clauses of Purpose are introduced by the relative pronoun qui or a relative adverb (ubi, unde, quō, etc.). The antecedent is expressed or implied in the main clause:—

mittitur L. Dēcīdius Saxa qui locī nātūram perspiciat (B. C. i. 66), Lucius Dēcīdius Saxa is sent to examine the ground (who should examine, etc.).

scribēbat orātiōnēs quās alīi dicerent (Brut. 206), he wrote speeches for other men to deliver.

eō exstinctō fore unde discerem nēminem (Cat. M. 12), that when he was dead there would be nobody from whom (whence) I could learn.

huic nē ubi cōnsisteret quidem contra tē locum reliquīt (Quinct. 73), you have left him no ground even to make a stand against you.

habēbam quō cōnflugerem (Fam. iv. 6. 2), I had [a retreat] whither I might flee.

Note. — In this construction qui = ut is (etc.), ubi = ut ibi, and so on (§ 537. 2).

a. The ablative quō (= ut eō) is used as a conjunction in final clauses which contain a comparative:—

comprimere eōrum audāciam, quō facilius cēterōrum animi frangerentur (Fam. xv. 4. 10), to repress their audacity, that the spirit of the others might be broken more easily (by which the more easily).

libertāte fūsus est, quō impūnius dicāx esset (Quinct. 11), he took advantage of liberty, that he might bluster with more impunity.

Note. — Occasionally quō introduces a final clause that does not contain a comparative: as,—L. Sulla exercitum, quō sibi fidum faceret, lūxuriōse habuerat (Sall. Cat. 11), Lucius Sulla had treated the army luxuriously, in order to make it devoted to him.

For quōminus (= ut eō minus) after verbs of hindering, see § 558. b.
532. The principal clause, on which a final clause depends, is often to be supplied from the context: —

ac nē longum sit . . . iussimus (Cat. iii. 10), and, not to be tedious, we ordered, etc. [Strictly, in order not to be tedious, I say we ordered.]

sed ut ad Dionysium redeāmus (Tusc. v. 63), but to return to Dionysius.

sed ut eōdem revertar, causa haec fuit timōris (Fam. vi. 7. 3), but, to return to the same point, this was the cause of fear.

satis inconsiderāti fuit, nē dicam audācis (Phil. xiii. 12), it was the act of one rash enough, not to say daring.

Note 1. — By a similar ellipsis the Subjunctive is used with nēdum (sometimes nē), still less, not to mention that: —

nēdum salvi esse possimus (Clu. 95), much less could we be safe.

nēdum istī nōn statim conquisitūrī sint aliquid sceleris et flagitū (Leg. Agr. ii. 97), far more will they hunt up at once some sort of crime and scandal.

nēdum in mari et viā sit facile (Fam. xvi. 8), still less is it easy at sea and on a journey.

quippe secundae rēs sapientium animōs fatigant; nē illī corruptūs mōribus victoriae temperārent (Sall. Cat. 11), for prosperity overmasters the soul even of the wise; much less did they with their corrupt morals put any check on victory.

Note 2. — With nēdum the verb itself is often omitted: as, — aptius hūmānītātī tuae quam tōta Peloponnesūs, nēdum Patrae (Fam. vii. 28. 1), fitter for your refinement than all Peloponnesus, to say nothing of Patrae.

For Substantive Clauses involving purpose, see §§ 563-566.

533. The Purpose of an action is expressed in Latin in various ways; but never (except in idiomatic expressions and rarely in poetry) by the simple Infinitive as in English (§ 460).

The sentence, they came to seek peace, may be rendered —

(1) vēnērunt ut pācem peteriaent. [Final clause with ut (§ 531. 1).]

(2) vēnērunt qui pācem peteriaent. [Final clause with Relative (§ 531. 2).]

(3) [vēnērunt ad petendum pācem.] Not found with transitive verbs (§ 506, n. 2), but cf. ad pārendum senātū. [Gerund with ad (§ 506).]

(4) vēnērunt ad petendum pācem. [Gerundive with ad (§ 506).]

(5) vēnērunt pācem petēndī causā (grātiā). [Gen. of Gerund with causā (§ 504. b).]

(6) vēnērunt pācis petenda causā (grātiā). [Gen. of Gerundive with causā (§ 504. b).]

(7) vēnērunt pācem petītūrī. [Future participle (§ 499. 2); in later writers.]

(8) vēnērunt pācem petītum. [Supine in -um (§ 509).]

These forms are not used indifferently, but —

a. The usual way of expressing purpose is by ut (negative nē), unless the purpose is closely connected with some one word, in which case a relative is more common: —
§§ 533-535] CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC 343

lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgem mittunt, ut eō dēprecatōre ā Sēquanis impetrārent (B. G. i. 9), they send envoys to Dumnorix, in order through his intercession to obtain (this favor) from the Sequani.
militēs misit ut eōs qui fāgerant persequerentur (id. v. 10), he sent the soldiers to follow up those who had fled.
Cūriō praemittit equitēs qui primum impetum sustineant (B. C. ii. 26), Curio sends forward cavalry to withstand the first attack.

b. The Gerund and Gerundive constructions of purpose are usually limited to short expressions, where the literal translation, though not the English idiom, is nevertheless not harsh or strange.
c. The Supine is used to express purpose only with verbs of motion, and in a few idiomatic expressions (§ 509).
d. The Future Participle used to express purpose is a late construction of inferior authority (§ 499. 2).

For the poetical Infinitive of Purpose, see § 460. c. For the Present Participle in a sense approaching that of purpose, see § 490. 3.

CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC

534. The relative clause of Characteristic with the Subjunctive is a development peculiar to Latin. A relative clause in the Indicative merely states something as a fact which is true of the antecedent; a characteristic clause (in the Subjunctive) defines the antecedent as a person or thing of such a character that the statement made is true of him or it and of all others belonging to the same class. Thus, — nōn potest exercitum continēre imperātor qui sē ipse nōn continet (indicative) means simply, that commander who does not (as a fact) restrain himself cannot restrain his army; whereas nōn potest exercitum continēre imperātor qui sē ipse nōn continet (subjunctive) would mean, that commander who is not such a man as to restrain himself, etc., that is, who is not characterized by self-restraint.

This construction has its origin in the potential use of the subjunctive (§ 445). Thus, in the example just given, qui sē ipse nōn continet would mean literally, who would not restrain himself (in any supposable case), and this potential idea passes over easily into that of general quality or characteristic. The characterizing force is most easily felt when the antecedent is indefinite or general. But this usage is extended in Latin to cases which differ but slightly from statements of fact, as in some of the examples below.

The use of the Subjunctive to express Result comes from its use in Clauses of Characteristic. Thus, nōn sum ita hebes ut haec dicam means literally, I am not dull in the manner (degree) in which I should say this, hence, I am not so dull as to say this. Since, then, the characteristic often appears in the form of a supposed result, the construction readily passes over into Pure Result, with no idea of characteristic; as, — tantus in cūriā clamor factus est ut populus concurret (Verr. ii. 47), such an outcry was made in the senate-house that the people hurried together.

535. A Relative Clause with the Subjunctive is often used to indicate a characteristic of the antecedent, especially where the antecedent is otherwise undefined: —
neque enim tū is es qui nesciās (Fam. v. 12. 6), for you are not such a one as not to know. [Here is is equivalent to such, and is defined only by the relative clause that follows.]
multa dicunt quae vix intellegam (Fin. iv. 2), they say many things which (such as) I hardly understand.
pāci quae nihil habitūra sit insidiārum semper est consulendum (Off. i. 35), we must always aim at a peace which shall have no plots.

a. A Relative Clause of Characteristic is used after general expressions of existence or non-existence, including questions which imply a negative.

So especially with sunt quī, there are [some] who; quis est quī, who is there who?

sunt quī discessum animī ā corpore putent esse mortem (Tusc. i. 18), there are some who think that the departure of soul from body constitutes death.
erant quī cēnsērent (B. C. ii. 30), there were some who were of the opinion, etc.
erant quī Helvidium miserārentūr (Tac. Ann. xvi. 29), there were some who pitied Helvidius. [Cf. est cum (n. 3, below).]

quis est qui id nōn maximis efferat laudibus (Lael. 24), who is there that does not extol it with the highest praise?
nihil videō quod timeam (Fam. ix. 16. 3), I see nothing to fear.
nihil est quod adventum nostrum extimēscās (Fam. ix. 26. 4), there is no reason why you should dread my coming.

unde agger comportāri possēt nihil erat reliquum (B. C. ii. 15), there was nothing left from which an embarkment could be got together.

Note 1.—After general negatives like nēmō est quī, the Subjunctive is regular; after general affirmatives like sunt quī, it is the prevailing construction, but the Indicative sometimes occurs; after multī (nōn nūllī, quiādam) sunt quī, and similar expressions in which the antecedent is partially defined, the choice of mood depends on the shade of meaning which the writer wishes to express: —
sunt bēstiae quaedam in quibus inest aliquid simile virtūtis (Fin. v. 38), there are certain animals in which there is something like virtue.

But, — inventī multī sunt quī vitam profundere prō patriā parāti essent (Off. i. 84), many were found of such a character as to be ready to give their lives for their country.

Note 2.—Characteristic clauses with sunt quī etc. are sometimes called Relative Clauses with an Indefinite Antecedent, but are to be carefully distinguished from the Indefinite Relative in protasis (§ 520).

Note 3.—The phrases est cum, fuit cum, etc. are used like est quī, sunt quī: as, — ac fuit cum nihil quoque initiūm requīscendī fore īustum arbitrārer (De Or. i. 1), and there was a time when I thought a beginning of rest would be justifiable on my part.

b. A Relative Clause of Characteristic may follow unus and sōlus:
nil admirārī prope rēs est ūna sōlaque quae possit facere et servāre bētānum (Hor. Ep. i. 6. 1), to wonder at nothing is almost the sole and only thing that can make and keep one happy.
sōlus es cīius in vīctoriā ceciderit nēmō nisi armātus (Delot. 34), you are the only man in whose victory no one has fallen unless armed.
CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC

§ 535

e. A clause of Result or Characteristic with quam ut, quam qui (rarely with quam alone), may be used after comparatives:—

Canachi sígná rigidítárem sunt quam ut imitentur vértátēm (Brut. 70), the statues of Canachus are too stiff to represent nature (stiffer than that they should).

máióres árborés caedébant quam quás feríes miles posset (Liv. xxxiii. 5), they cut trees too large for a soldier to carry (larger than what a soldier could carry).

Note.—This construction corresponds in sense to the English too . . . to.

d. A relative clause of characteristic may express restriction or proviso (cf. § 528. b):—

quod sciam, so far as I know (lit. as to what I know).

Catónis órátiónés, quás quidem invénerim (Brut. 65), the speeches of Cato, at least such as I have discovered.

servus est némó, quí modo tolerábili condícione sit servítūtis (Cat. iv. 16), there is not a slave, at least in any tolerable condition of slavery.

e. A Relative Clause of Characteristic may express cause or concession:

peccássë mihi videor quí á tē discesserim (Fam. xvi. 1), I seem to myself to have done wrong because I have left you. [Causal.]

virum simplicém quí nōs nihil cēlet (Or. 230), O guileless man, who hides nothing from us! [Causal.]

egomet quí sērō Graecáss litteráss attigissem, tamen complúrēs Athénís diēs sum commórátus (De Or. i. 82), I myself, though I began Greek literature late, yet, etc. (lit. [a man] who, etc.). [Concessive.]

Note 1.—In this use the relative is equivalent to cum is etc. It is often preceded by ut, utpote, or quippe:—

nec cónsil, ut quí id ipsum quaesisset, moram certásmini fécit (Liv. xliii. 7), nor did the consul delay the fight, since he had sought that very thing (as [being one] who had sought, etc.).

Lúcius, fráterélus, utpote quí peregré dépúgnārit, familiam dúcit (Phil. v. 30),

Lúcius, his brother, leads his household, inasmuch as he is a man who has fought it out abroad.

convívia cum patre nón inibat, quippe quí nē in oppidum quidem nisi perrārō veníret (Rosc. Am. 52), he did not go to dinner parties with his father, since he did not even come to town except very rarely.

Note 2.—The Relative of Cause or Concession is merely a variety of the Characteristic construction. The quality expressed by the Subjunctive is connected with the action of the main verb either as cause on account of which (since) or as hindrance in spite of which (although).

f. Dignus, indignus, aptus, idóneus take a subjunctive clause with a relative (rarely ut). The negative is nōn:—

digna in quibus élabóraént (Tusc. i. 1), (things) worth spending their toil on (worthily on which they should, etc.).

digna rés est ubi tū nervós intendás tuós (Ter. Eun. 312), the affair is worthy of your stretching your sinews (worthily wherein you should, etc.).
idōneus qui impetret (Manil. 57), fit to obtain.
indignī ut redimerēmur (Liv. xxii. 59. 17), unworthy to be ransomed.

Note 1.—This construction is sometimes explained as a relative clause of purpose, but it is more closely related to characteristic.

Note 2.—With dignus etc., the poets often use the Infinitive:—
fōns rivō dare nōmen idōneus (Hor. Ep. i. 16. 12), a source fit to give a name to a stream.
aetās mollis et apta regi (Ov. A. A. i. 10), a time of life soft and easy to be guided.
vivere dignus erās (Ov. M. x. 633), you were worthy to live.

CLAUSES OF RESULT (CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES)

536. The Subjunctive in Consecutive Clauses is a development of the use of that mood in Clauses of Characteristic (as explained in § 534).

537. Clauses of Result take the Subjunctive introduced by ut, so that (negative, ut nōn), or by a relative pronoun or relative adverb.

1. Pure Clauses of Result, with ut or ut nōn, express the result of the main verb in the form of a modifying clause:—
tanta vis probitātis est ut eam in hoste diligāmus (Lael. 29), so great is the power of goodness that we love it even in an enemy.
pūgnātur ācriter ad novissimum agmen, adeō ut paene terga convertant (B. C. i. 80), there is sharp fighting in the rear, so (to such a degree) that they almost take flight.
multa rūmor adfingēbat, ut paene bellum consēctum vidērētur (id. i. 53), rumor added many false reports, so that the war seemed almost ended.

2. Relative Clauses of Result are introduced by the relative pronoun qui or a relative adverb (ubi, unde, quō, etc.). The antecedent is expressed or implied in the main clause.

The Relative in this construction is equivalent to ut with the corresponding demonstrative:—qui = ut is (etc.), ubi = ut ibi, and so on:

nam est innocentia affectiō tālis animī quae noceat nēminī (Tusc. iii. 16), for innocence is such a quality of mind as to do harm to no one.
sunt aliae causae quae plānē efficiant (Top. 59), there are other causes such as to bring to pass.
nūlla est celeritās quae possit cum animī celeritāte contendere (Tusc. i. 43), there is no swiftness which can compare with the swiftness of the mind.
quis nāvīgāvit qui nōn sē mortis periculō committeret (Manil. 31), who went to sea who did not incur the peril of death?

Note 1.—Since the relative clause of Result is a development from the relative clause of Characteristic (§ 534), no sharp line can be drawn between the two constructions. In doubtful cases, it is better to attempt no distinction or to describe the clause as one of Characteristic.

Note 2.—Clauses of Result are often introduced by such correlative words as tam, tālis, tantus, ita, sic, adeō, ūisque eō, which belong to the main clause.
a. A Negative Result is introduced by ut nōn, ut nēmō, quī nōn, etc., not by nē: —

multīs gravibusque volneribus cōnfectus ut iam sē sustinēre nōn posset (B. G. ii. 25), used up with many severe wounds so that he could no longer stand. tantā vit in Pompeī equītēs impetum fēcērunt ut eōrum nēmō cōnsisteret (B. C. iii. 93), they attacked Pompey’s cavalry with such vigor that not one of them stood his ground.

nēmō est tam senex quī sē annum nōn putet posse vivere (Cat. M. 24), nobody is so old as not to think that he can live a year.

Note.—When the result implies an effect intended (not a simple purpose), ut nē or nē is sometimes used as being less positive than ut nōn: — [librum] ita corrigās nē mihi nocēat (Caecina, Fam. vi. 7. 6), correct the book so that it may not hurt me.

b. Frequently a clause of result or characteristic is used in a restrictive sense, and so amounts to a Proviso (cf. § 535. d): —

hoc ita est ūtile ut nē plānē inlūdāmur ab accusātōribus (Rosc. Am. 55), this is so far useful that we are not utterly mocked by the accusers (i.e. useful only on this condition, that, etc.).

nihil autem est molestum quod nōn désiderēs (Cat. M. 47), but nothing is troublesome which (= provided that) you do not miss.

c. The clause of result is sometimes expressed in English by the Infinitive with to or so as to or an equivalent: —

tam longē aberam ut nōn vidērem, I was too far away to see (so far that I did not see; cf. § 535. c).

Note.—Result is never expressed by the Infinitive in Latin except by the poets in a few passages (§ 461. a).

538. The constructions of Purpose and Result are precisely alike in the affirmative (except sometimes in tense sequence, § 485. c); but, in the negative, Purpose takes nē, Result ut nōn etc.: —

cūstōditus est nē effugeret, he was guarded in order that he might not escape. cūstōditus est ut nōn effugeret, he was guarded so that he did not escape.

So in negative Purpose clauses nē quis, nē quid, nē ūllus, nē quō, nē quandō, nēcubi, etc. are almost always used; in negative Result clauses, ut nēmō, ut nihil, ut ūllus, etc.: —

(1) cernere nē quis eōs, neu quis contingere posset (Aen. i. 413), that no one might see them, no one touch them. [Purpose.]

nē quandō liberis prōscriptōrum bona patria reddantur (Rosc. Am. 145), lest at some time the patrimony of the proscribed should be restored to their children.

ipse nē quō inciderem, reverti Formiās (Att. viii. 3. 7), that I might not come upon him anywhere, I returned to Formiās.
CAUSAL CLAUSES

539. Causal Clauses take either the Indicative or the Subjunctive, according to their construction; the idea of cause being contained, not in the mood itself, but in the form of the argument (by implication), in an antecedent of causal meaning (like propterē), or in the connecting particles.

Quod is in origin the relative pronoun (stem quo-) used adverbially in the accusative neuter (cf. § 214. d) and gradually sinking to the position of a colorless relative conjunction (cf. English that and see § 222). Its use as a causal particle is an early special development. Quia is perhaps an accusative plural neuter of the relative stem qui-, and seems to have developed its causal sense more distinctly than quod, and at an earlier period. It is used (very rarely) as an interrogative, why? (so in classical Latin with nam only), and may, like quandō, have developed from an interrogative to a relative particle.

Quoniam (for quom iam) is also of relative origin (quom being a case-form of the pronominal stem quo-). It occurs in old Latin in the sense of when (cf. quom, cum), from which the causal meaning is derived (cf. cum causal). The Subjunctive with quod and quia depends on the principle of Informal Indirect Discourse (§ 502).

Quandō is probably the interrogative quam (how?) compounded with a form of the pronominal stem do- (cf. dum, dō-nec). It originally denoted time (first interrogatively, then as a relative), and thus came to signify cause. Unlike quod and quia, it is not used to state a reason in informal indirect discourse and therefore is never followed by the Subjunctive.

540. The Causal Particles quod and quia take the Indicative, when the reason is given on the authority of the writer or speaker; the Subjunctive, when the reason is given on the authority of another:

1. Indicative:

   cum tibi agam grātiās quod mē vivere coēgisti (Att. iii. 3), when I may thank you that you have forced me to live.

   cūr īgitur pācem nōlo? quia turpis est (Phil. vii. 9), why then do I not wish for peace? Because it is disgraceful.

   ita fit ut adsint propterē quod officium sequuntur, taceant autem quia periculum vītant (Rosc. Am. 1), so it happens that they attend because they follow duty, but are silent because they seek to avoid danger.
CAUSAL CLAUSES

§ 540

2. Subjunctive:

mihi gratulabäre quod audissent me meam pristinam dignitatem obtiner (Fam. iv. 14. 1), you congratulated me because [as you said] you had heard that I had regained my former dignity.

noctā ambulābat Themistocles quod somnum capere nōn possit (Tusc. iv. 44), Themistocles used to walk about at night because [as he said] he could not sleep.

mea māter irāta est quia nōn redierim (Pl. Cist. 101), my mother is angry because I did n't return.

Note 1.—Quod introduces either a fact or a statement, and accordingly takes either the Indicative or the Subjunctive. Quia regularly introduces a fact; hence it rarely takes the Subjunctive. Quoniam, inasmuch as, since, when now, now that, has reference to motives, excuses, justifications, and the like and takes the Indicative.

Note 2.—Under this head what the speaker himself thought under other circumstances may have the Subjunctive (§ 592. 3. n.): as, — ego laeta visa sum quia soror vēnisset (Pl. Mil. 387), I seemed (in my dream) glad because my sister had come.

So with quod even a verb of saying may be in the Subjunctive: as, — redit quod sē oblītum nesciō quid diceret (Off. i. 40), he returned because he said he had forgotten something.

Note 3.—Nōn quod, nōn quia, nōn quō, introducing a reason expressly to deny it, take the Subjunctive; but the Indicative sometimes occurs when the statement is in itself true, though not the true reason. In the negative, nōn quin (with the Subjunctive) may be used in nearly the same sense as nōn quod nōn. After a comparative, quam quō or quam quod is used: —

pugilēs ingemēscunt, nōn quod dolēant, sed quia profundēnā voce omne corpus intenditur (Tusc. ii. 56), boxers groan, not because they are in pain, but because by giving vent to the voice the whole body is put in a state of tension.

nōn quia rēctor ad Alpēs via esset, sed crēdēns (Liv. xxi. 31. 2), not because the route to the Alps was more direct, but believing, etc.

nōn quin parī virtūte et voluntāte allīj fuerint, sed tantam causam nōn habuērunt (Phil. vii. 6), not that there were not others of equal courage and good-will, but they had not so strong a reason.

haec amōre magis impulsus scribenda ad tē putāvi, quam quō tē arbitrārēr monitis et praeceptūs egēre (Fam. x. 3. 4), this I thought I ought to write to you, rather from the impulse of (prompted by) affection than because I thought that you needed advice and suggestion.

a. Quoniam and quandō, since, introduce a reason given on the authority of the writer or speaker, and take the Indicative: —

locus est ā mē, quoniam ita Mureēna voluit, retrāctandus (Mur. 54), I must review the point, since Murena has so wished.

quandō ita vis, dī bene vortant (Pl. Trin. 573), since you so wish, may the gods bless the undertaking.

quandō ad māiōra nāti sumus (Fin. v. 21), since we are born for greater things.

Note.—The Subjunctive with quoniam is unclassical. Quandō, since, in the causal sense, is mostly archaic or late. Quandō, when, is used as interrogative, relative, and indefinite: as, — quandō? hodiē, when? to-day; sī quandō, if ever.
b. Causal clauses introduced by quod, quia, quoniam, and quando take the Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse, like any other dependent clause (see § 580).

c. A Relative, when used to express cause, regularly takes the Subjunctive (see § 535. e).

d. Cum causal takes the Subjunctive (see § 549).

For Substantive Clauses with quod, see § 572.

TEMPORAL CLAUSES

541. Temporal Clauses are introduced by particles which are almost all of relative origin. They are construed like other relative clauses, except where they have developed into special idiomatic constructions.¹

For list of Temporal Particles, see p. 138.

Temporal Clauses may be classified as follows:—

I. Conditional Relative Clauses: ubi, ut, cum, quando, in Protasis (§ 542).

II. Clauses with postquam, ubi, etc. (Indicative), (§ 543).

III. Clauses with cum { 1. Cum temporal (§§ 545-548).

2. Cum causal or concessive (§ 549).

IV. Clauses with antequam and priusquam (Indicative or Subjunctive) (§ 551).

V. Clauses with dum, dōnec, and quoad (Indicative or Subjunctive) (§§ 552-556).

Conditional Relative Clauses

542. The particles ubi, ut, cum, quando, either alone or compounded with -cumque, may be used as Indefinite Relatives (in the sense of whenever), and have the constructions of Protasis (cf. § 514):—

cum id malum negās esse, capior (Tusc. ii. 29), whenever you (the individual disputant) deny it to be an evil, I am misled. [Present general condition.]

quod profectō cum mē nūlla vis cōgeret, facere nōn audērem (Phil. v. 51), which I would surely not venture to do, as long as no force compelled me. [Present, contrary to fact: cf. § 517.]

cum videās eōs dolōre nōn frangī, dēbeās existimāre, etc. (Tusc. ii. 66), when you see that those are not broken by pain, you ought to infer, etc. [Present general condition: cf. § 518. a.]

cum rosam viderat, tum incipere vēr arbitrabātur (Verr. v. 27), whenever he saw a rose he thought spring had begun. [Past general condition: cf. § 518. b.]

id ubi dixisset, hastam in finis eōrum ēmittēbat (Liv. i. 32. 13), when he had said this, he would cast the spear into their territories. [Past General Condition, repeated action: see § 518. c.]

¹ With all temporal particles the Subjunctive is often found depending on some other principle of construction. (See Intermediate Clauses, § 591.)
Temporal Clauses with postquam, ubi, etc.

§ 543. The particles postquam (posteāquam), ubi, ut (ut primum, ut semel), simul atque (simul ac, or simul alone), take the Indicative (usually in the perfect or the historical present): —

militēs postquam victoriam adepti sunt, nihil reliqui victis fēcēre (Sall. Cat. 11), when the soldiers had won the victory, they left nothing to the vanquished. 
posteāquam forum attigisti, nihil fēcisti nisi, etc. (Fam. xv. 16. 3), since you came to the forum, you have done nothing except, etc.
ubi omnis idem sentire intellēxit, posterum diem pūgnae cōnstituit (B. G. iii. 23), when he understood that all agreed (thought the same thing), he appointed the next day for the battle.
Catilina, ubi eōs convēnisse videt, sēcēdit (Sall. Cat. 20), when Catiline sees that they have come together, he retires.
Pompeius ut equitātum suum pulsum vidit, acīē excessit (B. C. iii. 94), when Pompey saw his cavalry beaten, he left the field.

ut semel ei Piraeō eloquentia évecta est (Brut. 51), as soon as eloquence had set sail from the Piraeus.
nostri simul in āridō cōnstitērunt, in hostis impetum fēcērunt (B. G. iv. 26), our men, as soon as they had taken a position on dry ground, made an attack on the enemy.
simul atque introductus est, rem cōnfēcit (Clu. 40), as soon as he was brought in, he did the job.

α. These particles less commonly take the Imperfect or Pluperfect Indicative. The Imperfect denotes a past state of things; the Pluperfect, an action completed in past time: —

postquam strūcti utrimque stābant, duces in medium prōcēdunt (Liv. i. 23), when they stood in array on both sides, the generals advance into the midst.

P. Africānus posteāquam bis cōnsul et cēnsor fuerat (Caecil. 69), when Africānus had been (i.e. had the dignity of having been) twice consul and censor.

postquam id difficilius visum est, neque facultiā per isiendi dābātur, ad Pompeium trānsiērunt (B. C. iii. 60), when this seemed too hard, and no means of effecting it were given, they passed over to Pompey.

post diem quintum quam iterum barbarī male pūgnāverant [= victi sunt], lēgāti a Bocchō veniunt (Ing. 102), the fifth day after the barbarians were beaten the second time, envoys come from Bocchus.
haec iuventūtem, ubi familiāres opēs dēfēcerant, ad facinora incendēbant (Sall. Cat. 13), when their inherited resources had given out, etc.
ubi pericula virtūte prōpulerant (id. 6), when they had dispelled the dangers by their valor.

For the use of ubi, ut, either alone or compounded with -cumque, as Indefinite Relatives, see § 542.
USES OF CUM

544. The conjunction cum (quom) is a case-form of the relative pronoun qui. It inherits from qui its subordinating force, and in general shares its constructions. But it was early specialized to a temporal meaning (cf. tum, dum), and its range of usage was therefore less wide than that of qui; it could not, for example, introduce clauses of purpose or of result.

With the Indicative, besides the simple expression of definite time (corresponding to simple relative clauses with the Indicative), it has a few special uses,—conditional, explicative, cum inversum—all easily derived from the temporal use.

With the Subjunctive, cum had a development parallel to that of the qui-clause of Characteristic,—a development not less extensive and equally peculiar to Latin. From defining the time the cum-clause passed over to the description of the time by means of its attendant circumstances of cause or concession (cf. since, while).

In particular, cum with the Subjunctive was used in narrative (hence the past tenses, Imperfect and Pluperfect) as a descriptive clause of time. As, however, the present participle in Latin is restricted in its use and the perfect active participle is almost wholly lacking, the historical or narrative cum-clause came into extensive use to supply the deficiency. In classical writers the narrative cum-clause (with the Subjunctive) has pushed back the defining clause (with the Imperfect or Pluperfect Indicative) into comparative infrequency, and is itself freely used where the descriptive or characterizing force is scarcely perceptible (cf. the qui-clause of Characteristic, § 534).

Cum Temporal

545. A temporal clause with cum, when, and some past tense of the Indicative dates or defines the time at which the action of the main verb occurred:

   eō [lituō] regiōnēs dirēxit tum cum urbem condidit (Div. i. 30), he traced with it the quarters [of the sky] at the time he founded the city.

   cum occiditur Sex. Rōscius, ibidem fūrunt servi (Rosc. Am. 120), when Roscius was slain, the slaves were on the spot. [occiditur is historical present.]

   quem quidem cum ex urbe pellēbam, hōc prōvidēbam animō (Cat. iii. 16), when I was trying to force him (conative imperfect) from the city, I looked forward to this.

   fulgentis gladiōs hostium vidēbant Decī cum in aciem eōrum intrūbant (Tusc. ii. 59), the Decii saw the flashing swords of the enemy when they rushed upon their line.

   tum cum in Asiā rés māgnās permulti āmiserant (Manil. 19), at that time, when many had lost great fortunes in Asia.

Note 1.—This is the regular use with all tenses in early Latin, and at all times with the Perfect and the Historical Present (as with postquam etc.). With the Imperfect and Pluperfect the Indicative use is (in classical Latin) much less common than the Subjunctive use defined below (§ 546).

Note 2.—This construction must not be confused with that of cum, whenever, in General Conditions (§ 542).
§ 545, 546] CUM TEMPORAL 353

a. When the time of the main clause and that of the temporal clause are absolutely identical, cum takes the Indicative in the same tense as that of the main verb: —

maximā sum laetitiae affectus cum audīvī consulem tē factum esse (Fam. xv. 7), I was very much pleased when I heard that you had been elected consul.

546. A temporal clause with cum and the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive describes the circumstances that accompanied or preceded the action of the main verb: —

cum essem ōtiosus in Tusculānō, accēpī tuās litterās (Fam. ix. 18. 1), when I was taking my ease in my house at Tusculum, I received your letter.
cum servīlī bellō premerētur (Manil. 30), when she (Italy) was under the load of the Servile War.
cum id nūntiātum esset, māturāt (B. G. i. 7), when this had been reported, he made (makes) haste.
cum ad Cybistra quínque diēs essem morātus, rēgem Ariobarzānem īnsidīās liberāvī (Fam. xv. 4. 6), after remaining at Cybistra for five days, I freed King Ariobarzanes from plots.
is cum ad mē Lāodicēam vēnisset mēcumque ego eum vellēm, repente percessus est atriōcissimus litterās (id. ix. 25. 3), when he had come to me at Laodicēa and I wished him to remain with me, he was suddenly, etc.

Note 1.—This construction is very common in narrative, and cum in this use is often called narrative cum.

Note 2.—Cum with the Imperfect or Pluperfect Indicative does not (like cum with the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive) describe the time by its circumstances; it defines the time of the main verb by denoting a coexistent state of things (Imperfect Indicative) or a result attained when the action of the main verb took place (Pluperfect). Thus the construction is precisely that of postquam etc. (§ 543. a).

Note 3.—The distinction between the uses defined in §§ 545, 546, may be illustrated by the following examples: (1) He had a fever when he was in Spain (Shakspere). Here the when-clause defines the time when Caesar had the fever,—namely, in the year of his Spanish campaign (B.C. 49). In Latin we should use cum with the Imperfect Indicative. (2) Columbus discovered America when he was seeking a new route to India; here the when-clause does not define or date the time of the discovery; it merely describes the circumstances under which America was discovered,—namely, in the course of a voyage undertaken for another purpose. In Latin we should use the Imperfect Subjunctive.

Note 4.—The distinction explained in Note 3 is unknown to early Latin. In Plautus quōm always has the Indicative unless the Subjunctive is required for some other reason.

a. When the principal action is expressed in the form of a temporal clause with cum, and the definition of the time becomes the main clause, cum takes the Indicative.

Here the logical relations of the two clauses are inverted; hence cum is in this use called cum inversum: —
547. Present time with *cum* temporal is denoted by the Present Indicative; future time, by the Future or Future Perfect Indicative:—

incident tempora, *cum* ea, quae maximē videntur digna esse iūstō homine,  
*fiunt* contrāria (*Off.* i. 31), times occur when those things which seem especially worthy of the upright man, become the opposite.

*nōn* dubitābo dare operam ut tē videam, *cum* id satis commodē facerō (*Fam.* xiii. 1), I shall not hesitate to take pains to see you, when I can do it conveniently.

longum illud tempus *cum* nōn erō (*Att.* xii. 18), that long time when I shall be no more.

*cum vēneris*, cōgnōscēs (*Fam.* v. 7. 3), when you come (shall have come), you will find out.

548. *Cum*, whenever, takes the construction of a relative clause in a general condition (see § 542).

For present time, either the Present or the Perfect Indicative is used; for past time, regularly the Pluperfect Indicative.

For est *cum* etc., see § 535. a. n.³.

**Cum Causal or Concessive**

549. *Cum* causal or concessive takes the Subjunctive:—

id difficile nōn est, *cum* tantum equitātā vālēmus (*B.* C. iii. 86), this is not difficult since we are so strong in cavalry. [Causal.]

*cum* sōlītūdō insidiārum et metūs plēna sit, ratiō ipsa monet amiciās comparāre (*Fin.* i. 66), since solitude is full of treachery and fear, reason itself prompts us to contract friendships. [Causal.]

*cum* prīmi ērdiēs concīssent, tamēn ācērīmē reliquī resistēbant (*B.* G. vii. 62), though the first ranks had fallen, still the others resisted vigorously. [Concessive.]

brevi spatīō legiōnēs numerō hominum explēverat, *cum* initiō nōn amplius duōbus millibus habuisset (*Sall.* Cat. 56), in a short time he had filled out the legions with their complement of men, though at the start he had not had more than two thousand. [Concessive.]
Cum causal may usually be translated by since; cum concessive by although or while; either, occasionally, by when.

Note 1.—Cum in these uses is often emphasized by ut, utpote, quippe, præsertim; as,—nec reprehendō: quippe cum ipse istam reprehensionem non fugerim (Att. x. 3 A), I find no fault; since I myself did not escape that blame.

Note 2.—These casual and concessive uses of cum are of relative origin and are parallel to quī causal and concessive (§535. e). The attendant circumstances are regarded as the cause of the action, or as tending to hinder it.

Note 3.—In early Latin cum (quam) causal and concessive usually takes the Indicative: as,—quam tua rēs distrahitur, utinam videam (Pl. Trin. 617), since your property is being torn in pieces, O that I may see, etc.

a. Cum with the Indicative frequently introduces an explanatory statement, and is sometimes equivalent to quod, on the ground that:—

"cum tacent, clāmant (Cat. i. 21), when they are silent, they cry out (i.e. their silence is an emphatic expression of their sentiments).

grātulor tibi cum tantum valēs apud Dolābellam (Fam. ix. 14. 3), I congratulate you that you are so strong with Dolabella.

Note.—This is merely a special use of cum temporal expressing coincident time (§545. a).

b. Cum . . . tum, signifying both . . . and, usually takes the Indicative; but when cum approaches the sense of while or though, the Subjunctive is used (§549):—

"cum multa nōn probō, tum illud in prīmis (Fin. i. 18), while there are many things I do not approve, there is this in chief. [Indicative.]

"cum difficilē est, tum nē aequum quidem (Lael. 26), not only is it difficult but even unjust.

"cum rēs tōtā fīcta sit pueriliter, tum nē efficit quidem quod vult (Fin. i. 19), while the whole thing is childishly got up, he does not even make his point (accomplish what he wishes). [Subjunctive; approaching cum causal.]

Antequam and Priusquam

550. Antequam and priusquam, before, introduce Clauses of Time which resemble those with cum temporal in their constructions. Priusquam consists of two parts (often written separately and sometimes separated by other words), the comparative adverb prius, sooner (before), which really modifies the main verb, and the relative particle quam, than, which introduces the subordinate clause. The latter is therefore a relative clause, and takes the Indicative or the Subjunctive (like other relative clauses) according to the sense intended. The Subjunctive with priusquam is related to that of purpose (§529) and is sometimes called the Anticipatory or Prospective Subjunctive. Antequam, like priusquam, consists of two words, the first of which is the adverb ante, before, modifying the main verb. Its constructions are the same as those of priusquam, but the latter is commoner in classic prose.

551. Antequam and priusquam take sometimes the Indicative, sometimes the Subjunctive.
a. With antequam or priusquam the Perfect Indicative states a fact in past time:—

antequam tuás légi litterás, hominem ire cupiēbam (Att. ii. 7. 2), before I read your letter, I wished the man to go.

neque ante dimisit eum quam fidem dēdīt adulēscēns (Liv. xxxix. 10), and she did not let the young man go till he pledged his faith.

neque prius fugere dēstītērunt quam ad flūmen pervēnērunt (B. G. i. 53), nor did they stop running until they reached the river.

Note.—The Perfect Indicative in this construction is regular when the main clause is negative and the main verb is in an historical tense. The Imperfect Indicative is rare; the Pluperfect Indicative, very rare. The Perfect Subjunctive is rare and ante-classical, except in Indirect Discourse.

b. With antequam or priusquam the Imperfect Subjunctive is common when the subordinate verb implies purpose or expectancy in past time, or when the action that it denotes did not take place:—

ante pūgnāri coeptum est quam satis instruerētur aciēs (Liv. xxii. 4. 7), the fight was begun before the line could be properly formed.

priusquam tū suum sibi vēnderēs, ipse possēdit (Phil. ii. 96), before you could sell him his own property, he took possession of it himself.

priusquam tēlum abīcī posset aut nostri propius accēderent, omnis Vārī aciēs terga vertit (B. C. ii. 34), before a weapon could be thrown or our men approached nearer, the whole line about Varus took flight.

Note 1.—The Pluperfect Subjunctive is rare, except in Indirect Discourse by sequence of tenses for the Future Perfect Indicative (§ 484. c): as,—antequam hominēs nefāriī dē meō adventū audire potuissent, in Macedoniam perrexi (Planc. 98), before those evil men could learn of my coming, I arrived in Macedonia.

Note 2.—After an historical present the Present Subjunctive is used instead of the Imperfect: as,—neque ab eō prius Domitiānī militēs discēdunt quam in conspectum Caesariēs dēdīcātur (B. C. i. 23), and the soldiers of Domitius did (do) not leave him until he was (is) conducted into Cæsar’s presence. So, rarely, the Perfect Subjunctive (as B. G. iii. 18).

c. Antequam and priusquam, when referring to future time, take the Present or Future Perfect Indicative; rarely the Present Subjunctive:

priusquam dē cēteris rēbus respondēo, dē amicitiā pauca dicam (Phil. ii. 3), before I reply to the rest, I will say a little about friendship.

nōn dēfatīgābor antequam illōrum ancipītēs viās percēperō (De Or. iii. 145), I shall not weary till I have traced out their doubtful ways.

antequam veniat litterās mittet (Leg. Agr. ii. 53), before he comes, he will send a letter.

Note 1.—The Future Indicative is very rare.

Note 2.—In a few cases the Subjunctive of present general condition is found with antequam and priusquam (cf. § 518. a): as,—in omnibus negotiis priusquam aggregāre, adhibenda est praeparātiō diligentēs (Off. i. 73), in all undertakings, before you proceed to action, careful preparation must be used.
Dum, Đonec, and Quoad

552. As an adverb meaning *for a time, awhile*, dum is found in old Latin, chiefly as an enclitic (cf. vixdum, nōndum). Its use as a conjunction comes either through correlation (cf. cum . . . tum, si . . . sic) or through substitution for a conjunction, as in the English *the moment I saw it, I understood*. Quoad is a compound of the relative quiō, *up to which point*, with ad. The origin and early history of Đonec are unknown.

553. Dum and quoad, until, take the Present or Imperfect Subjunctive in temporal clauses implying intention or expectancy: —

exspectās fortasse dum dicat (Tusc. ii. 17), you are waiting perhaps for him to say (until he say). [Dum is especially common after exspectō.]

dum reliquae nāvēs conveniēnt, ad hōram nōnam exspectāvit (B. G. iv. 23), he waited till the ninth hour for the rest of the ships to join him.

comitia dilāta [sunt] dum lēx ferrētur (Att. iv. 17. 3), the election was postponed until a law should be passed.

an id exspectāmus, quoad nē vestīgium quidem Asiae civitātum atque urbiūnum relinquātur (Phil. xi. 25), shall we wait for this until not a trace is left of the states and cities of Asia?

Epaminōndas exercēbātur plūrimum luctandō ad eum finem quoad stāns complecti posset atque contendere (Nep. Epam. 2), Epaminondas trained himself in wrestling so far as to be able (until he should be) to grapple standing and fight (in that way).

Note 1.—Đonec is similarly used in poetry and later Latin: as, — et dūxīt longē đonec curvāta coīrent inter sē capita (Aen. ii. 860), and drew it (the bow) until the curved tips touched each other.

Note 2.—Dum, until, may be used with the Present or Future Perfect Indicative to state a future fact when there is no idea of intention or expectancy; but this construction is rare in classic prose. The Future is also found in early Latin. Đonec, until, is similarly used in poetry and early Latin, with the Present and Future Perfect Indicative, rarely with the Future: —

ego in Arcānō opperior dum ista cōgnōscō (Att. x. 3), I am waiting in the villa at Arcē until I find this out. [This is really dum, while.]

mihi ľūsque cūrae erit quid aģās, dum quid ĕgeris scierō (Fam. xii. 19. 3), I shall always feel anxious as to what you are doing, until I actually know (shall have known) what you have done.

dēlecta māiōrum luēs đonec templa reffēris (Hor. Od. iii. 6. 1), you shall suffer for the sins of your ancestors until you rebuild the temples.

ter centum rēgnābitur annōs, đonec geminātum partīt Īīa prōlem (Aen. i. 272), sway shall be held for thrice a hundred years, until Īīa shall give birth to twin offspring.

554. Đonec and quoad, until, with the Perfect Indicative denote an actual fact in past time: —

dōneque rēdidit silentium fuit (Liv. xxiii. 31. 9), there was silence until he returned.

ūsque ēō timuī đonec ad rēciendōs īndicēs vēnīmus (Verr. ii. 1. 17), I was anxious until the moment when we came to challenge the jurors.

Rōmae fuērunt quoad L. Metellus in prōvinciam prefectus est (id. ii. 62), they remained at Rome until Lucius Metellus set out for the province.
NOTE.—Dum, until, with the Perfect Indicative is rare: as,—mánsit in condicióne úsque ad eum familiar dum iudicës réjecti sunt (Verr. i. 16), he remained true to the agreement until the jurors were challenged.

555. Dum, dó nec, and quoad, as long as, take the Indicative:—

dum anima est, spés esse dicitur (Att. ix. 10. 3), as long as there is life, there is said to be hope.

dum praesidium úlla fuérunt, in Sullae praesidiis fuit (Rosc. Am. 126), so long as there were any garrisons, he was in the garrisons of Sulla.

dum longius à munióne aberant Galli, plus multitūdine télórum prōficiēbant (B. G. vii. 82), so long as the Gauls were at a distance from the fortifications, they had the advantage because of their missiles.

dó nec grátus eram tibi, Persárum viguí rēgé beātior (Hor. Od. iii. 9. 1), as long as I enjoyed thy favor, I flourished happier than the king of the Persians.

quoad potuit fortissimē restitit (B. G. iv. 12), he resisted bravely as long as he could.

NOTE 1.—Dó nec in this use is confined to poetry and later writers.

NOTE 2.—Quam diū, as long as, takes the Indicative only: as,—sē oppidó tam diū tenuit quam diū in prōvinciā Parthi fuérunt (Fam. xii. 19. 2), he kept himself within the town as long as the Parthians were in the province.

556. Dum, while, regularly takes the Present Indicative to denote continued action in past time.

In translating, the English Imperfect must generally be used:—

dum haec geruntur, Caesarí nūntiātum est (B. G. i. 46), while this was going on, a message was brought to Caesar.

haec dum aguntur, intereā Cleomenēs iam ad Elōri litus perverserat (Verr. v. 91), while this was going on, Cleomenes meanwhile had come down to the coast at Elorum.

hoc dum narrat, forte audīvi (Ter. Haut. 272), I happened to hear this while she was telling it.

NOTE.—This construction is a special use of the Historical Present (§ 469).

α. A past tense with dum (usually so long as) makes the time emphatic by contrast; but a few irregular cases of dum with a past tense occur where no contrast is intended:

nec enim dum eram vōbiscum, animum meum vidēbātis (Cat. M. 79), for while I was with you, you could not see my soul. [Here the time when he was alive is contrasted with that after his death.]

cōorta est pūgna, pār dum cōnstābant ōrdinēs (Liv. xxii. 47), a conflict began, well matched as long as the ranks stood firm.

But,—dum oculōs hostiūm certāmen áverterat (id. xxxii. 24), while the struggle kept the eyes of the enemy turned away.

dum ūnum adscendere gradum cōnātus est, vēnit in periculum (Mur. 55), while he attempted to climb one step [in rank] he fell into danger.
CLauses with quīn and quōminus

557. The original meaning of quīn is how not? why not? (quī-nē), and when used with the Indicative or (rarely) with the Subjunctive it regularly implies a general negative. Thus, quīn ego hōc rogem? why should n't I ask this? implies that there is no reason for not asking. The implied negative was then expressed in a main clause, like nūla causa est or fīeri nōn potest. Hence come the various dependent constructions introduced by quīn.

Quōminus is really a phrase (quō minus), and the dependent constructions which it introduces have their origin in the relative clause of purpose with quō and a comparative (see § 531. a).

558. A subjunctive clause with quīn is used after verbs and other expressions of hindering, resisting, refusing, doubting, delaying, and the like, when these are negativēd, either expressly or by implication:

nōn hūmāna ūlla neque divīna obstānt quīn sociōs amīcōs trahant exscindānt (Sall. Ep. Mith. 17), no human or divine laws prevent them from taking captive and exterminating their friendly allies.

ut nē Suessionēs quidem deterrērē potuerint quīn cum hīs cōnsentīnt (B. G. ii. 3), that they were unable to hinder even the Suessiones from making common cause with them.

nōn posse militēs continērī quīn in urbem inrumpērent (B. C. ii. 12), that the soldiers could not be restrained from bursting into the city.

nōn recūsāt quīn iūdicēs (Deliot. 43), he does not object to your judging.

neque recūsāre quīn amīs contēndānt (B. G. iv. 7), and that they did not refuse to fight.

praeterīre nōn potui quīn scriberem ad tē (Caesar ap. Cic. Att. ix. 6 a), I could not neglect to write to you.
Trèveri tōtius hiemis nūllum tempus intermisērunt quin légātōs mitterent (B. G. v. 55), the Treveri let no part of the winter pass without sending ambassadors. [Cf. B. G. v. 53; B. C. i. 78.]

nōn cūntandum existimāvit quin pūgnā dēcértaret (B. G. iii. 23), he thought he ought not to delay risking a decisive battle.

paullum āfuit quin Vārum interfeceret (B. C. ii. 35), he just missed killing Varus (it lacked little but that he should kill).

neque multum āfuit quin castrīs expellerentur (id. li. 35), they came near being driven out of the camp.

facere nōn possum quīn cotīdiē ad tē mittam (Att. xii. 27. 2), I cannot help sending to you every day.

fieri nūllo modo poterat quīn Cleomenē parcerētur (Verr. v. 104), it was out of the question that Cleomenes should not be spared.

ut effici nōn possit quīn eōs ōderim (Phil. xi. 36), so that nothing can prevent my hating them.

a. Quīn is especially common with nōn dubitō, I do not doubt, nōn est dubium, there is no doubt, and similar expressions: —

nōn dubitābat quīn eī créderēmus (Att. vi. 2. 3), he did not doubt that we believed him.

illud cavē dubitēs quīn ego omnia faciam (Fam. v. 20. 6), do not doubt that I will do all.

quis ignōrat quīn tria Graecōrum generā sint (Flacc. 64), who is ignorant that there are three races of Greeks?

nōn erat dubium quīn Helvētiī plūrimum possent (cf. B. G. i. 3), there was no doubt that the Helvetians were most powerful.

neque Caesarem fefellit quīn ab īis cohortībus initium victōriāe orīrētur (B. C. iii. 94), and it did not escape Cesar’s notice that the beginning of the victory came from those cohorts.

Note 1.—Dubitō without a negative is regularly followed by an Indirect Question; so sometimes nōn dubitō and the like: —

nōn nūlli dubitant an per Sardiniam veniat (Fam. ix. 7), some doubt whether he is coming through Sardinia.

dubitāte, sī potestis, ā quō sit Sex. Rōscius occīsus (Rosc. Am. 78), doubt, if you can, by whom Sextus Roscius was murdered.

dubitābam tū ās ipsās litterās essēs nec acceptārūs (Att. xv. 9), I doubt whether you will receive this very letter. [Epistolary Imperfect (§ 479).]

quālis sit futūrus, nē vōs quidem dubitātis (B. C. ii. 32), and what it (the outcome) will be, you yourselves do not doubt.

nōn dubitō quīn sentiunt (Fam. xv. 9), I do not doubt what they think.

dubium īllī nōn erat quīn futūrum esset (id. viii. 8. 1), it was not doubtful to him what was going to happen.

Note 2.—Nōn dubitō in the sense of I do not hesitate commonly takes the Infinitive, but sometimes quīn with the Subjunctive: —

nec dubitāre illum appellāre sapientem (Lael. 1), and not to hesitate to call him a sage.

dubitandum nōn existimāvit quīn proficiscerētur (B. G. ii. 2), he did not think he ought to hesitate to set out.

quid dubitās āti temporis opportūnītāte (B. C. ii. 34), why do you hesitate to take advantage of the favorable moment? [A question implying a negative.]
b. Verbs of *hindering* and *refusing* often take the subjunctive with *nē* or *quōminus* (= *ut eō minus*), especially when the verb is not negated:

plūra nē dicam tuae mē lacrīmæ impediunt (Planc. 104), *your tears prevent me from speaking further*.

nec actās impedit quōminus agri colendi studīa teneāmus (Cat. M. 60), *nor does age prevent us from retaining an interest in tilling the soil*.

nihil impedit quōminus id facere possimus (Fin. i. 33), *nothing hinders us from being able to do that*.

obstitisti nē trānsire cópiāe possent (Verr. v. 5), *you opposed the passage of the troops* (opposed lest the troops should cross).

Note.—Some verbs of *hindering* may take the Infinitive:—
nihil obstē dīcere (Fam. ix. 13. 4), *there is nothing to prevent my saying it*.

prohibet accēdēre (Caec. 46), *prevents him from approaching*.

559. A clause of Result or Characteristic may be introduced by *quīn* after a general negative, where *quīn* is equivalent to *quip (quaes, quod)* nōn:

1. Clauses of Result:

nēmō est tam fortis quīn [= quī nōn] reī novitātē perturbētur (B. G. vi. 39), *no one is so brave as not to be disturbed by the unexpected occurrence*.

nēmō erat adeō tardus quīn putāret (B. C. i. 69), *no one was so slothful as not to think*, etc.

quis est tam dēmēns quīn sentiat (Balb. 43), *who is so senseless as not to think*, etc.?*

nil tam difficīlest quīn quaerendō investigāri possīet (Ter. Haut. 675), *nothing’s so hard but search will find it out* (Herrick).

2. Clauses of Characteristic:

nēmō nostrum est quīn [= quī nōn] sciat (Rosc. Am. 55), *there is no one of us who does not know*.

nēmō fuit milītum quīn vulnerārētur (B. C. iii. 53), *there was not one of the soldiers who was not wounded*.

equis fuit quīn lacrīmāret (Verr. v. 121), *was there any one who did not shed tears*?

quis est quīn intellegēt (Fin. v. 64), *who is there who does not understand*?

hōrum nihil est quīn [= quod nōn] intereat (N. D. iii. 30), *there is none of these (elements) which does not perish*.

nihil est illōrum quīn [= quod nōn] ego īlī dīxerim (Pl. Bac. 1012), *there is nothing of this that I have not told him*.

Note.—Quīn sometimes introduces a pure clause of result with the sense of *ut nōn*:—numquam tam male est Siculīs quīn alīquid facētē et commodē dīcant (Verr. iv. 95), *things are never so bad with the Sicilians but that they have something pleasant or witty to say*.

For quīn in independent constructions, see § 449. b.
SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES

560. A clause which is used as a noun may be called a Substantive Clause, as certain relative clauses are sometimes called adjectival clauses. But in practice the term is restricted to clauses which represent a nominative or an accusative case, the clauses which stand for an ablative being sometimes called adverbial clauses.

Even with this limitation the term is not quite precise (see p. 367, footnote 1). The fact is rather that the clause and the leading verb are mutually complementary; each reinforces the other. The simplest and probably the earliest form of such sentences is to be found in the paratactic use (see §268) of two verbs like volo aebas, dicamus censeo, adeam optimum est. From such verbs the usage spread by analogy to other verbs (see lists on pp. 363, 367, footnotes), and the complementary relation of the clause to the verb came to resemble the complementary force of the accusative, especially the accusative of cognate meaning (§390).

561. A clause used as a noun is called a Substantive Clause.

a. A Substantive Clause may be used as the Subject or Object of a verb, as an Appositive, or as a Predicate Nominative or Accusative.

Note 1.—Many ideas which in English take the form of an abstract noun may be rendered by a substantive clause in Latin. Thus, he demanded an investigation may be postulabat ut quaecumque habetur. The common English expression for with the infinitive also corresponds to a Latin substantive clause: as,—it remains for me to speak of the piratic war, reliquum est ut dē bellō dicam piraticō.

Note 2.—When a Substantive Clause is used as subject, the verb to which it is subject is called impersonal, and the sign of the construction in English is commonly the so-called expletive it.

562. Substantive Clauses are classified as follows:—

1. Subjunctive Clauses { a. Of purpose (command, wish, fear) (§§563, 564). (ut, né, ut nōn, etc.). } b. Of result (happen, effect, etc.) (§568).
4. Infinitive Clauses { a. With verbs of ordering, wishing, etc. (§563). b. Indirect Discourse (§579 ff.).

Note.—The Infinitive with Subject Accusative is not strictly a clause, but in Latin it has undergone so extensive a development that it may be so classed. The uses of the Infinitive Clause are of two kinds: (1) in constructions in which it replaces a subjunctive clause with ut etc.; (2) in the Indirect Discourse. The first class will be discussed in connection with the appropriate subjunctive constructions (§563); for Indirect Discourse, see §579 ff.

Substantive Clauses of Purpose

563. Substantive Clauses of Purpose with ut (negative né) are used as the object of verbs denoting an action directed toward the future.
Such are, verbs meaning to admonish, ask, bargain, command, decree, determine, permit, persuade, resolve, urge, and wish: —¹

monet ut omnès suspiciōnēs vitet (B. G. i. 20), he warns him to avoid all suspicion.

hortātur cōs nē animalē deficient (B. C. i. 19), he urges them not to lose heart.
tē rogō atque ōrō ut eum iuvēs (Fam. xiii. 66), I beg and pray you to aid him.
hís utī conquīrerent imperāvit (B. G. i. 28), he ordered them to search.
persuādet Castīcō ut rēgnum occupāret (id. i. 3), he persuades Casticus to usurp royal power.
suis imperāvit nē quod omnīnō tēlum rēcīerent (id. i. 46), he ordered his men not to throw back any weapon at all.

Note. — With any verb of these classes the poets may use the Infinitive instead of an object clause: —

hortāmur fārī (Aen. ii. 74), we urge [him] to speak.
nē quaere docērī (id. vi. 614), seek not to be told.
temptat praevertere (id. i. 721), she attempts to turn, etc.

For the Subjunctive without ut with verbs of commanding, see § 565. a.

a. Iubeō, order, and vetō, forbid, take the Infinitive with Subject Accusative: —

Labēnūm iugum montis ascendere iubet (B. G. i. 21), he orders Labienus to ascend the ridge of the hill.
libērōs ad sē addūci iussit (id. ii. 5), he ordered the children to be brought to him.
ab opere légātōs discēdere vetuerat (id. ii. 20), he had forbidden the lieutenants to leave the work.
vetūre [bona] reddī (Liv. ii. 5), they forbade the return of the goods (that the goods be returned).

Note. — Some other verbs of commanding etc. occasionally take the Infinitive: —
pontem imperant fierī (B. C. i. 61), they order a bridge to be built.
rēs monet cavēre (Sall. Cat. 52. 3), the occasion warns us to be on our guard.

b. Verbs of wishing take either the Infinitive or the Subjunctive. With volō (nōlō, mālō) and cupiō the Infinitive is commoner, and the subject of the infinitive is rarely expressed when it would be the same as that of the main verb.

With other verbs of wishing the Subjunctive is commoner when the subject changes, the Infinitive when it remains the same.

1. Subject of dependent verb same as that of the verb of wishing: —

augur fierī volui (Fam. xv. 4. 13), I wished to be made augur.
cupiō vigiliam meam tibi trādere (id. xi. 24), I am eager to hand over my watch to you.

¹ Such verbs or verbal phrases are id agō, ad id venīō, cavēō (nē), cēnseō, cōgō, conscīddō, consīntīō, cūrō, dēcērō, ēdīcō, flāgitō, hōrtor, imperō, īnstō, māndo, metuō (nē), moneō, nēgōtium dō, operam dō, ōrō, persuādeo, petō, postulō, praeceptō, precōr, prōnūntiō, quaerō, rogō, sciscō, timeō (nē), vereor (nē), videō, volō.
iūdicem mē esse, nōn doctōrem volō (Or. 117), I wish to be a judge, not a teacher.
mē Caesaris militem dīci volui (B. C. ii. 32. 13), I wished to be called a soldier of Cæsar.
cupiō mē esse clēmentem (Cat. i. 4), I desire to be merciful. [But regularly, cupiō esse clēmēns (see § 457).]
onmis homīnēs, quī sēssē student praestāre cēterīs animālībus (Sall. Cat. 1), all men who wish to excel other living creatures.

2. Subject of dependent verb different from that of the verb of wishing:
volō tē scīre (Fam. ix. 24. 1), I wish you to know.

vīm volumus exstinguī (Sest. 92), we wish violence to be put down.
tē tuā fruī virtūte cupimus (Brut. 331), we wish you to reap the fruits of your virtue.
cupiō ut impetret (Pl. Capt. 102), I wish he may get it.
nūmquam optābō ut audiātis (Cat. ii. 15), I will never desire that you shall hear.

For volō and its compounds with the Subjunctive without ut, see § 565.

c. Verbs of permitting take either the Subjunctive or the Infinitive. Patiōr takes regularly the Infinitive with Subject Accusative; so often sinō:

permisit ut faceret (De Or. ii. 366), permitted him to make.
concēdō tibi ut ea praetereās (Rosc. Am. 54), I allow you to pass by these matters.
tabernācula statui passus nōn est (B. C. i. 81), he did not allow tents to be pitched.
vinum importārī nōn sinunt (B. G. iv. 2), they do not allow wine to be imported.

da. Verbs of determining, decreeing, resolving, bargaining, take either the Subjunctive or the Infinitive:

constituerant ut L. Bēstia quererētur (Sall. Cat. 43), they had determined that Lucius Bestia should complain.
proelīo supersedēre statuit (B. G. ii. 8), he determined to refuse battle.
dē bonīs rēgis quae redō cēnsuerant (Liv. ii. 5), about the king's goods, which they had decreed should be restored.
dēcernit uti cōnsules dīlec tum habeant (Sall. Cat. 34), decrees that the consuls shall hold a levy.
edictō nē quis iniuussū pūgnāret (Liv. v. 19), having commanded that none should fight without orders.

Note 1.—Different verbs of these classes with the same meaning vary in their construction (see the Lexicon). For verbs of bargaining etc. with the Gerundive, see § 500. 4.

Note 2.—Verbs of decreeing and voting often take the Infinitive of the Second Periphrastic conjugation:—Regulus captīvōs redēndōs [esse] nōn cēnsuit (Off. i. 39), Regulus voted that the captives should not be returned. [He said, in giving his formal opinion: captivi nōn redēndī sunt.]
Verbs of caution and effort take the Subjunctive with ut. But cōnor, try, commonly takes the Complementary Infinitive: —
cūrā ut quam primum intellegam (Fam. xiii. 10. 4), let me know as soon as possible (take care that I may understand).
dant operam ut habeant (Sall. Cat. 41), they take pains to have (give their attention that, etc.).
impellere uti Caesar nóminārētur (id. 49), to induce them to name Cæsar (that Cæsar should be named).
cōnātus est Caesar reficere pontīs (B. C. i. 50), Cæsar tried to rebuild the bridges.

564. Verbs of fearing take the Subjunctive, with nē affirmative and nē nōn or ut negative.

In this use nē is commonly to be translated by that, ut and nē nōn by that not: —
timeō nē Verrēs fēcerit (Verr. v. 3), I fear that Verres has done, etc.
nē animum offenderet verēbātur (B. G. i. 19), he feared that he should hurt the feelings, etc.
nē exhērēdārētur veritus est (Rosc. Am. 58), he feared that he should be dis-inherited.
ōrātor metuō nē languēscat senectūte (Cat. M. 28), I fear the orator grows feeble from old age.
vēreor ut tībi possim concēdere (De Or. i. 35), I fear that I cannot grant you.
haud sānē periculum est nē nōn mortem optandam putet (Tusc. v. 118), there is no danger that he will not think death desirable.

Note. — The subjunctive in nē-clauses after a verb of fearing is optative in origin. To an independent nē-sentence, as nē accidat, may it not happen, a verb may be prefixed (cf. § 560), making a complex sentence. Thus, vidē nē accidat; ōrō nē accidat; cavet nē accidat; when the prefixed verb is one of fearing, timeō nē accidat becomes let it not happen, but I fear that it may. The origin of the ut-clause is similar.

565. Volō and its compounds, the impersonals licet and oportet, and the imperatives dic and fac often take the Subjunctive without ut: —

volō amēs (Att. ii. 10), I wish you to love.
quam vellem mē invītāssēs (Fam. x. 28. 1), how I wish you had invited me!
māllem Cerberum metuerēs (Tusc. i. 12), I had rather you feared Cerberus.
sint enim oportet (id. i. 12), for they must exist.
quērāmur licet (Caec. 41), we are allowed to complain.
fac diligās (Att. iii. 13. 2), do love! [A periphrasis for the imperative dīlige, love (cf. § 449. c.).]
dic exeat, tell him to go out.
Note 1.—In such cases there is no ellipsis of ut. The expressions are idiomatic remnants of an older construction in which the subjunctives were hortatory or optative and thus really independent of the verb of wishing etc. In the classical period, however, they were doubtless felt as subordinate. Compare the use of cavē and the subjunctive (without nē) in Prohibitions (§ 450), which appears to follow the analogy of fac.

Note 2.—Licet may take (1) the Subjunctive, usually without ut; (2) the simple Infinitive; (3) the Infinitive with Subject Accusative; (4) the Dative and the Infinitive (see § 455. 1). Thus, I may go is licet eam, licet īre, licet mē īre, or licet mīhi īre.

For licet in concessive clauses, see § 527. b.

Note 3.—Oportet may take (1) the Subjunctive without ut; (2) the simple Infinitive; (3) the Infinitive with Subject Accusative. Thus I must go is oportet eam, oportet īre, or oportet mē īre.

a. Verbs of commanding and the like often take the subjunctive without ut:—

huic mandat Rēmōs adeat (B. G. iii. 11), he orders him to visit the Remi.
rogat finem faciat (id. i. 20), he asks him to cease.
Mnestheus vocat, classem aptent sociī (Aen. iv. 289), he calls Mnestheus [and orders that] his comrades shall make ready the fleet.

Note.—The subjunctive in this construction is the hortatory subjunctive used to express a command in Indirect Discourse (§ 588).

Substantive Clauses of Purpose with Passive Verbs

566. A Substantive Clause used as the object of a verb becomes the subject when the verb is put in the passive (Impersonal Construction):—

Caesar ut cōgnōsceret postulātum est (B. C. i. 87), Cāsar was requested to make an investigation (it was requested that Cāsar should make an investigation).
si erat Hēracleī ab senātū mandātum ut emeret (Verr. iii. 88), if Hēracleī had been instructed by the senate to buy.
si persuāsum erat Cluviiō ut mentirētur (Rosc. Com. 51), if Cluviiō had been persuaded to lie.
putō concēdi nōbis oportēre ut Graecō verbō ītāmur (Fin. iii. 15), I think we must be allowed to use a Greek word.
nē quid ēis noceātur ā Cæsare cavētur (B. C. i. 86), Cæsar takes care that no harm shall be done them (care is taken by Cæsar lest, etc.).

a. With verbs of admonishing, the personal object becomes the subject and the object clause is retained:—

admonitī sumus ut cavērēmus (Att. viii. 11 d. 3), we were warned to be careful.
cum monērētur ut cautior esset (Div. i. 51), when he was advised to be more cautious.
monērī visus est nē id facetēr (id. 56), he seemed to be warned not to do it.
b. Some verbs that take an infinitive instead of a subjunctive are used impersonally in the passive, and the infinitive becomes the subject of the sentence: —

loqui non concéditur (B. G. vi. 20), it is not allowed to speak.

c. With iubeō, vetō, and cogō, the subject accusative of the infinitive becomes the subject nominative of the main verb, and the infinitive is retained as complementary (Personal Construction): —

adesse iubentur postridie (Verr. ii. 41), they are ordered to be present on the following day.

in exsilium iussus est (Cat. ii. 12), he was ordered to go into exile.

Simōнides veitus est návigare (Div. ii. 134), Simonides was forbidden to sail.

Mandubii exire cōguntur (B. G. vii. 78), the Mandubii are compelled to go out.

Substantive Clauses of Result (Consecutive Clauses)

567. Clauses of Result may be used substantially, (1) as the object of faciō etc. (§ 568); (2) as the subject of these same verbs in the passive, as well as of other verbs and verbal phrases (§ 569); (3) in apposition with another substantive, or as predicate nominative etc. (see §§ 570, 571).¹

568. Substantive Clauses of Result with ut (negative ut nōn) are used as the object of verbs denoting the accomplishment of an effort.²

Such are especially faciō and its compounds (efficiō, cōnfaciō, etc.): —

efficiam ut intellegătis (Clu. 7), I will make you understand (lit. effect that you, etc.). [So, faciam ut intellegătis (id. 9).]

commētātis ut portārī possent efficiēbat (B. G. ii. 5), made it possible that supplies could be brought.

perfecī ut ē règnō ille discēderet (Fam. xv. 4. 6), I brought about his departure from the kingdom.

quae libertās ut laetior esset régis superbia fēcerat (Liv. ii. 1), the arrogance of the king had made this liberty more welcome.

ēvincunt instandō ut litterae darentur (id. ii. 4), by insisting they gain their point, — that letters should be sent. [Here ēvincunt = efficient.]

¹ In all these cases the clause is not strictly subject or object. The main verb originally conveyed a meaning sufficient in itself, and the result clause was merely complementary. This is seen by the frequent use of ita and the like with the main verb (ita accidit ut, etc.). In like manner purpose clauses are only apparently subject or object of the verb with which they are connected.

² Verbs and phrases taking an ut-clause of result as subject or object are accidit, additur, altera est rēs, committō, consequor, contingit, efficiō, ēvenit, faciō, ēt, fierī potest, fore, impetrō, integrum est, mōs est, mānus est, necesse est, prope est, rectum est, reliquitur, reliquum est, restat, tanti est, tantum abest, and a few others
Note 1.—The expressions facere ut, committere ut, with the subjunctive, often form a periphrasis for the simple verb: as,—invitus fēci ut Flāminium ē senātū eīcerem (Cat. M. 42), it was with reluctance that I expelled Flāminius from the senate.

569. Substantive Clauses of Result are used as the subject of the following:—

1. Of passive verbs denoting the accomplishment of an effort:—

impetrātum est ut in senātū recitārentur (litterae) (B. C. i. 1), they succeeded in having the letter read in the senate (it was brought about that, etc.).

ita efficitur ut omne corpus mortāle sit (N. D. iii. 30), it therefore is made out that every body is mortal.

2. Of Impersonals meaning it happens, it remains, it follows, it is necessary, it is added, and the like (§ 568, footnote):—

accidit ut esset lūna plēna (B. G. iv. 29), it happened to be full moon (it happened that it was, etc.). [Here ut esset is subject of accidit.]

reliquum est ut officiis certēmus inter nōs (Fam. vii. 31), it remains for us to vie with each other in courtesies.

restat ut hōc dubitēmus (Rosc. Am. 88); it is left for us to doubt this.

sequitur ut doceam (N. D. ii. 81), the next thing is to show (it follows, etc.).

Note 1.—The infinitive sometimes occurs: as,—nec enim acciderat mihi opus esse (Fam. vi. ii. 1), for it had not happened to be necessary to me.

Note 2.—Necesse est often takes the subjunctive without ut: as,—concēdās necesse est (Rosc. Am. 87), you must grant.

3. Of est in the sense of it is the fact that, etc. (mostly poetic):—

est ut virō vir lātius ordinet arbusta (Hor. Od. iii. 1. 9), it is the fact that one man plants his vineyards in wider rows than another.

a. Fore (or futūrum esse) ut with a clause of result as subject is often used instead of the Future Infinitive active or passive; so necessarily in verbs which have no supine stem:—

spērō fore ut contingat id nōbis (Tusc. i. 82), I hope that will be our happy lot. cum vidērem fore ut nōn possem (Cat. ii. 4), when I saw that I should not be able.

570. A substantive clause of result may be in apposition with another substantive (especially a neuter pronoun):—

illud etiam restiterat, ut tē in ūs ēdūcerent (Quinct. 33), this too remained for them to drag you into court.

571. A substantive clause of result may serve as predicate nominative after mōs est and similar expressions:—

est mōs homininum, ut nōlint eundem pluribus rēbus excellere (Brut. 84), it is the way of men to be unwilling for one man to excel in several things.
a. A result clause, with or without ut, frequently follows quam after a comparative (but see § 583. c):

Canachi signa rigidiōra sunt quam ut imitentur vēritātem (Brut. 70), the statues of Canachus are too stiff to represent nature (stiffer than that they should), perpessus est omnia potius quam indicāret (Tusc. ii. 52), he endured all rather than betray, etc. [Regularly without ut except in Livy.]

b. The phrase tantum abest, it is so far [from being the case], regularly takes two clauses of result with ut: one is substantive, the subject of abest; the other is adverbial, correlative with tantum:

tantum abest ut nostra mīrēmur, ut āisque eō difficilēs ac mōrōsi simus, ut nōbis nōn satis faciat ipse Dēmosthenēs (Or. 104), so far from admiring my own works, I am difficult and captious to that degree that not Demosthenes himself satisfies me. [Here the first ut-clause is the subject of abest (§ 569. 2); the second, a result clause after tantum (§ 537); and the third, after āisque eō.]

c. Rarely, a thought or an idea is considered as a result, and is expressed by the subjunctive with ut instead of the accusative and infinitive (§ 580). In this case a demonstrative usually precedes:

praeclārum illud est, ut eōs . . . amēmus (Tusc. iii. 73), this is a noble thing, that we should love, etc.

vēri similē nōn est ut ille antēpōneret (Verr. iv. 11), it is not likely that he preferred.

For Relative Clauses with quīn after verbs of hindering etc., see § 558.

Indicative with Quod

572. A peculiar form of Substantive Clause consists of quod (in the sense of that, the fact that) with the Indicative.

The clause in the Indicative with quod is used when the statement is regarded as a fact: —

alterum est vitium, quod quidam nimis māgnum studium cōnferunt (Off. i. 19), it is another fault that some bestow too much zeal, etc. [Here ut cōnferant could be used, meaning that some should bestow; or the accusative and infinitive, meaning to bestow (abstractly); quod makes it a fact that men do bestow, etc.]

inter inanimum et animal hōc maximē interest, quod animal agit aliquid (Acad. ii. 37), this is the chief difference between an inanimate object and an animal, that an animal aims at something.

quod redīit nōbis mīrābile vidētur (Off. iii. 111), that he (Regulus) returned seems wonderful to us.

accidit perincommodē quod eum nusquam vidēstī (Att. i. 17. 2), it happened very unluckily that you nowhere saw him.
opportunissima res accidit quod Germani venierunt (B. G. iv. 13), a very fortunate thing happened, (namely) that the Germans came.

praetereo quod eam sibi domum sedemque deilegit (Clu. 188), I pass over the fact that she chose that house and home for herself.

mitt<o> quod possessa per vim (Flacc. 79), I disregard the fact that they were seized by violence.

Note.—Like other substantive clauses, the clause with quod may be used as subject, as object, as appositive, etc., but it is commonly either the subject or in apposition with the subject.

a. A substantive clause with quod sometimes appears as an accusative of specification, corresponding to the English whereas or as to the fact that:

quod mihi de nostro statu gratulaxis, minim<e> min<e>r<e>mur te tuis praec<e>l<e>ris operibus laetari (Fam. i. 7. 7), as to your congratulating me on our condition, we are not at all surprised that you are pleased with your own noble works.

quod de domo scribis, ego, etc. (Fam. xiv. 2. 3), as to what you write of the house, I, etc.

b. Verbs of feeling and the expression of feeling take either quod (quia) or the accusative and infinitive (Indirect Discourse):

quod scribis . . . gaud<e> (Q. Fr. iii. 1. 9), I am glad that you write.

faci<o> libenter quod eam non possum praeterire (Legg. i. 63), I am glad that I cannot pass it by.

quae perfecta esse vehementer laetor (Rosc. Am. 136), I greatly rejoice that this is finished.

qui quia non habuit a me turmas equitum fortasse suscenset (Att. vi. 3. 5), who perhaps feels angry that he did not receive squadrons of cavalry from me.

molest<t> tuli te senatui gratias non egisse (Fam. x. 27. 1), I was displeased that you did not return thanks to the senate.

Note.—Mir<o>r> and similar expressions are sometimes followed by a clause with si. This is apparently substantive, but really protasis (cf. § 563. e. n. 1). Thus,—mir<o>r> si quemquam amicum hab<e>re potuit (Lael. 54), I wonder if he could ever have a friend. [Originally, If this is so, I wonder at it.]

Indirect Questions

573. An Indirect Question is any sentence or clause which is introduced by an interrogative word (pronoun, adverb, etc.), and which is itself the subject or object of a verb, or depends on any expression implying uncertainty or doubt.

In grammatical form, exclamatory sentences are not distinguished from interrogative (see the third example below).

1 Cf. the Greek ἄνωτρον el.
574. An Indirect Question takes its verb in the Subjunctive:

quid ipse sentiam expōnam (Div. i. 10), I will explain what I think.  [Direct: quid sentiō ?]
id possetne fieri cōnsuluit (id. i. 32), he consulted whether it could be done.  [Direct: potestne ?]
quam sis audāx omnēs intellegere potuērunt (Rosc. Am. 87), all could understand how bold you are.  [Direct: quam es audāx !]
doleam nec doleam nihil interest (Tusc. ii. 29), it is of no account whether I suffer or not.  [Double question.]
quae\textsuperscript{575} si Catilīna in conventū apud M. Laecam fuisset necne (Cat. ii. 13), I asked Catiline whether he had been at the meeting at Marcus Laeca's or not.  [Double question.]
rogat mē quid sentiam, he asks me what I think.  [Cf. rogat mē sententiam, he asks me my opinion.]
hoc dubium est, uter nostrum sit inverēcundior (Acad. ii. 126), this is doubtful, which of us two is the less modest.
incertī quātēnus Volerō exercēret victōriam (Liv. ii. 55), uncertain how far Volero would push victory.  [As if dubitántēs quātēnus, etc.]

Note.—An Indirect Question may be the subject of a verb (as in the fourth example), the direct object (as in the first), the secondary object (as in the sixth), an appositive (as in the seventh).

575. The Sequence of Tenses in Indirect Question is illustrated by the following examples:—

dicō quid faciam, I tell you what I am doing.
dicō quid factūrōs sim, I tell you what I will (shall) do.
dicō quid fecerim, I tell you what I did (have done, was doing).
dixī quid facerem, I told you what I was doing.
dixī quid fecisset, I told you what I had done (had been doing).
dixī quid factūrōs essēm, I told you what I would (should) do (was going to do).
dixī quid factūrōs fuissem, I told you what I would (should) have done.

a. Indirect Questions referring to future time take the subjunctive of the First Periphrastic Conjugation:—

prōspiciō qui concursūs futūrī sint (Caecil. 42), I foresee what throngs there will be.  [Direct: quī erunt ?]
quid sit futūrum crās, fuge quaerere (Hor. Od. i. 9. 13), forbear to ask what will be on the morrow.  [Direct: quid erit or futūrum est ?]
posthāc nōn scribam ad tē quid factūrōs sim, sed quid fecerim (Att. x. 18), hereafter I shall not write to you what I am going to do, but what I have done.  [Direct: quid faciēs (or factūrōs eris) ? quid fēcisti ?]

Note.—This Periphrastic Future avoids the ambiguity which would be caused by using the Present Subjunctive to refer to future time in such clauses.

b. The Deliberative Subjunctive (§ 444) remains unchanged in an Indirect Question, except sometimes in tense:—
quō mē vertam nesciō (Clu. 4), I do not know which way to turn. [Direct: quō mē vertam?]
neque satis cōnstabat quid agerent (B. G. iii. 14), and it was not very clear what they were to do. [Direct: quid agāmus?]
nec quisquam satis certum habet, quid aut spēret aut timeat (Liv. xxii. 7. 10), nor is any one well assured what he shall hope or fear. [Here the future participle with sit could not be used.]
incertō quid peterent aut vitārent (id. xxviii. 36. 12), since it was doubtful (ablative absolute) what they should seek or shun.

c. Indirect Questions often take the Indicative in early Latin and in poetry:

vineam quō in agrō cōnsēri oportet sēc observātō (Cato R. R. 6. 4), in what soil a vineyard should be set you must observe thus.

d. Nesciō quis, when used in an indefinite sense (somebody or other), is not followed by the Subjunctive.

So also nesciō quō (unde, etc.), and the following idiomatic phrases which are practically adverbs:

mirum (nimīrum) quam, marvellously (marvellous how).
mirum quantum, tremendously (marvellous how much).
immāne quantum, monstrously (monstrous how much).
sānē quam, immensely.
valdē quam, enormously.

Examples are:

qui istam nesciō quam indolentiam māgnopere laudant (Tusc. iii. 12), who greatly extol that freedom from pain, whatever it is.
mirum quantum prōfuit (Liv. ii. 1), it helped prodigiously.
ita fātō nesciō quō contigisse arbitror (Fam. xv. 13), I think it happened so by some fatality or other.
nam suōs valdē quam paucōs habet (id. xi. 13 A. 3), for he has uncommonly few of his own.
sānē quam sum gāvisus (id. xi. 13 A. 4), I was immensely glad.
immāne quantum discrepat (Hor. Od. i. 27. 5), is monstrously at variance.  

576. In colloquial usage and in poetry the subject of an Indirect Question is often attracted into the main clause as object (Accusative of Anticipation):

nōstī Mārcellum quam tardus sit (Fam. viii. 10. 3), you know how slow Mārcellus is. [For nōstī quam tardus sit Mārcellus. Cf. "I know thee who thou art."]

Cf. potestne igitur eārum rērum, quā rē futūrae sint, ūlla esse praeśensiō (Div. ii. 15), can there be, then, any foreknowledge as to those things, why they will occur? [A similar use of the Objective Genitive.]
Note. — In some cases the Object of Anticipation becomes the Subject by a change of voice, and an apparent mixture of relative and interrogative constructions is the result:—

quidam saepe in parvā pecūniā perspiciuntur quam sint levēs (Lael. 63), it is often seen, in a trifling matter of money, how unprincipled some people are (some people are often seen through, how unprincipled they are).

quem ad modum Pompēium oppiāgnārent ā mē indicātī sunt (Leg. Agr. i. 5), it has been shown by me in what way they attacked Pompey (they have been shown by me, how they attacked).

a. An indirect question is occasionally introduced by si in the sense of whether (like if in English, cf. § 572. b. n.):—

circumfunduntur hostēs si quem aditum reperiē possent (B. G. vi. 37), the enemy pour round [to see] if they can find entrance.

visam si domī est (Ter. Haut. 170), I will go see if he is at home.

Note. — This is strictly a Protasis, but usually no Apodosis is thought of, and the clause is virtually an Indirect Question.

For the Potential Subjunctive with forsiōt (originally an Indirect Question), see § 447. a.

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

577. The use of the Accusative and Infinitive in Indirect Discourse (ōrātīo obliqua) is a comparatively late form of speech, developed in the Latin and Greek only, and perhaps separately in each of them. It is wholly wanting in Sanskrit, but some forms like it have grown up in English and German.

The essential character of Indirect Discourse is, that the language of some other person than the writer or speaker is compressed into a kind of Substantive Clause, the verb of the main clause becoming Infinitive, while modifying clauses, as well as all hortatory forms of speech, take the Subjunctive. The person of the verb necessarily conforms to the new relation of persons.

The construction of Indirect Discourse, however, is not limited to reports of the language of some person other than the speaker; it may be used to express what any one — whether the speaker or some one else — says, thinks, or perceives, whenever that which is said, thought, or perceived is capable of being expressed in the form of a complete sentence. For anything that can be said etc. can also be reported indirectly as well as directly.

The use of the Infinitive in the main clause undoubtedly comes from its use as a case-form to complete or modify the action expressed by the verb of saying and its object together. This object in time came to be regarded as, and in fact to all intents became, the subject of the infinitive. A transition state is found in Sanskrit, which, though it has no indirect discourse proper, yet allows an indirect predication after verbs of saying and the like by means of a predicative apposition, in such expressions as “The maids told the king [that] his daughter [was] bereft of her senses.”

The simple form of indirect statement with the accusative and infinitive was afterwards amplified by introducing dependent or modifying clauses; and in Latin it became a common construction, and could be used to report whole speeches etc., which in other languages would have the direct form. (Compare the style of reporting speeches in English, where only the person and tense are changed.)

The Subjunctive in the subordinate clauses of Indirect Discourse has no significance except to make more distinct the fact that these clauses are subordinate; consequently no direct connection has been traced between them and the uses of the mood in simple
sentences. It is probable that the subjunctive in indirect questions (§ 574), in informal indirect discourse (§ 592), and in clauses of the integral part (§ 593) represents the earliest steps of a movement by which the subjunctive became in some degree a mood of subordination.

The Subjunctive standing for hortatory forms of speech in Indirect Discourse is simply the usual hortatory subjunctive, with only a change of person and tense (if necessary), as in the reporter's style.

578. A Direct Quotation gives the exact words of the original speaker or writer (ōrātiō Recta).

An Indirect Quotation adapts the words of the speaker or writer to the construction of the sentence in which they are quoted (ōrātiō Obliqua).

Note.—The term Indirect Discourse (ōrātiō obliqua) is used in two senses. In the wider sense it includes all clauses—of whatever kind—which express the words or thought of any person indirectly, that is, in a form different from that in which the person said the words or conceived the thought. In the narrower sense the term Indirect Discourse is restricted to those cases in which some complete proposition is cited in the form of an Indirect Quotation, which may be extended to a narrative or an address of any length, as in the speeches reported by Caesar and Livy. In this book the term is used in the restricted sense.

**FORMAL INDIRECT DISCOURSE**

579. Verbs and other expressions of knowing, thinking, telling, and perceiving,1 govern the Indirect Discourse.

Note.—Inquam, said I (etc.) takes the Direct Discourse except in poetry.

**Declaratory Sentences in Indirect Discourse**

580. In Indirect Discourse the main clause of a Declaratory Sentence is put in the Infinitive with Subject Accusative. All subordinate clauses take the Subjunctive:—

sciō mē paene incredibilem rem pollicērī (B. C. iii. 86), I know that I am promising an almost incredible thing. [Direct: polliceor.]
nōn arbitror tē ita sentire (Fam. x. 26. 2), I do not suppose that you feel thus. [Direct: sentis.]
spērō mē liberātum [esse] dē metū (Tusc. ii. 67), I trust I have been freed from fear. [Direct: liberātus sum.]

1 Such are: (1) knowing, sciō, cōgnōscō, compertum habeō, etc.; (2) thinking, putō, existimō, arbitror, etc.; (3) telling, dīcō, nūntiō, referō, polliceor, prōmittō, certiōrem faciō, etc.; (4) perceiving, sentiō, comperīō, videō, audiō, etc. So in general any word that denotes thought or mental and visual perception or their expression may govern the Indirect Discourse.
[dicit] esse non nullos quorum auctoriitas plurimum valeat (B. G. i. 17), he says there are some, whose influence most prevails. [Direct: sunt non nulli...valet.]

nisi iurasset, scelus se facturum [esse] arbitrabatur (Verr. ii. 1. 123), he thought he should incur guilt, unless he should take the oath. [Direct: nisi iuravero, faciam.]

a. The verb of saying etc. is often not expressed, but implied in some word or in the general drift of the sentence:—

consulis alterius nomen invisum civitati fuit: nimium Tarquiniæ regno adsuessa; initium a Prisco factum; regnassee dein Ser. Tullium, etc. (Liv. ii. 2), the name of the other consul was hateful to the state; the Tarquins (they thought) had become too much accustomed to royal power, etc. [Here invisum implies a thought, and this thought is added in the form of Indirect Discourse.]

orantes ut urbis saltem—iam enim agris deploratos esse—opem senatus ferret (id. xli. 6), praying that the senate would at least bring aid to the cities—for the fields [they said] were already given up as lost.

b. The verb nego, deny, is commonly used in preference to dico with a negative:—

[Stoici] negant quidquam [esse] bonum nisi quod honestum sit (Fin. ii. 68), the Stoics assert that nothing is good but what is right.

c. Verbs of promising, hoping, expecting, threatening, swearing, and the like, regularly take the construction of Indirect Discourse, contrary to the English idiom:—

minatur se se abire (Pl. Asin. 604), he threatens to go away. [Direct: abeo, I am going away.]

sperant se maximum fructum esse capturos (Lael. 79), they hope to gain the utmost advantage. [Direct: capiemus.]

sperat se absolutum iri (Sull. 21), he hopes that he shall be acquitted. [Direct: absolvar.]

quem inimicissimum futurum esse promittit ac spondeo (Mur. 90), who I promise and warrant will be the bitterest of enemies. [Direct: erit.]

dolor fortitudinem se dehilitaturum minatur (Tusc. v. 76), pain threatens to wear down fortitude. [Direct: dehilitab.]

confidit me quod velim facile a te impetratum (Fam. xi. 16.1), I trust I shall easily obtain from you what I wish. [Direct: quod volo, impetrabo.]

Note.—These verbs, however, often take a simple Complementary Infinitive (§456) So regularly in early Latin (except spera):—

pollicentur obsides dare (B. G. iv. 21), they promise to give hostages.

promisi dolium vinii dare (Pl. Cist. 542), I promised to give a jar of wine.

1 Compare the Greek aorist infinitive after similar verbs.
Some verbs and expressions may be used either as verbs of *saying*, or as verbs of *commanding, effecting*, and the like. These take as their object either an *Infinitive* with subject accusative or a *Substantive clause* of *Purpose* or *Result*, according to the sense.

1. *Infinitive* with Subject Accusative (Indirect Discourse): —

   *lausum sapientiae statuē esse maximam* (Fam. v. 13), *I hold that the glory of wisdom is the greatest.*  [Indirect Discourse.]

   *res ipsa monēbat tempus esse* (Att. x. 8. 1), *the thing itself warned that it was time.*  [ Cf. *monēre ut, warn to do something.*]

   *fac mihi esse persuāsum* (N. D. i. 75), *suppose that I am persuaded of that.*  [ Cf. *facere ut, bring it about that.*]

   *hoc volunt persuādere, non interire animās* (B. G. vi. 14), *they wish to convince that souls do not perish.*

2. *Substantive* (Substantive Clause of *Purpose* or *Result*): —

   *statuunt ut decem milia hominum mittantur* (B. G. vii. 21), *they resolve that 10,000 men shall be sent.*  [Purpose clause (cf. § 563).]

   *huic persuādet uti ad hostis transeat* (id. iii. 18), *he persuades him to pass over to the enemy.*

   *Pompeius suīs praedixerat ut Caesaris impetum exciperent* (B. C. iii. 92),

   *Pompey had instructed his men beforehand to await Caesar's attack.*

   *dēnuntiāvit ut essent animō parāti* (id. iii. 86), *he bade them be alert and steadfast (ready in spirit).*

**Note.** — The infinitive with subject accusative in this construction is *Indirect Discourse*, and is to be distinguished from the simple infinitive sometimes found with these verbs instead of a substantive clause (§ 563. d).

**581. The Subject Accusative of the Infinitive** is regularly expressed in *Indirect Discourse*, even if it is wanting in the direct:

   *ōrātor sum, I am an orator; dicit sē esse ērātorem, he says he is an orator.*

**Note 1.** — But the subject is often omitted if easily understood:

   *ignōscere imprudientiae dixit* (B. G. iv. 27), *he said he pardoned their rashness.*

   *eadem ab aliis quaerit: reperit esse vēra* (id. i. 18), *he inquires about these same things from others; he finds that they are true.*

**Note 2.** — After a relative, or *quam* (than), if the verb would be the same as that of the main clause, it is usually omitted, and its subject is attracted into the accusative:

   *tē suspicor ēisdem rebus quibus mē ipsum commovēri* (Cat. M. 1), *I suspect that you are disturbed by the same things as I.*

   *confidō tamen haec quoque tibi non minus grāta quam ipsōs librōs futūra* (Plin. Ep. iii. 5. 20), *I trust that these facts too will be no less pleasing to you than the books themselves.*

**Note 3.** — In poetry, by a Greek idiom, a *Predicate Noun* or *Adjective* in the indirect discourse sometimes agrees with the subject of the main verb:

   *vīr bonus et sapiēns ait esse parātus* (Hor. Ep. i. 7. 22), *a good and wise man says he is prepared, etc. [In prose: ait sē esse parātum.]

   *sēnsit medīōs delāpsus in hostīs* (Aen. ii. 377), *he found himself fallen among the foe.* [In prose: sē esse delāpsum.]
582. When the verb of saying etc. is passive, the construction may be either Personal or Impersonal. But the Personal construction is more common and is regularly used in the tenses of incomplete action:—

beáté víxisse videor (Lael. 15), I seem to have lived happily.
Epaminondsás fidibus praeclárē eecinisse dicitur (Tusc. i. 4), Epaminondas is said to have played excellently on the lyre.
multi idem factūrī esse dicuntur (Fam. xvi. 12. 4), many are said to be about to do the same thing. [Active: dicunt multōs factūrōs (esse).]
primī trāduntur arte quādam verba vínxisse (Or. 40), they first are related to have joined words with a certain skill.
Bibulus audíbátur esse in Syriā (Att. v. 18), it was heard that Bibulus was in Syria (Bibulus was heard, etc.). [Direct: Bibulus est.]
cēterae Illyricī legionēs secūtūrāe spērābantur (Tac. H. ii. 74), the rest of the legions of Illyricum were expected to follow.
vidēmur enim quiētūrī fuisset, nisi essēmus lacesṣitī (De Or. ii. 230), it seems that we should have kept quiet, if we had not been molested (we seem, etc.). [Direct: quiēssēmus . . . nisi essēmus lacesṣitī.]

Note. — The poets and later writers extend the personal use of the passive to verbs which are not properly verba sentiendi etc.: as, — colligor dominae placuisse (Ov. Am. ii. 6. 61), it is gathered [from this memorial] that I pleased my mistress.

a. In the compound tenses of verbs of saying etc., the impersonal construction is more common, and with the gerundive is regular:—

trādītum est etiam Homērum caecum fuisset (Tusc. v. 114), it is a tradition, too, that Homer was blind.
ubi tyrannus est, ibi nōn vitīsām, sed dicendum est plānē nūllam esse rem públicam (Rep. iii. 43), where there is a tyrant, it must be said, not that the commonwealth is evil, but that it does not exist at all.

Note. — An indirect narrative begun in the personal construction may be continued with the Infinitive and Accusative (as De Or. ii. 299; Liv. v. 41. 9).

Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Discourse

583. A Subordinate Clause merely explanatory, or containing statements which are regarded as true independently of the quotation, takes the Indicative:—

quis neget haec omnia quae vidēmus deōrum potestāte administrārī (Cat. iii. 21), who can deny that all these things we see are ruled by the power of the gods?
cūius ingenīō putābat ea quae gesserat posse celebrārī (Arch. 20), by whose genius he thought that those deeds which he had done could be celebrated.
[Here the fact expressed by quae gesserat, though not explanatory, is felt to be true without regard to the quotation: quae gessisset would mean, what Marius claimed to have done.]
SYNTAX: SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES

Note.—Such a clause in the indicative is not regarded as a part of the Indirect Discourse; but it often depends merely upon the feeling of the writer whether he shall use the Indicative or the Subjunctive (cf. §§ 591-593).

a. A subordinate clause in Indirect Discourse occasionally takes the Indicative when the fact is emphasized:—

factum ëius hostis paricum ... cum, Cimbri et Teutoni ... pulsis, nõn minorem laudem exercitus quam ipse imperator meritum vidébatur (B. G. i. 40), that a trial of this enemy had been made when, on the defeat of the Cimbri and Teutoni, the army seemed to have deserved no less credit than the commander himself.

b. Clauses introduced by a relative which is equivalent to a demonstrative with a conjunction are not properly subordinate, and hence take the Accusative and Infinitive in Indirect Discourse (see § 308. f):—

Márcellus requisísse dicitur Archimédem illum, quem cum audisset interfectum permolesté tulisse (Verr. iv. 131), Marcellus is said to have sought for Archimedes, and when he heard that he was slain, to have been greatly distressed. [quem = et eum.]

census unum quemque nostrum mundi esse partem, ex quó [= et ex eo] illud nátūrā cónsequi (Fin. iii. 64), they say that each one of us is a part of the universe, from which this naturally follows.

Note.—Really subordinate clauses occasionally take the accusative and infinitive: as,—quem ad modum sì nón dēdātur obses pró ruptō foedus sē habitūrum, sìc dēditam inviolātam ad suós remissūrum (Liv. ii. 13), [he says] as in case the hostage is not given up he shall consider the treaty as broken, so if given up he will return her unharmed to her friends.

c. The infinitive construction is regularly continued after a comparative with quam:—

addit sē prìus occisum īrī ab ēo quam mē violātum īrī (Att. ii. 20. 2), he adds that he himself will be killed by him, before I shall be injured.

nónne adfirmāvī quīdīvis mē potius perpessērum quam ex Ìtalā exitūrum (Fam. ii. 16. 3), did I not assert that I would endure anything rather than leave Italy?

Note.—The subjunctive with or without ut also occurs with quam (see § 535. c).

Tenses of the Infinitive in Indirect Discourse

584. The Present, the Perfect, or the Future Infinitive1 is used in Indirect Discourse, according as the time indicated is present, past, or future with reference to the verb of saying etc. by which the Indirect Discourse is introduced:—

1 For various ways of expressing the Future Infinitive, see § 164. 3. c.
cadē, I am falling.
dicit sē cadere, he says he is falling.
dīxit sē cadere, he said he was falling.
cadēbam, I was falling; cecidi, I fell, have fallen; cecideram, I had fallen.
dicit sē cecidisse, he says he was falling, fell, has fallen, had fallen.
dīxit sē cecidisse, he said he fell, had fallen.
cadam, I shall fall.
dicit sē cāsūrum [esse], he says he shall fall.
dīxit sē cāsūrum [esse], he said he should fall.
ceciderō, I shall have fallen.
dicit fore ut ceciderit [rare], he says he shall have fallen.
dīxit fore ut cecidisset [rare], he said he should have fallen.

a. All varieties of past time are usually expressed in Indirect Discourse by the Perfect Infinitive, which may stand for the Imperfect, the Perfect, or the Pluperfect Indicative of the Direct.

Note. — Continued or repeated action in past time is sometimes expressed by the Present Infinitive, which in such cases stands for the Imperfect Indicative of the Direct Discourse and is often called the Imperfect Infinitive.

This is the regular construction after meminī when referring to a matter of actual experience or observation: as, — tē meminī haec dicere, I remember your saying this (that you said this). [Direct: dīxisti or dīcēbās.]

b. The present infinitive posse often has a future sense: —

totius Galliae sēsē potīri posse spērant (B. G. i. 3), they hope that they shall be able to get possession of all Gaul.

Tenses of the Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse

§ 585. The tenses of the Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse follow the rule for the Sequence of Tenses (§ 482). They depend for their sequence on the verb of saying etc. by which the Indirect Discourse is introduced.

Thus in the sentence, dīxit sē Rōmam itūrum ut cōnsulem vidēret, he said he should go to Rome in order that he might see the consul, vidēret follows the sequence of dīxit without regard to the Future Infinitive, itūrum [esse], on which it directly depends.

Note. — This rule applies to the subjunctive in subordinate clauses, to that which stands for the imperative etc. (see examples, § 588), and to that in questions (§ 586).

a. A subjunctive depending on a Perfect Infinitive is often in the Imperfect or Pluperfect, even if the verb of saying etc. is in a primary tense (cf. § 485. j); so regularly when these tenses would have been used in Direct Discourse: —
Tarquinium dixisse ferunt tum exsulantem sē intellēxisse quōs fidōs amīcōs habuisset (Lael. 53), they tell us that Tarquin said that in his exile he had found out what faithful friends he had had. [Here the main verb of saying, ferunt, is primary, but the time is carried back by dixisse and intellēxisse, and the sequence then becomes secondary.]

tantum prōfēcisse vidēmur ut ā Graecis nē verbōrum quidem cōpiā vincēmur (N. D. i. 8), we seem to have advanced so far that even in abundance of words we are not surpassed by the Greeks.

NOTE 1.—The proper sequence may be seen, in each case, by turning the Perfect Infinitive into that tense of the Indicative which it represents. Thus, if it stands for an imperfect or an historical perfect, the sequence will be secondary; if it stands for a perfect definite, the sequence may be either primary or secondary (§ 485. a).

NOTE 2.—The so-called imperfect infinitive after memini (§ 584. a, n.) takes the secondary sequence: as,—ad mē adīre quōsdam memini, qui dicerent (Fam. iii. 10. 6), I remember that some persons visited me, to tell me, etc.

b. The Present and Perfect Subjunctive are often used in dependent clauses of the Indirect Discourse even when the verb of saying etc. is in a secondary tense:—

dicēbant . . . totidem Nervīōs (pollicēri) quī longissimē absint (B. G. ii. 4), they said that the Nervii, who live farthest off, promised as many.

NOTE.—This construction comes from the tendency of language to refer all time in narration to the time of the speaker (repraesentātiō). In the course of a long passage in the Indirect Discourse the tenses of the subjunctive often vary, sometimes following the sequence, and sometimes affected by repraesentātiō. Examples may be seen in B. G. i. 13, vii. 20, etc.

Certain constructions are never affected by repraesentātiō. Such are the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive with cum temporal, antequam, and priusquam.

Questions in Indirect Discourse

586. A Question in Indirect Discourse may be either in the Subjunctive or in the Infinitive with Subject Accusative.

A real question, asking for an answer, is generally put in the Subjunctive; a rhetorical question, asked for effect and implying its own answer, is put in the Infinitive:—

quid sibi velēt? cūr in suās possessionēs veniēret (B. G. i. 44), what did he want? why did he come into his territories? [Real question. Direct: quid vis? cūr venīs?]

num recentium iniūriārum memoriam [sē] dépōnere posse (id. i. 14), could he lay aside the memory of recent wrongs? [Rhetorical Question. Direct: num possum?]

quem signum datūrum fugientibus? quem ausūrum Alexandrō succēdere (Q. C. iii. 5. 7), who will give the signal on the retreat? who will dare succeed Alexander? [Rhetorical. Direct: quis dabit . . . audēbit.]
Note 1.—No sharp line can be drawn between the Subjunctive and the Infinitive in questions in the Indirect Discourse. Whether the question is to be regarded as rhetorical or real often depends merely on the writer's point of view:—

\textit{utrum} partem regni petiturum esse, an totum erupturum (Liv. xlv. 19. 15), \textit{will you ask} part of the royal power (he said), or seize the whole? 

\textit{quid} tandem praetorii faciendum fuisset (id. xxxi. 48), \textit{what, pray, ought a praetor to have done?}

\textit{quid} repente factum [esse] cur, etc. (id. xxxiv. 54), \textit{what had suddenly happened, that, etc.}?

Note 2.—Questions coming immediately after a verb of asking are treated as Indirect Questions and take the Subjunctive (see § 574). This is true even when the verb of asking serves also to introduce a passage in the Indirect Discourse. The question may be either real or rhetorical. See \textit{quaesivit}, etc. (Liv. xxxvii. 15). For the use of tenses, see § 585.

587. A Deliberative Subjunctive (§ 444) in the Direct Discourse is always retained in the Indirect: —

\textit{cūr} aliqūōs ex suis āmitteret (B. C. i. 72), \textit{why} (thought he) \textit{should he lose some of his men?} [Direct: \textit{cūr āmittam ?}]

\section*{Commands in Indirect Discourse}

588. All Imperative forms of speech take the Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse: —

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textit{reminiscerētur} veteris incommodī (B. G. i. 13), \textit{remember (said he) the ancient disaster}. [Direct: \textit{reminiscere}.]
  \item \textit{finem faciat} (id. i. 20), \textit{let him make an end}. [Direct: \textit{fac}]
  \item \textit{ferrent opem, adiuvārent} (Liv. ii. 6), \textit{let them bring aid, let them help}.
\end{itemize}

\textit{a.} This rule applies not only to the Imperative of the direct discourse, but to the Hortatory and the Optative Subjunctive as well.

Note 1.—Though these subjunctives stand for independent clauses of the direct discourse, they follow the rule for the sequence of tenses, being in fact dependent on the verb of saying etc. (cf. §§ 483, 586).

Note 2.—A Prohibition in the Indirect Discourse is regularly expressed by \textit{nē} with the present or imperfect subjunctive, even when \textit{nōē} with the infinitive would be used in the Direct: \textit{as,}—\textit{nē perturbārentur} (B. G. vii. 29), \textit{do not (he said) be troubled}. [Direct: \textit{nōēte perturbārī}. But sometimes \textit{nōēt} is found in Indirect Discourse.]

\section*{Conditions in Indirect Discourse}

589. Conditional sentences in Indirect Discourse are expressed as follows: —

1. The Protasis, being a \textit{subordinate clause}, is always in the Subjunctive.

2. The Apodosis, if independent and not hortatory or optative, is always in some form of the Infinitive.
a. The Present Subjunctive in the apodosis of less vivid future conditions (§ 516. b) becomes the Future Infinitive like the Future Indicative in the apodosis of more vivid future conditions.

Thus there is no distinction between more and less vivid future conditions in the Indirect Discourse.

Examples of Conditional Sentences in Indirect Discourse are—

1. Simple Present Condition (§ 515): —

(dixit) si ipse populō Rōmānō nōn praescriberet quem ad modum suō iūre āterētur, nōn oportēre sēsē ā populō Rōmānō in suō iūre impediri (B. G. i. 36), he said that if he did not dictate to the Roman people how they should use their rights, he ought not to be interfered with by the Roman people in the exercise of his rights. [Direct: si nōn praescribō ... nōn oportet.]

praediāvit ... sī pāce ūtī velint, inīquum esse, etc. (id. i. 44), he asserted that if they wished to enjoy peace, it was unfair, etc. [Direct: si volunt ... est. Present tense kept by repraesentātiō (§ 585. b. n.).]

2. Simple Past Condition (§ 515): —

nōn dīcam nē illud quidem, sī maximē in culpā fuit Apollōnius, tamen in hominem honestissimae civitātis honestissimum tam graviter animadverīt, causā indicāt, nōn oportuisset (Verr. v. 20), I will not say this either, that, even if Apollonius was very greatly in fault, still an honorable man from an honorable state ought not to have been punished so severely without having his case heard. [Direct: si fuit ... nōn oportuisset.]

3. Future Conditions (§ 516): —

(dixit) quod sī praeterea nēmō sequātur, tamen sē cum sōlā decimā legiōne itūrum (B. G. i. 40), but if nobody else should follow, still he would go with the tenth legion alone. [Direct: si sequēetur ... ibō. Present tense by repraesentātiō (§ 585. b. n.).]

Haeduīs sē obsidēs redditūrum nōn esse, neque eīs ... bellum illātūrum, sī in eō manērent, quod conveniisset, stipendiumque quotannis pendent: sī id nōn fēcissent, longē eīs frāternum nōmen populi Rōmānī āfutūrum (id. i. 36), he said that he would not give up the hostages to the Haeduī, but would not make war upon them if they observed the agreement which had been made, and paid tribute yearly; but that, if they should not do this, the name of brothers to the Roman people would be far from aiding them. [Direct: reddam ... inferam ... sī manēbunt ... pendent: sī nōn fēcerint ... aberit.]

id Datamēs ut audīvit, sēnsit, sī in turbam exisset ab homine tam necessāriō sē relictum, futūrum [esse] ut cēteri cōnsilium sequantur (Nep. Dat. 6), when Datames heard this, he saw that, if it should get abroad that he had been abandoned by a man so closely connected with him, everybody else would follow his example. [Direct: si exierit ... sequentur.]
§ 589] CONDITIONS IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE 383

(putāvērunt) nisi mē cīvitāte expulīssent, obtinēre sē nōn posse licentiam cupiditātum suārum (Att. x. 4), they thought that unless they drove me out of the state, they could not have free play for their desires. [Direct: nisi (Cicerōnem) expulerimus, obtinēre nōn poterimus.]

b. In changing a Condition contrary to fact (§ 517) into the Indirect Discourse, the following points require notice: —

1. The Protasis always remains unchanged in tense.
2. The Apodosis, if active, takes a peculiar infinitive form, made by combining the Participle in -urus with fuisset.
3. If the verb of the Apodosis is passive or has no supine stem, the periphrasis futūrum fuisset ut (with the Imperfect Subjunctive) must be used.
4. An Indicative in the Apodosis becomes a Perfect Infinitive.

Examples are: —

nec sē superstitem filiae futūrum fuisset, nisi spem ulciscendae mortis eius in auxiliō commīnōtum habuisset (Liv. iii. 50. 7), and that he should not now be a survivor, etc., unless he had had hope, etc. [Direct: nōn superstes essem, nisi habuisset.]

illud Asia cōgitet, nūllum ā sē neque bellī externī neque discordiārum domestīcarum calamītātem āfuītūram fuisset, sī hōc imperiō nōn tenērētur (Q. Fr. i. 1. 34), let Asia (personified) think of this, that no disaster, etc., would not be hers, if she were not held by this government. [Direct: abisset, sī nōn tenērer.]

quid inimīcitārum crēditīs [mē] exceptūrum fuisset, sī insontīs lacessīssem (Q. C. vi. 10. 18), what enmities do you think I should have incurred, if I had wantonly assailed the innocent? [excēpissem . . . sī lacessīsem.]

invītum sē dicere, nec dīctūrum fuisset, nī cāritās reī pūblīcae vinceret (Liv. ii. 2), that he spoke unwillingly and should not have spoken, did not love for the state prevail. [Direct: nec dixīssem . . . nī vinceret.]

 nisi eō tempore quidam nūntiī dē Caesaris victoriā . . . essent allāti, existi-mābant plērique futūrum fuisset utī [oppidum] āmitterētur (B. C. iii. 101), most people thought that unless at that time reports of Cesar’s victory had been brought, the town would have been lost. [Direct: nisi essent allāti . . . āmissum esset.]

quōrum sī aetās potuisset esse longinquor, futūrum fuisset ut omnibus perfectīs artibus hominum vita ērudītētur (Tusc. iii. 69), if life could have been longer, human existence would have been embellished by every art in its perfection. [Direct: sī potuisset . . . ērūdīta esset.]

at plērique existimant, sī acrius īnsequī voluisset, bellum eō diē potuisset finire (B. C. iii. 51), but most people think that, if he had chosen to follow up the pursuit more vigorously, he could have ended the war on that day. [Direct: sī voluisset . . . potuisset.]

Caesar respondit . . . sī alicūs initīriae sibi cōnscius fuisset, nōn fuisset difficile cavēre (B. G. i. 14), Caesar replied that if [the Roman people] had been aware of any wrong act, it would not have been hard for them to take precautions. [Direct: sī fuisset, nōn difficile fuit (§ 517. c.).]
590. The following example illustrates some of the foregoing principles in a connected address:—

**INDIRECT DISCOURSE**

Si pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiis faceret, in eam partem itūrōs atque ibi futūrōs Helvētiōs, ubi eōs Caesar cōnstituisset atque esse voluisset: sī bellō persequi perseverāret, remīnisce rerētur et veteris incommōdi populi Rōmānī, et prīstīnae virtūtis Helvētīorum. Quod imprōvisō ūnum pāgum adortus esset, cum eī qui flūmen trānsisserant suīs auxiliōm ferre nōn possent, nē ob eam rem aut suae māgno opere virtūti tribueret, aut ipsōs désipserētur: sē ita ā patribus māiōribusque suīs didicisse, ut magis virtūte quam dōlō contenderent, aut insidīs nīterentur. Quā rē nē committeret, ut is locus ubi cōnstitissent ex calamātūte populi Rōmānī et internecōne exercītūs nōmen captaret, aut memoriam prōderet. —B. G. i. 13.

**DIRECT DISCOURSE**

Si pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiis faciet, in eam partem ibunt atque ibi erunt Helvētiī, ubi eōs tū cōnstitueris atque esse volueris: sī bellō persequī perseverābīs, remīnisce [inquit] et veteris incommōdi populi Rōmānī, et prīstīnae virtūtis Helvētīorum. Quod imprōvisō ūnum pāgum adortus esset, cum eī qui flūmen trānsierant suīs auxiliōm ferre nōn possent, nē ob eam rem aut tuae māgno opere virtūti tribueris, aut nōs déspecerēris: nōs ita ā patribus māiōribusque nostrīs didicimus, ut magis virtūte quam dōlō contendāmus, aut insidīs nitamur. Quā rē nōli committere, ut hic locus ubi cōnstituimus ex calamātūte populi Rōmānī et internecōne exercītūs nōmen capiat, aut memoriam prōdat.

**INTERMEDIATE CLAUSES**

591. A Subordinate clause takes the Subjunctive—

1. When it expresses the thought of some other person than the speaker or writer (Informal Indirect Discourse), or

2. When it is an integral part of a Subjunctive clause or equivalent Infinitive (Attraction).\(^1\)

\(^1\) See note on Indirect Discourse (§ 577).
Informal Indirect Discourse

§ 592. A Subordinate Clause takes the Subjunctive when it expresses the thought of some other person than the writer or speaker:—

1. When the clause depends upon another containing a wish, a command, or a question, expressed indirectly, though not strictly in the form of Indirect Discourse:—

animal sentit quid sit quod deceat (Off. i. 14), an animal feels what it is that is fit.

luic imperat quás possit adeat civitātēs (B. G. iv. 21), he orders him to visit what states he can.

hunc sibi ex animō scrupulum, quī sē diēs noctisque stimulat ac pungit, ut ēvellātīs postulat (Rosc. Am. 6), he begs you to pluck from his heart this doubt that goads and stings him day and night. [Here the relative clause is not a part of the Purpose expressed in ēvellātīs, but is an assertion made by the subject of postulat.]

2. When the main clause of a quotation is merged in the verb of saying, or some modifier of it:—

si quid dē his rēbus dicere vellet, fēcī potestātem (Cat. iii. 11), if he wished to say anything about these matters, I gave him a chance.

tulit dē caede quae in Appiā viā facta esset (Mil. 15), he passed a law concerning the murder which (in the language of the bill) took place in the Appian Way.

nisi restituissent statuās, vehementer minātur (Verr. ii. 162), he threatens them violently unless they should restore the statues. [Here the main clause, "that he will inflict punishment," is contained in minātur.]

īis auxilium suum pollicitus sī ab Suēbis premerentur (B. G. iv. 19), he promised them his aid if they should be molested by the Suevi. [pollicitus sē auxilium iātūrum, etc.]

prohibitiō tollendi, nisi pactus esset, vim adhibēbat pactiōni (Verr. iii. 37), the forbidding to take away unless he came to terms gave force to the bargain.

3. When a reason or an explanatory fact is introduced by a relative or by quod (rarely quia) (see § 540):—

Paetus omnīs librōs quās frāter suus reliquisset mihi dōnāvit (Att. ii. 1. 12), Paetus presented to me all the books which (he said) his brother had left.

Note.—Under this head even what the speaker himself thought under other circumstances may have the Subjunctive. Sō also with quod even the verb of saying may be in the Subjunctive (§ 540. n. 2). Here belong also nōn quia, nōn quod, introducing a reason expressly to deny it. (See § 540. n. 8.)
Subjunctive of Integral Part (Attraction)

593. A clause depending upon a Subjunctive clause or an equivalent Infinitive will itself take the Subjunctive if regarded as an integral part of that clause:—

imperat, dum rēs iūdicētur, hominem adducent: cum iūdicāta sit, ad se ut keep the man; when it is judged, to bring him to him.

et enim quis tam dissolūtō animō est, qui haece cum videat, tacēre ac negligentem possit (Rosc. Am. 32), for who is so reckless of spirit that, when he sees these things, he can keep silent and pass them by?

mōs est Αθήνις laudāri in cōntōne eōs qui sint in proelīs interfecit (Or. 151), it is the custom at Athens for those to be publicly eulogizēd who have been slain in battle. [Here laudāri is equivalent to ut laudentur.]

a. But a dependent clause may be closely connected grammatically with a Subjunctive or Infinitive clause, and still take the Indicative, if it is not regarded as a necessary logical part of that clause:—

quōdam modō postulat ut, quem ad modum est, sīc etiam appellētur, tyrannus (Att. x. 4. 2), in a manner he demands that as he is, so he may be called, a tyrant.

nātūra fert ut eīs faveāmus qui eadem pericula quibus nōs perfūntī sumūs ingrediuntur (Murator. 4), nature prompts us to feel friendly towards those who are entering on the same dangers which we have passed through.

nē hostēs, quod tantum multitūdine poterant, suōs circumvenire possent (B. G. ii. 8), lest the enemy, because they were so strong in numbers, should be able to surround his men.

si mea in tē essent officia sōlum tanta quanta magis ā tē ipsō praedicārī quam ā mē ponderārī solent, verēcundius ā tē... peterem (Fam. ii. 6), if my good services to you were only so great as they are wont rather to be called by you than to be estimated by me, I should, etc.

Note 1.—The use of the Indicative in such clauses sometimes serves to emphasize the fact, as true independently of the statement contained in the subjunctive or infinitive clause. But in many cases no such distinction is perceptible.

Note 2.—It is often difficult to distinguish between Informal Indirect Discourse and the Integral Part. Thus in imperāvit ut eā fierent quae opus essent, essent may stand for sunt, and then will be Indirect Discourse, being a part of the thought, but not a part of the order; or it may stand for erant, and then will be Integral Part, being a part of the order itself. The difficulty of making the distinction in such cases is evidence of the close relationship between these two constructions.

1 The subjunctive in this use is of the same nature as the subjunctive in the main clause. A dependent clause in a clause of purpose is really a part of the purpose, as is seen from the use of should and other auxiliaries in English. In a result clause this is less clear, but the result construction is a branch of the characteristic (§534), to which category the dependent clause in this case evidently belongs when it takes the subjunctive.
594. IMPORTANT RULES OF SYNTAX

1. A noun used to describe another, and denoting the same person or thing, agrees with it in Case (§ 282).

2. Adjectives, Adjective Pronouns, and Participles agree with their nouns in Gender, Number, and Case (§ 286).

3. Superlatives (more rarely Comparatives) denoting order and succession — also medius, (cēterus), reliquus — usually designate not what object, but what part of it, is meant (§ 293).

4. The Personal Pronouns have two forms for the genitive plural, that in -um being used partitively, and that in -i oftenest objectively (§ 295. b).

5. The Reflexive Pronoun (se), and usually the corresponding possessive (suus), are used in the predicate to refer to the subject of the sentence or clause (§ 299).

6. To express Possession and similar ideas the Possessive Pronouns must be used, not the genitive of the personal or reflexive pronouns (§ 302. a).

7. A Possessive Pronoun or an Adjective implying possession may take an appositive in the genitive case agreeing in gender, number, and case with an implied noun or pronoun (§ 302. e).

8. A Relative Pronoun agrees with its Antecedent in Gender and Number, but its Case depends on its construction in the clause in which it stands (§ 305).

9. A Finite Verb agrees with its Subject in Number and Person (§ 316).

10. Adverbs are used to modify Verbs, Adjectives, and other Adverbs (§ 321).

11. A Question of simple fact, requiring the answer yes or no, is formed by adding the enclitic -ne to the emphatic word (§ 332).

12. When the enclitic -ne is added to a negative word, — as in nōnne, — an affirmative answer is expected. The particle num suggests a negative answer (§ 332. b).

13. The Subject of a finite verb is in the Nominative (§ 339).

14. The Vocative is the case of direct address (§ 340).

15. A noun used to limit or define another, and not meaning the same person or thing, is put in the Genitive (§ 342).

16. The Possessive Genitive denotes the person or thing to which an object, quality, feeling, or action belongs (§ 343).
17. The genitive may denote the Substance or Material of which a thing consists (§ 344).

18. The genitive is used to denote Quality, but only when the quality is modified by an adjective (§ 345).

19. Words denoting a part are followed by the Genitive of the whole to which the part belongs (Partitive Genitive, § 346).

20. Nouns of action, agency, and feeling govern the Genitive of the object (Objective Genitive, § 348).

21. Adjectives denoting desire, knowledge, memory, fullness, power, sharing, guilt, and their opposites; participles in -ns when used as adjectives; and verbals in -āx, govern the Genitive (§ 349. a, b, c).

22. Verbs of remembering and forgetting take either the Accusative or the Genitive of the object (§ 350).

23. Verbs of reminding take with the Accusative of the person a Genitive of the thing (§ 351).

24. Verbs of accusing, condemning, and acquitting take the Genitive of the charge or penalty (§ 352).

25. The Dative is used of the object indirectly affected by an action (Indirect Object, § 361).

26. Many verbs signifying to favor, help, please, trust, and their contraries; also, to believe, persuade, command, obey, serve, resist, envy, threaten, pardon, and spare, take the Dative (§ 367).

27. Many verbs compounded with ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, pró, sub, super, and some with circum, admit the Dative of the indirect object (§ 370).

28. The Dative is used with esse and similar words to denote Possession (§ 373).

29. The Dative of the Agent is used with the Gerundive, to denote the person on whom the necessity rests (§ 374).

30. The Dative often depends, not on any particular word, but on the general meaning of the sentence (Dative of Reference, § 376).

31. Many verbs of taking away and the like take the Dative (especially of a person) instead of the Ablative of Separation (§ 381).

32. The Dative is used to denote the Purpose or End, often with another Dative of the person or thing affected (§ 382).

33. The Dative is used with adjectives (and a few adverbs) of fitness, nearness, likeness, service, inclination, and their opposites (§ 384).
34. The Direct Object of a transitive verb is put in the Accusative (§ 387).

35. An intransitive verb often takes the Accusative of a noun of kindred meaning, usually modified by an adjective or in some other manner (Cognate Accusative, § 390).

36. Verbs of naming, choosing, appointing, making, esteeming, showing, and the like, may take a Predicate Accusative along with the direct object (§ 393).

37. Transitive verbs compounded with prepositions sometimes take (in addition to the direct object) a Secondary Object, originally governed by the preposition (§ 394).

38. Some verbs of asking and teaching may take two Accusatives, one of the Person, and the other of the Thing (§ 396).

39. The subject of an Infinitive is in the Accusative (§ 397. e).

40. Duration of Time and Extent of Space are expressed by the Accusative (§§ 424. c, 425).

41. Words signifying separation or privation are followed by the Ablative (Ablative of Separation, § 400).

42. The Ablative, usually with a preposition, is used to denote the source from which anything is derived or the material of which it consists (§ 403).

43. The Ablative, with or without a preposition, is used to express cause (§ 404).

44. The Voluntary Agent after a passive verb is expressed by the Ablative with à or ab (§ 405).

45. The Comparative degree is often followed by the Ablative signifying than (§ 406).

46. The Comparative may be followed by quam, than. When quam is used, the two things compared are put in the same case (§ 407).

47. The Ablative is used to denote the means or instrument of an action (§ 409).

48. The deponents, utor, fruor, fungor, potior, and vescor, with several of their compounds, govern the Ablative (§ 410).

49. Opus and usus, signifying need, are followed by the Ablative (§ 411).

50. The manner of an action is denoted by the Ablative, usually with cum unless a limiting adjective is used with the noun (§ 412).
51. _Accompaniment_ is denoted by the Ablative, regularly with _cum_ (§ 413).

52. With Comparatives and words implying comparison the Ablative is used to denote the _degree of difference_ (§ 414).

53. The _quality_ of a thing is denoted by the Ablative with an adjective or genitive Modifier (§ 415).

54. The _price_ of a thing is put in the Ablative (§ 416).

55. The Ablative of Specification denotes that _in respect to which_ anything is or is done (§ 418).

56. The adjectives _dignus_ and _indignus_ take the Ablative (§ 418. b).

57. A noun or pronoun, with a participle in agreement, may be put in the Ablative to define the _time_ or _circumstances_ of an action (_Ablative Absolute_, § 419).

An adjective, or a second noun, may take the place of the participle in the ablative absolute construction (§ 419. a).

58. Time _when_, or _within which_, is denoted by the Ablative; time _how long_ by the Accusative (§ 423).

59. Relations of Place are expressed as follows:—

1. The _place from which_, by the Ablative with _ab, dé, ex._
2. The _place to which_ (or _end of motion_), by the Accusative with _ad or in._
3. The _place where_, by the Ablative with _in_ (_Locative Ablative_). (§ 426.)

60. With names of _towns_ and _small islands_, and with _domus_ and _rūs_, the relations of place are expressed as follows:—

1. The _place from which_, by the Ablative without a preposition.
2. The _place to which_, by the Accusative without a preposition.
3. The _place where_, by the Locative. (§ 427.)

61. The Hortatory Subjunctive is used in the present tense to express an _exhortation, a command, or a concession_ (§§ 439, 440).

62. The Optative Subjunctive is used to express a _wish_. The present tense denotes the wish as _possible_, the imperfect as _unaccomplished_ in present time, the pluperfect as _unaccomplished_ in past time (§ 441).

63. The Subjunctive is used in questions implying (1) _doubt, indignation_, or (2) an _impossibility_ of the thing's being done (_Deliberative Subjunctive_, § 444).
64. The Potential Subjunctive is used to suggest an action as possible or conceivable (§ 446).

65. The Imperative is used in commands and entreaties (§ 448).

66. Prohibition is regularly expressed in classic prose (1) by noli with the Infinitive, (2) by cave with the Present Subjunctive, (3) by ne with the Perfect Subjunctive (§ 450).

67. The Infinitive, with or without a subject accusative, may be used with est and similar verbs (1) as the Subject, (2) in Apposition with the subject, or (3) as a Predicate Nominative (§ 452).

68. Verbs which imply another action of the same subject to complete their meaning take the Infinitive without a subject accusative (Complementary Infinitive, § 456).

69. The Infinitive, with subject accusative, is used with verbs and other expressions of knowing, thinking, telling, and perceiving (Indirect Discourse, see § 459).

70. The Infinitive is often used for the Imperfect Indicative in narration, and takes a subject in the Nominative (Historical Infinitive, § 463).

71. Sequence of Tenses. In complex sentences, a primary tense in the main clause is followed by the Present or Perfect Subjunctive in the dependent clause; a secondary tense by the Imperfect or Pluperfect (§ 483).

72. Participles denote time as present, past, or future with respect to the time of the verb in their clause (§ 489).

73. The Gerund and the Gerundive are used, in the oblique cases, in many of the constructions of nouns (§§ 501–507).

74. The Supine in -um is used after verbs of motion to express Purpose (§ 509).

75. The Supine in -ū is used with a few adjectives and with the nouns fās, nefās, and opus, to denote Specification (§ 510).

76. Dum, modo, dummodo, and tantum ut, introducing a Proviso, take the Subjunctive (§ 528).

77. Final clauses take the Subjunctive introduced by ut (utī), negative ne (ut ne), or by a Relative Pronoun or Relative Adverb (§ 531).

78. A Relative Clause with the Subjunctive is often used to indicate a characteristic of the antecedent, especially where the antecedent is otherwise undefined (§ 535).

79. Dignus, indignus, aptus, and idoneus, take a Subjunctive clause with a relative (rarely with ut) (§ 535.f).
80. Clauses of Result take the Subjunctive introduced by *ut*, *so that* (negative, *ut nōn*), or by a Relative Pronoun or Relative Adverb (§ 537).

81. The Causal Particles *quod*, *quia*, and *quoniam* take the Indicative when the reason is given on the authority of the *writer* or *speaker*; the Subjunctive when the reason is given on the authority of *another* (§ 540).

82. The particles *postquam* (*posteaquam*), *ubi*, *ut* (*ut primum*, *ut semel*), *simul atque* (*simul ac*, or *simul alone*) take the Indicative (usually in the *perfect* or the *historical present*) (§ 543).

83. A Temporal clause with *cum*, *when*, and some past tense of the Indicative *dates or defines the time* at which the action of the main verb occurred (§ 545).

84. A Temporal clause with *cum* and the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive *describes the circumstances* that accompanied or preceded the action of the main verb (§ 546).

85. *Cum* Causal or Concessive takes the Subjunctive (§ 549).

For other concessive particles, see § 527.

86. In Indirect Discourse the *main clause* of a Declaratory Sentence is put in the Infinitive with Subject Accusative. All subordinate clauses take the Subjunctive (§ 580).

87. The Present, the Perfect, or the Future Infinitive is used in Indirect Discourse, according as the time indicated is *present*, *past*, or *future* with reference to the verb of *saying* etc. by which the Indirect Discourse is introduced (§ 584).

88. In Indirect Discourse a *real question* is generally put in the Subjunctive; a *rhetorical question* in the Infinitive (§ 586).

89. All Imperative forms of speech take the Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse (§ 588).

90. A Subordinate clause takes the Subjunctive when it expresses the thought of some other person than the writer or speaker (*Informal Indirect Discourse*, § 592).

91. A clause depending on a Subjunctive clause or an equivalent Infinitive will itself take the Subjunctive if regarded as an *integral part* of that clause (*Attraction*, § 593).

For Prepositions and their cases, see §§ 220, 221.
For Conditional Sentences, see § 512 ff. (Scheme in § 514.)
For ways of expressing Purpose, see § 533.
ORDER OF WORDS

595. Latin differs from English in having more freedom in the arrangement of words for the purpose of showing the relative importance of the ideas in a sentence.

596. As in other languages, the Subject tends to stand first, the Predicate last. Thus,—

Pausāniās Lacedaemonius māgnus homō sed varius in omni genere vitae fuit (Nep. Paus. 1), Pausanias the Lacedaemonian was a great man, but inconsistent in the whole course of his life.

Note.—This happens because, from the speaker's ordinary point of view, the subject of his discourse is the most important thing in it, as singled out from all other things to be spoken of.

a. There is in Latin, however, a special tendency to place the verb itself last of all, after all its modifiers. But many writers purposely avoid the monotony of this arrangement by putting the verb last but one, followed by some single word of the predicate.

597. In connected discourse the word most prominent in the speaker's mind comes first, and so on in order of prominence.

This relative prominence corresponds to that indicated in English by a graduated stress of voice (usually called emphasis).

a. The difference in emphasis expressed by difference in order of words is illustrated in the following passages:—

apud Xenophōntem autem moriēns Cŷrus māior haec dicit (Cat. M. 79), in Xenophon too, on his death-bed Cŷrus the elder utters these words.

Cŷrus quidem haec moriēns; nōs, sī placet, nostra videāmus (id. 82), Cŷrus, to be sure, utters these words on his death-bed; let us, if you please, consider our own case.

Cŷrus quidem apud Xenophōntem eō sermōne, quem moriēns habuit (id. 30), Cŷrus, to be sure, in Xenophon, in that speech which he uttered on his death-bed.

Note.—This stress or emphasis, however, in English does not necessarily show any violent contrast to the rest of the words in the sentence, but is infinitely varied, constantly increasing and diminishing, and often so subtle as to be unnoticed except in careful study. So, as a general rule, the precedence of words in a Latin sentence is not mechanical, but corresponds to the prominence which a good speaker would mark by skilfully managed stress of voice. A Latin written sentence, therefore, has all the clearness and expression which could be given to a spoken discourse by the best actor in English. Some exceptions to the rule will be treated later.

The first chapter of Caesar's Gallic War, if rendered so as to bring out as far as possible the shades of emphasis, would run thus:—
GAUL, in the widest sense, is divided into three parts, which are inhabited (as follows): one by the Belgians, another by the Aquitani, the third by a people called in their own language Celts, in ours Gauls. These in their language, institutions, and laws are all of them different. The GAULS (proper) are separated from the Aquitani by the river Garonne, from the Belgians by the Marne and Seine. Of these tribes the bravest of all are the Belgians, for the reason that they live farthest away.

1 GAUL: emphatic as the subject of discourse, as with a title or the like.
2 Divided: opposed to the false conception (implied in the use of omnis) that the country called Gallia by the Romans is one. This appears more clearly from the fact that Caesar later speaks of the Galli in a narrower sense as distinct from the other two tribes, who with them inhabit Gallia in the wider sense.
3 Parts: continuing the emphasis begun in divisa. Not three parts as opposed to any other number, but into parts at all.
4 Inhabited: emphatic as the next subject, "The inhabitants of these parts are, etc."
5 One: given more prominence than if otherwise would have on account of its close connection with quārum.
6 Another, etc.: opposed to one.
7 Their own, ours: strongly opposed to each other.
8 These (tribes): the main subject of discourse again, collecting under one head the names previously mentioned.
9 Language, etc.: these are the most prominent ideas, as giving the striking points which distinguish the tribes. The emphasis becomes natural in English if we say "these have a different language, different institutions, different laws."
10 All of them: the emphasis on all marks the distributive character of the adjective, as if it were "every one has its own, etc."
11 GAULS: emphatic as referring to the Gauls proper in distinction from the other tribes.
12 Separated: though this word contains an indispensable idea in the connection, yet it has a subordinate position. It is not emphatic in Latin, as is seen from the fact that it cannot be made emphatic in English. The sense is: The Gauls lie between the Aquitani on the one side, and the Belgians on the other.
13 Of these: the subject of discourse.
14 All: emphasizing the superlative idea in "bravest"; they, as Gauls, are assumed to be warlike, but the most so of all of them are the Belgians.
15 Farthest away: one might expect absunt (are away) to have a more emphatic place, but it is dwarfed in importance by the predominance of the main idea, the effeminating influences from which the Belgians are said to be free. It is not that they live farthest off that is insisted on, but that the civilization of the Province etc., which would soften them, comes less in their way. It is to be noticed also that absunt has already been anticipated by the construction of cultū and still more by longissimē, so that when it comes it amounts only to a formal part of the sentence. Thus,—"because the civilization etc. of the Province (which would soften them) is farthest from them."
from the civilization and refinement of the Province, and because they are least of all of them subject to the visits of traders, and to the (consequent) importation of such things as tend to soften their warlike spirit; and are also nearest to the Germans, who live across the Rhine, and with whom they are incessantly at war. For the same reason the Helvetians, as well, are superior to all the other Gauls in valor, because they are engaged in almost daily battles with the Germans, either defending their own boundaries from them, or themselves making war on those of the Germans. Of all this country, one part—the one which, as has been said, the Gauls (proper) occupy—begins at the river Rhone. Its boundaries are the river Garonne, the ocean, and the confines of the Belgians. It even reaches on the side of the Sequani and Helvetians the river Rhine. Its general direction is towards the north. The Belgians begin at the extreme limits of Gaul; they reach (on this side) as far as the lower part of the Rhine. They spread to the northward and eastward.

Aquitania extends from the Garonne to the Pyrenees, and that part of the ocean that lies towards Spain. It runs off westward and northward.

b. The more important word is never placed last for emphasis. The apparent cases of this usage (when the emphasis is not misconceived) are cases where a word is added as an afterthought, either real or affected, and so has its position not in the sentence to which it is appended, but, as it were, in a new one.

1 Least: made emphatic here by a common Latin order, the chiasmus (§ 598. f).
2 Traders: the fourth member of the chiasmus, opposed to cultii and humanitatem.
3 Such things as: the importance of the nature of the importations overshadows the fact that they are imported, which fact is anticipated in traders.
4 Soften: cf. what is said in note 15, p. 394. They are brave because they have less to soften them, their native barbarity being taken for granted.
5 Nearest: the same idiomatic prominence as in note 1 above, but varied by a special usage combining chiasmus and anaphora (§ 598. f).
6 Across the Rhine: i.e. and so are perfect savages.
7 Incessantly: the continuance of the warfare becomes the all-important idea, as if it were "and not a day passes in which they are not at war with them."
598. The main rules for the Order of Words are as follows: —

a. In any phrase the determining and most significant word comes first: —

1. Adjective and Noun: —

*Omnis* hominês decet, *every man* ought (opposed to some who do not).

Lúcius Catilina *nobilis* genere natus fuit, *magnā* vi et animi et corporis,* sed ingeniō malō pravōque* (Sall. Cat. 5), *Lucius Catiline was born of a noble family, with great force of mind and body, but with a nature that was evil and depraved.* [Here the adjectives in the first part are the emphatic and important words, no antithesis between the nouns being as yet thought of; but in the second branch the *noun* is meant to be opposed to those before mentioned, and immediately takes the prominent place, as is seen by the natural English emphasis, thus making a *chiasmus.*)

2. Word with modifying case: —

*Quid magis* Epaminōndam, *Thēbānorum* imperātōrem, *quam victoriae Thēbānorum* consulere decuit (Inv. i. 69), *what should Epaminondas, commander of the Thebans, have aimed at more than the victory of the Thebans?*

*lacrimā nihil* citius ārēscit (id. i. 109), *nothing dries quicker than a tear.*

*nēmō* ferē *laudis* cupidus (De Or. i. 14), *hardly any one desirous of glory* (cf. Manil. 7, *avidī laudis, eager for glory*).

b. Numeral adjectives, adjectives of quantity, demonstrative, relative, and interrogative pronouns and adverbs, tend to precede the word or words to which they belong: —

*Cum aliquā* perturbātiōne (Off. i. 137), *with some disturbance.*

*hoc ūnō* praestāmus (De Or. i. 32), *in this one thing we excel.*

*cētera* ferē *artēs, the other arts.*

Note. — This happens because such words are usually emphatic; but often the words connected with them are more so, and in such cases the pronouns etc. yield the emphatic place: —

*causa* aliqua (De Or. i. 250), *some case.*

*stilus ille tua* (id. i. 257), *that well-known style of yours* (in an antithesis; see passage). [Illō is idiomatic in this sense and position.]

*Rōmam* quae apportāta sunt (Verr. iv. 121), *what were carried to Rome* (in contrast to what remained at Syracuse).

c. When *sum* is used as the Substantive verb (§ 284. b), it regularly stands first, or at any rate before its subject: —

*Est virī* māgni pūnīre sōntis (Off. i. 82), *it is the duty of a great man to punish the guilty.*

1 So called from the Greek letter X (*chi*), on account of the criss-cross arrangement of the words. Thus, *χξα* (see f below).
\textbf{d.} The verb may come first, or have a prominent position, either (1) because the \textit{idea} in it is emphatic; or (2) because the \textit{predication of the whole statement} is emphatic; or (3) the \textit{tense} only may be emphatic:—

(1) \textit{dicēbat idem Cotta} (Off. ii. 59), \textit{Cotta used to say the same thing} (opposed to others' boasting).

idem \textit{fēcit} adulēscēns M. Antūnius (id. ii. 49), \textit{the same thing was done by Mark Antony in his youth}. [Opposed to \textit{dixī} just before.]

\textit{facis amīcē} (Lael. 9), \textit{you act kindly}. [Cf. \textit{amīcē facis}, \textit{you are very kind} (you act kindly).]

(2) \textit{prōpēnsiōr} benignitās esse dēbēbit in calamitōsōs nisi forte \textit{erunt} dignī calamitātē (Off. ii. 62), \textit{liberality ought to be readier toward the unfortunate unless perchance they really deserve their misfortune.}

\textit{praesertim cum scribat} (Panaetius) (id. iii. 8), especially when he \textit{does say} (in his books). [Opposed to something omitted by him.]

(3) \textit{fuimus} Trōes, fuit Ilium (Aen. ii. 325), \textit{we have ceased to be Trojans, Troy is now no more.}

\textit{loquor autem dē commūnibus amīcitīs} (Off. iii. 45), but I \textit{am speaking now of common friendships.}

\textbf{e.} Often the connection of two emphatic phrases is brought about by giving the precedence to the most prominent part of each and leaving the less prominent parts to follow in inconspicuous places:—

\textit{plūrēs solent esse causae} (Off. i. 28), \textit{there are usually several reasons.}

\textit{quōs āmisimus cūvis, eōs Mārtis vis perculit} (Marc. 17), \textit{what fellow-citizens we have lost, have been stricken down by the violence of war.}

\textit{maximās tibi omnēs grātiās agimus} (id. 33), \textit{we all render you the warmest thanks.}

\textit{haec rēs ūnius est propria Caesaris} (id. 11), \textit{this exploit belongs to Caesar alone.}

\textit{obiūrgātiōnes etiam nōn numquam incidunt necessāriae} (Off. i. 136), \textit{occasions for rebuke also sometimes occur which are unavoidable.}

\textbf{f.} Antithesis between two pairs of ideas is indicated by placing the pairs either (1) in the same order (\textit{anaphora}) or (2) in exactly the opposite order (\textit{chiasmus}) :—

(1) \textit{rērum cōpia verbōrum cōpiam gignit} (De Or. iii. 125), \textit{abundance of matter produces copiousness of expression.}

(2) \textit{lēgēs suppliciō improbōs afficiunt, dēfendunt ac tuentur bonōs} (Legg. ii. 13), \textit{the laws visit punishments upon the wicked, but the good they defend and protect.}

\textbf{Note.}—Chiasmus is very common in Latin, and often seems in fact the more inartificial construction. In an artless narrative one might hear, “The women were all drowned, they saved the men.”

\textit{nōn igitur utilisātam amīcitiam sed utilisātis amīcitiam cōnsecūta est} (Lael. 51), \textit{it is not then that friendship has followed upon advantage, but advantage upon friendship.} [Here the chiasmus is only grammatical, the ideas being in the parallel order.] (See also p. 395: \textit{longissimē, minimē, proximē.})
g. A modifier of a phrase or some part of it is often embodied within the phrase (cf. a):

dē commūnī hominum memoriā (Tusc. i. 59), in regard to the universal memory of man.

h. A favorite order with the poets is the interlocked, by which the attribute of one pair comes between the parts of the other (synchysis):

et superiectō pavidae natārunt aequore dammæ (Hor. Od. i. 2. 11).

Note.—This is often joined with chiasmus: as,—arma nōndum explātīs ūneta cruōribus (id. ii. 1. 5).

i. Frequently unimportant words follow in the train of more emphatic ones with which they are grammatically connected, and so acquire a prominence out of proportion to their importance:

dictātābat sē hortulōs aliqūōs emere velle (Off. iii. 58), he gave out that he wanted to buy some gardens. [Here aliqūōs is less emphatic than emere, but precedes it on account of the emphasis on hortulōs.]

j. The copula is generally felt to be of so little importance that it may come in anywhere where it sounds well; but usually under cover of more emphatic words:

cōnsul ego quaesivī, cum vōs mihi essētis in cōnsilīō (Rep. iii. 28), as consul I held an investigation in which you attended me in council.

falsum est id tōtum (id. ii. 28), that is all false.

k. Many expressions have acquired an invariable order:

rēs pūblica; populus Rōmānus; honōris causā; pāce tantī virī.

Note.—These had, no doubt, originally an emphasis which required such an arrangement, but in the course of time have changed their shade of meaning. Thus, senātus populusque Rōmānus originally stated with emphasis the official bodies, but became fixed so as to be the only permissible form of expression.

l. The Romans had a fondness for emphasizing persons, so that a name or a pronoun often stands in an emphatic place:

[dixit] vēnālis quidem sē hortōs nōn habēre (Off. iii. 58), [said] that he did n't have any gardens for sale, to be sure.

m. Kindred words often come together (figūra etymologica):

ita sēsūm sine sēsū aetās senēscit (Cat. M. 38), thus gradually, without being perceived, man's life grows old.

Special Rules

599. The following are special rules of arrangement:

a. The negative precedes the word it especially affects; but if it belongs to no one word in particular, it generally precedes the verb; if it is especially emphatic, it begins the sentence. (See example, 598. f. n.)
b. Itaque regularly comes first in its sentence or clause; enim, autem, véro, quoque, never first, but usually second, sometimes third if the second word is emphatic; quidem never first, but after the emphatic word; igitur usually second; né ... quidem include the emphatic word or words.

c. Inquam, inquit, are always used parenthetically, following one or more words. So often crédó, opínor, and in poetry sometimes precor.

d. (1) Prepositions (except tenus and versus) regularly precede their nouns; (2) but a monosyllabic preposition is often placed between a noun and its adjective or limiting genitive:—

quem ad modum; quam ob rem; mágnō cum metū; omnibus cum cōpiis; nūlā in rē (cf. § 598. 2).

e. In the arrangement of clauses, the Relative clause more often comes first in Latin, and usually contains the antecedent noun:—

quōs ámīsimus cīvis, eōs Mārtis vis perculit (Marc. 17), those citizens whom we have lost, etc.

f. Personal or demonstrative pronouns tend to stand together in the sentence:—

cum vīs mihi essētis in cōnsiliō (Rep. iii. 28), when you attended me in counsel.

Structure of the Period

600. Latin, unlike modern languages, expresses the relation of words to each other by inflection rather than by position. Hence its structure not only admits of great variety in the arrangement of words, but is especially favorable to that form of sentence which is called a Period. In a period, the sense is expressed by the sentence as a whole, and is held in suspense till the delivery of the last word.

An English sentence does not often exhibit this form of structure. It was imitated, sometimes with great skill and beauty, by many of the earlier writers of English prose; but its effect is better seen in poetry, as in the following passage:—

High on a throne of royal state, which far
Outshone the wealth of Ormus and of Ind,
Or where the gorgeous East with richest hand
Showers on her kings barbaric pearl and gold,
Satan exalted sat.—Paradise Lost, ii. 1-5.

But in argument or narrative, the best English writers more commonly give short clear sentences, each distinct from the rest, and saying one thing by itself. In Latin, on the contrary, the story or argument is viewed as a whole; and the logical relation among all its parts is carefully indicated.

601. In the structure of the Period, the following rules are to be observed:—

a. In general the main subject or object is put in the main clause, not in a subordinate one:—

Hannibal cum recēnusisset auxilia Gādēs profectus est (Liv. xxi. 21), when Hannibal had reviewed the auxiliaries, he set out for Cadiz.
Volsci exigam spem in armis, alia undique abscissae, cum tentassent, praeter cetera adversa, loco quoque iniquo ad pugnam congressi, iniquiore ad fugam, cum ab omni parte caederetur, ad precem a certamine versi dedito imperatorem tradiisque armis, sub iugum missi, cum singulis vestimentis, ignominiarum clarissimae pleni dimittuntur (Liv. iv. 10). [Here the main fact is the return of the Volscians. But the striking circumstances of the surrender etc., which in English would be detailed in a number of brief independent sentences, are put into the several subordinate clauses within the main clause so that the passage gives a complete picture in one sentence.]

b. Clauses are usually arranged in the order of prominence in the mind of the speaker; so, usually, cause before result; purpose, manner, and the like, before the act.

c. In coordinate clauses, the copulative conjunctions are frequently omitted (asynclitically). In such cases the connection is made clear by some antithesis indicated by the position of words.

d. A change of subject, when required, is marked by the introduction of a pronoun, if the new subject has already been mentioned. But such change is often purposely avoided by a change in structure,—the less important being merged in the more important by the aid of participles or of subordinate phrases:

quem ut barbari incendium effugisse vidissent, teliseminus missis interfectur (Nep. Alc. 10), when the barbarians saw that he had escaped, they threw darts at him at long range and killed him.

celeriter concerto negociis, in hiberna legionibus redixit (B. G. vi. 3), the matter was soon finished, and he led the legions, etc.

e. So the repetition of a noun, or the substitution of a pronoun for it, is avoided unless a different case is required:

dolorem si non potueris frangere occultabo (Phil. xii. 21), if I cannot conquer the pain, I will hide it. [Cf. if I cannot conquer I will hide the pain.]

f. The Romans were careful to close a period with an agreeable succession of long and short syllables. Thus,—

quod scis nihil prodest, quod nescis multum obest (Or. 166), what you know is of no use, what you do not know does great harm.

Note.—In rhetorical writing, particularly in oratory, the Romans, influenced by their study of the Greek orators, gave more attention to this matter than in other forms of composition. Quintilian (ix. 4. 72) lays down the general rule that a clause should not open with the beginning of a verse or close with the end of one.
QUANTITY OF VOWELS

PROSODY

QUANTITY

602. The poetry of the Indo-European people seems originally to have been somewhat like our own, depending on accent for its metre and disregarding the natural quantity of syllables. The Greeks, however, developed a form of poetry which, like music, pays close attention to the natural quantity of syllables; and the Romans borrowed their metrical forms in classical times from the Greeks. Hence Latin poetry does not depend, like ours, upon accent and rhyme; but is measured, like musical strains, by the length of syllables. Especially does it differ from our verse in not regarding the prose accent of the words, but substituting for that an entirely different system of metrical accent or ictus (see § 611. a). This depends upon the character of the measure used, falling at regular intervals of time on a long syllable or its equivalent. Each syllable is counted as either long or short in Quantity; and a long syllable is generally reckoned equal in length to two short ones (for exceptions, see § 608. c–e).

The quantity of radical (or stem) syllables—as of short a in pater or of long a in mater—can be learned only by observation and practice, unless determined by the general rules of quantity. Most of these rules are only arbitrary formulas devised to assist the memory; the syllables being long or short because the ancients pronounced them so. The actual practice of the Romans in regard to the quantity of syllables is ascertained chiefly from the usage of the poets; but the ancient grammarians give some assistance, and in some inscriptions long vowels are distinguished in various ways,—by the apex, for instance, or by doubling (§ 10. e. n.).

Since Roman poets borrow very largely from the poetry and mythology of the Greeks, numerous Greek words, especially proper names, make an important part of Latin poetry. These words are generally employed in accordance with the Greek, and not the Latin, laws of quantity. Where these laws vary in any important point, the variations will be noticed in the rules below.

GENERAL RULES

603. The following are General Rules of Quantity (cf. §§ 9–11):

Quantity of Vowels

a. Vowels. A vowel before another vowel or h is short: as, via, trahō.

Exceptions.—1. In the genitive form -ius, i is long: as, utrius, nullius. It is, however, sometimes short in verse (§ 113. c).

2. In the genitive and dative singular of the fifth declension, e is long between two vowels: as, diē; otherwise usually short, as in fidēi, rēi, spēi.

Note.—It was once long in these also: as, plēnum fidēi (Ennius, at the end of a hexameter). A is also long before i in the old genitive of the first declension: as, aulāi.

3. In the conjugation of fiō, i is long except when followed by er. Thus, fiō, fiēbam, fam, but fieri, fierem; so also fit (§ 606. a. 3).

4. In many Greek words the vowel in Latin represents a long vowel or diphthong, and retains its original long quantity: as, Trōes (Trōes), Thalia (Θαλέα), hērōas (ἥρωας), āer (ἄηρ).
Note.—But many Greek words are more or less Latinized in this respect: as, Acadēmia, chorē, Māleta, platēa.

5. In dūs, in eheu usually, and sometimes in Dīna and ēhe, the first vowel is long.

b. Diphthongs. A Diphthong is long: as, fōedus, cūī, āula.

Exception. — The preposition prae in compounds is generally shortened before a vowel: as, prae-ustis (Aen. vii. 524), prae-ente (id. v. 186).

Note.—U following q, s, or g, does not make a diphthong with a following vowel (see § 5. n. 2). For ā-ō, mā-ōr, pē-ö, etc., see § 11. d and n.

c. Contraction. A vowel formed by contraction (crasis) is long: as, nil, from nihil; cōgō for cō-agō; mālō for mā-volō.

Note.—Two vowels of different syllables may be run together without full contraction (synizesis, § 642): as, dénde (for deinde), mōs (for mōs); and often two syllables are united by Synaeresis (§ 642) without contraction: as when pāriētibus is pronounced paryētibus.

d. A vowel before ns, nf, gn, is long: as, įnstō, infāns, signum.

Quantity of Syllables

e. A syllable is long if it contains a long vowel or a diphthong: as, cā-rus, ē-men, fōe-dus.

f. Position. A syllable is long by position if its vowel, though short, is followed by two consonants or a double consonant: as, adventus, cortex.

But if the two consonants are a mute followed by l or r the syllable may be either long or short (common): as, alacris or alācris; patris or pātris.

Vowels should be pronounced long or short in accordance with their natural quantity without regard to the length of the syllable by position.

Note 1.—The rules of Position do not, in general, apply to final vowels before a word beginning with two consonants.

Note 2.—A syllable is long if its vowel is followed by consonant i (except in biugis, quadriugis): see § 11. d.

Note 3.—Compounds of iaciō, though written with one i, commonly retain the long vowel of the prepositions with which they are compounded, as if before a consonant, and, if the vowel of the preposition is short, the first syllable is long by position on the principle of § 11. e.

ōbicis hosti (at the end of a hexameter, Aen. iv. 549).
īnicit et saltū (at the beginning of a hexameter, Aen. ix. 552).
prōice tēla manū (at the beginning of a hexameter, Aen. vi. 836).

Later poets sometimes shorten the preposition in trisyllabic forms, and prepositions ending in a vowel are sometimes contracted if the verb began with a vowel:

(1) cūr anānōs ōbicis (Claud. iv C. H. 264).
(2) reicē cā|pellās (Ecl. iii. 96, at end).

Note 4.—The y or w sound resulting from synaeresis (§ 642) has the effect of a consonant in making position: as, abietis (abyetis), fluviōrum (fluviōrum). Conversely, when the semivowel becomes a vowel, position is lost: as, stilāe, for silvae.

1 Rarely dissyllabic cūī (as Mart. i. 104. 22).
**FINAL SYLLABLES**

604. The Quantity of Final Syllables is as follows:

a. Monosyllables ending in a vowel are long: as, mē, tū, hi, nē.

1. The attached particles -nē, -quē, -vē, -cē, -ptē, and rē- (rēd-) are short; sē-(sēd-) and di- are long. Thus, sēcēdit, sēditio, exercitumquē réducit, dīmittō. But re- is often long in rēligiō (relligiō), rēbulī (rettulī), rēpulī (reppulī).

b. Nouns and adjectives of one syllable are long: as, sōl, ōs (ōris), bōs, pār, vās (vāsis), vēr, vis.

*Exceptions.* — cūr, fēl, īāc, mēl, ōs (ossis), vās (vādis), vīr, tōt, quōt.

c. Most monosyllabic Particles are short: as, ān, īn, cīs, nēc. But crās, cūr, ēn, nōn, quīn, sīn — with adverbs in c: as, hīc, hūc, sic — are long.

d. Final a in words declined by cases is short, except in the ablative singular of the first declension; in all other words final a is long. Thus, eā stellā (nominative), cum eā stellā (ablative); frūstrā, vocā (imperative), postea, trīgintā.

*Exceptions.* — ēā, itā, quīā, putā (suppose); and, in late use, trīgintā etc.

e. Final e is short: as in nūbē, dūcitē, saepē.

*Exceptions.* — Final e is long — 1. In adverbs formed from adjectives of the first and second declension, with others of like form: as, altē, longē, miserē, apertē, saepissimē. So ferē, fermē.

But it is short in benē, malē; īnfernē, supernē.

2. In nouns of the fifth declension: as, fīdē (also famē), faciē, hodiē, quārē (quā rē).

3. In Greek neuters plural of the second declension: as, cētē; and in some other Greek words: Phoebē, Circē, Andromachē, etc.

4. In the imperative singular of the second conjugation: as, vidē.

But sometimes cavē, habē, tacē, valē, vidē (cf. § 629. b. 1).

f. Final i is long: as in turī, filī, audī.

*Exceptions.* — Final i is common in mihi, tibi, sibi, ibi, ubi; and short in nīsī, quasi, sīcutī, cuī (when making two syllables), and in Greek vocatives: as, Alexī.

g. Final o is common: but long in datives and ablatives; also in nouns of the third declension. It is almost invariably long in verbs before the time of Ovid.

*Exceptions.* — citō, modō (dummodō), immō, prefectō, egō, duō, cēdō (the imperative); so sometimes octō, ilicō, etc., particularly in later writers.

h. Final u is long. Final y is short.

i. Final as, es, os, are long; final is, us, ys, are short: as, nefās, rūpēs, servōs (accusative), honōs; hostis, amīcūs, Tethyś.
Exceptions. — 1. as is short in Greek plural accusatives: as, lampadās; and in anās.
2. es is short in the nominative of nouns of the third declension (lingual) having a short vowel in the stem: as, mūlēs (-itis), obsēs (-idis), — except abīēs, ariēs, pariēs, pēs; in the present of esse (ēs, aēs); in the preposition penēs, and in the plural of Greek nouns: as, hērōēs, lampadēs.
3. os is short in compōs, impōs; in the Greek nominative ending: as, barbitōs; in the old nominative of the second declension: as, servōs (later servus).
4. is in plural cases is long: as in bonīs, nōbīs, vōbīs, omnīs (accusative plural).
5. is is long in the verb forms fis, sīs, vis (with quīvīs etc.), velīs, mālīs, nōlīs, edīs; in the second person singular of the present indicative active in the fourth conjugation: as, aūdis; and sometimes in the forms in -ēris (future perfect indicative or perfect subjunctive).

j. Of other final syllables, those ending in a single consonant are short. Thus, amāt, amātūr; dōnēc, fāc, procūl, iūbār.

Exceptions. — hic (also hīc); allēc; the ablatives īllīc, etc.; certain adverbs in -ēc: as, īlīc, īstu; lēn, and some Greek nouns: as, aēr, aethēr, cratēr.

Perfects and Perfect Participles

605. Perfects and Perfect Participles of two syllables have the first syllable long: as, iūvī, iūtum (iūvō), vīdī, visum (vīdeō); fūgi (fūgiō); vēnī (vēniō).

Exceptions. — bībī, dēdī, fīdī, scīdī, stētī, stītī, tūlī; citum, dātum, lītum, lītum, quītum, rātum, rūtum, sātum, sūtum, stātum. In some compounds of stō, stātum is found (long), as praestātum.

a. In reduplicated perfects the vowel of the reduplication is short; the vowel of the following syllable is, also, usually short: as, cēcidī (cādō), didīcī (discō), pūpūgī (pungō), cūcūrīrī (currō), tētēndī (tendō), mōmōrdī (morōdō). But cēcidī from caedō, pepēdī from pēdō.

Derivatives

606. Rules for the Quantity of Derivatives are: —
a. Forms from the same stem have the same quantity: as, āmō, āmā-vistī; gēnus, gēneris.

Exceptions. — 1. bōs, lār, mās, pār, pēs, sāl, — also arbōs, — have a long vowel in the nominative, though the stem-vowel is short (cf. genitive bōvis etc.).

1 The quantity of the stem-vowel may be seen in the genitive singular.
2. Nouns in -ōr, genitive -ōris, have the vowel shortened before the final r: as, honor. (But this shortening is comparatively late, so that in early Latin these nominatives are often found long.)

3. Verb-forms with vowel originally long regularly shorten it before final m, r, or t: as, amēm, amēr, dicērēr, amēt (compare amēnus); dicētēt, auditīt, fit.

Note.—The final syllable in t of the perfect was long in old Latin, but is short in the classic period.

4. A few long stem-syllables are shortened: as, ācer, ācerbus. So dē-iērō and pē-iērō, weakened from iūrō.

b. Forms from the same root often show inherited variations of vowel quantity (see § 17): as, dīcō (cf. maledicus); dūcō (dūx, dūcis); fīdō (perfidus); vōx, vōcis (vōcō); lēx, lēgis (lēgō).

c. Compounds retain the quantity of the words which compose them: as, oc-cidō (cādō), oc-cidō (caēdō), in-īquus (aequus).

Note.—Greek words compounded with πρό have o short: as, prōphēta, prōlōgus. Some Latin compounds of prō have o short: as, prōficiscor, prōfiteor. Compounds with ne vary: as, nēfās, nēgō, nēqueō, nēquam.

RHYTHM

607. The essence of Rhythm in poetry is the regular recurrence of syllables pronounced with more stress than those intervening. To produce this effect in its perfection, precisely equal times should occur between the recurrences of the stress. But, in the application of rhythm to words, the exactness of these intervals is sacrificed somewhat to the necessary length of the words; and, on the other hand, the words are forced somewhat in their pronunciation, to produce more nearly the proper intervals of time. In different languages these adaptations take place in different degrees; one language disregarding more the intervals of time, another the pronunciation of the words.

The Greek language early developed a very strict rhythmical form of poetry, in which the intervals of time were all-important. The earliest Latin, on the other hand, —as in the Saturnian and Fescennine verse,— was not so restricted. But the purely metrical forms were afterwards adopted from the Greek, and supplanted the native forms of verse. Thus the Latin poetry with which we have to do follows for the most part Greek rules, which require the formal division of words (like music) into measures of equal times, technically called Feet. The strict rhythm was doubtless more closely followed in poetry that was sung than in that which was declaimed or intoned. In neither language, however, is the time perfectly preserved, even in single measures; and there are some cases in which the regularity of the time between the ictuses is disturbed.

The Greeks and Romans distinguished syllables of two kinds in regard to the time required for their pronunciation, a long syllable having twice the metrical value of a short one. But it must not be supposed that all long syllables were of equal length, or even that in a given passage each long had just twice the length of the contiguous shorts. The ratio was only approximate at best, though necessarily more exact in singing than in recitation. Nor are longs and shorts the only forms of syllables that are found. In some cases a long syllable was protracted, so as to have the time of three or even of four shorts, and often one long or two shorts were pronounced in less than their proper time, though they were perhaps distinguishable in time from one
short (see §608. c, d). Sometimes a syllable naturally short seems to have been slightly prolonged, so as to represent a long, though in most (not all) cases the apparent irregularity can be otherwise explained. In a few cases, also, a pause takes the place of one or more syllables to fill out the required length of the measure. This could, of course, take place only at the end of a word: hence the importance of Caesura and Dieresis in prosody (§611. b, c).

Measures

608. Rhythm consists of the division of musical sound into equal intervals of time called Measures or Feet.

The most natural division of musical time is into measures consisting of either two or three equal parts. But the ancients also distinguished measures of five equal parts.

Note.—The divisions of musical time are marked by a stress of voice on one or the other part of the measure. This stress is called the Ictus (beat), or metrical accent (see §611. a).

a. The unit of length in Prosody is one short syllable. This is called a Mora. It is represented by the sign \( \circ \), or in musical notation by the eighth note or quaver (\( \frac{1}{8} \)).

b. A long syllable is regularly equal to two morae, and is represented by the sign \( \underline{\underline{\circ}} \), or by the quarter note or crotchet (\( \frac{1}{4} \)).

c. A long syllable may be protracted, so as to occupy the time of three or four morae. Such a syllable, if equal to three morae, is represented by the sign \( \underline{\underline{\underline{\circ}}} \) (or dotted quarter \( \frac{3}{4} \)); if equal to four, by \( \underline{\underline{\underline{\underline{\circ}}}} \) (or the half note or minim, \( \frac{1}{2} \)).

da. A long syllable may be contracted, so as to take practically the time of a short one. Such a syllable is sometimes represented by the sign \( \gg \).

e. A short syllable may be contracted so as to occupy less than one mora.

f. A pause sometimes occurs at the end of a verse or a series of verses, to fill up the time. A pause of one mora in a measure is indicated by the sign \( \wedge \); one of two morae by the sign \( \wedge \wedge \).

g. One or more syllables are sometimes placed before the proper beginning of the measure. Such syllables are called an Anacrusis or prelude.\(^1\)

The anacrusis is regularly equal to the unaccented part of the measure.

---

\( ^1 \) The same thing occurs in modern poetry, and in modern music any unaccented syllables at the beginning are treated as an anacrusis, i.e. they make an incomplete measure before the first bar. This was not the case in ancient music. The ancients seem to have treated any unaccented syllable at the beginning as belonging to the following accented ones, so as to make with them a foot or measure. Thus it would seem that there was an original form of Indo-European poetry which was iambic in its structure, or which, at least, accented the second syllable rather than the first.
609. The feet most frequently employed in Latin verse, together with their musical notation, are the following:

**a. Triple or Unequal Measures (⅔)**

1. Trochee (\(\sim \cup = \overline{\text{P}} \text{P} \text{P}\)): as, régis.
2. Iambus (\(\cup \sim = \underline{\text{P}} \text{P}\)): as, dücès.
3. Tribrach\(^2\) (\(\cup \cup \cup = \overline{\text{P}} \text{P} \text{P} \text{P}\)): as, hōminis.

**b. Double or Equal Measures (2)\(^2\)**

1. Dactyl (\(\sim \sim = \text{P} \text{P} \text{P}\)): as, cōnsūlīs.
2. Anapaest (\(\cup \sim \sim = \underline{\text{P}} \text{P} \text{P}\)): as, mōnītōs.
3. Spondee (\(\sim \sim = \text{P} \text{P}\)): as, régēs.

**c. Six-timed Measures (\(\frac{3}{2}\))**

1. Ionic à māiōre (\(\sim \sim \cup \cup = \text{P} \text{P} \text{P} \text{P}\)): as, cōnfēcērāt.
2. Ionic à minōre (\(\cup \sim \sim \sim = \underline{\text{P}} \text{P} \text{P} \text{P}\)): as, rēlūlissent.
3. Choriambus (\(\sim \cup \sim \sim = \text{P} \text{P} \text{P} \text{P}\)): as, contūlērunt.

**d. Quinary or Hemiolic \(^3\) Measures (\(\frac{5}{4}\))**

1. Cretic (\(\sim \sim = \text{P} \text{P} \text{P}\)): as, cōnsūlēs.
2. Pæon primus (\(\sim \sim \sim \sim = \text{P} \text{P} \text{P} \text{P}\)): as, cōnsūlibūs.
3. Pæon quartus (\(\sim \sim \sim \sim = \text{P} \text{P} \text{P} \text{P}\)): as, ĭtīnērī.
4. Bacchius (\(\cup \sim \sim = \text{P} \text{P} \text{P}\)): as, āmīcōs.

\(^1\) Called diplasic, the two parts (Thesis and Arsis) being in the ratio of 2 to 1.

\(^2\) Not found as a fundamental foot, but only as the resolution of a Trochee or Iambus.

\(^3\) Called hemiolic, the two parts being in the ratio of 1 to 1\(\frac{3}{4}\), or of 2 to 3.
Note.—Several compound feet are mentioned by the grammarians, viz. *Pyrrhic* (\(\bigcirc -\bigcirc\)); *Amphibrach* (\(\bigcirc - \bigcirc\)); *Antibacchius* (\(\bigcirc - \bigcirc\)); *Proceleusmatic* (\(\bigcirc \bigcirc -\bigcirc\)); the *Molossus* (\(\bigcirc - \bigcirc\)); the 2d and 3d *Paeon*, having a long syllable in the 2d or 3d place, with three short ones; 1st, 2d, 3d, and 4th *Epitritus*, having a short syllable in the 1st, 2d, 3d, or 4th place, with three long ones.

**Irrational Feet**

e. Feet with these apparent quantities do not always occupy equal time, but may be contracted or prolonged to suit the series in which they occur. They are then called *irrational*, because the thesis and arsis do not have their normal ratio.\(^1\) Such are:—

Irrational Spondee:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{(in place of a Trochee)} & \quad \underline{\text{\(\bigcirc\)}} > \quad \underline{\text{\(\bigcirc\)}} \quad \underline{\text{\(\bigcirc\)}} \quad \underline{\text{\(\bigcirc\)}} \quad \underline{\text{\(\bigcirc\)}} \quad \underline{\text{\(\bigcirc\)}} \\
\text{(in place of an Iambus)} & \quad > \quad \underline{\text{\(\bigcirc\)}} \quad \underline{\text{\(\bigcirc\)}} \quad \underline{\text{\(\bigcirc\)}} \quad \underline{\text{\(\bigcirc\)}} \\
\end{align*}
\]

Cyclic Dactyl (in place of a Trochee):

\[
\underline{\text{\(\bigcirc\)}} \quad \underline{\text{\(\bigcirc\)}} \quad \underline{\text{\(\bigcirc\)}} \quad \underline{\text{\(\bigcirc\)}} \quad \underline{\text{\(\bigcirc\)}} \quad \underline{\text{\(\bigcirc\)}}
\]

Cyclic Anapaest (in place of an Iambus):

\[
\underline{\text{\(\bigcirc\)}} \quad \underline{\text{\(\bigcirc\)}} \quad \underline{\text{\(\bigcirc\)}} \quad \underline{\text{\(\bigcirc\)}} \quad \underline{\text{\(\bigcirc\)}} \quad \underline{\text{\(\bigcirc\)}}
\]

The apparent dactyl \(\bigcirc - \bigcirc\), as a substitute for an iambus, and the apparent anapaest \(\bigcirc - \bigcirc\), as a substitute for a trochee, occur frequently in the dramatic writers.

Note.—Narrative poetry was written for rhythmical recitation, or chant, with instrumental accompaniment; and Lyrical poetry for rhythmical melody, or singing. It must be borne in mind that in ancient music—which in this differs widely from modern—the rhythm of the melody was identical with the rhythm of the text. The lyric poetry was to be sung; the poet was musician and composer, as well as author. To this day a poet is said conventionally to “sing.”

Thus a correct understanding of the rhythmical structure of the verse gives us the *time*, though not the *tune*, to which it was actually sung. The exact time, however, as indicated by the succession of long and short syllables, was varied according to certain laws of so-called “Rhythmic,” as will be explained below. In reading ancient verse it is necessary to bear in mind not only the variations in the relative length of syllables, but the occasional pause necessary to fill out the measure; and to remember that the rhythmical accent is the only one of importance, though the words should be distinguished carefully, and the sense preserved. Poetry should not be *scanned*, but read metrically.

\(^1\) It seems probable that both thesis and arsis of an irrational foot were affected by the necessity of preserving the rhythmical time of the foot.
§§ 610, 611] THE MUSICAL ACCENT 409

Substitution

610. In many cases measures of the same time may be substituted for each other, a long syllable taking the place of two short ones, or two short syllables the place of a long one.

In the former case the measure is said to be contracted; in the latter, to be resolved:—

a. A Spondee (―) may take the place of a Dactyl (―⊙) or an Anapast (⊙⊙); and a Tribrach (⊙⊙⊙) may take the place of a Trochee (⊙) or an Iambus (⊙⊙). The optional substitution of one long syllable for two short ones is represented by the sign =

b. When a long syllable having the Ictus (§ 611. a) is resolved, the ictus properly belongs to both the resulting short syllables; but for convenience the mark of accent is placed on the first:—

nunc ex périère | stné à|cétô | tibí cór | ácrē in | péctô|ré. — Pl. Bac. 405.

The Musical Accent

611. That part of the measure which receives the stress of voice (the musical accent) is called the Thesis; the unaccented part is called the Arsis.¹

a. The stress of voice laid upon the Thesis is called the Ictus (beat). It is marked thus: \( \underline{\sim} \circ \circ \).

b. The ending of a word within a measure is called Cæsura. When this coincides with a rhetorical pause, it is called the Cæsura of the verse, and is of main importance as affecting the melody or rhythm.

c. The coincidence of the end of a word with that of a measure is called Diæresis.

¹ The Thesis signifies properly the putting down (θέσις, from τίθημι, put, place) of the foot in beating time, in the march or dance ("downward beat"), and the Arsis the raising (ἀρσις, from ἀνέπω, raise) of the foot ("upward beat"). By the Latin grammarians these terms were made to mean, respectively, the ending and the beginning of a measure. By a misunderstanding which has prevailed till recently, since the time of Bentley, their true signification has been reversed. They will here be used in accordance with their ancient meaning, as has now become more common. This metrical accent, recurring at regular intervals of time, is what constitutes the essence of the rhythm of poetry as distinguished from prose, and should be constantly kept in mind. The error mentioned arose from applying to trochaic and dactylic verse a definition which was true only of iambic or anapaestic.
VERSIFICATION

THE VERSE

612. A single line of poetry — that is, a series of feet set in a recognized order — is called a Verse.¹

Note. — Most of the common verses originally consisted of two series (hemistichs), but the joint between them is often obscured. It is marked in Iambic and Trochaic Tetrameter by the Diseresis, in Dactylic Hexameter by the Caesura.

a. A verse lacking a syllable at the end is called Catalectic, that is, having a pause to fill the measure; when the end syllable is not lacking, the verse is called Acatalectic, and has no such pause.

b. A final syllable, regularly short, is sometimes lengthened before a pause:² it is then said to be long by Diastole: —

nostrūrüm bruimur, — ortiturque miserrima caedes. — Aen. ii. 411.

c. The last syllable of any verse may be indifferently long or short (syllaba anceps).

Scansion and Elision

d. To divide the verse into its appropriate measures, according to the rules of quantity and versification, is called scanning or scansion (scānsiō, a climbing or advance by steps, from scandō).

Note. — In reading verse rhythmically, care should be taken to preserve the measure or time of the syllables, but at the same time not to destroy or confuse the words themselves, as is often done in scanning.

e. In scanning, a vowel or diphthong at the end of a word (unless an interjection) is partially suppressed when the next word begins with a vowel or with h. This is called Elision (bruising).³

In reading it is usual entirely to suppress elided syllables. Strictly, however, they should be sounded lightly.

¹ The word Verse (versus) signifies a turning back, i.e. to begin again in like manner, as opposed to Prose (prōrsus or prōversus), which means straight ahead.

² This usage is comparatively rare, most cases where it appears to be found being caused by the retention of an originally long quantity.

³ The practice of Elision is followed in Italian and French poetry, and is sometimes adopted in English, particularly in the older poets: —

T' inveigle and invite th' unwary sense. — Comus 538.

In early Latin poetry a final syllable ending in s often loses this letter even before a consonant (cf. § 15. 7): —

seniō cōnfexit quīēscit. — Enn. (Cat. M. 14).
Note.—Elision is sometimes called by the Greek name Synalæpha (smearing). Rarely a syllable is elided at the end of a verse when the next verse begins with a vowel: this is called Synapheia (binding).

f. A final m, with the preceding vowel, is suppressed in like manner when the next word begins with a vowel or h: this is called Ecthlipsis (squeezing out):

monstrum horrendum, informe, ingens, cui lumen ademptum.

—Aen. iii. 658.

Note 1.—Final m has a feeble nasal sound, so that its partial suppression before the initial vowel of the following word was easy.

Note 2.—The monosyllables do, dem, spe, spem, sim, stē, stem, qui (plural), and monosyllabic interjections are never elided; nor is an iambic word elided in dactylic verse. Elision is often evaded by skillful collocation of words.

g. Elision is sometimes omitted when a word ending in a vowel has a special emphasis, or is succeeded by a pause. This omission is called Hiatus (gaping).

Note.—The final vowel is sometimes shortened in such cases.

FORMS OF VERSE

613. A verse receives its name from its dominant or fundamental foot: as, Dactylic, Iambic, Trochaic, Anapaestic; and from the number of measures (single or double) which it contains: as, Hexameter, Tetrameter, Trimeter, Dimeter.

Note.—Trochaic, Iambic, and Anapaestic verses are measured not by single feet, but by pairs (dipodia), so that six Iambi make a Trimeter.

614. A Stanza, or Strophe, consists of a definite number of verses ranged in a fixed order.

Many stanzas are named after some eminent poet: as, Sapphic (from Sappho), Alcaic (from Alcæus), Archilochian (from Archilochus), Horatian (from Horace), and so on.

Dactylic Verse

Dactylic Hexameter

615. The Dactylic Hexameter, or Heroic Verse, consists theoretically of six dactyls. It may be represented thus:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Dactylic Hexameter} & \quad \text{Dactyl Hexameter} \\
\text{615. The Dactylic Hexameter, or } & \text{Heroic Verse, consists theoretically of six dactyls. It may be represented thus:} \\
& \quad \text{Dactyl Hexameter} \\
\text{615. The Dactylic Hexameter, or } & \text{Heroic Verse, consists theoretically of six dactyls. It may be represented thus:} \\
\end{align*}
\]
Note.—The last foot is usually said to be a spondee, but is in reality a trochee standing for a dactyl, since the final syllable is not measured.

a. For any foot, except the fifth, a spondee may be substituted.

b. Rarely a spondee is found in the fifth foot; the verse is then called spondaic and usually ends with a word of four syllables.

Thus in Ecl. iv. 49 the verse ends with incrementum.

c. The hexameter has regularly one principal cæsura — sometimes two — almost always accompanied by a pause in the sense.

1. The principal cæsura is usually after the thesis (less commonly in the arsis) of the third foot, dividing the verse into two parts in sense and rhythm. See examples in d.

2. It may also be after the thesis (less commonly in the arsis) of the fourth foot. In this case there is often another cæsura in the second foot, so that the verse is divided into three parts:


Note.—Often the only indication of the principal among a number of cæsuras is the break in the sense.

A cæsura occurring after the first syllable of a foot is called masculine. A cæsura occurring after the second syllable of a foot is called feminine (as in the fifth foot of the third and fourth verses in d). A cæsura may also be found in any foot of the verse, but a proper cæsural pause could hardly occur in the first or sixth.

When the fourth foot ends a word, the break (properly a diaeresis) is sometimes improperly called bucolic cæsura, from its frequency in pastoral poetry.

d. The first seven verses of the Æneid, divided according to the foregoing rules, will appear as follows. The principal cæsura in each verse is marked by double lines:

   Armā vī|rumquē câ|nō || Trū|iae quī | prīmūs āb | ōrīs
   Ítālī|am fā|tō prō|tū|gus || Lā|vīna|quē | vēnīt
   lītōrā, | multum ilā et ter|ārīs || iac|tātūs ēt | altō
   vī sēp|ērum || sae|vae mēmō|rem Īu|nōnīs ēb | ērām;
   multā quō|quē et bel|lō pas|sus || dum | condērēt | urbēm,
   inferretquē dē|ōs Lātī|ō, || gēnūs | undē Lā|tīnum,
   Albāni|quē pā|trēs, || at|quē altae | moenīa | Rōmæe.

1. The feminine cæsura is seen in the following:


Note.—The Hexameter is thus illustrated in English verse:

Over the sea, past Crete, on the Syrian shore to the southward,
Dwells in the well-tilled lowland a dark-haired Æthiop people,
Skilful with needle and loom, and the arts of the dyer and carver,
Skilful, but feeble of heart; for they know not the lords of Olympus,
Lovers of men; neither broad-browed Zeus, nor Pallas Athené,
Teacher of wisdom to heroes, bestower of might in the battle;
Share not the cunning of Hermes, nor list to the songs of Apollo,
Fearing the stars of the sky, and the roll of the blue salt water.

—Kingsley’s Andromeda.
Elegiac Stanza

616. The Elegiac Stanza consists of two verses, — a Hexamer followed by a Pentameter.¹

The Pentameter verse is the same as the Hexameter, except that it omits the last half of the third foot and of the sixth foot: —

\[ \text{Pentameter: } \text{Hexameter with last half of third and sixth feet omitted} \]

a. The Pentameter verse is therefore to be scanned as two half-verses, the second of which always consists of two dactyls followed by a single syllable.

b. The Pentameter has no regular Caesura; but the first half-verse must always end with a word (diēresis, § 611. c), which is followed by a pause to complete the measure.²

c. The following verses will illustrate the forms of the Elegiac Stanza: —

\[ \text{cum subit } \text{illius } \text{tris/tissimae } \text{noctis } \text{ymago} \]
\[ \text{qua mihi } \text{supremum } \text{tempus in } \text{urbem fuit, \( \Lambda \)}} \]
\[ \text{cum repeto noc/tem } \text{qua tot mihi } \text{cara requiqui,} \]
\[ \text{labitur } \text{ex occulis } \text{nunc quoque } \text{guttam melis. } \text{\( \Lambda \)}} \]
\[ \text{iam propo } \text{lum aderat } \text{qua } \text{me discedere Caesar} \]
\[ \text{finibus } \text{extrae/mae } \text{iussierat } \text{Ausoniae. } \text{\( \Lambda \)}} \]

— Ov. Trist. i. 3.

Note. — The Elegiac Stanza differs widely in character from hexameter verse (of which it is a mere modification) by its division into Distichs, each of which must have its own sense complete. It is employed in a great variety of compositions, — epistolary, amatory, and mournful, — and was especially a favorite of the poet Ovid. It has been illustrated in English verse, imitated from the German: —

In the Hexameter | rises | the | fountain’s | silvery | column;
                    |      |    |      |      |       |
In the Pentameter | aye  | falling | in | melody | back.

Other Dactylic Verses

617. Other dactylic verses or half-verses are occasionally used by the lyric poets.

¹ Called pentameter by the old grammarians, who divided it, formally, into five feet (two dactyls or spondees, a spondee, and two anapaests), as follows: —

\[ || | | | || | | || | | || | || || || || || \]

² The time of this pause, however, may be filled by the protraction of the preceding syllable: —

\[ \text{\( \Lambda \)} \]
**a.** The Dactylic Tetrameter alternates with the hexameter, forming the Alcmanian Strophe, as follows:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{ô for} & \text{tēs pējōrāquē} \mid \text{passī} \\
\text{mēcum} & \text{saepē vīri} \mid \text{nunc} \mid \text{vīnō} \mid \text{pellūtē} \mid \text{cūrās} \\
\text{crās} & \text{in} \text{gēns itērābimūs} \mid \text{aequōr.}
\end{align*}
\]

— Hor. Od. i. 7 (so 28; Ep. 12).

**b.** The Dactylic Penthemim (five half-feet) consists of half a pentameter verse. It is used in combination with the Hexameter to form the First Archilochian Strophe:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{diffū} & \text{gērē nīvēs} \mid \text{rēdē]unt iam} \mid \text{grāmīnā} \mid \text{campīs,} \\
\text{arbōrī} & \text{busquē coīnae;} \\
\text{mūtat} & \text{terrā vīcēs} \mid \text{et} \mid \text{dēcrē]centīā} \mid \text{rīpās} \\
\text{flūmīnā} & \text{praetērē]unt. — Hor. Od. iv. 7.}
\end{align*}
\]

For the Fourth Archilochian Strophe (Archilochian heptameter, alternating with iambic trimeter catalectic), see § 626. 11.

## Iambic Verse

### Iambic Trimeter

**618.** The Iambic Trimeter is the ordinary verse of dramatic dialogue. It consists of three measures, each containing a double iambus (\textit{iambic dipody}). The caesura is usually in the third foot.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{ό} \text{ό} & \text{ό} | \text{ό} || \text{ό} \text{ό} \text{ό} | \text{ό} \text{ό} \text{ό}
\end{align*}
\]

**Note.**—The sign \( \odot \text{ό} \) denotes possible substitution of an irrational spondee (\( > \text{ό} \)) for an iambus (\( \text{ό} \text{ό} \)).

**a.** The Iambic Trimeter is often used in lyric poetry (1) as an independent system, or (2) alternating with the Dimeter to form the Iambic Strophe, as follows:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{(1) } & \text{iam} \text{ iam} \text{ efficā]ct} \mid \text{dō mānūs} \mid \text{sciēntiāē} \\
& \text{supplēx} \text{ ēt} \text{ ṓrō} \mid \text{rēgnā} \text{ pēr} \mid \text{Prōsērpīnae,} \\
& \text{pēr} \text{ ēt} \text{ Diā]nae} \mid \text{nōn} \text{ mōvēn]dā} \text{nūmīnā,} \\
& \text{pēr} \text{ ēt} \text{pēr} \text{ lēb[rōs} \mid \text{cārminūm} \mid \text{vālēntiūm} \\
& \text{dēfīxā} \text{ caē]lō} \mid \text{dēvoćā]rē} \text{sūdērā,} \\
& \text{Cānīdēa,} \text{ pā[r]ē} \mid \text{vōcībūs} \mid \text{tandēm} \text{ sācrīs,} \\
& \text{cītūmquē} \text{ rét]rō} \mid \text{rētrō} \text{sō]vē} \text{tūrbīnēm.} — \text{Hor. Epod. 17.}
\end{align*}
\]

The last two lines may be thus translated, to show the movement in English:

Oh! stay, Canidia, stay thy rites of sorcery,

Thy charm unbinding backward let thy swift wheel fly!
(2) beátús ãllë || quí prócúl | négótiús,  
    ut prísca gëns | mortállum,  
pâtrënnâ rërrã || bábûs ex|ercét suís,  
sólûtûs ëm|ní fënnrê;  
    nèquë éxctitâ|tur || clâssicó | milés trúci,  
    nèquë hórët ñfråtûm mërê. — Hor. Epod. 2.

b. In the stricter form of Iambic Trimeter an irrational spondee (\(>\)) or its equivalent (a cyclic anapest \(\circ \circ\) or an apparent dactyl \(\circ \circ\), § 609. e) may be regularly substituted for the first iambus of any dipody. A tribrach \(\circ \circ \circ\) may stand for an iambus anywhere except in the last place. In the comic poets any of these forms or the proceleusmatic \(\circ \circ \circ\) may be substituted in any foot except the last:—

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{o lúcis ál|më réctór} & \| \text{ét} | \text{caelf dëcúš}! \\
\text{quët} & \text{altrënnâ cür|rù spåt|á} || \text{flám|mifërß} \text{ámbiëns,} \\
\text{illústrë laë|tûs} & || \text{éxsér|fis} | \text{terrës cëpût.}
\end{align*}
\]


\[
\begin{align*}
\text{quid quaér|ís? án|nòs} & || \text{séxágin|tã nátûs ès.} \\
& \text{— Ter. Haut. 62.}
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{hômó sùm: hûmá|ni} & || \text{nîl à më ál|lënûm pùtô.} \\
\text{vel më mònë|rê hòc} & || \text{vël percón|tãrî pùtâ.}
\end{align*}
\]

— id. 77, 78.

c. The Choliambic (lame Iambic) substitutes a trochee for the last iambus:—

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{|| } & \text{≥ } \circ \circ \circ \ | \text{≥ } || \text{≥ } \circ \circ \circ \ | \text{≥ } \circ \circ \circ \ | \text{≥ } \circ \circ \circ \ \\
\text{aequë est bëá|tûs} & \| \text{ác põé|mà cùm scrîbít:} \\
\text{tam gaûdët ín} & || \text{sè,} || \text{támquë sê ñp|sè mfråtûr.}
\end{align*}
\]

— Catull. xxiii. 15, 16.

Note.—The verse may also be regarded as trochaic with anacrusis: as, —

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{≥ } & | \text{≥ } \circ \circ \circ \ ≥ | \text{≥ } \circ \circ \circ \ \circ | \text{≥ } \circ \circ \circ \ \circ
\end{align*}
\]

d. The Iambic Trimeter Catalectic is represented as follows:—

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{|| } \geq \circ \circ \ | \geq || \geq \circ \circ \ | \geq \circ \circ \ \circ || \\
\text{It is used in combination with other measures (see § 626. 11), and is} \\
\text{shown in the following:—}
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Vulcànnûs ár|dëns} & || \text{ûrít ôf|scëínås. — Hor. Od. i. 4.}
\end{align*}
\]

or in English: —

On purple peaks a deeper shade descending. — Scott.

Notes:

1 The greater freedom of substitution in the comedy is due to the fact that the verse is regarded as made up of separate feet rather than of dipodies.
Other Iambic Measures

619. Other forms of Iambic verse are the following:—

a. The Iambic Tetrameter Catalectic (Septënärius). This consists of seven and a half iambic feet, with diaeresis after the fourth and with the same substitutions as in Iambic Trimeter:—

\[ n^\text{am} \ d \ f r c \overset{\text{arcēs|tor, nūptīs}}{\| \quad \text{quod mī \ ádpārā|rī sēnsīt.}} \quad \text{quībus quīdēm quam fācīlē pōtūrāt} \| \quad \text{quīēscī s¹ hīc} \| \quad \text{quīēssēt!} \]

—Ter. And. 690, 691.

The metrical scheme of these two verses may be represented as follows:—

\[
\begin{align*}
\| & > \underset{\text{\text{-}}} \left( > \right. \right) & > \underset{\text{\text{-}}} \left( > \right. \right) & > \underset{\text{\text{-}}} \left( > \right. \right) & > \underset{\text{\text{-}}} \left( > \right. \right) & > \underset{\text{\text{-}}} \left( > \right. \right) & > \underset{\text{\text{-}}} \left( > \right. \right) & > \underset{\text{\text{-}}} \left( > \right. \right) \\
\| & > \underset{\text{\text{-}}} \left( > \right. \right) & > \underset{\text{\text{-}}} \left( > \right. \right) & > \underset{\text{\text{-}}} \left( > \right. \right) & > \underset{\text{\text{-}}} \left( > \right. \right) & > \underset{\text{\text{-}}} \left( > \right. \right) & > \underset{\text{\text{-}}} \left( > \right. \right) & > \underset{\text{\text{-}}} \left( > \right. \right) & > \underset{\text{\text{-}}} \left( > \right. \right)
\end{align*}
\]

Its movement is like the following:—

In good king Chârles's golden daîys, when lôyalty no hârm meant.

—Vicar of Bray.

b. The Iambic Tetrameter Acatalectic (Octônärius). This consists of eight full iambic feet with the same substitutions as in Iambic Trimeter. Like the Septenarius it is used in lively dialogue:—

\[ \text{dīcāt \ ōam \ dārē | nōs Phōrmiō|ni \| \quad nūptum nē \| \quad \text{suscēnsēt;} \quad \quad \text{et māgis essē fīl|um \ idōnēum, \| quī ipsī sit fāmī|lārīor.} \]

—Ter. Ph. 720, 721.

The metrical scheme of these two verses may be represented as follows:—

\[
\begin{align*}
\| & > \underset{\text{\text{-}}} \left( > \right. \right) & > \underset{\text{\text{-}}} \left( > \right. \right) & > \underset{\text{\text{-}}} \left( > \right. \right) & > \underset{\text{\text{-}}} \left( > \right. \right) & > \underset{\text{\text{-}}} \left( > \right. \right) & > \underset{\text{\text{-}}} \left( > \right. \right) & > \underset{\text{\text{-}}} \left( > \right. \right) \\
\| & > \underset{\text{\text{-}}} \left( > \right. \right) & > \underset{\text{\text{-}}} \left( > \right. \right) & > \underset{\text{\text{-}}} \left( > \right. \right) & > \underset{\text{\text{-}}} \left( > \right. \right) & > \underset{\text{\text{-}}} \left( > \right. \right) & > \underset{\text{\text{-}}} \left( > \right. \right)
\end{align*}
\]

c. The Iambic Dimeter. This may be either acatalectic or catalectic.

1. The Iambic Dimeter Acatalectic consists of four iambic feet. It is used in combination with some longer verse (see § 618. a).

2. The Iambic Dimeter Catalectic consists of three and a half iambic feet. It is used only in choruses:—

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{quōnām crūēn|tā Maēnās}, & \\
\text{praecēps āmó|rē saēvō}, & \\
\text{rāptūr quōd īmpōtēntī} & \\
\text{fācīnīs pārāt | fūrōrē?} & —\text{Sen. Med. 850–853.}
\end{align*}
\]

Note. —Owing to the fact that in modern music each measure begins with a down-
ward beat, some scholars regard all these forms of Iambic verse as Trochaic verse
with anacrusis (§ 618. c. n.).
Trochaic Verse

620. The most common form of Trochaic verse is the Tetrameter Catalectic (Septenarius), consisting of four dipodies, the last of which lacks a syllable. There is regularly diaeresis after the fourth foot:


In musical notation:

\[ \begin{array}{cccccccc}
& & & & & & & & \\
\hline
& & & & & & & & \\
& & & & & & & & \\
& & & & & & & & \\
& & & & & & & & \\
\end{array} \]

ád t\textsuperscript{e} advénio, spém, sálútem, || consíllum, auxílium expéténs.

—Ter. And. 319.

In English verse:

Tell me not in mournful numbers || life is but an empty dream.

—Longfellow.

a. In the stricter form of the Septenarius substitutions are allowed only in the even feet, but in comedy the tribrach \( \Upsilon \ U \ U \), or an irrational spondee \( \Upsilon > \), cyclic dactyl \( \Upsilon \ \Upsilon \), or apparent anapæst \( \Upsilon \ U > \), may be substituted for any of the first six feet; a tribrach for the seventh:

iūd\textsuperscript{em} hābēt pētā|s\textsuperscript{um} ác vestītum; || tām cōnsīmilīst | átqu\textsuperscript{e} ēgō.

sūrā, pēs, stā|tūrā, tōnsūs, || ōcūli, nāsum, | vēl lābrā,

mālæ, mēntum, | bārbā, cōllus; || tōtus! quīd ver|bīs ōpūst?

sī tergūm cī|cātrīcōsūm, || nāhūl hōc sīmilīst | sīmilīs.

—Pl. Am. 443–446.

The metrical scheme of these four verses is as follows:

|| Υ Υ Υ Υ Υ Υ | Υ > Υ > || Υ > Υ > Υ Υ > Υ Υ Υ Υ Υ |

|| Υ Υ Υ Υ Υ | Υ Υ Υ Υ Υ Υ Υ | Υ Υ Υ Υ Υ Υ | Υ > Υ > Υ > Υ > Υ > Υ > Υ > Υ > Υ > |

|| Υ > Υ > Υ > | Υ Υ Υ Υ Υ Υ | Υ > Υ > Υ > Υ > Υ > Υ > Υ > Υ > Υ > |

b. The Trochaic Tetrameter Acatalectic (Octōnārius), consisting of four complete dipodies, occurs in the lyrical parts of comedy.

Substitutions as in the Septenarius are allowed except in the last foot.

c. Some other forms of trochaic verse are found in the lyric poets, in combination with other feet, either as whole lines or parts of lines:

nōn ēbūr nē|qu\textsuperscript{e} aūrēām. [Dimeter Catalectic.]
mēa rēn|dēt ēn dōmō | lācānār. [Iambic Trimeter Catalectic.]

—Hor. Od. ii. 18.
MIXED MEASURES

621. Different measures may be combined in the same verse in two different ways. Either (1) a series of one kind is simply joined to a series of another kind (compare the changes of rhythm not uncommon in modern music); or (2) single feet of other measures are combined with the prevailing measures, in which case these odd feet are adapted by changing their quantity so that they become irrational (see § 609. e).

When enough measures of one kind occur to form a series, we may suppose a change of rhythm; when they are isolated, we must suppose adaptation. Of the indefinite number of possible combinations but few are found in Latin poetry.

622. The following verses, combining different rhythmical series, are found in Latin lyrical poetry:

1. Greater Archilochian (Dactylic Tetrameter; Trochaic Tripody):

   || Α' Β' || Α' Β' || Α' Β' || Α' Β' ||

   sólvítur | ácris hi'éms grá'tá vícē || vérīs | ét Fá?vóni. — Hor. Od. i. 4.

   Note. — It is possible that the dactyls were cyclic; but the change of measure seems more probable.

2. Verse consisting of Dactylic Trimeter catalectic (Dactylic Penthemim); Iambic Dimeter:

   || Α' Α' Α' || Α' Α' Α' || Α' Α' Α' ||

   scríbērē | vérsicú|lós || āmórē pér|culsúm gráví. — Hor. Epod. 11. 2.

LOGAOEDIC VERSE

623. Trochaic verses, containing in regular prescribed positions irrational measures or irrational feet (cf. § 609. e), are called Logaœdic. The principal logaœdic forms are —

1. Logaœdic Tetrapody (four feet): GLYCONIC.

2. Logaœdic Tripody (three feet): PHERECRATIC (often treated as a syncopated Tetrapody Catalectic).

3. Logaœdic Dipody (two feet): this may be regarded as a short Pherecratic.

   Note. — This mixture of irrational measures gives an effect approaching that of prose: hence the name Logaœdic (λόγος, áóôé). These measures originated in the Greek lyric poetry, and were adopted by the Romans. All the Roman lyric metres not belonging to the regular iambic, trochaic, dactylic, or Ionic systems, were constructed on the basis of the three forms given above: viz., Logaœdic systems consisting respectively of four, three, and two feet. The so-called Logaœdic Pentapody consists of five feet, but is to be regarded as composed of two of the others.
624. Each logaoedic form contains a single dactyl,\(^1\) which may be either in the first, second, or third place. The verse may be catalectic or acatalectic: —

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Glyconic</th>
<th>Phereric</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| i. \(\begin{array}{c}
\text{I} \\
\text{II} \\
\text{III}
\end{array}\) | \(\begin{array}{c}
\text{I} \\
\text{II} \\
\text{III}
\end{array}\) |
| \(\begin{array}{c}
\text{I} \\
\text{II} \\
\text{III}
\end{array}\) | \(\begin{array}{c}
\text{I} \\
\text{II} \\
\text{III}
\end{array}\) |
| \(\begin{array}{c}
\text{I} \\
\text{II} \\
\text{III}
\end{array}\) | \(\begin{array}{c}
\text{I} \\
\text{II} \\
\text{III}
\end{array}\) |
| \(\begin{array}{c}
\text{I} \\
\text{II} \\
\text{III}
\end{array}\) | \(\begin{array}{c}
\text{I} \\
\text{II} \\
\text{III}
\end{array}\) |

**Note.** — The shorter Phereric (dipody) \(\begin{array}{c}
\text{I} \\
\text{II} \\
\text{III}
\end{array}\), if catalectic, appears to be a simple Choriambus \(\begin{array}{c}
\text{I} \\
\text{II} \\
\text{III}
\end{array}\); and, in general, the effect of the logaoedic forms is Choriambic. In fact, they were so regarded by the later Greek and Latin metricians, and these metres have obtained the general name of Choriambic. But they are not true choriambic, though they may very likely have been felt to be such by the composer, who imitated the forms without much thought of their origin. They may be read (scanned), therefore, on that principle. But it is better to read them as logaoedic measures; and that course is followed here.

625. The verses constructed upon the several Logaoedic forms or models are the following: —

1. Glyconic (Second Glyconic, catalectic): —
\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{I} \\
\text{II} \\
\text{III} \\
\text{IV}
\end{array}
\]

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{I} \\
\text{II} \\
\text{III} \\
\text{IV}
\end{array}
\]

Rómae | prínçípís | úrbi|úám.

In English: —

Fórms more réal than líving már. —Shelley.

**Note.** — In this and most of the succeeding forms the foot preceding the dactyl is always irrational in Horace, consisting of an irrational spondee \(\text{I} \text{I} \text{I} \text{I}\).

2. Aristophanic (First Phereric): —
\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{I} \\
\text{II} \\
\text{III} \\
\text{IV}
\end{array}
\]

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{I} \\
\text{II} \\
\text{III} \\
\text{IV}
\end{array}
\]

témpěrāt | òrā | frénīs. — Hor. Od. i. 8.

**Note.** — It is very likely that this was made equal in time to the preceding by protracting the last two syllables: —

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{I} \\
\text{II} \\
\text{III} \\
\text{IV}
\end{array}
\]

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{I} \\
\text{II} \\
\text{III} \\
\text{IV}
\end{array}
\]

\(^1\) Different Greek poets adopted fixed types in regard to the place of the dactyls, and so a large number of verses arose, each following a strict law, which were imitated by the Romans as distinct metres.
3. Adonic (First Pherecratic, shortened):

\[
\| \sim \circ | \sim \circ | \sim \circ | \sim \circ | \sim \circ | \sim \circ | \sim \circ | \sim \circ | \sim \circ | \sim \circ | \sim \circ | \sim \circ |
\]

Térrüt | úrbém. — Hor.

Or perhaps:

\[
\| \sim \circ | \sim \circ | \sim \circ | \sim \circ | \sim \circ | \sim \circ | \sim \circ | \sim \circ | \sim \circ | \sim \circ | \sim \circ | \sim \circ |
\]

4. Pherecratic (Second Pherecratic):

\[
\| \sim \circ | \sim \circ | \sim \circ | \sim \circ | \sim \circ | \sim \circ | \sim \circ | \sim \circ | \sim \circ | \sim \circ | \sim \circ | \sim \circ |
\]

crás dónábérís haédó. — Hor.

Often scanned as follows:

\[
\sim \circ | \sim \circ | \sim \circ | \sim \circ
\]

5. Lesser Asclepiadic (Second Pherecratic with syncope and First Pherecratic catalectic):

\[
\| \sim \circ | \sim \circ | \sim \circ | \sim \circ | \sim \circ | \sim \circ | \sim \circ | \sim \circ | \sim \circ | \sim \circ | \sim \circ | \sim \circ |
\]

Maecenás ätävis ēdūtē régibus. — Hor.

6. Greater Asclepiadic (the same as 5, with a syncopated Logædic Dipody interposed):

\[
\| \sim \circ | \sim \circ | \sim \circ | \sim \circ | \sim \circ | \sim \circ | \sim \circ | \sim \circ | \sim \circ | \sim \circ | \sim \circ | \sim \circ |
\]

tάí nē quaēsiēris — scīrē nēfās — quēm mīhī, quēm tīhī. — Hor.

7. Lesser Sapphic (Logædic Pentapody, with dactyl in the third place):

\[
\| \sim \circ | \sim \circ | \sim \circ | \sim \circ | \sim \circ | \sim \circ | \sim \circ | \sim \circ | \sim \circ | \sim \circ | \sim \circ | \sim \circ |
\]

intēgér vitaē scēlērisque pārūs. — Hor.

Or in English:

Brilliant hōpes, all wōven in gōrgeous tissuēs. — Longfellow.

8. Greater Sapphic (Third Glyconic; First Pherecratic):

\[
\| \sim \circ | \sim \circ | \sim \circ | \sim \circ | \sim \circ | \sim \circ | \sim \circ | \sim \circ | \sim \circ | \sim \circ | \sim \circ | \sim \circ |
\]

tē deōs ǫrō Sỳbārīn || cūr prōpērās ǫmāndō. — Hor.

9. Lesser Alcaic (Logædic Tetrapody, two irrational dactyls, two trochees):

\[
\| \sim \circ | \sim \circ | \sim \circ | \sim \circ | \sim \circ | \sim \circ | \sim \circ | \sim \circ |
\]

virgīnlībūs pūērīsquē cántō. — Hor.
10. Greater Alcaic (Logaeidic Pentapody, catalectic, with anacrusis, and
dactyl in the third place, — compare Lesser Sapphic):

\[ \overline{\text{iustum}} \text{ et tēnācem} \, | \, \overline{\text{propōsiī virūm.}} \, \text{— Hor.} \]

**Note.**—Only the above logacedic forms are employed by Horace.

11. Phalaecean (Logaeidic Pentapody, with dactyl in the second place):

\[ \overline{\text{quae} \text{ tē mālā mēns, misēlli Rāūdi,}} \]

\[ \text{āgit praēcipitēm } \text{in mēōs iāmbōs?—Catull. xli.} \]

In English:

Gorgeous flowerets in the sunlight shining.—*Longfellow*.

12. Glyconic Pherecratic (Second Glyconic with syncope, and Second
Pherecratic):

\[ \overline{\text{quae} \text{ ciipis } \text{pōntē lūdērē lōngō.}} \, \text{— Catull. xvii.} \]

**METRES OF HORACE**

626. The Odes of Horace include nineteen varieties of stanza.
These are:

1. Alcaic, consisting of two Greater Alcaics (10), one Trochaic Dimeter
with anacrusis, and one Lesser Alcaic (9)\(^1\):

\[ \overline{\text{iustum}} \text{ et tenācem} \, | \, \overline{\text{propōsiī virūm}} \]

\[ \text{nōn cīviīm ārdor} \, | \, \overline{\text{prāva iubēntiūm,}} \]

\[ \text{nōn vūltus īntānsis tyrānnī} \]

\[ \text{mēnte quatūt solidā, nequē} \, \text{Aūster.} \, \text{— Od. iii. 3.} \]

(Found in Od. i. 9, 16, 17, 26, 27, 29, 31, 34, 35, 37; ii. 1, 3, 5, 7, 9, 11, 13, 14, 15, 17, 19, 20; iii. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 17, 21, 23, 26, 29; iv. 4, 9, 14, 15.)

**Note.**—The Alcaic Strophe is named after the Greek poet Alcēus of Lesbos, and
was a special favorite with Horace, of whose Odes thirty-seven are in this form. It
is sometimes called the *Horatian Stanza*.

2. Sapphic (minor), consisting of three Lesser Sapphics (7) and one
Adonic (3):

\[ \overline{\text{iām satīs terrīs}} \, | \, \overline{\text{nīvis ātque dīrae}} \]

\[ \text{grāndīnīs misīt} \, | \, \overline{\text{pater ēt rubēnte}} \]

\[ \text{déxterā sacrās} \, | \, \overline{\text{iaculātus ārcīs}} \]

\[ \text{tērruit urbem.} \, \text{— Od. i. 2.} \]

(Found in Od. i. 2, 10, 12, 20, 22, 25, 30, 32, 38; ii. 2, 4, 6, 8, 10, 16; iii. 8, 11, 14, 18, 20, 22, 27; iv. 2, 6, 11; Carm. Saec.)

\(^{1}\) The figures refer to the foregoing list (§ 625).
Note.—The Sapphic Stanza is named after the poetess Sappho of Lesbos, and was a great favorite with the ancients. It is used by Horace in twenty-five Odes—more frequently than any other except the Alcaic.

3. Sapphic (major), consisting of one Aristophanic (2) and one Greater Sapphic (8):—

Lýdia dīc, per ómnīs
té deos őrō, Sybarīn || cúr properās amāndō.—Od. i. 8.

4. Asclepiadean I (minor), consisting of Lesser Asclepiadics (5):—
exēgī monumentum || aēre perēnniōs
rēgāliō sitū || pīramidum altīōs.—Od. iii. 30.
(Found in Od. i. 1; iii. 30; iv. 8.)

5. Asclepiadean II, consisting of one Glyconic (1) and one Lesser Asclepiadic (5):—
nāvis quaē tībi crēditūm
dēbēs Vērgiliōm, || fīnibus Ātticīs
rēddās incolumēm, precór,
et servēs animaē || dīmidīdum meāē.—Od. i. 3.
(Found in Od. i. 3, 13, 19, 36; iii. 9, 15, 19, 24, 25, 28; iv. i, 3.)

6. Asclepiadean III, consisting of three Lesser Asclepiadics (5) and one Glyconic (1):—

quīs dēsiderīō || sīt pudor aūt modūs
tām cārī capitūs? || prāecipe lāgubrīs
cāntūs, Mēlpomenē, || cuī liquidām patēr
vōcem cúm cithārā dedīt.—Od. i. 24.
(Found in Od. i. 6, 15, 24, 33; ii. 12; iii. 10, 16; iv. 5, 12.)

7. Asclepiadean IV, consisting of two Lesser Asclepiadics (5), one Pherecratic (4), and one Glyconic (1):—

ō fōns Bāndusiae || splēndidīōr vītrō,
dūlī dfīgne merō, || nōn sīne flōribūs,
crās dōnāberis haēdō
cuī frōns tūrgida cōrnibus.—Od. iii. 13.
(Found in Od. i. 5, 14, 21, 23; iii. 7, 13; iv. 13.)

8. Asclepiadean V (major), consisting of Greater Asclepiadics (6):—
tā nē quaēsērīs, || scīre nefās! || quēm mihi, quēm tībf
fīnem df dederīnt, || Leūconoē, || nēc Babylōnīōs
tēntārīs numerōs.—Od. i. 11.
(Found in Od. i. 11, 18; iv. 10.)

9. Alcmanian, consisting of Dactylic Hexameter (§ 615) alternating with Tetrameter (§ 617. a). (Od. i. 7, 28; Epod. 12.)
10. Archilochian I, consisting of a Dactylic Hexameter alternating with a Dactylic Penthemim (see § 617. b). (Od. iv. 7.)

11. Archilochian IV, consisting of a Greater Archilochian (heptameter, § 622. 1), followed by Iambic Trimeter Catalectic (§ 618. d). The stanza consists of two pairs of verses:

 sóluitur ácris hiēms grātā vice || Vēris ét Favōnī,
 trahūntque sīcās || máchnaē carīnās;
 ac neque ìám stabulīs gaudēt pecus, || aút arātōr ignī,
 nec prāta cānīs || álibicānt prūfnīs.—Od. i. 4.

12. Iambic Trimeter alone (see § 618). (Epod. 17.)
13. Iambic Strophe (see § 618. a). (Epod. 1-10.)
14. Dactylic Hexameter alternating with Iambic Dimeter:

 nóx erat, ét caelō || fulgēbat lūna serēnō
 inter minōra sīderā,
cūm tā, māgnōrūm || nūmēn laesūra deōrum,
in vērba iūrābās meā.—Epod. 15. (So in Epod. 14.)

15. Dactylic Hexameter with Iambic Trimeter (§ 618):

 álera ìám teritūr || bellīs civīlibus aētās,
sūis et ìpsa Rōmā || virībūs ruīt.—Epod. 16.

16. Verse of Four Lesser Ionics (§ 609. c. 2):

 miserārum est | nequē amōrī | dare lūdum | neque dulcī
 mala vinō | laverē aut exanimāri | metuentīs.—Od. iii. 12.

17. Iambic Trimeter (§ 618); Dactylic Penthemim (§ 617. b); Iambic Dimeter:

 Petīf, nihīl mē || sīcūt ánteā iuvāt
 scrbere vērsicūlōs || amōre pérclusūm gravī.—Epod. 11.

18. Dactylic Hexameter; Iambic Dimeter; Dactylic Penthemim (§ 617. b):

 hōrrida tēmpestās || caelūm contrāxit, et ìmbrēs
 nivēsque dēdéucūnt Iovēm; || nūnc mare, nūnc siliāe . . .

—Epod. 13.

19. Trochaic Dimeter, Iambic Trimeter, each catalectic (see § 620. c).

INDEX TO THE METRES OF HORACE

Lib. 1

2. Íam satis terrīs: 2.
8. Lýdia dic: 3.
13. Cum tū Lýdia: 5.
22. Integer vitae: 2.

29. Icū bètīs: 1.
30. Ö Venus: 2.
32. Poscimur: 2.
34. Parcus dēorum: 1.
35. Ö diva: 1.
36. Et tūre: 5.

LIB. II

7. Ō sape mēcum: 1.
8. Ülla sī iūris: 2.

15. Iam pauca: 1.
16. Ōtium divōs: 2.
17. Ĉūr mē querreLLīs: 1.

LIB. III

1. Ōdi profānūm: 1.
3. Ĺūstum et tenācem: 1.
15. Uxor pauperis: 5.

19. Quantum distet: 5.
24. Intāctīs opulentīor: 5.
25. Quō mē Bacche: 5.
27. Implōs parrae: 2.
28. Fēstō quid: 5.

LIB. IV

1. Intermissa Venus: 5.
3. Quem tū Melpomenē: 5.

10. Ō crūdēllis adhuc: 8.
Carmen Saeculāre: 2.
627. Other lyric poets use other combinations of the above-mentioned verses:

a. Glyconics with one Pherecratic (both imperfect):

   Dīñae sūmūs | in fīdē
   pūel|laæ et pūē|rī intégrī:
   Dīñānām, pūē|rī intégrī
   pūel|laæquē cā̃nā|mūs. — Catull. xxxiv.

b. Sapphics, in a series of single lines, closing with an Adonic:

   Án mā|gis di|rī trēmū|lērē | Mānēs
   Hērcū|lēm? et vi|sūm cānīs | Ínfē|rōrūm
   fūgit | ábrup|tūs trēp|tūs cātēnūs?
   fāll|mūr: lae|tē vēnīt | éccē | vūltū,
   quēm tū|lt Poe|sās; hūmē|rīsquē | tēlā
   gēstāt | et nó|tūs pōpūlīs phā|rītrēs


MISCELLANEOUS

628. Other measures occur in various styles of poetry.

a. Anapaestic (§ 609. b. 2) verses of various lengths are found in dramatic poetry. The spondee, dactyl, or proceleusmatic may be substituted for the anapest:

   hēc hōmōst | omnī|num hōmī|num praē|cipūs
   vōlūptā|tībūs gau|dūsque ān|tēpōtēns.
   itā cóm|mōdā quaé | cūpī|ē|vēnīnt,
   quōd āgō | sūbit, ād|sēctē | sēquitār:

b. Bacchiac (§ 609. d. 4) verses (five-timed) occur in the dramatic poets, — very rarely in Terence, more commonly in Plautus, — either in verses of two feet (Dimeter) or of four (Tetrameter). They are treated very freely, as are
all measures in early Latin. The long syllables may be resolved, or the
*molossus* (three longs) substituted:—

multās rēs | sīmitū in | mēō co[r]dē vōrsō,
egōmēt mē | cōgō ét mā[c]ērō ét dēʃātīgō;
māgister | mīhi ēxer[ct]ór ān|mūs nūnc est.


c. Cretic measures (§ 609. d. 1) occur in the same manner as the Bac-
chiae, with the same substitutions. The last foot is usually incomplete:—

āmōr āmīcīs mīhi | nē fūs | ū[m]quām.
hīs ēgō | dē ārtībus | grātīam | fācīō.
nīl ēgō is[t]ōs mōror | faeʃcōs | mōrēs.—id. 267, 293, 297.

d. Saturnian Verse. In early Latin is found a rude form of verse, not
borrowed from the Greek like the others, but as to the precise nature of
which scholars are not agreed.¹

1. According to one view the verse is based on quantity, is composed of
six feet, and is divided into two parts by a cæsura before the fourth thesis.
Each thesis may consist of a long syllable or of two short ones, each arsis
of a short syllable, a long syllable, or two short syllables; but the arsis,
except at the beginning of the verse and before the cæsura, is often entirely
suppressed, though rarely more than once in the same verse:—

dābunt mālūm Mētēllī || Naēviō poētae.

2. According to another theory the Saturnian is made up, without regard
to quantity, of alternating accented and unaccented syllables; but for any
unaccented syllable two may be substituted, and regularly are so substituted
in the second foot of the verse:—

dābunt mālum Metēllī || Naēviō poētae.

**EARLY PROSODY**

629. The prosody of the earlier poets differs in several re-
spects from that of the later.²

a. At the end of words s, being only feebly sounded, does not make
*position* with a following consonant; it sometimes disappeared altogether.
This usage continued in all poets till Cicero's time (§ 15. 7).

¹ The two principal theories only are given. There are numerous variations, par-
ticularly of the second theory here stated.

² Before the Latin language was used in literature, it had become much changed
by the loss of final consonants and the shortening of final syllables under the influence
of accent. In many cases this change was still in progress in the time of the early
poets. This tendency was arrested by the study of grammar and by literature, but
shows itself again in the Romance languages.
b. A long syllable immediately preceded or followed by the ictus may be shortened (iambic shortening): —

1. In a word of two syllables of which the first is short (this effect remained in a few words like putā, cavē, valē, vidē, egō, modē, duō): —
   ābī (Ter. Ph. 50); bōnī (id. 516); hōmō suāvis (id. 411).

2. If it is either a monosyllable or the first syllable of a word which is preceded by a short monosyllable: —
   séd hās tabellās (Pl. Pers. 195); quīd hīc nunc (id. Epid. 157); pēr īnplūvium (Ter. Ph. 707); ēgō ēstēnderem (id. 793).

3. When preceded by a short initial syllable in a word of more than three syllables: —
   vēnūstātis (Ter. Hec. 848); sēnēctūtem (id. Ph. 434); Sỳrācūsās (Pl. Merc. 37); āmiētīa (id. Ps. 1263).

c. In a few isolated words position is often disregarded.2 Such are ille, īmō, īnde, īste, ēmēnsis, nēmpe, quippe, ūnde.

d. The original long quantity of some final syllable is retained.

1. The ending -or is retained long in nouns with long stem-vowel (original r-stems or original s-stems): —
   módo quom dīcta in mē ingrēbās ódium nōn uxōr erām (Pl. Asin. 927).
   fītā mē in pēctōrē ātque córdē fācit āmōr incēndiām (id. Merc. 500).
   ātque quāntō nōx fuśtī lōngōr hāc próxumā (id. Am. 548).

2. The termination -es (-ītis) is sometimes retained long, as in mīlēs, superstēs.

3. All verb-endings in -r, -s, and -t may be retained long where the vowel is elsewhere long in inflection: —
   rēgredīōr audīsse mé (Pl. Capt. 1023); ātquē ut quī fuerīs et quī nunc (id. 248); mē nōmināt haec (id. Epid. iv. 1. 8); faciāt ut sēmper (id. Poen. ii. 42); ĭnfūscābāt, amābō (cretics, id. Cist. i. 21); quī amēt (id. Merc. 1021); ut fit in bēllō cápitur ālter filiūs (id. Capt. 25); tibi sīt ad mé revisās (id. Truc. ii. 4. 79).

e. Hiatus (§ 612. g) is allowed somewhat freely, especially at a pause in the sense, or when there is a change of speaker.3

1 Cf. ambō (also a dual, p. 59, footnote), in which the ō is retained because of the length of the first syllable.
2 Scholars are not yet agreed upon the principle or the extent of this irregularity.
3 The extent of this license is still a question among scholars; but in the present state of texts it must sometimes be allowed.
MISCELLANEOUS

Reckoning of Time

630. The Roman Year was designated, in earlier times, by the names of the Consuls; but was afterwards reckoned from the building of the City (ab urbe conditā, annō urbis conditae), the date of which was assigned by Varro to a period corresponding with B.C. 753. In order, therefore, to reduce Roman dates to those of the Christian era, the year of the city is to be subtracted from 754: e.g. A.U.C. 691 (the year of Cicero's consulship) corresponds to B.C. 63.

Before Cesar's reform of the Calendar (B.C. 46), the Roman year consisted of 355 days: March, May, Quintilis (July), and October having each 31 days, February having 28, and each of the remainder 29. As this calendar year was too short for the solar year, the Romans, in alternate years, at the discretion of the pontificēs, inserted a month of varying length (mēnsis intercalāris) after February 23, and omitted the rest of February. The "Julian year," by Caesar's reformed Calendar, had 365 days, divided into months as at present. Every fourth year the 24th of February (vi. Kal. Mārt.) was counted twice, giving 29 days to that month: hence the year was called bissextīlis. The month Quintilis received the name Iulius (July), in honor of Julius Cesar; and Sextilis was called Augustus (August), in honor of his successor. The Julian year (see below) remained unchanged till the adoption of the Gregorian Calendar (A.D. 1582), which omits leap-year three times in every four hundred years.

631. Dates, according to the Roman Calendar, are reckoned as follows:—

a. The first day of the month was called Kalendae (Calends).

Note.—Kalendae is derived from calāre, to call, —the Calends being the day on which the pontiffs publicly announced the New Moon in the Comitia Calāta. This they did, originally, from actual observation.

b. On the fifteenth day of March, May, July, and October, but the thirteenth of the other months, were the Īdūs (Ides), the day of Full Moon.

c. On the seventh day of March, May, July, and October, but the fifth of the other months, were the Nōnae (Nones or ninths).

d. From the three points thus determined, the days of the month were reckoned backwards as so many days before the Nones, the Ides, or the Calends. The point of departure was, by Roman custom, counted in the reckoning, the second day being three days before, etc. This gives the following rule for determining the date:—

If the given date be Calends, add two to the number of days in the month preceding,—if Nones or Ides, add one to that of the day on which they fall,—and from the number thus ascertained subtract the given date. Thus,—

### Calendar

#### January
2. IV. Non. Ian.
3. III. "
4. prid." "
6. VIII. Id. Ian.
7. VII. "
8. VI. "
9. V. "
10. IV. "
11. III. "
12. prid. "
13. Idus Ian.
15. XVIII. "
16. XVII. "
17. XVI. "
18. XV. "
19. XIV. "
20. XIII. "
21. XII. "
22. XI. "
23. X. "
24. IX. "
25. VIII. "
26. VII. "
27. VI. "
28. V. "
29. IV. "
30. III. "
31. prid. "
(So Aug., Dec.)

#### February
2. IV. Non. Feb.
3. III. "
4. prid. "
6. VIII. Id. Feb.
7. VII. "
8. VI. "
9. V. "
10. IV. "
11. III. "
12. prid. "
14. XVI. Kal. Martias
15. XV. "
16. XIV. "
17. XIII. "
18. XII. "
19. XI. "
20. X. "
21. IX. "
22. VIII. "
23. VII. "
24. VI. "
25. V. "
26. IV. "
27. III. "
28. prid. "
29. IV. [prid. Kal. Mart. in leap-year, the VI.]
30. III. prid. "
(So May, July, Oct.)

#### March
1. Kal. Martiae
2. VI. Non. Mart.
3. V. "
4. IV. "
5. III. "
6. prid. "
7. Non. Martiae
8. VIII. Id. Mart.
9. VII. "
10. VI. "
11. V. "
12. IV. "
13. III. "
14. prid. "
15. Idus Martiae
16. XVII. Kal. Aprilis
17. XVI. "
18. XV. "
19. XIV. "
20. XIII. "
21. XII. "
22. XI. "
23. X. "
24. IX. "
25. VIII. "
26. VII. "
27. VI. "
28. V. "
29. IV. [prid. Kal. Mart. in leap-year, the VI.]
30. III. "
(So June, Sept., Nov.)

#### April
1. Kal. Aprilis
2. IV. Non. Apr.
3. III. "
4. prid. "
5. Non. Aprilis
6. VIII. Id. Apr.
7. VII. "
8. VI. "
9. V. "
10. IV. "
11. III. "
12. prid. "
13. Idus Aprilis
14. XVIII. Kal. Maias
15. XVII. "
16. XVI. "
17. XV. "
18. XIV. "
19. XIII. "
20. XII. "
21. XI. "
22. X. "
23. IX. "
24. VIII. "
25. VII. "
26. VI. "
27. V. "
28. IV. "
29. III. prid. "
(So June, Sept., Nov.)

---

**Note.** — The name of the month appears as an adjective in agreement with Kalenderae, Nonae, Ídus.

For peculiar constructions in dates, see § 424. 9.

**e.** The days of the Roman month by the Julian Calendar, as thus ascertained, are given in the following table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>January</th>
<th>February</th>
<th>March</th>
<th>April</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3. III. &quot;</td>
<td>III. &quot;</td>
<td>V. &quot;</td>
<td>III. &quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. VIII. Id. Ian.</td>
<td>VIII. Id. Feb.</td>
<td>VIII. Id. Mart.</td>
<td>VIII. Id. Apr.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. VII. &quot;</td>
<td>VII. &quot;</td>
<td>VII. &quot;</td>
<td>VII. &quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. VI. &quot;</td>
<td>VI. &quot;</td>
<td>VI. &quot;</td>
<td>VI. &quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. V. &quot;</td>
<td>V. &quot;</td>
<td>V. &quot;</td>
<td>V. &quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. IV. &quot;</td>
<td>IV. &quot;</td>
<td>IV. &quot;</td>
<td>IV. &quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. III. &quot;</td>
<td>III. &quot;</td>
<td>III. &quot;</td>
<td>III. &quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. XVIII. &quot;</td>
<td>XV. &quot;</td>
<td>XVI. &quot;</td>
<td>XVII. &quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. XVII. &quot;</td>
<td>XIV. &quot;</td>
<td>XV. &quot;</td>
<td>XVI. &quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17. XVI. &quot;</td>
<td>XIII. &quot;</td>
<td>XIV. &quot;</td>
<td>XV. &quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18. XV. &quot;</td>
<td>XII. &quot;</td>
<td>XIII. &quot;</td>
<td>XIV. &quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19. XIV. &quot;</td>
<td>XI. &quot;</td>
<td>XII. &quot;</td>
<td>XIII. &quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20. XIII. &quot;</td>
<td>X. &quot;</td>
<td>XI. &quot;</td>
<td>XII. &quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21. XII. &quot;</td>
<td>IX. &quot;</td>
<td>X. &quot;</td>
<td>XI. &quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22. XI. &quot;</td>
<td>VIII. &quot;</td>
<td>IX. &quot;</td>
<td>X. &quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23. X. &quot;</td>
<td>VII. &quot;</td>
<td>VIII. &quot;</td>
<td>IX. &quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24. IX. &quot;</td>
<td>VI. &quot;</td>
<td>VII. &quot;</td>
<td>VIII. &quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25. VIII. &quot;</td>
<td>V. &quot;</td>
<td>VI. &quot;</td>
<td>VII. &quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26. VII. &quot;</td>
<td>IV. &quot;</td>
<td>VI. &quot;</td>
<td>VI. &quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27. VI. &quot;</td>
<td>III. &quot;</td>
<td>V. &quot;</td>
<td>V. &quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28. V. &quot;</td>
<td>prid. &quot;</td>
<td>IV. &quot;</td>
<td>IV. &quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29. IV. &quot;</td>
<td>[prid. Kal. Mart. in leap-year, the VI.]</td>
<td>III. prid. &quot;</td>
<td>&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30. III. &quot;</td>
<td>leapt-year, the VI.</td>
<td>(So June, Sept., Nov.)</td>
<td>(So June, Sept., Nov.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31. prid. &quot;</td>
<td>Kal. (24th) being counted twice.</td>
<td>prid. &quot;</td>
<td>prid. &quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Note.** — Observe that a date before the Julian Reform (B.C. 46) is to be found not by the above table, but by taking the earlier reckoning of the number of days in the month.

**Measures of Value, etc.**

**632.** The money of the Romans was in early times wholly of copper. The unit was the as, which was nominally a pound in weight, but actually somewhat less. It was divided into twelve unciae (ounces).
In the third century B.C. the as was gradually reduced to one-half of its original value. In the same century silver coins were introduced,—the denarius and the sestertius. The denarius = 10 asses; the sestertius = $2\frac{1}{2}$ asses.

633. The Sestertius was probably introduced at a time when the as had been so far reduced that the value of the new coin ($2\frac{1}{2}$ asses) was equivalent to the original value of the as. Hence, the Sestertius (usually abbreviated to HS or HS) came to be used as the unit of value, and nummus, coin, often means simply sestertius. As the reduction of the standard went on, the sestertius became equivalent to 4 asses. Gold was introduced later, the aureus being equal to 100 sesterces. The approximate value of these coins is seen in the following table:

\[
\begin{align*}
2\frac{1}{2} \text{ asses} & = 1 \text{ sestertius or nummus, value nearly 5 cents (2\frac{1}{2} d.)} \\
10 \text{ asses or 4 sestertii} & = 1 \text{ denarius. " " 20 " (10 d.)} \\
1000 \text{ sestertii} & = 1 \text{ sestertium } " " 5000 " (£10). \\
\end{align*}
\]

Note.—The word sestertius is a shortened form of semis-sestertius, the third one, a half. The abbreviation HS or HS = duo et semis, two and a half.

634. The sestertium (probably originally the genitive plural of sestertius depending on mille) was a sum of money, not a coin; the word is inflected regularly as a neuter noun: thus, tria sestertia = $150.00.

When sestertium is combined with a numeral adverb, centena milia, hundreds of thousands, is to be understood: thus deci\text{\`e}n\text{s sestertium} (deci\text{\`e}n\text{s HS}) = deci\text{\`e}n\text{s centena milia sestertium} = $50,000. Sestertium in this combination may also be inflected: deci\text{\`e}n\text{s sestertii, sesterti\text{\`o}, etc.}

In the statement of large sums sestertium is often omitted as well as centena milia: thus sexagi\text{\`e}n\text{s} (Rosc. Am. 2) signifies, sexagi\text{\`e}n\text{s} [centena milia sestertium] = 6,000,000 sesterces = $300,000 (nearly).

635. In the statement of sums of money in Roman numerals, a line above the number indicates thousands; lines above and at the sides also, hundred-thousands. Thus HS dc = 600 sestertii; HS dc = 600,000 sestertii, or 600 sestertia; HS [dc] = 60,000,000 sestertii, or 60,000 sestertia.

636. The Roman Measures of Length are the following:

12 inches (unciae) = 1 Roman Foot (pēs: 11.65 English inches).  
1\frac{1}{2} Feet = 1 Cubit (cubitum). — 2\frac{1}{2} Feet = 1 Step (gradus).  
5 Feet = 1 Pace (passus). — 1000 Paces (mīlia passuum) = 1 Mile.
The Roman mile was equal to 4850 English feet.
The iügerum, or unit of measure of land, was an area of 240 (Roman) feet long and 120 broad; a little less than $\frac{3}{4}$ of an English acre.

637. The Measures of Weight are —

12 unciae (ounces) = one pound (libra, about $\frac{3}{4}$ lb. avoirdupois).

Fractional parts (weight or coin) are —

\[
\begin{align*}
\frac{1}{12}, & \text{ uncia.} \\
\frac{1}{6}, & \text{ sextans.} \\
\frac{1}{4}, & \text{ quadrans.} \\
\frac{1}{3}, & \text{ triens.} \\
\frac{5}{12}, & \text{ quincunx.} \\
\frac{1}{2}, & \text{ semis.} \\
\frac{7}{12}, & \text{ septunx.} \\
\frac{3}{4}, & \text{ dœdræs.} \\
\frac{1}{4}, & \text{ dextans.} \\
\frac{7}{12}, & \text{ septunx.} \\
\frac{1}{3}, & \text{ bês or bessis.} \\
\frac{1}{2}, & \text{ deunx.} \\
\frac{1}{4}, & \text{ deunx.} \\
\text{as.} & \\
\end{align*}
\]

The Talent (talentum) was a Greek weight (τάλαντον) = 60 librae.

638. The Measures of Capacity are —

12 cyathi = 1 sextarius (nearly a pint).
16 sextarii = 1 modius (peck).
6 sextarii = 1 congius (3 quarts, liquid measure).
8 congi = 1 amphora (6 gallons).
GLOSSARY

OF TERMS USED IN GRAMMAR, RHETORIC, AND PROSODY

639. Many of these terms are pedantic names given by early grammarians to forms of speech used naturally by writers who were not conscious that they were using figures at all—as, indeed, they were not. Thus when one says, “It gave me no little pleasure,” he is unconsciously using litotes; when he says, “John went up the street, James down,” antithesis; when he says, “High as the sky,” hyperbole. Many were given under a mistaken notion of the nature of the usage referred to. Thus mêd and tëd (§ 143. a. n.) were supposed to owe their d to paragoge, sũṃśā its p to epenthesis. Such a sentence as “See my coat, how well it fits!” was supposed to be an irregularity to be accounted for by prolepsis.

Many of these, however, are convenient designations for phenomena which often occur; and most of them have an historic interest, of one kind or another.

640. Grammatical Terms

Anacoluthon: a change of construction in the same sentence, leaving the first part broken or unfinished.

Anastrophe: inversion of the usual order of words.

Apodosis: the conclusion of a conditional sentence (see Protasis).

Archaism: an adoption of old or obsolete forms.

Asyndeton: omission of conjunctions (§ 323. b).

Barbarism: adoption of foreign or unauthorized forms.

Brachylogy: brevity of expression.

Crasis: contraction of two vowels into one (§ 15. 3).

Ellipsis: omission of a word or words necessary to complete the sense.

Enallage: substitution of one word or form for another.

Epenthesis: insertion of a letter or syllable.

Hellenism: use of Greek forms or constructions.

Hendiadys (.twig adó deóïn): the use of two nouns, with a conjunction, instead of a single modified noun.

Hypallage: interchange of constructions.

Hysteron proteron: a reversing of the natural order of ideas.

This term was applied to cases where the natural sequence of events is violated in language because the later event is of more importance than the earlier and so comes first to the mind. This was supposed to be an artificial embellishment in Greek, and so was imitated in Latin. It is still found in artless narrative; cf. “Bred and Born in a Brier Bush” (Uncle Remus).

Metathesis: transposition of letters in a word.

Paragoge: addition of a letter or letters to the end of a word.

Parenthesis: insertion of a phrase interrupting the construction.
Periphrasis: a roundabout way of expression (circumlocution).

Pleonasm: the use of needless words.

Polysyndeton: the use of an unnecessary number of copulative conjunctions.

Prolepsis: the use of a word in the clause preceding the one where it would naturally appear (anticipation).

Protasis: a clause introduced by a conditional expression (if, when, whoever), leading to a conclusion called the Apodosis (§ 512).

Syncope: omission of a letter or syllable from the middle of a word.

Synesis (construētō ad sēnum): agreement of words according to the sense, and not the grammatical form (§ 280. a).

Tmesis: the separation of the two parts of a compound word by other words (cutting).

This term came from the earlier separation of prepositions (originally adverbs) from the verbs with which they were afterwards joined; so in per ecastor scitus puér, a very fine boy, egad! As this was supposed to be intentional, it was ignorantly imitated in Latin; as in cere-comminuit-brum (Ennius).

Zeugma: the use of a verb or an adjective with two different words, to only one of which it strictly applies (yoking).

§§ 640, 641] RHETORICAL FIGURES 433

641. Rhetorical Figures

Allegory: a narrative in which abstract ideas figure as circumstances, events, or persons, in order to enforce some moral truth.

Alliteration: the use of several words that begin with the same sound.

Analogy: argument from resemblances.

Anaphora: the repetition of a word at the beginning of successive clauses (§ 598.f).

Antithesis: opposition, or contrast of parts (for emphasis: § 598.f).

Antonomasia: use of a proper for a common noun, or the reverse:—

sint Mæcēnātēs, nōn deernut, Flaccē, Mārnēs, so there be patrons (like Mæcenas), poets (like Virgil) will not be lacking, Flaccūs (Mart. viii. 56. 5).

illa furia et pestis, that fury and plague (i.e. Clodius); Homēromastīx, scourge of Homer (i.e. Zöllus).

Aposiopesis: an abrupt pause for rhetorical effect.

Catachresis: a harsh metaphor (abūsīō, misuse of words).

Chiasmus: a reversing of the order of words in corresponding pairs of phrases (§ 598.f).

Climax: a gradual increase of emphasis, or enlargement of meaning.

Euphemism: the mild expression of a painful or repulsive idea:—

si quid ei acciderit, if anything happens to him (i.e. if he dies).

Euphony: the choice of words for their agreeable sound.

Hyperbaton: violation of the usual order of words.
Hyperbole: exaggeration for rhetorical effect.
Irony: the use of words which naturally convey a sense contrary to what is meant.
Litotes: the affirming of a thing by denying its contrary (§ 326. c).
Metaphor: the figurative use of words, indicating an object by some resemblance.
Metonymy: the use of the name of one thing to indicate some kindred thing.
Oxonmorone: the use of contradictory words in the same phrase: —

\[\text{insāniēns sapientia, foolish wisdom.}\]
Paronomasia: the use of words of like sound.
Prosopopoeia: personification.
Simile: a figurative comparison (usually introduced by like, or as).
Synchysis: the interlocked order (§ 598. h).
Synecdoche: the use of the name of a part for the whole, or the reverse.

642. Terms of Prosody

Acatalectic: complete, as a verse or a series of feet (§ 612. a).
Anaclasis: breaking up of rhythm by substituting different measures.
Anacrusis: the unaccented syllable or syllables preceding a verse (§ 608. g).
Antistrophe: a series of verses corresponding to one which has gone before (cf. strophe).
Aris: the unaccented part of a foot (§ 611).
Basis: a single foot preceding the regular movement of a verse.
Cæsura: the ending of a word within a metrical foot (§ 611. b).
Catalectic: see Catalexis.
Catalexis: loss of a final syllable (or syllables) making the series catalectic (incomplete, § 612. a).
Contraction: the use of one long syllable for two short (§ 610).
Correption: shortening of a long syllable, for metrical reasons.
Dieresis: the coincidence of the end of a foot with the end of a word within the verse (§ 611. c).
Dialysis: the use of i (consonant) and v as vowels (siūa = silva, § 603. f. n. 4).
Diastole: the lengthening of a short syllable by emphasis (§ 612. b).
Dimeter: consisting of two like measures.
Dipody: consisting of two like feet.
Distich: a system or series of two verses.
Ecthlimis: the suppression of a final syllable in -m before a word beginning with a vowel (§ 612. f).
Elision: the cutting off of a final before a following initial vowel (§ 612. e).
Heptameter: consisting of seven feet.
Hexameter: consisting of six measures.

Hexapody: consisting of six feet.

Hiatus: the meeting of two vowels without contraction or elision (§ 612. g).

Ictus: the metrical accent (§ 611. a).

Irrational: not conforming strictly to the unit of time (§ 609. e).

Logaoedic: varying in rhythm, making the effect resemble prose (§ 623).

Monometer: consisting of a single measure.

Mora: the unit of time, equal to one short syllable (§ 608. a).

Pentameter: consisting of five measures.

Pentapody: consisting of five feet.

Penthemimeris: consisting of five half-feet.

Protraction: extension of a syllable beyond its normal length (608. c).

Resolution: the use of two short syllables for one long (§ 610).

Strophe: a series of verses making a recognized metrical whole (stanza),
which may be indefinitely repeated.

Synæresis: i (vowel) and u becoming consonants before a vowel (§ 603.
c. N., f. N. 4).

Synalæpha: the same as elision (§ 612. e. n.).

Synapheia: elision between two verses (§ 612. e. n.).

Syncope: loss of a short vowel.

Synizesis: the running together of two vowels without full contraction (§ 603
c. N.).

Systole: shortening of a syllable regularly long.

Tetrameter: consisting of four measures.

Tetrapody: consisting of four feet.

Tetrastich: a system of four verses.

Thesis: the accented part of a foot (§ 611).

Trimeter: consisting of three measures.

Tripody: consisting of three feet.

Tristich: a system of three verses.
INDEX OF VERBS

Regular verbs of the First, Second, and Fourth Conjugations are given only in special cases. Compounds are usually omitted when they are conjugated like the simple verbs. The figures after the verbs indicate the conjugation. References are to sections. For classified lists of important verbs see § 209 (First Conjugation), § 210 (Second Conjugation), § 211 (Third Conjugation), § 212 (Fourth Conjugation), §§ 190, 191 (Deponents), § 192 (Semi-Deponents).

ab-dó, 3, -dīdī, -ditum, 209. a. n.
ab-eō, see eō.
ab-iciō, 3, -iēcī, -iectum [iacīo].
ab-īgō, 3, -ēgi, -actum [āgō].
ab-nuō, 3, -nuī, —.
ab-oleō, 2, -ēvi, -itum.
ab-ōlēscō, 3, -ēvi, — [aboleō].
ab-ripiō, 3, -ripuī, -reptum [rapīō].
abs-condō, 3, -di (-dīi), -ditum [condō].
ab-sisto, 3, -stītī, —.
ab-sum, abesse, āfui, (āfutūrus).
ac-cendō, 3, -cendī, -cēnsum.
ac-cersō, see accersō.
ac-cidit (impers.), 207, 208. c.
ac-cidō, 3, -cidi, — [cadō].
ac-cido, 3, -cidi, -cīsum [caedō].
ac-cio, 4, reg. [clō].
ac-cipiō, 3, -cēpi, -ceptum [capīō].
ac-coō, 3, -uī, —.
ac-crēdō, see credō.
ac-cumbō, 3, -cubui, -itum.
ac-currō, 3, -curri (-cucurri), -cursum.
ac-essēcō, 3, -acuī, — [co-].
ac-quirō, 3, -quīsvī, -quisitum [quaerō].
aquō, 3, -uī, -utum, 173, 176. d.
ad-do, 3, -dīdī, -ditum, 209. a. n.
ad-eō, see eō.
ad-hibo, 2, -uī, -itum [habeō].
ad-igō, 3, -ēgi, -actum [agō].
ad-imō, 3, -ēmi, -emptum [emō].
ad-ipiscor, -i, -eptus.
ad-nuō, 3, -nuī, —.
ad-oleō, 2, -uī, —.
ad-ōlēscō, 3, -ēvi, -ultum.
ad-externō, -īrī, -sensus.
ad-sideō, 2, -sēdī, -sessum [sedeō].
ad-sidō, 3, -sēdī, —.
ad-spergō, 3, -spersi, -spersum [spargō].
ad-stō, 1, -stītī, —.
ad-sum, -esse, -fui, (-futūrus).
af-fāri, affātus, 206. c.
af-ferō, -ferrē, attulī, allātum.
af-ficiō, 3, -fēci, -fectum [faciō].
af-fiō, 3, -xi, -ctum.
ag-gredior, -i, -gressus [gradior].
agnōscō, 3, -ovi, āgnītum [nōscō].
agō, 3, -ēgi, āctum. [For regular comp.,
see ag-īgō; for others, see cōgō, circum-
per-]
ālō, defect., 206. a.
albeō, 2, -uī, —.
alēscō, 3, -uī, -alitum.
algeō, 2, alsi, —.
algēscō, 3, alsi, —.
al-legō, 3, -ēgi, -ēctum.
al-līciō, 3, -lexī, —.
alō, 3, alūī, alūtum (alitum).
am-biōgō, 3, —, — [agō].
am-biō, -ire, -ī (-īvi), -itum (ambībat),
203. d.
amiciō, 4, amixī (-cuī), amicītum.
amō, 180, 184; amārīm, amāsse, amā-
sem, 181. a; amāssis, 183. 5.
angō, 3, ānxi, —.
ante-cellō, 3, —, —.
ante-stō, 1, -stetī, —.
anti-stō, 1, -steti, —.
aperīō, 4, aperui, apertum.
apiscor, -i, aptus [ad-ipsicor].
ap-pellō, 3, -puli, -pulsūm.
ap-petō, 3, -petivī (-ii), -itum.
ap-prīmō, 3, -pressī, -pressum [premō].
arceō, 2, -uī, — [co-erceō].
arcessō (accersō), 3, -īvi, arcessītum.
ardeō, 2, ārsī, (ārsūrus).
ardeōscō, 3, ārsī, —.
arēō, 2, —, —.
arēscō, 3, -āruī, —.
arguō, 3, -uī, -utum.
ar-rigō, 3, -rēxi, -rēctum [regō].
ar-ripiō, 3, -uī, -reptum [rapīō].
ar-scendō, 3, -di, -scēnsum [scandō].
a-spergō, see ad-spergō.
a-spiciō, 3, -exī, -extum [spiciō].
at-tendō, 3, -di, -tum.
at-tineō, 2, -tīnuī, -tentum [teneō].
INDEX OF VERBS

at-tingo, 3, -tigi, -tactus [tango].
at-tollō, 3, —, — [tollō].
au-deō, au-dere, ausus, 192 (ausim, 183. 3; sōdēs, 13. N.).
audīō, 4, audīvi, auditum, 187 (contracted forms, 181. b).
u-ferō, -ferre, abstuli, ablātum.
angeō, 2, auxi, auctum.
ausīm, see ausdeō.
avē (hāvē), avēte, avētō, 206. g.
avē, 2, —, —.
balbūtō, 4, —, —.
bātuō, 3, -uī, —.
bībō, 3, bibi, (pōtum).
bullīō, 4, reg. (bullū, -āre) [ē-bullīō].
cadō, 3, cecidi, cāsum [ac-, con-, oc-cidō], 178. b.
caeiectō, 4, —, —.
caedo, 3, cecidi, caesium [ac-, oc-cādo, etc.].
cale-faciō, like faciō, 206. a.
cale-factō, 1, —, —, 265. a.
calē, 2, -uī, (calitūrus).
calēscō, 3, -uī, —.
calleō, 2, -uī, —.
calvē, 2, -uī, —.
candeō, 2, -uī, —.
candescō, 3, -canduī, —.
cāneo, 2, -uī, —.
cānēscō, 3, cānūī, —.
cāno, 3, cecini, — [con-cinō].
cantillō, 1, reg., 263. 3.
capsessō, 3, capsessivī, —, 263. 2. b (in-
cipissō, 3, —, —).
capīō, 3, cēpi, captum [ac-cipio etc.; also antecapīō], 188.
careō, 2, -uī, (-stātūrus).
carpō, 3, -psi, -ptum, 177. b [dé-cerpō].
caveō, 2, cāvī, cautum.
cavillō, -āri, ātus, 263. 3.
cedo (imperative), cedite (cette), 206. g.
cēsō, 3, cessi, cessum.
-cellō (only in comp., see per-cellō, ex-
cellō, ante-cellō, praecellō).
-cendo, 3, -cendi, -census (only in comp.,
as in-cendo).
cēsēo, 2, -uī, cēsum.
cernō, 3, crēvi, -crētum.
cieo (-cio), cīere (-cīre), cīvī, cītum
(-cītum) [ac-cio, con-, ex-cio].
cingō, 3, cinxi, cinctum.
-cio, see cieo.
circum-dō, -dāre, -dedi, -dātum, 209. a. n.
circum-sistō, 3, -steti (-stīti), —.
circum-spiciō, 3, -exī, -ectum.
circum-stō, 1, -steti (-stīti), —.
clangō, 3, —, —.
clarēscō, 3, clarūī, —.
claudēo, 2, —, —, see claudō (limp).
claudō (close), 3, clausi, clausum [ex-
clidō].
cluēo, 2, —, —.
ce-co-mō, 3, -ēmi, -ēmptum.
cepē, -isse, coepētūrus, 205.
ce-erceō, 2, -uī, -utum [arcēō].
ce-gnosco, 3, -gnōvi, -gnitum [nōscō].
cogō, 3, coegī, coāctum, 15. 3 [ago].
col-fīdéo, 3, -līsi, līsum [laedō].
col-līgio, 3, -lēgi, -lēctum.
col-lūceō, 2, —, [lūceō].
colō, 3, colui, cultum [ex-, ac-, in-].
combūrō, 3, -ussi, -ustum [ūrō].
com-edō, 3 (ēsse), -ēdi, -ēsum (-ēstum).
com-miniscor, -i, -mentus.
cō mó, 3, cōmpai, cōmpum.
com-pellō, 3, -puli, -pulsum.
com-percō, 3, -persi, — [parcō].
com-periō, 4, -peri, compertum.
com-perior, -iри, compertus, 191. n.
com-pēscō, 3, -cui, —
com-pingō, 3, -pēgi, -pāctum [pangō].
com-plēo, 2, -cīvi, -ētum.
com-prīmō, 3, -pressi, -pressum [premō].
com-pungō, 3, -pūnxi, -pūctum [pungō].
con-cido, 3, -cidi, — [cadō].
con-cido, 3, -cidi, -cūm [caedo].
con-cino, 3, -cui, — (canō).
con-cipio, 3, -cēpi, -ceptum [capīō].
con-ciō (-cieo), 4 (2), -cīvi, -cītum (-cītum).
con-clūdō, 3, -clūsi, -clāsum [claudo].
con-cupisscō, 3, -cūpiūvi, -cūptum.
con-currō, 3, -curri (-cucurrī), -cursum.
con-cutīō, 3, -cussi, -cussum [quatō].
con-dō, 3, -didī, -ditum, 209. a. n.
cō-nectō, 3, -nexui, -nexus, 16.
con-fecīō, 4, —, -fertum [farcō].
con-ferō, -ferre, tuli, collātum.
con-ficō, 3, -fēci, -fectum [facciō].
con-fit, defect, 204. c.
con-fiteor, -ēri, -fessus [fateor].
con-fringō, 3, -frēgi, -frāctum [frango].
con-grūō, 3, -uī, — [grōu].
con-icīō, 3, -icēti, -iectum, 6. d [facciō].
con-nitor, -i, nīsus (-nixus), 16.
con-nīvō, 2, nīvi (-nixi), —, 16.
con-quirō, 3, -quisivi, -quisitum [quaerō].
con-sistō, 3, -stīti, —.
con-spergō, 3, -spersi, -sperms [spargō].
con-spicīō, 3, -spexi, -spectum, 174.
con-stituō, 3, -stīti, -stitūtum [statuō].
con-stō, 1, -stiti (-stātūrus) [constat, 207].
con-suē-faciō, like faciō, 266. a.
con-suēscīō, 3, -ēvi, -ētum (consumērat,
181. a).
con-sulō, 3, -uī, -sultum.
con-tendō, 3, -tendi, -tentum.
con-tīcēscō, 3, -ticūi, —.
con-tineō, 2, -tinuī, -tentum [teneō].
con-tīngō, 3, -tigi, -tāctum [tango] (con-
tingit, imper., 208. e).
INDEX OF VERBS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>con-tundō</td>
<td>-tudi, -tāsum [tundō].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coquō</td>
<td>coxī, coctum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cor-rigō</td>
<td>-rēxi, -rēctum [regō].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cor-rīpiō</td>
<td>-ripui, -reptum [rapīō].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cor-rūō</td>
<td>-ruī, -rutum [ruō].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crēbrēscō</td>
<td>-crēbruī, — [in-, per-].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crēdō</td>
<td>-didī, -ditum [dō].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crepō</td>
<td>-crepāvi, -creptum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crēscō</td>
<td>crēvī, crētum, 176. b. 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crōcō</td>
<td>4, —.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crūdēscō</td>
<td>-crūduī, — [re-].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cubō</td>
<td>1, -ubī, cubāvit, -cubītum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cūdō</td>
<td>-cūdi, -cusum [in-cūdō].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-cumbō [cub] (see ac-cumbō; compounds with de-, ob-, pro-, re-, and sub-, lack the p.p.).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cupiō</td>
<td>3, cūpīvī, cūpitum, 174.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-cupiscō, 3, see con-cupiscō.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>currō</td>
<td>3, cūcrīrī, cursum [in-currō].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēbeō</td>
<td>2, -uitum, 15. 3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēcerpō</td>
<td>3, -cerpsī, -certum [carpō].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>decet</td>
<td>(impers.), decère, decuit, 208. c.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dē-ciπiō</td>
<td>3, -cēpsī, -ceptum [capīō].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dē-currō</td>
<td>3, -curī (-cucurri), -cursum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dē-dō</td>
<td>3, -didī, -ditum [dō]. 209. a. n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dē-fendo</td>
<td>3, -di, -fēnsum, 178. b. n. 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dē-fetiscor</td>
<td>-i, -fessus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dē-fit</td>
<td>defect, 204. c.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēgō</td>
<td>3, —.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēlectat</td>
<td>(impers.), 208. c.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēleō</td>
<td>2, -evī, -ētum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dē-libuo</td>
<td>-libuī, -libūtum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dē-ligō</td>
<td>3, -lēgī, -lēctum [legō].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēmō</td>
<td>dēmpsī, dēmptum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dē-pellō</td>
<td>3, -puli, -pulsum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dē-primo</td>
<td>3, -pressī, -pressum [premō].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>depso</td>
<td>3, -suī, -stum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dē-scendō</td>
<td>3, -di, -scēnsum [scandō].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dē-sillō</td>
<td>4, -siluī (-siliī), -sultum, -saliō.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dē-sīno</td>
<td>3, -sīvī, -situm [sinō].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dē-sipīō</td>
<td>3, —.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dē-sistō</td>
<td>3, -stīti, -stītum [sistō].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dē-spiciō</td>
<td>-spexī, -spectum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dē-sponeō</td>
<td>2, -dī, -spōnsum [spondeō].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dē-struō</td>
<td>3, -struīxī, -strūctum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dē-sum</td>
<td>-esse, -fui, (-futūrus) [sum].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dē-tendo</td>
<td>3, -di, -sum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dē-tincō</td>
<td>3, -ui, -tēntum [teneō].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dē-vertor</td>
<td>-i, —.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dico</td>
<td>3, dīxi, dictum, p. 87, footnote 4 (dixit, 181. b. n. 2; dic, 182).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dī-ferō</td>
<td>-ferre, distuli, dilatārum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dī-fiteor</td>
<td>-ēri, — [fateor].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dī-gnōscō</td>
<td>-gnōvī, — [noscō].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dī-ligō</td>
<td>3, -lexī, -lēctum [legō].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dī-mo</td>
<td>3, -lūi, -lūtum [lūo].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dī-mico</td>
<td>1, -āvī, -ātum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dī-noscō</td>
<td>see di-gnōscō.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dī-ripeō</td>
<td>3, -ripui, -reptum [rapīō].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dī-rūo</td>
<td>3, -ruī, -rutum [ruō].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>discō</td>
<td>[dic], 3, didici, —. [So compounds.]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dis-crepō</td>
<td>1, -ui or -āvi, —.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dis-currō</td>
<td>3, -curri (-cucurri), -cursum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dis-ciō</td>
<td>3, dis-iēci, -iectum [iaciō].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dis-pando</td>
<td>3, —.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dis-sideō</td>
<td>2, -sēdī, — [sedeō].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dis-silūo</td>
<td>4, -ui, —.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dis-tendō</td>
<td>3, -di, -tum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>di-stinguō</td>
<td>3, -stīnxi, -stīnectum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>di-stō</td>
<td>1, —.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ditēscō</td>
<td>3, —.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>di-vidō</td>
<td>3, -visi, -visum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dō</td>
<td>[da] (give), dāre, dedi, dātum, 174, 176. e, 202, 209. a. n. (duim, perdium, 183. 2).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-do</td>
<td>[pha] (put), 3, -idi, -ditum (only in comp., see ab-dō, crēdo, véndō), 209. a. n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>doceō</td>
<td>2, -uitum, docet.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>doleō</td>
<td>2, -ui, (-iturus).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-dolscō</td>
<td>3, -dolui, — [con-].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>domō</td>
<td>1, -uitum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-domscō</td>
<td>3, -domivi, — [con-].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dūco</td>
<td>3, dūxi, ductum (dūc, 182).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dūlcescō</td>
<td>3, —.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>durēscō</td>
<td>3, dūrui, —.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ē-bullīō</td>
<td>4, ēbulliī, —.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>edō</td>
<td>(eat), 3, edere (esse), ēdi, ēsium, 201.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-dō</td>
<td>(put forth), 3, -didī, -ditum, 209. a. n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ef-ferō</td>
<td>-ferre, extuli, ēstatum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ef-ficiō</td>
<td>3, -feci, -fectum [factō].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>egeo</td>
<td>2, -ui, —.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e-iciō</td>
<td>3, -iēci, -iectum [iaciō].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e-lico</td>
<td>3, -ui, -icitum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e-līgō</td>
<td>3, -lēgī, -lēctum [legō].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e-mico</td>
<td>1, -mici, -micātum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e-mineō</td>
<td>2, -ui, — [mineō].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>emō</td>
<td>3, emī, ēmptum, 15. 11 [ad-, dir-imō, co-emō].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e-neco</td>
<td>1, -āvī, -necum (-ātum) [necō].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ēns, see sum.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eō</td>
<td>ire, iī (vī), ētum, 203 (ītum est, 203. a; iī; id.; ētum, impers., 208. d) ad eō, ad- eor, in-eō, 203. a; ambīō, 203. d; pro- eō, -iī, -itum, 203. e). See vēneō.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ē-rigō</td>
<td>3, -rexi, -rectum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>escī</td>
<td>escunt (see sum), 170. b. n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ēsuriō</td>
<td>4, —. esuritūrus, 263. 4.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ē-vidō</td>
<td>3, -vāsi, -vāsum (ēvāsti, 181. b. n. 2).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ē-vanesco</td>
<td>3, ēvanui, —.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ē-venit</td>
<td>(impers.), 207, 208. c.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ē-vilsco</td>
<td>3, -villī, —.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>excellō</td>
<td>3, -celli, -celsum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ex-ciō (-cieō), 4 (2), -ivi (-īn), -itum (-itum).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ex-ciπiō</td>
<td>3, -cēpi, -ceptum [capīō].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ex-cluō</td>
<td>3, -clūsi, -clūsum [claudō].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ex-colō</td>
<td>3, -ui, -cultum [colo].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ex-curro</td>
<td>3, -curri (-cucurri), -cursum.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INDEX OF VERBS

439

exerceō, 2, -cui, -cītum [arcēō].
ex-imō, 3, -ēmi, -ēemptum [emō].
ex-olēscō, 3, -olēvi, -olētum.
ex-pellō, 3, -puli, -pulsum.
ex-pergiscor, 3, -perrēctus.
ex-perior, 4, -pertus.
ex-pleō, 2, -ēvi, -ētum.
ex-plīcō, 1, (unfold), -ui, -ītum; (explain), -āvi, -ātum.
ex-pūndo, 3, -pānxi, -pūctum.
ex-(g)īlō, 3, -ūi (-iī), — [salō].
ex-sīstō, 3, -stīti, -stītum.
ex-stingō, 3, -stīnxi, -stīctum.
ex-stō, 1, — [stātīrūs].
ex-tendō, 3, -dī, -tum (-sum).
exūō, 3, -uī, -ūtum.

facessō, 3, facessīvi (facessi), facessītum, 263. 2. b.
facciō, 3, fēcī, factum, 204 (fac, 182; faxō, -im, 183. 3; con-fīció and other comps. in -fícō, 204. a; bene-facciō etc., 204. b; con-su-facīo, cale-facīo, cale-factō, 266. 4). -facciō, 1 (in compounds), 266. a.
fallō, 3, fētellī, falsum, 177. c, 178. b. n. 4.
farcīō, 4, farsi, fartum [re-farcīō].
fateō, -ēri, fassus [con-fiteō].
fatisco, 3, —.

daveō, 2, fāvi, factum.
d-fendō, 3, -fendi, -fēnsum, see dēfendō.
ferō, 4, —.
ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum, 176. d. n. 1, 200 (fer, 182) [af-, au-, cōn-, dīf-, ef-, in-, of-, re-, sūl-ferō].
ferveō, 2, fervī (ferbūi), —; also, fervō, 3.
fervēsco, 3, -fervī (-ferbūi), —.
fīdō, fīdere, fīsus, 192 [con-fīdō].
figō, 3, fixī, fluxum.
findō [frād], 3, fīdi, fissum, 176. c, 177. c. n.
finīō [fig], 3, finxi, factum, 177. b. n.
fīo, fīeri, factus, 204 (see fācīō) (lit, impers., 208. c; cōnfāt, dēfīt, inītīt, eīfīeri, interfīeri, interfīat, superfīt, 204. c).
flectō, 3, flexī, flexum.

defō, 2, -ēvi, -ētum, 176. e (flēstis, 181. a).
-figō, only in comp., see af-fīgō.
fiōreō, 2, -ūī.
fiōresco, 3, florī, —.
fluō, 3, fluxī, fluxum, 261. n.
foidiō, 3, fodiō, fossum.
[fors], fāri, fātus, 179. a, 206. c (af-fāri, prō-fātus, prae-, inter-fātur, etc., 206. c).
fore, forem, etc., see sum.
foveō, 2, fōvi, fōtum.
frānqui [frac], 3, frēgi, frāctum, 176. b. 1 [per-frānqui].

frēmontō, 3, frementī, —.
frōendo, 3, —, -frēsum (fressum).

fricō, 1, -uī, frictum (frīctām).
frigēō, 2, —, —.
frigēsco, 3, -frīxi, — [per-, re-].
frigō, 2, frīxi, frictum.
frondeō, 2, —, —.
fruer-, -i, fructus.
fruam, ās, etc. (see sum), 170. b. n.
fugō, 3, fugī, (fugītārus).
fūlō, 4, fulsī, fultum.
fulgeō, 3, -si, —.
fulgurō (impers.), 208. a.
fundo [fūd], 3, fundi, fūsum, 176. b. 1.
fungō, -i, fūctus.
fulō, 3, —, —.
fūvimus, fūvisset (see sum), 170. b. n.

gannō, 4, —, —.
gandeō, gandere, gāvīsus, 192.
gemiscō, 3, -gemi, —.
gemō, 3, gemui, —.

gereō, 3, gessī, gestum.
gestō, 4, -ivi, —, 262. a.
gignō [gen], 3, genui, genitus, 176. c. 1.
gliscō, 3, —, —.
glūbō, 3, —, —.
gradiō, -i, gressus [ag-gredior].
grandinat (impers.), 208. a.
grauō, 3, see con-, in-grauō.
habeō, 2, -uī, -itum (in-hibeō; dēbeō; dir-ibeō).
haereō, 2, haesi, haesum.
haeresco, 3, —, —.
haurīō, 4, hauisi, haustum (hausūrus).
havē, see avehē.
hebeō, 2, —, —.
hebesco, 3, —, —.
himīō, 4, —, —.
hirīō, 4, —, —.
hiscō, 3, —, [de-hiscō].
horreo, 2, horrūi, —.
horresco, 3, -horrui, —.

iēō, 3, iēi, iētum.
nigōsco, 3, -nōvi, -nōtum [nōseō].
il-līcio, 3, -lexi, -lectum [-līcio].
il-līdō, 3, -līsi, -lisum [laedō].
imbusō, 3, -uī, -ūtum.
im-mineō, 2, —, — [mineō].
im-pellō, 3, -puli, -pulsum [pellō].
im-petō, 1, reg. (assere, 183. 5).
im-pingō, 3, -pēgi, -pāctum [pango].
im-pleō, 2, -ēvi, -ētum.
im-plico, 1, -āvi (-uī), -ūtum (-itum).
in-cendō, 3, -di, -sum.
in-cesso, 3, incessīvī, —.
in-cidō, 3, -cīdi, (-cāsūrus) [cadō].
in-cidō, 3, -cīdi, -cīsum [caedō].
in-cipō, 3, -cēpi, -ceputum [capiō].
in-clūdō, 3, -si, -sum [claudō].
INDEX OF VERBS

in-colô, 3, -colui, — [colô].
in-crepô, 1, -ui (avī), -itum.
in-curô, 3, -curri (cucurri), -cursum.
in-cutiô, 3, -cussi, -cussum.
ind-igô, 2, -ui, — [egô].
ind-ipisçor, 3, -eptus [apisçor].
in-dô, 3, -didi, -ditum, 209. a. n.
indulgeô, 2, indulsi, indultum.
induô, 3, -uit, -útum.
inquitô, 3, —.
in-ferô, -ferrô, -tuli, illatûm.
in-fit, see fô.
in-gredior, 3, -gressus [gradior].
in-gruô, 3, -ui, — [gruô].
in-hibeô, 2, -ui, -itum [habeô].
in-olêscô, 3, -olêvi, —.
inquan, defect., 206. b.
in-quîrô, 3, -quisîvi, -quisitum [quarôr].
in-sidê, 3, -sedi, -sessum.
in-siliô, 3, -ui, [sultum] [saliô].
in-sistô, 3, -stiti, —.
in-spiciô, 3, -spexi, -spectum.
in-stitû, 3, -uit, -útum [statô].
in-stô, 1, -steti, (stâturus).
intel-legô, 3, -léxi, -lêctum.
inter-dô, -diré, -dedi, -datum, 209. a. n.
inter-est, esse, -fuit (impers.), 208. b.
inter-fâtur, see for.
inter-ficio, 3, -feci, -fectum [facciô].
inter-stô, 1, -steti, —.
in-tueor, e-rô, -tuitus [tueor].
irôscôr, -i, irâtus.
irûro, 3, -ruî, — [ruô].
iaceô, 2, -ui, —.
iaciô, 3, ieci, iactum [ab-iciô, etc.; disiciô, porr-iciô].
iubeô, 2, iussî, iussum (iussô, 183. 3).
iûdicô, 1, reg. (-assit, 183. 5).
iungô, 3, iuñxi, iunctum.
iuvenescô, 3, —.
iuvô (ad-), 1, iuvi, iûtum (àtûrus).
labasçô, 3, —.
labôr, -i, lâpus.
lacesô, 3, lacesívì, lacesitum, 263. b.
laedô, 3, laesi, laesum [il-idiô].
lambô, 3, —.
languê, 2, languí, —.
languêscô, 3, languí, —.
lateô, 2, -ui, —.
latesçô, 3, -luiti, — [dê-litesçô].
lavô, 3, lävi, lantum (lôtum) (also reg. of 1st conj.).
legô, 3, lègi, lêctum [for compounds see 211. e, footnote, also dê-ligô, di-ligô, intel-legô, neglegô].
levô, 1, reg. (-assô, 183. 5).
libet (libet), -ère, -uit, 208. c (libitum est; libêns).
lucose, 2, licui, —.
licet, -ère, licuit, (-itûrum), 207, 208.
(liticum est, licêns).
-lîciô, 3 [for liaciô, only in comp.; see al-liciô, c-liciô, pel-liciô].
linô [lix], 3, lèvi (livî), lîtum.
linquô [lxc], 3, -liqui, -lîctum.
lîqueô, 2, lique (licui), —.
lîquescô, 3, -licui, —.
lîquor, -i, —.
liveô, 2, —.
loquor, -i, locûtus, 261. n.
lucê, 2, lûxi, —.
lucescô (ciscô), 3, -lûxi, — [l-].
lûdô, 3, lûsi, lûsum.
lûgeô, 2, lûxi, —.
lûo, 3, lûi, -litum [dê-lûo, solvô].
madeô, 2, madui, —.
madescô, 3, madui, —.
maereô, 2, —.
mâlo, mâlle, mâlui, — 199 (mâvolô, mâvelîm, mâvelîm, id. n.).
mandô, 3, mandî, mãnsûm.
maneô, 2, mânsi, mãnsûm [per-maneô].
mânsucô, see -suôscô.
marscô, 3, -marci, — [ê-].
mâtûrscô, 3, mâtûrui, —.
medeôr, e-rô, —.
meminì, defect., 205.
mereô or mereor, merêre or -êri, meritûs, 190. g.
mergô, 3, mersî, mersum.
mêtor, -îri, mënsûs.
mêto, 3, messûi, -messûm.
metuô, 3, -ui, -ûtum.
mîco, 1, micui, —.
-mineô, 2, -ui, — [ê-, im-, prô-mineô].
-mîniscôr, -i, -mentus [com-, re-].
minuô, 3, -ui, -ûtum.
mûr, mîräi, mirâtus.
imscô, 2, -cuî, mixtum (mistum).
misereor, -êri, miseritus (misertûs), 208. b.
miseret, imper., 208. b.
mîtôscô, 3, —.
mîttô, 3, misi, misûm, 176. d. n. 2.
môlor, -îri, -itus.
môlo, 3, mûlui, mollûm.
moneô, 2, -ui, -ûtum, 185.
môrdeô, 2, momordi, morsûm.
môrior, -i (-îri), mortuus (morîtûs).
movô, 2, movi, mûtum (commûrat, 181. ô).
mulceô, 2, mulsi, mulsum.
mûlgeô, 2, -si, mulsum.
mûttî, 4, -ivi, —.
nanciscôr, -i, nactus (nântus).
nâscor, -i, nâtus.
necô, 1, -âvi (-ui), -âtum, 209, footnote 2 [ê-necô].
INDEX OF VERBS

nectō [neōc], 3, nexit (nexit), nuxum. neglegō, 3, neglexi, -lectum, 211. e, foot-

tone 2.
neō, 2, névi, —.
nequeo, defect., 206. d.

nigrēscō, 3, nigrui, —.
ningit, 3, ninxit (impers.), 208. a.
nīteō, 2, —, —.
nītēscō, 3, nīiti, —.
nitor, -i, nīsus (nīxus).
-nīveō, 2, -nīvi (-nīxi), —.
-nō, 1, nāvi, — 179. a.
nocēo, 2, nocui, —.
nolō, nollege, nolui, — 199 (nevīs, nevolt,
id. n.).
nōsco [nō], 3, nóvī, nórum [āg-, cóg-, dī(g)-,
īg-nōsco], 205. b. n. 2 (nōsse, 181. a).
nōtēscō, 3, -ui, —.
nūbō, 3, nūpsi, nūptum.
-nuō, 3, -nui, — [ab-, ad-nuō].

ob-dō, 3, -dīdi, -dītum, 209. a. n.
ob-libīscor, -i, oblīitus.
ob-mūtēscō, 3, -mūtuī, —.
ob-sidēo, 2, -sēdi, -sessum [sideō].
ob-sidō, 3, 3, —.
ob-sistō, 3, -stīti, -stītum.
ob-solēscō, 3, -ēvi, -ētum.
ob-stō, 1, -stīti (stātīurus).
ob-tīneō, 2, -ūi, -tentum [tēneō].
ob-tingit (impers.), 208. c.
ob-tundō, 3, -tūdi, -tūsum (-tūnsum).
ob-venit (impers.), 208. c.

callēscō, 3, -callui, —.
cilō, -cīdi, -cāsum [cadō].
cilō, -cīdi, -cīsum [caedō].
ciūno, -cīnui, — [canō].
ciūpiō, 3, cēpi, -ceptum.
culō, 3, culuī, occultum.
curō, 3, -curri (-cucurri), -cursum.oidi, ōdiisae, ōsārus (perōsus), 205.
of-ferō, -ferre, obtuli, oblātum.
-oleō (grow) [see ab-, ad-].
oleō (smell), 2, olui, —.
opereō, 4, operui, opertum.
opertet, -ere, -uit (impers.), 208. c.
opalō, 3, -pēgit, -pāctum [pangō].
operaerī, -i, opperitus.
oprīmō, 3, -pressi, -pressum [precō].
ordīor, -i, orsus.
orī (3d), -i, ortus (ortūrus) (so
comps.), 174, 191.

tōndo, 3, -tendi, -tentum.
ovāre, ovātus, defect., 206. f.

pacciscor, -i, pactus.

paenitet (impers.), -ēre, -uit, 208. b 
(tārūrā, -tendus, id. n.).
palēo, 2, pallui, —.
pallēscō, 3, pallui, —.
pandō, 3, pandi, pānsum (passum) [dis-].

pangō [pāg], 3, pepliī (-pēgi), pāctum
[im-pingō; op-pangō].

parco, 3, peperci (parsi), (parsūrus).
apāreo, 2, -ui, pāritum (lāte).

parō, 3, peperi, partum (parīturūs) 
[com-, re-periō].

partitor, -iri, -itus, 190.

parturīo, 4, —.
pāsco, 3, pāvi, pāstum.
pato, 2, patuī, —.
patior, -i, passus [per-petior].
paveo, 2, pāvi, —.
pavesco, 3, -pāvi, — [ex-].

pectō, 3, pexi, pexum.

pel-licio, 3, -lexi, -lectum [-licio].

pello, 3, pepuli, pulsum, 176. d. n. 2, 178
b. n. 4 [ap-pello, com-pello, etc.].

pendō, 2, pendenti, -pēnsum.

pendō, 3, pependi, pēnsum.

per-agō, 3, -ēgi, -actum.

per-cellō, 3, -culi, -culsum.

per-clō, see clō; p.p. -cītus.

per-cūrro, 3, -cūrii (-cucurri), -cursum.

per-dō, 3, -dīdi, -dītum, 209. a. n.

per-ficīo, 3, -fēci, -fectum [faciō].

per-fringō, 3, -frigī, -fractum [frangō].

per-go, 3, perrēxi, perrēctum.

per-legō, 3, -lēgi, -lectum [legō].

per-ōsus, see ōdi.

per-petior, -i, -pessus.

per-quīrō, 3, -quisivi, -quisitum [quarō].

per-spicīo, 3, -spexi, -spectum.

per-stō, 1, -stiti, —.

per-tīneō, 2, -ūi, -tentum [tēneō].

per-tundō, 3, -tūdi, -tūsum.

pessum-dō, like dō, 209. a. n., 428. t.

petessō (petissō), 3, —, — 263. 2. b.

petō, 3, petivi (-h), petītum, 177. f.

piget (impers.), -ēre, piguit, 208. b (pig-

estum est, id. n.).

pingō [pīg], 3, pīxi, pictum.

pinsō, 3, -si, pinus (pīnustum, pīustum).

pisō, 3, pisivi (-i), pītum (see pinsō).

placeō, 2, -ūi, -utum (placet, impers.,

208. c.).

plangō, 3, plāxi, plāctum.

plaudō, 3, plausi, plausum (ex-plōdō, etc. ;
ap-plaudō).

plectō, 3, plēxi, plēxum, 174, 176. b. 1.

-plerctor, -i, plēxus.

-pleō, 2, -plevi, -plētum (only in comps.,
as com-pleō).

plicō, 1, -plicui (-plicāvi), -plicitum (-plic-

tum).

pluit, 3, pluit (pluvīt), 174, 208. a (pluunt.
id. n.).

polleō, 2, —.

polluō, 3, -ūi, -utum [loō].

pōno, 3, posui, positum.

purr-icio, 3, -rectum [faciō].

por-rigo (porgō), 3, -rüxi, -rüctum.
INDEX OF VERBS

pōscō, 3, popōscī, — (so comp.)
possidēō, 2, -sēūdī, -sēssum [sedeō]
possidō, 3, -sēūdī, -sēssum
possum, posse, potui, —, 198. b (potis sum, pote sum, possiēm, poterint, potuisit, potestur, positur, id., footnote).
potior, -īrī, potitus
pōtō, 1, -āvī, -ātum (pōtum)
praebēō, 2, -ūnī, -ūtum [habēō]
praecēlō, 3, —, — [-cellō]
praecīnō, 3, -cīnūi, — [canō]
praecurro, 3, -curri (-cucurri), -cursum
praefātur, 206. c
praegēō, 3, -lēgī, -lēctum [legō]
prae-sageō, 4, -īvī, —
prae-sens, 170. b (see sum)
prae-sideō, 2, -sēūdī, — [sedeō]
praestō, 1, -stītī, -stitum (-stātum) (praes- stat, imper., 208. c)
praesum, -esse, -fūi, (-futūrus)
prandreō, 2, prandī, prānsum
prehendō (prēndō), 3, -di, prehēnsum (-pēnsum).
premō, 3, pressī, pressum [re-premō]
prendō, see prehendō
prō-curri, 3, -curri (-cucurri), -cursum
prōdēō, 4, -iū, -itum, 203. c
prōdīgō, 3, -ēgi, -actum [ago].
prō-dō, 3, -dīdī, -ditum, 209. a. N.
prō-fatūs, 206. c
prō-ficio, 3, -fēcī, -fectum.
prō-ficēscor, -iū, projectus.
prō-fiteor, -ēri, -fessus.
prō-minēō, -ēre, -ūi, —
prōmō, 3, -mpsi, -mptum, 15. 3
prō-siliō, 3, -ūi (-īvī), — [saliō]
prō-sum, prōdesse, prōtūi (-futūrus), 198. a.
prō-tendo, 3, -di, -tensus (-sus).
psalō, 3, -i, —
pubēscō, 3, pūbūi, —
pudet (impers.), pudère, puduit or pudium est, 208. b (pudendus, id. N.).
puerāscō, 3, —, —
pungō (pug), 3, pupūgī, pūnctum [com-]
pūtēscō, 3, pūtūi, —
quaerō, 3, quaesīvī, quaesītum [re-quirō] (cf. quaeso).
quaeso, 3, defect., 206. e (cf. quaerō)
quaßo, 1, reg., 263. 2
quātiō, 3, -cessī, quassum [con-cutio].
quō, quīre, quīvi, quītus, 206. d (quitur, etc., id. N.); cf. nequeō.
quercor, -ī, questus.
quiēscō, 3, quiēvī, quiētum.
rabō (rabīō), 3, —, —
rādō, 3, rāsi, rāsum.
rapiō, 3, rapuī, raptum (ērēpsēmus, 181. b. N. 2 [ab-ripiō etc.])
re-cidō, 3, recēcidī, (recāsūrus) [cadō].
re-cidō, 3, -cidī, -cīsum [cadō].
re-cipīō, 3, -cēpi, -ceptum [capīō] (recēpsō, 183. 3)
re-clūdō, 3, -si, -sum.
red-dō, 3, reddīdi, reddītum, 209. a. N.
red-igō, 3, -ēgi, -actum [ago].
red-imō, 3, -ēmi, -ēptum.
red-fellō, 3, -felli, — [fallō]
red-feliciō, 4, -fesi, -fertum [facciō].
red-ferō, -ferre, retulī, relātum [ferō].
red-fert, -ferre, -tulit (impers.), 208. c
re-ficiō, 3, -fēci, -fectum.
regō, 3, rēxi, rēctum [ar-rigō etc.; pergō, surgō].
re-linquō, 3, -līquī, -lēctum [linquō].
re-miniscor, -i, —
renindeō, 2, —, —
reor, rēri, ratus.
re-pellō, 3, repulī (repuuli), repulsum.
reperiō, 4, reperī, repertum.
repō, 3, repīsi, —
re-primō, 3, -pressi, -pressum [premō].
re-quirō, 3, -sīvī, -situm [quærō].
re-sideō, 2, -sēūdī, —
re-siliō, 4, -iū (-ii), —
re-sipiscō, 3, -sipīvī, — [sapiō].
re-sistō, 3, -stētī, —
re-spergō, 3, -sī, -sum [spargō].
re-spondeō, 2, -di, -spōnsum [spondeō].
re-stat (impers.), 208. c.
re-stō, 1, -stētī, —, 209. a. N.
re-tendō, 3, -di, -tum (-sum).
re-tineō, 2, -tīnūi, -tentum [teneō].
re-tundō, 3, retruddi, retūnsum (-tūsum).
re-vertor, -i, reversus, 191 (revertī, -eram, id. N.).
rideō, 2, rīsi, -risum.
rigēō, 2, rigui, —
rigēscō, 3, rigui, —
ringor, 3, rictus.
rōdō, 3, rōsī, rōsum.
rubēo, 2, —, —
rubēscō, 3, rūbūi, —
rudō, 3, rudīvi, —
rumpō (ruf), 3, rūpi, rumpum.
rūo, 3, rui, rutum (rütūrus), 176. e [di-, cor-].

saapiō, 4, saepsi, saepsum.
sāgiō, 4, see pra-sāgiō.
saliō, 4, salui (saliī), [saltum] [dé-siliō].
salvē, salvēre, 206. g.
sanció [sac], 4, sānxi, sāntum, 177. b. N.
sānscō, 3, -sānui, — [con-].
sapiō, 3, sapūi, —
sarcio, 4, sarsi, sartum.
satis-dō, -dare, -dedī, -dātum, 209. a. N.
scaēo, 3, scābi, —
scalpō, 3, scalpsī, scalptum.
scondō, 3, scendi, -scēnsum [a-sendō, etc.].
INDEX OF VERBS

sca-tēo (scatō), -ēre or -ēre, —.
sca-tūrīo, 4, —.
scīn (= scisne), 13. n. (see sciō).
scīndō [scīndō], 3, scīdi, sciissum, 177. c. n.
sciō, 4, -ivī, sciūtum (scīn', 13. n.).
scīscō, 3, sciūvi, sciūtum.
scībō, 3, scripsi, scriptum, 178. b. n.1.
sclūpo, 3, sclūpuli, sclūptum.
scē-ernō, 3, -crēvi, -crētum.
scō, 1, -uī, sectum (also secātūrus).
scēdo, 2, sēdi, sectum [ad-, pos-sidēo, etc.; super-scēdeo].
scē-ligō, 3, -lēgi, -lēctum [legō].
scēnsēcō, 3, -senni, sēsum.
scēntīō, 4, sēnsi, sēsum.
scēpelīō, 4, scēpelīvi, sepultum.
sequor, -ī, secūtus, 190. c.
serō [entuine], 3, serūi, sectum.
serō [sow], 3, sēvi, saturum.
sorē, 3, sorpsi, —.
sidō, 3, sidi (-sēdi), -sēsum.
sileō, 2, -uī, —.
singultīō, 4, -ivī, —.
sinō, 3, sīvi, situum (sūris, etc., 181. b. n.1).
sistō [sta], 3, stīti, statum.
sitīō, 4, -ivī, —.
sōdes (= sūd audēs), 13. n.
soleō, solēre, solūtus, 192.
solvō, 3, solvī, solūtum, 177. e, 261. n.
sōnō, 1, -uītum (atūtūs).
sorbeō, 2, sorbuī (rarely sorpsi), —.
spargō, 3, sparsi, sparsum [ad-spargō].
sperrō, 3, sprrēvi, sprettum, 177. a. n.
-spicio, 3, -spexī, -spectum.
spendeō, 2, -uī, —.
spondeō, 2, spoundi, spōnsum [re-].
spōuō, 3, -spui, —.
squaleō, 2, —.
statuō, 3, -uītum, 176. d [con-statūō].
sternō, 3, strāvi, strātum, 177. a. n.
sternūō, 3, sternuī, —.
stertō, 3, stertuī, —.
-stinguō, 3, -stinxī, -stinctum (in comp., as ex-).
stō, stāre, steti, -statum (-stīt), 209. a.
and n.
strēpō, 3, strepui, —.
strīdēo, 2, stridī, —.
strīdō, 3, stridi, —.
stringō, 3, strinxī, strictum.
struō, 3, strīxi, strīctum.
studeō, 2, -uī, —.
stupēō, 2, stupui, —.
stupēscō, 3, stupīui, —.
suādō, 2, suāsi, suāsum.
sub-dō, 3, -dīdi, -ditum, 209. a. n.
sub-igō, 3, -egī, -ictum [agū].
sub-cidō, 3, -cidī, -ca(a)ō.
sucidō, 3, -cidī, -cīsum [caedō].
sucūrō, 3, -curri, -cursum.
sucescō, 3, suēvi, suētum.

suf-ferō, sufferre, sustulī, sublātum.
suf-ficīō, 3, -feci, -fectus [faciō].
suf-fodiō, 3, -fodi, -fossum.
sug-gerō, 3, -gessi, -gestum.
suōgō, 3, sūxi, sūctum.
sūlītis (= sī vultis), 13. n.
sum, esse, fui, (futūrus), 170; fūi (forem, fore, 170. a; *fōns, *fīns, id. b; fūvimus, fūvissent, siem, fuam, fuas, escit, esunct, id. b. n.; homōst, etc., 13. n.).
sūmō, 3, sūmpsi, sūmptum, 15. 11.
snō, 3, sui, sūtum.
super-dō, -dāre, -dedi, -dātum, 209. a. n.
super-fit, defect. 204. c.
super-fluō, 3, — [fluō].
super-stō, 1, -steti, —.
super-sum, see sum (superest, impers., 208. c).
surdēscō, 3, surdūi, —.
surgō (sur-rigō), 3, surrēxi, surrēctum.
sur-rīpiō, 3, -uī (surpui), -reptum [rapiō].
tābeō, 2, -uī, —.
tābescō, 3, tābui, —.
taedet (impers.), -ēre, taeduit, pertaesum est, 208. b.
tangō [tag], 3, tētīgī, tāctum, 176. c. 2
[con-tingō].
tegō, 3, tēxi, tēctum, 186.
temmō, 3, -tempsi, -temptum, 176. b. 1.
tendō [tenx], 3, tędzi, tentum.
teneō, 2, tenuī, -tentiunt [con-tīneō, etc.].
tespēscō, 3, tepui, —.
tergeō, 2, tersi, tersum.
tergō, 3, tersi, tersum.
terō, 3, trivi, tritum.
texō, 3, texui, textum.
timeō, 2, -uī, —
-timēscō, 3, -timui, —
tingō (tinguō), 3, tinxi, tinctum, 178. b. n.2.
tollō, 3, sustulī, sublātum, 211. f. n.
[st-tollō].
tondeō, 2, -tontondi (-tondi), tōnsum, 177. c.
tonō, 1, -uī, -tonitum (-tonātum).
torpeō, 2, —.
tordeō, 2, torri, tostum.
torēō, 2, torri, tostum.
trā-dō, 3, -dīdi, -ditum, 209. a. n.
trahō, 3, trāxi, trāctum (trāxe, 181. b. n.2).
trāns-currō, 3, -curri (-cucurrī), -cursum.
tremō, 3, tremui, —.
tribuō, 3, tribui, tribūtum.
trūdō, 3, trūsi, trūsām.
tueor, -ēri, tuitus (tūtus, adj.).
tuneō, 2, —.
tumēscō, 3, -tumui, — [in-]tumō [tum], 3, tutuī, tānsum (-tāsum)
[ob-tundō].
turgeo, 2, tursi, —.
tussiō, 4, —.
INDEX OF VERBS

ulciscor, -i, ultus.
uncho (-uð), 3, ünxii, üntum.
urgö, 2, ursi, —.
ürö, 3, ussi, ustum (so comps., cf. also combürö).
ūtor, -i, üsus.

vacat (impers.), 208. e.
väðö, 3, -väsii, -väsüm.
vägiö, 4, -li, —.
valöö, 2, -nii, (-itürus).
valööö, 3, -nii, —.
vänësoö, 3, -vänii, — [ë-].
vehö, 3, vëxi, vectum.
vellö (vollö), 3, velli (-vulë), vulsum.
vëndö, 3, -didî, -ditum, 428. í.
vëneö (be sold), 4, -lii, -litum, 428. i.
venöö (come), 4, vëni, ventum, 19, 174.

vëcor, -ëri, -itus, 190.
vëgoö, 3, —.

vëröö (vorröö), 3, -verri, versum.

erööö (vortöö), 3, verti, versum, 178. d. n. 1
(vertor, mid., 156. a. n.).
vëcor, -i, —.
vesperäsööt (impers.), 208. a, 263. 1.
veteräsööö, 3, vëterëvëi, —.
vëtoö, 1, -uí, -itum.
vëëöö, 2, vëdi, visum.
vëderöö (seem), -ëri, visus (vidëtur, impers., 208. e).
vieöö, 2, [vëvi], -ëtum.
vigeöö, 2, -uí, —.
vëin’ (= visne, see volöö).
vëncëöö, 4, vënxii, vëntum.
vëncëööööö, 3, vëci, victum.
vireöö, 2, -nii, —.
vësoöö (vid), 3, vësi, —, 263. 4. n.
vëvisööö, 3, -vëxi, —, [re-].
vëvoö, 3, vëxi, victum (vëxet, 181. b. n. 2).
vëloöö, velle, vëluöö, 199 (sáltis, 13. n. 199. n.; vëin’, 13. n.).
volööö, 3, volvi, völätum.
vëmoööö, 3, vëmii, —.
vööööööö, 2, vëvi, vëtum.
INDEX OF WORDS AND SUBJECTS

Note.—The numerical references are to sections, with a few exceptions in which the page (p.) is referred to. The letters and some numerals refer to subsections. The letter n. signifies Note; ftm., footnote. Abl. = ablative; acc. = accusative; adj. = adjective; adv. = adverb or adverbial; apod. = apodosis; app. = appositive or apposition; cf. = compare; comp. = compound or composition; compar. = comparative or comparison; conj. = conjunction or conjunction; constr. = construction; dat. = dative; gen. = genitive; gend. = gender; inv. = imperative; ind. disc. = indirect discourse; loc. = locative; nom. = nominative; prep. = preposition; subj. = subject; subjv. = subjunctive; vb. = verb; w. = with. (Other abbreviations present no difficulty.)

A, quantity of final, 604. d.
ā, acc. of Greek nouns in, 81. 2; as nom. ending, decl. III, gend., 84–87.
ā, in decl. I, 37; stem-vowel of conj. I, 171, 174, 179. a, 259; in subjunctive, 179; prep. in -ā, adv. use of, 433. 4.
ā-, primary suffix, 224. I. 1.
ā (ab, abs), use, 220. b, 221.1, 420. b; compounded with vbs., 267. a; w. abl. of agent, 405; w. place from which, 426.1; w. names of towns, 428. a; expressing position, 429. b; as adv. expressing distance, w. abl. of degree of difference, 433. 3; in comps., w. dat., 381; in comps., w. abl., 402; w. abl. of gerund, 507.
ā parte, 398, 429. b.
ab and au in auferō, 200. a. n.
Abbreviations of praenomina, 108. c.
Ability, verbs of, constr., 456; in apod., 517. c.
Ablative, defined, 35. e; in -ābus, 43. e; in -ā, 43. n.1, 49. e, 80. ftm., 92. f; of i-stems, decl. III, 74. e; rules of form, 76; nouns having abl. in -ā, 76. a; of d. IV, in -ubus, 92. c; abl. used as supine, 94. b; of adj.s., decl. III, 121. a. 1–4; preps. followed by, 220. b; adverbial forms of, 214. e, cf. 215. 4.
Ablative, Syntax, 308–420; classification and meaning, 398, 399. Separation, 400; w. vbs. of freedom, 401; w. comps., 402; w. adj.s. of freedom etc., 402. a. Source and material, 403; w. participles, id. a; w. constâre etc., id. b; w. facere, id. c; w. nouns, id. d. Cause, 404; causā, grātiā, id. c. Agent, 405; means for agent, 405. b. n.1. Comparison, 406; opinione, spē, etc., id. a; w. alius, 407. d; w. advs., id. e. Means, 409; w. dōnō etc., 364; w. ūtor, fruer, etc., 410; w. opus and ūsus, 411. Manner, 412. Accompaniment, 413. Degree of difference, 414; quō . . . ēō, 414. a. Quality, 415; price, 416; charge or penalty, 353. 1. Specification, 418; w. dignus etc., id. b. Abl. Absolute, 419; adverbial use, id. c; replacing subord. clauses, 420; supplying place of perf. act. part., 493. 2. Place, 422, 426. 3; w. vbs. and frētus, 431 and a. Abl. of time, 423; of time w. quam, 434. n.; of place from which, 426. 1; names of towns, domus, rīs, 427. 1; ex urbe Rōmā, 428. b. Locative abl., 426. 3; way by which, 429. a; w. transitive compounds, 395. n.1; time within which, 424. c; duration of time, id. b. Abl. w. prep., 220. b, 221, 450, 453; w. ex for part. gen., 346. c; w. prō (in defence of), 379. n.; w. pālam etc., 432. c; abl. of gerund, 507; equiv. to pres. part., id. ftm.
Ablaut, 17; in decl. II. 45. c.
Abounding, words of, w. abl., 409. a; w. gen., 356.
Absence, vbs. of, w. abl., 401.
Absolute case, see Abl. Absolute.
Absolute use of vb., 273. 2. n.2, 387. n. absque mē etc., in Pl. and Ter., 517. f.
Abstract nouns, gend., 32; in plur., 100. c; endings, 238; w. neut. adj., 287. 4. a, 289; abstract quality denoted by neut. adj., 289. a.
absum, constr., 373. b.
-ābus, in dat. and abl. plur., decl. I, 43. e.
ac, see atque.
ac si, w. subjv., 524.
Acatalectic verse, 612. a.
INDEX OF WORDS AND SUBJECTS

acci'dit ut, 569. 2.
Accent, rules of, 12; effect in modifying vowels, p. 27. fn. 1; in decl. II, 49. b; in comp. of faciē, 204. b; musical, 611.
acceptum, 496. n. 4.
ac'cidit, synopsis, 207; constr., 569. 2.
acci'ngō, constr., 364.
accommodā'tus, w. dat. of gerund etc., 505. a.
Accompaniment, abl. of, 413.
Accomplishment, vbs. of, w. subjv., 568.
acci'us, defined, 35. d; in -m and -s, 38. c; in -im, decl. III, 75. a, b; in -iā (plur.), 77; in -a, 81. 2; acc. of decl. IV, used as supine, 94. b; neut. acc. used as adv., 214. d, cf. 215. 1; fem. used as adv., id. 2.
acci'us, Syntax, 386-397 (see 338); w. vbs. of remembering, 350 and a, c, d; and gen. w. vbs. of reminding, 351; w. impersonals, 354, b, 388. c, 455. 2; w. ad with interest and réfert, 355. b; w. dat., 362; w. compounds of ad, ante, ob, 370. b; vbs. varying between acc. of end of motion and dat., 363; w. ad object, 274, 387; w. ivuē etc., 367. a; acc. or dat. w. vbs., 367. b, c; acc. w. vbs. of feeling and taste, 388. a, 390. a; w. comp. of circum and trāns, 388. b; cognate acc., 390; adverbial use of, 390. c, d and n. 2, 397. a; two accusatives, 391; pred. acc., 392-3; second-ary object, 394-5; acc. w. pass. of vbs. of asking etc., 396. b, n.; synecdochical acc. (of specification), 397. b; in exclamations, id. d; duration and extent, 423, 425; end of motion, 426. 2; names of towns, dōmus, rūs, 427. 2; Rōmān ad urbem, 428. b; acc. w. ante diem, 424. g; w. prep., 220. a, c; w. ad or in to denote penalty, 353. 2. n.; w. pridiē, propius, etc., 342. a; acc. of gerund, 506; of anticipation, 576; subj. of inf., 397. e, 452, 455. 2, 459; as pred. after inf., 455. a; subj. in ind. disc., 579, 581.
Accusing and acquitting, vbs. of, constr., 352.
ācer, decl., 115; compar., 125.
-ā'ceus, adj. ending, 247.
ā'ciēs, decl., 98. a.
acqué'scō, w. abl., 431.
Actions, names of, 257; nouns of action w. gen., 348.
Active voice, 154. a, 156; change to pass., 275.
Acts, nouns denoting, 239.
-acus (-ā'cus), adj. ending, 249.
acūs, gend., 90. Exc.
ad, use, 220. a, 221. 2; in comp., 16, 267. a; w. acc. to denote penalty, 353. 2. n.; in comp., w. dat., 370, 381; in comp., w. acc., 370. b; w. acc. with adjs., 385. a; end of motion, 426. 2, cf. 363; w. names of towns, 428. a; w. names of countries, 428. c; meaning near, 428. d; in expressions of time, 424. e; following its noun, 435; w. gerund, 506.
addītur, constr., 568.
adēō (verb), constr., 370. b.
adēō ut, 557. 2. n. 2.
adēs, patronymic ending, 244.
adīvō, w. acc., 367. a.
Adjective pronouns, see Pronouns.
Adjectives, Syntax. Masc. adjs., 122. d; adjs. of com. gend., id.; as advs., 214. d, e (cf. 218), 290; adj. as app., 282. b; as nouns, 288, 289; nouns used as adjs., 321. c; advs. used as adjs., 321. d; participles used as adjs., 494. Agreement of adjs., 286, 287; attribute and predicate, 257; use of neut. adjs., 299. Adjs. w. adverbial force, 290. Two comparatives w. quam, 292. Adj. pronouns, 296-298. Gen. of adjs. of decl. III instead of nom., 343. c. n. 1. Adjs. w. part. gen., 346. 2; w. dat., 383; w. acc., 388. d. n. 2; w. inf., 461; w. supine in -ā, 510. Position of adjs., 508. a, b.
Adjective phrase, 277.
ad'modum, use, 291. c. n. 1.
ad'moneō, constr., 351.
Admonishing, vbs. of, constr., 563.
Adonic verse, 625. 3.
ad'spergō, constr., 364.
adūlōr, constr., 367. b.
Adverbial acc., 390. b, c, d, and n. 2, 397. a.
Adverbial conjunctions, 20. g. n.
Adverbial phrases, 216, 277.
Adverbs, defined, 20. e; formed from adjs., 214 and c, d, e, 218; case-forms or phrases, 215; comparison of advs., 218; numeral advs., 138. Classification of advs., 217; correlative forms of advs. of place, 217. n.
Adverbs, Syntax, 321. Advs. used as adjs., 321. d; adjs. w. adverbial force, 290; adverbial abl. abs., 419. c. Special uses, 322, 326. Advs. w. nouns, 321. c. n.; correlative advs. used as conjns., 323.
af, g; part. gen. w. advs., 346. 4. a; dat. w. advs., 384; compar. of adv. followed by quam, 406; adv. as protasis, 321. a.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adversative conjunctions, 223. a. 2, 224.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I. b.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adverus, 219; w. acc., 220. a; as adv., 433. 2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ae, diphthong, 2; sound of, 6. n. 3. 8.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aeōs, sing. and plur., 107. a.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aeger, decl., 112. a.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aemulor, constr., 367. b.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aeneadēs, decl., 44.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aeneās, decl., 44.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aequālis, decl., 76. a. 2; constr. w. gen., 385. c and 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aequor, decl., 64.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>āēr, use of plur., 100. b.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aēs, use of plur., 100. b.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aētās, decl., 72.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aēthēr, decl., 81.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Affecting, acc. of, 386.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>affilius, decl., 76. b. 2; constr. w. gen., 385. c and 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ager, dat. of, w. gerundives, 374; w. perf. parts., 375; abl. of, 405; agent regarded as means, id. b; animal as agent, id. n. 4.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ager, decl., 47.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aggregōr, constr., 370. b.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agrōnēmen, 108. a. n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>agō, forms of, omitted, 319. a.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agreeing, verbs of, w. gerundive, 500. 4.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agreement, 280; of nouns, 281; in app., 282; in predicate, 283; of adj., 286; of demonstrative pronouns, 286; of possessive pronouns, 302; of relatives, 305, 306; of verbs, 316, 317.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-āi for -ae, decl. I, 43. a; 603. a 2. n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-āia, nouns in, decl., 43. e. n. 2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-āis, pronounced ai-iō, b. 6. c.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-āius, names in, decl. 49. f.; -āius in Prosody, 603. f. n. 2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-āil, ending, 254. 7; nouns in, 68. ftn. 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-āil and -āir, neuters in (decl. III), 65. b, 76. a. 3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alacer, decl., 115. a; compar., 131. b.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>albus, not compared, 131. d.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alcaic verse, 625. 9, 10.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alcanian strophe, 617. a.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-āle, noun ending, 254. 7; list of nouns in, 68. ftn. 2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aliquos, for possessive gen. of alius, 113. d, 343. a.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aliquis (-qui), decl., 151. e; meaning, 310, 311.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aliquot, indeclinable, 122. b.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ālis, -āris, adj. endings, 248.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alius, decl., 113; gen., id. c, of 343; compounds, 113. e; alius w. abl., ac, nisi, quam, 407. d.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alius . . . alius, 315. a.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alphabet, 1; vowels and diphthongs, 1, 2; consonants, 3, 4; early forms of letters, 1. a and n., 6. a, b.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alter, decl., 113. b; gen. and comp., id. c, e; use, 315; reciprocal use, 145. c 315. a.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alter . . . alter, 315. a.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>altera est res ut, 588. ftn. 2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alteruter, decl., 113. e; use, 315.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Although, how expressed, 527, 535. e.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alvēs (alvēs), gend., 48. Exc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>am-, see amb- . . . am, adv. ending, 215. 2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amb- (am-, an-), inseparable prefix, 267. b.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ambāgēs, decl., 73. 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amēnēs, decl., 121. a. 3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amplius, without quam, 407. c.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amussim, acc., 75. a. 3, 103. b. 4.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>an-, see amb-, an, anne, anōn, in double questions, 335.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anacrōsia, 608. g.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anapaeast, 609. b. 2; anapaestic verse, 613, 628. a.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anapahora, 598. f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ancepts, decl., 121. a. 3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anchisēs, decl., 44.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Andromachē, decl., 44.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ānex, adj. ending, 247.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>animal, decl., 69.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Animals, gend. of names of, 32, 34 and n. : regarded as means or agent, 405. b. n. 2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>animi (loc.), w. adj., 358; w. vbs., id.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>annālēs, decl., 76. a. 2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Annalistic present, 469. a.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Answers, forms of, 336, 337.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ant-, ent-, stem-endings, 83. e.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ante, 220. a; uses, 221. 3; compounded w. vbs., 267. a; in compounds, w. dat., 370. w. acc., id. b; adverbial use of, 433. 1; followed by quam, 434.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ante diēm, 424. g.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antecedent, its use w. relative, 305-307; undefined, constr., 535. See Indefinite antecedent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>antecedō, constr., 370. b.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>antecēt cop., constr., 370. b.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>antecedēns, constr., 370. b.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antepenult, defined, 12. ftn.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>antēquam, 550, 551; in ind. disc., 585. b. n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antibacchēus, 609. d. n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anticipation, acc. of, 576; becomes nom. id. n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antithesis, 598. f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anus, gend., 90. Exc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ānus, adj. in, 249.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INDEX OF WORDS AND SUBJECTS

Aorist (= hist. perf.), 161. 2, 473.
apage, 206. g.
apertus, compar. of, 124. a.
Apex, 10. n.
apis, decl., 78. 2.
Apodosis, defined, 512; introduced by
correl., id. b; may be subord., id. c;
forms of, 514, 515 ff.; potential subjv.,
447.3.n.; subjv. of modesty, 447.1; vbs.
of necessity etc., 522. a; complex apod.,
523; apod. omitted, 524; apod. in ind.
disc., 589. 2. See Conditional Sentences.
Appointing, vbs. of, constr., 393.
Apposition, see Appositive.
Appositive, defined, 282; agreement of,
281, 282. c; w. loc., id. d; gen. as app.
to possessive, 302. e; gen. used for app.,
343. d; so dat., 373. a; rel. clause equiv-
tal. to app., 308. c; acc. as app. to a
clause, 397. f; app. instead of voc.,
340. a; app. in connection with inf.,
452 and n. 2.
aptus ad, 385. a; aptus w. dat. of gerund
e tc., 505. a. ftn. 2; aptus qui, 553. f.
apud, 220. a; use, 221. 4; in quoting, 428.
d. n. 2.
aquális, decl., 76. a. 2.
-ar, nom. ending, decl. III, 68. a, 65. b,
76. a. 2; 68. ftn. 1; gender, 87.
arbor (—), decl., 62. n. 2.
arcob, constr., 364. n. 2.
Archilochian verse, 622.
arcticus, gend., 48. Exc.
árdeó, w. abl., 404. a.
-áriu, suffix, 254. 2.
-áris, adj. ending, 248.
Arithmetic verse, 625. 2.
-árium, noun ending, 254. 3.
-árius, adj. ending, 250. a; noun ending,
254. 1.
Arrangement of words, 595–601.
Arsis and thesis, 611 and ftn.
Arts, names of, decl. I, 44.
arbus, decl., 92. c.
as, value of, 632; gen. of, 417. a.
-áis, in acc. plur. of Greek nouns, 81. 5.
-ás, old gen. ending, 43. b; Greek nom.
ending, 83. e; patronymic, 244; gen.
of nouns in, 86. b; -áis, -átis, see -át;
adj. in -áis, 249.
Asclepiadic verse, 625. 5, 6.
Asking, vbs. of, w. two acc., 396; w. abl.,
396. a; w. subjunctive clause, 563.
Aspirates, 4 and ftn. 2.
Assumptions, direct, in indic., 157. a.
Assimilation of consonants, 15. 6, 10; in
prefixes, 16.
-ássó, -ássere, in fut. perf., 183. 5.
ast, 324. d.
-aster, as noun ending, 254. 11.
Asyndeton, 323. b, 601. c.
At, meaning near, 428. d.
at, use, 324. d; at enim, id.; at véró, 324. k.
át-, patrival stem-ending, 71. 5; decl., 78.
3, 121. a. 4.
ató, decl., 112. a; not compared, 131. d
and n.
Athematic verbs, 174. 2.
Athós, decl., 52.
Atís, decl., 82, 83. e.
atque (ac), use, 324. b, c; after adj. of like-
ness, 384. n. 2; after alius, 407. d.
atqui, use, 324. d.
atróx, decl., 117. a.
Attraction of case of relative, 396. a; of
case of antecedent, id. n.; of subject in
ind. disc., 581. n. 2.
Attraction, subjunctive of, 591. 2, 593.
Attributive adjective defined, 285. 1;
number, 286. a; takes gend. of nearest
noun, 287. 1.
-átus, adj. ending, 246.
auácter, compar., 218.
aula, decl., 44.
averus, not compared, 131. d.
avus as pres. part., 491.
aut, use, 324. e, 335. d. n.
avum, use, 324. d, j, 599. b.
Author w. apud, 428. d. n. 2.
Authority in Prosody, 602.
avis, decl., 76. b. 1.
-áx, verbal adj. ending, 251; adj. ins.
in, w. gen., 349. c.
baccar, decl., 76. a. 3.
Bacchiad verse, 628. b.
Bacchus, 609. d.
Báiae, decl., 43. e. n. 2.
-áam, tense-ending, 168. b.
Bargaining, vbs. of, constr., 563; gerund-
ive, 500. 4; clause, 563. d.
Base, 27.
basis, decl., 82.
Beginning, vbs. of, constr., 456.
Believing, vbs. of, w. dat., 367.
hell, loc. use of, 427. a.
bellum, decl., 46.
bellum, compar., 131. a.
Belonging, adj.s of, w. gen., 385. c.
benefit, comparison, 218; in phrase com-
ounds, 12. a. Exc. 1, 266. b; compo-
unds of, constr., 368. 2.
Benefiting, vbs. of, constr., 367.
-ber, names of months in, decl., 115. a.
bicolor, decl., 122. a.
bicolor, 119. n.
-bils, verbal adj. ending, 252.
Birds, gend. of names of, 32.
Birth or origin, nouns of, derivation, 244;
participle of, w. abl., 403. a.
-bé, tense-ending, 163. c.
INDEX OF WORDS AND SUBJECTS 449

Bōi, decl., 49. f.
bonus, decl., 110; compar., 129; w. dat. of gerund etc., 503. a. ftm.
bōs, decl., 79 and b.
br-, stems ending in, 66; adjs. in, 115. a.
brum, suffix, 240.
b-ulum, suffix, 240.
-bundus, verbals in, 253. b; w. acc., 388. d.

būris, decl., 75. a. 1.
Buying, vbs. of, constr. with, 417. c.

C for g, in early use and as abbreviation,
1. a and n.; for qu, 6. a, b; quantity of final syllables ending in, 604. j.
caedēs, decl., 78. 2.
caedēs, decl., 121. a. 4.
caelum, w. masc. plur., 106. b.
Caere, decl., 76. b. N. 2.
cæsius, compar., 131. a.
Cesura, 611. b; masc. and fem., 615. c. n.
bucolic cesura, id.
Calendar, Roman, 631.
Calends, 631. a.
caix, decl., 103. g. 2.
campester, decl., 115. a.
Can, how expressed in Lat., 157. b.
canâlis, decl., 76. b. 2.
cap, root, 56. a.
Capacity, measures of, 638.
capitis, genitive, w. verbs of accusing, 352. a.
caput, decl., 59.
Capys, decl., 82.
Cardinal numbers, 132; inflection of, 134.
a-c; use of et with, 135. a, b; replaced by distributives, 137. b, d; w. ex or partitive genitive, 346. c.
cāre, compar., 218.
carō, decl., 79.
cārus, compar., 124.
Case-constructions, 338.
Case-endings, 27. a; final vowels in, 38. g; table, 39.
Case-forms, words defective in, 103.
Cases, defined, 35; position of modifying case, 598. 2; agreement in, 281; origin and meaning of, 338; case of rel. pron., 305, 306. a; same case after as before certain conjs., 323. a.
Construction of Cases, 338-435; Genitive, 342-359; Dative, 360-380; Accusative, 386-397; Vocative, 340; Ablative, 398-420; time and place, 422-431; cases w. preps., 220, 426. ftm.
cassem, decl., 103. f. 3.
castrum, castra, 107.
Catalectic verse, 612. a.
causā, w. gen., 359. b, 404. c; w. gen. of gerund, 504. b.
Causal clauses, 539, 540; w. indic. or subjv., quod, quia, 540; w. indic. quantam, quando, 540. a; w. qui, 535. e; w. cum, 540. d; non qua, non quod, etc., in the denial of a reason, 540. n. 2; causal clause replaced by part., 496; by abl. abs., 420. 2.
Causal conjunctions, 223. a. 3, b. 7, 222. II.
f'; particles, 539, 540.
Cause, abl. of, 404.
Cause, advs. of, 217. c.
Caution and effort, verbs of, constr., 563. e.
cave, in prohibitions, 450 (2) and N. 2; nē omitted after, 565. n. 1.
caveō, constr., 563.
-ce, enclitic, 146. N. 1 and a. N. 1.
Cesing, verbs of, w. complem. inf., 456.
cēdō, constr., 306. N. 2.
celebrer, decl., 115. a.
celer, forms, 115. a. N. 2.
cēlō, w. acc., 396. c.
Celtiber, decl., 60. c.
cēnsē, constr., 563 and d.
certē, certō, use, 322. c; in answers, 336. a.
cētē, Greek plur., 48. a. N.
cētera, 111. b; adverbal use, 390. d. N. 2.
-us, use, 293; -i, use, 315.
ceu, use, 524.
-ceus, adj. ending, 247.
Characteristic, clauses of, 534, 535; proviso, 535. d; cause or concession, id. e; of result or characteristic, 559.
Characteristic, expr. by participle, 496.
Characteristic vowel, 37.
Charge and penalty, gen. of, 352.
Chiasmus, 558. f and n.
Choriambic trimeter, 618. c.
Choosing, vbs. of, w. two accs., 393.
Choriambic verse, 624. N.
Choriambus, 609. c.
ci and ti, interchange of, 6. N. 1
-cinimum, noun ending, 241. c.
-ciō, diminutive ending, 243. a.
cip-, stems in, decl. III, 56. a.
circā, circum, circiter, use, 220. a, 221. 5-7; as advs., 433. 2.
circā, w. gerund, 506. N. 1.
circum, compounds w. vbs., 267. a; dat. w. such comps., 370; acc., 388. b.
circumdo, constr., 364.
Circumstances of action, 419, 420. 5; participle implying, 496.
cis, citerior, 130. a.
Cities, gend. of names of, 32 and a. See Locative.
citrā, after its noun, 435.
clādes, decl., 78. 2.
clam, constr., 432. d.
Classes, names of, gend. of, 30. a. n. 3; used in plur., 101. 3.
Clauses, defined, kinds of, 278, 279; replaced by abl. abs., 420; used as nouns, 343. c; dependent, syntax of, 519-593; conditional rel., 279. c, 519; final, 279. d, 529-553; consecutive, 536, 537; causal, 533, 540; temporal, 543-550; substantive, 562-588; infinitive clauses, 452, 562. n.; substantive clauses of purpose, 563; of result, 567, 568; indic. w. quod, 572; indirect questions, 573-575; ind. disc., 578-593.
clāvis, decl., 76. b. 1.
Close syllables, 7. n. 2.
coepī, 205.
Cognōmen, 108.
Collective noun with sing. or plur. vb., 317. d.
cōlus, gend., 90; decl., 105. a.
com- (con-), compounded w. vb., 16, 267. a; such may take dat., 370.
Combinations of words, 13.
comētēs, decl., 44.
comitium, comitia, 107.
Command, see Imperative; in hortatory subjv., 439.
Commanding, vbs. of, w. dat., 367; w. inf., 563. a; w. subjv., 563 (cf. 580. a).
Commands, expressed by inv., 448; for condition, 521. b; in ind. disc., 588; in informal ind. disc., 592. 1.
commiserō, w. acc., 354. a. n.
committō ut, 568 and n. 1.
Common gender, 34; adjs. of, 122. d.
Common syllables, 11. c, 603. f.
commonefaciō, -fīō, constr., 351.
commoneō, constr., 351.
commūnis, w. gen., 385. c.
committō, constr., 417. b.
Comparative conjunctions, 223. b. 2, 224. II. b; in conditions, 524.
Comparative suffix, 214. ftn.; of advs., 214. b. n.
Comparatives, decl., 120; stem, id. b; neut. sing. of compar. adj. used as adv., 218; meaning of, 291; two comparatives, 292; compar. and positive w. quam, id. a. n.; abl. w. compar., 406; quam w. compar., 407. a; compar. w. quam (ut), quam qui, 535. c, 571. a.
Comparison, conjunctions of, 323. a.
Comparison, particles of, tamquam, quasi, etc., constr., 524.
Comparison of adjs., 123 ff.; irregular, 129; defective, 130, 131; w. magis and maximē, 128; of advs., 218; prepositions implying w. quam, 407. e. n., 434.
Complementary infinitive, 456; has no subject, id. n.; pred. noun or adj. after, 458; inf. partly subject, partly complementary, 454; by analogy, 457. a.
compleō, constr., 356, 409. n.
Completed action, tenses of, 160. b; how formed, 179. f, g; use of, 473 ff.
Complex conditional sentences, 523.
Complex sentence, 278. b.
complūres, complūria, 120. c.
compos, decl., 121. a. 4, b. 1.
Composition, all word-formation a process of, 227; comp. to express relations of words, 338, 386. See Comp. words.
Compound sentence, defined, 278. 2.
Compound stems, imaginary, 255. a.
Compound suffixes, 233. 2, 235.
Compound verbs, 267; comps. of faciō, 204. a, b.
Compound words, assimilation in, 15. 6, 16; defined, 264; how formed, 265-267.
Compounds of prep.s, w. dat., 370; of ab, aē, ex, 381; w. acc., 388. b, 395; quantity of, 606. c.
con-; see comp-.
Conative present, 467; imperfect, 471. c. concēdo, constr., 563 and c.
Concession, hortatory subjv. of, 440 (cf. 526); particles of, 527; quamvis, ut, 527. a; licet, id. b; etsi etc., id. c; cum, 549; quamquam, 527. d, e; quamvis, w. indicative, 527. e; vbs. of, w. ut, 527. f; abl. abs. for concessive clause, 420. 3; concession implied in part., 490; qui concessive, 535. e.
Concessive clauses, see Concession.
Concessive conjunctions, 223. b. 3, 224. II. c; particles, use of, 527.
Conclusion, see Apodosis.
Concords, the four, 280.
concors, decl., 119, 121. a. 3.
Condemning, vbs. of, constr., 352.
Conditional clauses, defined, 279. c.
Conditional conjunctions, 223. b. 1, 224. II. a. 525.
ConditionalParticles, 524, 525.
Conditional sentences, defined, 279. c; development, 511; protasis and apodosis, 512; classification, 514; Present and Past, nothing implied, 515; Future conditions, 516; fut. more vivid, id. 2. a; fut. less vivid, id. 2. b; perf. indic. in fut. cond., id. e; Contrary to fact, 517; indic. in contrary to fact condition, id. b, cf. c and notes; in old Latin, id. e. n. 2; General condition, 518; condition disguised, 521; as part. etc., id. a; as exhortation or command, id. b; protasis omitted, 522; Potential Subjv., 446; Subjv. of Modesty, 447. 1; vbs. of necessity etc., 522. a; complex conditions, 523; clauses of Comparison (concession omitted), 524; Concessive
INDEX OF WORDS AND SUBJECTS

p. 34. fttn.; decl. IV, 92. f.; medi, tēd, 143. a. n.; sēd, 144. b. n. 2; in advs. originally -ēd, 214. a. n.; -d as neut. pron. ending, 113. b; loss of -d, 398.
Dactyl, 609. b; cyclic, id. e.
Dactylic verse, 613; hexameter, 615; elegiac stanza, 616; other forms, 617.
-adam, adverbial ending, 215. 6.
dāmās, indecl. adj., 122. b.
daps, defect., 103. h. 2.
Daring, vbs. of, w. compl. inf., 456.
Dates, how expressed, 424. f., 631.
Dative defined, 35. c; in -āi, decl. I, 43. a; in -ābus, decl. I, id. e; in -is for -īs, decl. II, 49. f; in -ubus, decl. IV, 92. c; in -ī (of unus etc.), 113.
Dative, Syntax, 360-385. Indirect object, 361; w. transitives, 362; w. vbs. implying motion, 363; use of dōnō etc., 364; in pass., 365; w. intransitives, 366; w. phrases, id. a; like gen., id. b; w. intransitives, verbs meaning favor etc., 367; similar vbs. w. acc. id. a; vbs. having dat. or acc., id. b, c; w. verbal nouns, id. d; w. libet and licet, 388. 1; w. comp. of satis, bene, male, id. 2; poetic use, id. a; intrans. vbs. w. acc. and dat., 399; w. comp. of prep. ad, ante, etc., 370; w. passive used impersonally, 372. Of Possession, 373; w. nōmen est, id. a; w. dēsum and absam, id. b. Of the Agent, 374, 375. Of Reference, 376, 377; of the person judging, 378; used idiomatically, 379; ethical dat., 380. Of Separation, 381. Of Purpose, 382; w. adjs. and advs., 383; w. adjs. of fitness etc., 384, 385; gen. or dat. w. similis, 385. c. 2. With words of contention (poetic), 413. b. n. Of End of Motion, 428. h; w. infin., 455. 1. dat. of gerund, 505. a.
Dativus commodi aut incommodi, 376.
dē, use, 220. b, 221. 10; in comp. w. vbs., 267. a; in comp. w. vbs., w. dat., 381. in comp. w. vbs., w. abl., 402; w. abl. instead of part. gen., 346. c; w. vbs. of reminding, 351. x.; w. abl. to denote the crime, 353. 2; w. place from which, 426. 1; position of dē, 435; dē w. abl. of gerund, 507.
dea, decl., 43. e.
dēēō, in apod., 517. c.
dēbūt, w. pres. inf., 486. a; w. perf. inf., id. b.
dēcernō, constr., 563. d and x. 2.
decet, w. acc., 388. c; w. dat., id. n. 3; in apod., 517. c.
Declarative sentence, 269. a; how expressed in ind. disc., 580.
Decreeing, vbs. of, 563. d.
dēdi, quantity of penult, 605. Exc.
Defective adjectives, 111. b, 122. c.
Defective comparison, 130.
Defective nouns, 99–103; of decl. IV, 94. c; of decl. V, 98. a.
Defective verbs, 205–206.
dēficō, constr., 367. a.
Definite perfect, 161. 1, 473; sequence of, 485. a.
dēfinit, 204. c.
dēgener, 119. n., 121. a. 3.
Degree, adverbs of, 217. c.
Degree of difference, abl. of, 414; distance expressed by, 425. b.
Degrees of Comparison, 123.
dēinde, dēnique, in enumerations, 322. d. n.
dēlectat, constr., 388. c.
dēlectō, w. acc., 367. a.
dēlector, w. abl., 431.
Deliberative subjunctive, 443, 444; in indir. questions, 575. b; in indir. disc., 587.
dēlicium, -ea, -iae, 106. b.
Delivering, vbs. of, w. gerundive, 500. 4.
dēlos, decl., 52.
delphín, decl., 83. a.
-dam, adverbial ending, 215. 6.
Demanding, vbs. of, w. gerundive, 500. 4.
Demonstrative adverbs, as correlatives, 323. g; equivalent to demonstr. pron. w. prep., 321. a. Position, 598. b.
Demonstrative pronouns, 146; decl., id.; formation, id. n. 1. Syntax, 206-208; of 1st person, 297. a; of 2d pers., id. c; of 3d pers., id. b; supply place of pers. prons. of 3d pers., 295. c; in relative clause, 308. d. n. Position, 598. b.
dēnarius, value of, 632.
Denominative verbs, 258–262.
Dependent clauses, subj. used in, 438. b.
Deponent verbs defined, 156. b; how conjugated, 190; paradigms, id.; participles, id. a; fut. inf., id. c; used reflexively, id. e; in passive sense, id. f; list of irregular deponent verbs, 191; defective deponents, id. a; semi-deponents, 192.
Depriving, constr. w. vbs. of, 401.
Derivation of words, 227-267.
Derivative forms of nouns, 236–241; of adj., 242–255; of vbs., 258–263.
Derivative verbs, defined, 257.
Derivatives, quantity of, 606.
-dēs, nouns in, 244.
Description, imperfect used in, 471. a.
Description implied in part., 496.
INDEX OF WORDS AND SUBJECTS

-ēius, adj. ending, 249; in prosody, 11. d, 603. f, n. 2.
-ēius, names in, decl., 49. f.
ĕiusmodi, 146. b, 345. a.
Electra, decl., 44.
Elegiac stanza, 616.
-ēlis, adj. ending, 248.
Elision, 612. e.
Ellipsis, 640.
ellen etc., 146. a. n. 2.
-ēlus, diminutive ending, 243.
ētiūs, decl., 98. a.
ēm, combined w. prons. (ellum etc.), 146.
a. n. 2.
Emphasis, 597.
ēn- (ơn-, ōn-), primary suffix, 234. II. 13.
Enclitics, accent, 12. a; quantity, 604. a.
1; cum, 143. f, 150. b, d; -met, -te, -pte, 143. d and N.; -pse, 146. n. 7, 8; -ce, id.
a. n. 1; -que, see under that word.
End of motion, acc. of, 426. 2; w. vbs. that also take dat., 303; dat. of, 428. h; two or more places as end of motion, 428. j.
Endings, signification of, 235-263; endings of verb, 165. 2, 160. See Personal endings, and Terminations.
English method of pronunciation, 8. n.
English words cognate with Lat., 18, 19.
enim, use, 324. h; position, 324. j, 599. b.
-ēnimus (or -ēnimus), numeral adj. ending, 133. n. 1.
-ēnisis, gentile ending, 249.
Enumeration, primum ... deinde, 322. d. n.
-ēnus, adj. ending, 249.
Envy, vbs. of, w. dat., 367.
éō, used w. supine in -um, 428. i, 509. n. 1.
éō, used w. quō, 414. a; w. compar., id.; approaching abl. of cause, id. n.
éō cōnsiliō ut, 531. 1. n. 1.
Epicedic nouns, 34. n.
Epistolary tenses, 479.
epitomē, decl., 44.
epulum, plur. -ae, 106. b.
equester, decl., 115. a.
equidem, 322. f. n.
er- forēs-, primary suffix, 234. II. 17.
er-, stem-ending, 63. Exc. 2.
er- nom. ending, decl. II, 45-47; decl. III, 61. 4, 65. a; gend., 85; er, adj. in, 111, 112, 115; compar. of these, 125.
ergā, w. acc. after adj., 385. b.
ergō, use, 324. 2; w. gen., 359. b.
erim, -ēro, as tense-ending, 169. c, d.
ermus, adj. ending, 250.
eros, noun stems in, decl. II, 50; ēro-, adj. stems in, 111. a. n.
es, root of esse, 15. 4; 170. b. n.
es- (ēs-), primary suffix, 234. II. 17.
-ēs, in nom. plur. of Greek nouns, 81. 4; gend. of nouns in, 85.
-ēs, gen. of Greek nouns in, decl. II, 52. a; gen. ending, decl. V, 98. n.
-ēs, list of nouns in, p. 30. ftn. 2; gend., 86; formation, 238. a.
esse, conj., 170; forms of, in other languages, id. b. n.; compounds of, 198; case after, 284; dat. of poss. w., 373; future part. w. (first periphr. conj.), 698. a, b; position of forms of, 938. c, j.
est, united with other words, 13. n.; est qui etc., 535. a; est cum, 535. a. n. 3; est ut, 569. 3.
Estemeing, vbs. of, constr., 393.
-ester (ēstrius), adj. ending, 250; a noun-ending, 254. 11.
estur, ēsītur, pass. forms of edō, 201. a.
et, use, 324. a; et ... et, 323. e; et repeated or omitted, 323. c.
et-, -que, or atque translated but, 324. d. n. etemim, use, 324. h, k.
Ethical dative, 380.
etiam, use, 322. a; in answers, 336. a. 1.
etiam si, concessive, 527. c.
eti, use, 327. c.
-ētum, noun ending, 254. 8.
-eus, Greek names in, 52. e; -eus, patronymic ending, 244; adj. ending, 247, 249, 254, 10.
ēvenit ut, 568. ftn. 2.
ex (ē), 220. b; use, 221. 11; in compounds, 267. a, 402; abl. w., instead of part.
gen., 346. c; in vbs. w. dat., 381; w. prons. etc., 403. a. n. 1; to express place from which, 426. 1; expressing position, 429. b; after its noun, 435; w. abl. of gerund, 507.
exclēsio, w. dat., 368. 3.
Exchanging, vbs. of, 417. b.
Exclamation, form of, 333. n.; nom. in, 339. a; acc. in, 397. d; w. infinit., 462.
Exclamatory questions, 462. a.
Exclamatory sentences, 269. c; nom. in, 339. a; gen. in, 359. a; acc. in, 397. d.
Existence, general expressions of, 535. a.
exēlēx, defect., 122. c.
Expecting, hoping etc., vbs. of, w. ind.
disc., 580. c; w. complem. inf., id. n.
expēnsum, 496. n. 4.
exsiūiō, w. abl., 404. a.
expēs, defect., 122. c.
exsiūtō, w. abl., 404. a.
exter, use, 130. b.
exterior, 130. b.
extrēmus, form, 130. a. ftn. 2.
exuē, constr., 364.
F, original sound of, 1. b. n.
faber, decl., 112. a.
fac, inv., 182, 204; fac (ut), w. subj., 449. c; fac né, in prohibition, 450. n. 2.
faciēs, decl., 98. a.
INDEX OF WORDS AND SUBJECTS

facialis, compar., 126; w. supine, 510. n. 2.
faciō, accent of comps. of, 12. a. Exc.;
forms of, omitted, 319. a; w. abl., 403.
c; w. names of authors, 497. d. N.;
cacere ut, 508. n. 1.
Factitive acc., 386; verbs, 273. n. 1.
-factō, in compounds, 260. a.
aenebris, decl., 115. n. 1.
taex, decl., 103. g. 2.
tallit, w. acc., 388. c.
taisus, compar., 131. a.
tamēs, abl. of, 76. b. n. 1, 98. d.
familyāris, decl., 76. b. 2.
familiae, in pater familias etc., 43. b.
fās, indecl., 103. a; w. supine in -510.
faux, decl., 101. n. 1, 103. f. 4.
Favor, vbs. of, 367.
faux, decl., 103. g. 2.
Fearing, vbs. of, w. inf., 456; w. nē, nē
nōn ut, 564.
febris, decl., 75. b, 76. b. 1.
Feeling, nouns of, w. gen., 348; impersonal
vbs. of, 208. b, 354. b; animā w.
vbs. and adjvs. of, 338; gen. w. vbs.
of, 354; acc. w. vbs. of, 388. a; quod-
clause w. vbs. of, 572. b.
Feet in Prosody, 608-610.
fēlix, compar., 124.
Feminine, rule for gend., 32.
femur, decl., 105. g.
ifer, comps. of, 50; decl. 111. a.
fer, imperative, 182.
ferō, conj., 200; acceptum (expensum) ferre,
496. n. 4; comps. of, 200. a.
ferre, ferrem, for ĕferse etc., p. 110. ftm. 3.
Festivals, plural names of, 101. 2; in -alia,
254. 7.
-ficus, adjvs. in, comparison of, 127. a.
fidēs, decl., 96.
fidō (coniōdō), semi-deponent, 192; w. dat.,
367; w. abl., 431.
fidus, compar., 131. a.
ferī, constr. w. abl., 403. c.
Fifth Declension, 95-97.
Figura etymologica, 598. m.
filia, decl., 43. e; finius, voc., 49. c.
Filling, words of, w. abl., 409. a; w. gen.,
id. N.
Final Clauses, defined, 279. d; constr. of,
530-532; as subst. clauses, 563.
Final conjunctions, 223. b. 6, 224. II. e.
Final syllables, rules of quantity, 604;
vowels, id. a-h.
finis, decl., 76. b.
Finite verb, defined, 154. N.; subj of.
339.
fiō, conj., 204; in compounds, id. b; defective
compounds of, id. c; quantity of i in, 603. a. 3.
First Conjugation, prin. parts, 173; pres.
stem, how formed, 176. a; formation,
179. a, 259; paradigms, 184; vbs. of,
200; vbs. of, how formed, 239.
First Declension, 40-42.
fixus, as pres. part., 491.
fit ut, 568. ftm. 2, 569. 2.
Fitness, adjvs. of, w. dat., 384, 385. a.
fitō, constr., 503.
fici, gen. of value, 417. a.
Fou, when expressed by prō, 379. N.
forās, 103. c. 4, 215. 3.
fore, 170. a; perf. part. w., 164. c. N.; fore
ut, 509. a.
forem, 170. a.
forēs, plur. only, 101. 4, 103. c. 4.
Forgetting, vbs. of, 350; w. inf., 456.
foris (locative), 103. c. 4, 215. 4, 427. a.
Formation of words, 227-267.
Forms of the verb, 180 ff.
forte, forte, 103. c. 1.
forō, 447. b. N.
forstian (for sit an), 216. N.; w. subjv.,
447. a.
fortasse, 447. b.
Fourth Conjugation, prin. parts, 173;
pres. stem, how formed, 176. a, 179. d;
paradigm, 187; list of vbs., 212; vbs.
how formed, 262.
Fourth Declension, 88-94.
Fractional expressions, 135. e, 637.
frāus, decl., 71. 6.
Freedom, adjvs. of, w. abl., 402. a; vbs.
of, 401.
French, derivations through, 19. N. 2.
Frequentative verbs, 263. 2.
frētus, w. abl., 431. a.
Fricatives, 4. 5.
frūgī, defect. noun, 103. f. 1; as adj., 122.
b; compar., 129; constr., 382. i. N. 2.
frūr, fungor, w. abl., 410; w. acc., id. a.
n. 1; gerundive, 503. n. 2.
fugīt, w. acc., 388. c.
fru, derivation of, 170. b. N.
Fulness, adjvs. of, 349. a.
frēnebris, decl., 115. N. 1.
fungor, see fruor.
Future conditions, 516; in ind. disc.,
589. a.
Future tense, use, 472; of inf. pass.,
how formed, 203. a; of invm., 449; ind.
for invm., id. b; in indirect questions,
575.
Future Infinitive, how formed, 164. 3.
b, c, 193. n.; expressed with fore or
futūrum esse, 569. a; (rarely) in con-
trary to fact conditions in ind. disc.,
589. b. N. 3.
Future Participle, use, 158. b, 489, 498,
517. d; fut. pass. part., 500.
Future Perfect tense, suffix of, 169. c;
use of, 478; represented in subjv., 484.
c; in conditions, 516. c.
INDEX OF WORDS AND SUBJECTS

futūrum esse ut, see fore ut; futūrumuisse
ut, 589. b. 3 and n. 2.
Futūrum in praerētō, 511. ftn. 1.

G (the character), 1. a and n.
Games, plur. names of, 101. 2.
gaudē, conj., 192; w. abl., 431; w. quod or ind. disc., 572. b.
Gems, gend. of, 32 and b. 48. Exc.
Gender, kinds of, 30; general rules for,
31–34; common, epicene, 34; change
of gend., p. 18. ftn.; nouns, decl. I,
gend., 42; decl. II, 48; nouns, decl. III,
gend. according to endings, 84–87; of
nouns, decl. IV, 90, 91; decl. V, 97;
Syntax: agreement in gend., 280; of
appositives, 282. c; of adjs., 286; adjs.
w. nouns of different genders, 287 (cf.
299. c); of rel., 306. b.
General conditions, defined, 513. 2; constr.
of, 518; relatives in, 520.
General truths after past tense (in
sequence of tenses), 485. d; in pres.,
465; in general condition, 518. a.

Genitive, defined, 33. b; terminations of,
37; plur. in -um, 38. f; gen. in -ā and
-ās, decl. I, 43. a, b; in -i for -ii,
dec. II, 49. b; in -i of proper nouns of
dec. III, 52. a; gen. plur. in -um (-om),
for -um, 49, 49. d; -um for -ium, dec. III,
78; -ēs for -is, 81. 1; gen. plur. in -um,
92. b; in -i or -ē for -ā, dec. V, 98. n.;
gen. plur. wanting, 103. g. 2; of adjs. in
-ius, 113; gen. plur. in -iam or -um, 121. b.

Genitive, Syntax, 342-356; general use,
342. Subjective gen., 343. N. 1. Posses-
sive gen., 343; in app. w. poss. pron.,
302. e; compared w. dat., 373. N. gen.
in predicate, 343. b, c; gen. of adj.
for neut. nom., 343. c. N. 1; gen. of sub-
stance or material, 344; for app., 343.
d.; gen. of quality, 345. Partitive, 346.
Objective, 347 ff.; w. adj., 349, 383.
c; w. vbs. of memory, 350; charge and
penalty, 352; of feeling, 354; w.
impers., misericet etc., 354. b; w. réfert
and interest, 355; of plenty and want,
356; of exclamation, 359. a; w. potior,
357. a; w. other vbs., id. b; w. egeō
and indegē, 356. N.; gen. for abl., id.; gen.
replaced by dat., 360. b; of value, 417;
gen. of gerundive, 504.

Genius, voc. of, 49. c.
Genēs, or family, names, 108.
Genitive adjectives, 244.
genēlis, 76. a. 2.
genū, decl., 89; gend., 91.
genus, decl., 64.
-gen, compounds of, 50; decl., 111. a.
Gerund, form, 155. b; meaning, 159. a;
gerundive used instead, 503. Syntax,
502–507; gen. of, 504; w. direct obj.,
id. a; pred. use, purpose, id. a. N. 1; w.
obj.: gen., id. c; dat. of, 505; in law
phrases etc., id. b; acc. of, 506 and N. 1;
abl. of, 507; gerund coordinated w.
nominal constr. and in app., 503. a.
Gerundive, meaning and form, 155. a and
ftn. 3, 158. d; in -endus or -undus, p. 89.
ftn. 1; of dep. vbs., 190. d; use as part.
or adj., 500; of útor, id. 3; to denote
purpose after certain vbs., id. 4; used for
gerund, 503. Gerundive constructions in
cases, gen., 504; dat., 505; acc., 506;
abl., 507. Impersonal w. esse, w. acc.,
500. 3.
gibber, decl., 111. a.
gin-, stem-ending, 61. 2.
Giving, vbs. of, w. gerundive, 500. 4.
glaber, decl., 112. a.
glaciēs, decl., 98. a.
glis, decl., 71. 6.
glōriō, w. abl., 431.
Glyconic verse, 623. 1, 624, 625. 1, 12.
Gnomic perfect, 475.
-gō, nouns in, from stem gin-, 61. 2;
gend., 86.
grāculis, decl., 122. a; compar, 126.
Grammar, hw developed, 288.
Grammatical gender, 30. b.
grātiā, w. gen., 359. b, 404. c; w. gen.
of gerund, 533.
grātificōr, w. dat., 368. 3.
grātulor, w. dat., id.
Greek accusative (synecdochical), 397. b.
Greek forms compared w. Latin, pp. 13,
14, 19, 26, 53, 53, 76, 80, 83, 126, 142,
143, 150, 153.

Greek nouns, decl. I, 44; decl. II, 52;
dec. III, 81, 82, 83.
Greek proper names, quantity of, 603. 4.
Groups of words, conjunctions w., 323. c.
grūs, decl., 79. a.
Guilt, adjs. of, w. gen., 349. a.

H (breathing), 4; omitted in spelling,
6. d. N. 2; in prosody, 603. a, 612. e.
hābēō, w. infinitive, 460. a; w. perfect
participle, 497. b; future imperative
habēō in sense of consider, 449. a.
habīlis, w. dat. of gerund etc., 505. a. ftn.
Hadria, gen., 42. Exc.
haec for hae, 146. N. 2.
haereō, w. abl., 388. 3. N.
Happenings, vbs. of, constr., 569. 2.
Have, perf. w., origin, 497. b. ftn.
havē (avē), defective verb, 206. g.
Having, vbs. of, w. gerund., 500. 4.
hebēs, decl., 80. a; compar., 124.
Help, vbs. of, w. dat., 367.
ILLUS, diminutive ending, 243.

ILLÆSTRIS, decl., 115. n. 1.

-IM, acc. ending, decl. III, 73-76.

-I.M, in pres. subjv., 183. 2.

IMBER, decl., 66, 67, 76. b.

IMMÆNE QUANTUM, 575. d.

IMMÆ, how used, 329.

Imperative mood, 154. b; how used, 157. c; terminations, 163. b, 179. e; ÆC, ÆC, ÆC, cer, ter, 182; some vbs. used chiefly in, 206. g; w. Iam dudum, 406. n. 2; in commands, 448; 3d pers., 448. a; forms in ind. disc., 588; fut., 449 and a; various periphrases for inv., 449, c; imperative as protaosis, 521. b.

Imperative Sentence, 269. d.

Imperfect tense, defined, 160. a, 471; use, 470; in descriptions, id. a; w. Iam ÆC etc., id. b; inceptive and conative, id. c; w. Iam, id. n.; of surprise, id. d; in dialogue, id. e; = could, etc., id. f; epistolary, 479 and n.; represented by perf. subjv., 485. b. 3; imperf. subjv., sequence, id. g, h, 584. a and n.

IMPERÔ, constr., 565.

Impersonal construction of pass. w. infin. clause, 566. b, 582 and a.

Impersonal verbs, synopsis of, 207; classified, 208; passive of intransitives, id. d, 372; impersonals, miseric etc., w. gen., 354. b; libet, licet, w. dat., 368. 1; acc. w. dEct etc., 388. c.

IMPERTIÔ, constr., 364.

Impetrô, constr., 563, 568. ftn. 2.

IMPETUS, defect., 103. d.

IMPLEÔ, constr., 409. a. n.

IMPLICÔ, constr., 364.

IMPONÔ, constr., 430.

IMUS, 130. a. n. 2.

ÎN, neg. prefix, 267. d. 1.

ÎN, stem-ending, 61. 2; ÎN, 83. a.

ÎN, prep., use, 220. c, 221. 12; comp. w. vbss., 267. a; in, w. acc. or abl., 259. e (cf. 430); w. acc., penalty, 353.2. n.; vbs. comp. with, w. dat., 370; in w. acc., w. adj., 385. b; in citations, 428. d. n. 2; place where, 426. 3; in idioms of time, 424. e; w. abl. of gerund, 507.

Inceptive or Inchoative verbs, 263. 1.

Inclination, adjss. of, constr., 384, 385. b.

Inclusus, compar., 131. a.

Incomplete action, tenses of. See Continued action.

Indecinable nouns, gender of, 33; list of, 103. a; adjectives, 122. b.

Indefinite antecedent, relative with, w. subjv., 535. a and n. 2.

Indefinite pronouns, decl., 148-151. Syntax, 309-315; indefinite relative may introduce conditional clause, 512. n., 519.

Indefinite subject omitted, 318. b; use of 2d person for, 439. a; in general conditions, 518. a; licet clarum fieri, 463. n. Indefinite value, 417 and a.

Indicative mood, 154. b; how used, 157. a, 437; for Eng. subjv., id. a; in apod. of conditions contrary to fact, 517. b, e, 522. a; in causal clauses, 540; in clause with quo, 572; in deliberative questions, 444. a. n.

Indigê, w. gen., 356. n.

Indignus, w. abl., 418. b; w. qui and subjv., 555. f.

Indirect discourse, origin etc., 577; list of verbs that take ind. disc., 579, ftn.; direct and indir. quotation, 578.

Moods in ind. disc., 580; verb of saying implied, id. a. Subj. acc., 580. Subord. clause when explanatory, 583; clauses w. rel. which is equivalent to demonstr., id. b. Tenses of inf. in ind. disc., 584; tenses of subjv., 585; subjv. depending on perf. inf., id. a; pres. and perf. after secondary tense (repræsentáti, id. b. Conditional sentences in ind. disc., 589; questions, 586; deliberative subjv., 587; commands, 588; prohibition, id. n. 2. Informal ind. disc., 591. 1, 592.


Indirect Questions, defined, 330, 331; Syntax, 331. n., 332. b. n., 573-575; fut. tense in, 575. a; deliberative subjv. in, id. b; indic. in (early Lat.), id. c; num in, 332. b. n.

Indirect quotation, 578.

Indirect reflexive, 300. 2 and b.

Indo-European, 14, 18, 19.

Indùcô, w. names of authors, 497. d. n.

Indùö, double constr. of, 364.

Ineô, constr., 370. b.

Ineptus, constr., 505. a. ftn.

Inermis or -us, 122. a.

Infera, defect., 111. b, cf. p. 56. ftn. 2; compar., 130. b.

Inferi, meaning in plur., 130. b.

Inferior, comparison, 130. b.

Infinite Clauses, as subj. or obj. 452; w. pass. vbs., 582 and a. See also Indirect discourse. Cf. also 459.

INFINITIVE MOOD, 154. b and ftn.; tenses of, 164. 3. b, 486; how used, 157. d; pass. in -ier, 183. 4; fut. inf. of deponents, 190. c; subject in acc., 397. e.

INFINITIVE MOOD, Syntax, 451-463; used as subj., 452; complementary inf., 456; vbs. having subjv. or inf., 457 (cf. 563); inf. for obj. clause, 563. n.; w. subject acc., 459; case of predicate noun, 581 and n. 2; inf. of purpose, 460; w. adjss. in poetry, 461; of result, id. a;
as pure noun, id. b; in exclamations, 462 (sequence, 482 n.). Historical inf., 463. Tenses of inf., 486; perf. instead of pres., id. a, e; fore ut etc., for fut. inf., 569. a. Inf. in ind. disc., 579; tenses, 584.

Infinitive used as noun, gender, 33; w. gen., 343. c. (See also Infinitive Mood, Syntax.)

infiāns, defect., 103. b. 6; use, 428. i.

Inflection, defined, 21; terminations of, id. b; how modified, 28; of decl. and conj., 22.

Influence, vbs. of, w. ut-clause, 563.

Informal Indirect Discourse, 591, 592.

infrā, use, 220. a, 221. 13.

ingenās, decl., 121. a. 3; compar., 131. b.

inīriās, as abl. of manner, 412. b.

inīssūs, defect., 94. c.

inops, decl., 121. a. 3, b. 1.

inquam, inquit, 206. b; position of, 599. c.

Inseparable particles, 257. b.

Insertion of consonants (p in sūmpē), 15, 11, 639.

insidiae, dat. w., 367. d.

inspergo, constr., 364.

instar, indecl., 103. a; w. gen., 359. b.

instant, constr., 563.

Instrument, abl. of, 409.

Instrumental case, 35. n. (cf. 338, 398); as adv., 215. 4; source of several abl. constructions, 408.

insulam, ad, 428. a.

integer, decl., 112. a.

Integral part, subj. of, 591, 593.

integral est ut, 565.

Intensive pronoun, 146. n. 7, 8, 298. c-f.

Intensive vbs., 263. 2 and b.

inter, use, 220. a, 221. 14; in comp., 267. a; vbs. comp. w., 370; position, 435; inter sē (reciprocal), 146. c, 301. f; inter sēcrūs (reciprocals), 353. 2; inter, w. gerund, 506 and n. 1.

interclādio, constr., 364 and n. 2.

interduct, constr., 364. n. 1.

interest, constr., 355; w. ad, id. b; how to express degree of interest, id. n. 2.

interior, compar., 130. a.

Interjections, defined, 20; list, 226; w. dat., 379. a.

Interlocked order of words, 598. h.

Intermediate clauses, Syntax of, 591–593.

Interrogative advs., use, 333; position, 598. b.

Interrogative particles, list of, 217. d; use, 331–333.

Interrogative pronouns, 148–151; use, 333; position, 598. b.

Interrogative sentences, 269. b; forms of, 330–336.

intrā (interior), 130. a; derivation, 215. 4.

Intransitive verbs, 273. 2, 274. n.; used impersonally in pass., 208. d; dat. w., 366 f; used transitively, w. acc. and dat., 369 (cf. 388. a. n.); w. cognate acc., 390; having passive sense, w. ab, 405. a. -inus, adj. ending, 249.

inūtillus, w. dat. of gerund etc., 505. a.

invictus, compar., 131. a.

invitus, compar., 131. a.

-iō, noun ending, 238. b; gender, 86.

-iō, vbs. in, conj. III, 176. b. 2; forms of, 179. c, e; paradigm, 188; conj. IV, 179. d; derivation, 262.

focus, plur. in -i or -a, 106. b.

Ionic measure, 609. c; verse, 626. 16.

ip-, stem-ending, 56. a.

ipse, formation, 146. n. 7, 8; decl., 146; use, 298. c; used instead of reflexive, 300. b.

irí, in fut. inf. pass., 203. a.

Ironic statement not different in form from question, 332. a. n.

Irrational measures, 609. e, 623. n.

-i,-i,-ii,-iii, dropped in perf., 181. b. n. 2.

i, is, decl., 146; use, 152, 297. d. e; used emphatically, 298. a; used instead of reflexive, 300. b.

-i, -s, nom. ending, genders, 86; -is, patro-ymic, 244.

-is, for -ius in decl. I, 43. e. n. 2; nom. and accomp. plur., decl. III, 77 (cf. 73); of adj., 117, 121. c; Greek nom. ending, 83. b.

-is, nouns in, see it-

Islands, names of, loc. use, 427. 3, 428. e; from which, 427. 1; to which, id. 2.

-isse, -issem, vb. ending, see 181. b.

-issō, vbs. ending in, 263. b.

iste, shortened to stē, 146. n. 5; decl., 146; use, 297. c.

istic, decl., 146. a.

It, as sign of Impersonals, 207. fnm.

-it as stem-ending, 58. b; decl., 78, 121. a. 4.

ita, corrl. with ut, 323. g; in answers, 336. a; ita ut, 537. 2. n. 2.

itau, accent, 12. a; compared with ergō, 324. i; used with ergō, id. k; position of, 599. b.

iter, stem of, 75. c.

Iterative subjunctive, 518. c.

Iterative verbs (-is,-itā,-isā), 263. 2.

-itā, vbs. in, 263. 2.

-itus, adj. ending, 246.

itubā, decl., 76. a. 3.

iubē, w. acc., 367. a; w. inf., 563. a; in pass., 563. c.

iucundus, constr., 510. n. 2.

iūgwm, defect., 103. d. 3; decl., 105. b.

measure, 636.

-iwm, gen. plur., decl. III, 74. a; of adj., 114. a, 117, 121. b.

-iwm, noun ending, 241. b.

iuungō, w. abl. or dat., 368. 3. n., 413. n.
INDEX OF WORDS AND SUBJECTS

Iuppiter, stem and decl., 79 and b; plural, 100. a; derivation, 266. c.
-ius, adjs. in gen., voc. of, 110. a; formation of adjs. in, 247, 272. n.
īus (broth), decl., 103. g. 1.
-ius, gen. sing. ending, 113; quantity, id. c, 603. a. Ēxc. 1.
iussā, defect., 94. c, 103. b. 5.
iūstā, w. compar., 406. a.
iuvat, w. acc., 388. c.
iuvenis, decl., 62. n. 3, 78. 1; masc. adj., 122. d; compar., 131. c.
iuvī, w. acc., 367. a.
iūxē, in perf., 211. d.
-ivus, verbal adj. ending, 251. n.
J (the character), 5 n. 1; Eng. sound, id. Julian Calendar, 630, 631. e.
K, supplanted by C, 1. a. n.
kalendarē, 631. a.
Kindred forms, Latin and English, 18, 19.
Kindred signification, acc. of, 390.
Knowing, vbs. of, w. acc. and inf., 459.
Knowledge, adjs. of, w. gen., 349. a.
kō-(kā)-, primary suffix, 234. II. 12.
L, nouns in -1, gend., 87; adj. stems in -1, 117. a.
Labials, 4. 2; stems, decl. III, 56 and a.
labbō, w. abl., 404. a.
lacus, decl., 89; dat. and abl. plur. in-ubus, 92. c.
lædō, w. acc., 367. a.
lætor, lætus, w. abl., 431.
lampas, decl., 82.
lateō, w. acc., 396. c.
lâtēt, w. acc., 388. c. n. 1.
lātīfundium, 265. 2.
lātus, part., derivation, 200. ftm. 2.
Learning, vbs. of, w. inf., 456.
Length, expressed by gen., 345. b.
-lēns, -lentus, adj. endings, 245.
lēō, decl., 62.
Letters, classification of, 1-5.
lēvis, decl., 116; compar., 124.
lēvēr, compar., 218.
līber, adj., decl., 50, 111. a.
Līber, decl., 50.
līberi, noun, 50, 101. 3.
lībet, impers., 208. c. n.; w. dat., 383. 1.
līcit, impers., synopsis, 207; use, 208. c. n.; w. dat., 383. 1; w. predicate dat., 455. 1; w. subjv., meaning although, 527. b; līcit eam, līcit mē ire, līcit mihi ire, 565 and n. 2.
Likeness, adjs. of, w. dat., 384; w. gen., 385. c.
Limiting word, meaning of, 276. b.
Linguals, 4. 3; stems in, decl. III, 58. a.

Liter, decl., 66.
Liquids, 3, 4; stems in, decl. III, 61-64.
-līs, adjs. in, compar., 126.
Litotes, 326. c.
-līum, noun ending, 241. c.
II, as stem ending, 62. n. 1.
lo- (lā-), primary suffix, 234. II. 10.
Locative abl., 426. 3; idiomatic use, 429. 3; adverbial forms, 215. 5.
Locative, defined, 35. h, p. 34. ftm. (cf. 360); in abl., 398, 421; of decl. I, 43. c; decl. II, 49. a; decl. III, 80; decl. IV (domī), 93. n. 1; decl. V, 98. b; as adv., 215. 5; w. abl. in apposition, 282. d; relative adv. used to refer to, 308. g; animi, 358; loc. used to express where, 426. 3; forms (domī etc.), 427. a.
lōcūb, abl. without prep., 429. 1.
lōcūb, vb., constr., 430.
lōcum capere, w. dat. of gerund etc., 505.
lōcus, plur. -i or -a, 106. b.
Logaedic Verses, 623-625.
Long and Short, see Quantity.
longius, without quam, 407. c.
līdicēr, decl., 112. a.
lūēs, defect., 103. d. 1.
lūx, decl., 103. g. 2.

M, final, elision of, 612. d. n., f; inserted in verb root, 176. c. 2.
-m, sign of acc., 338; omitted in inscriptions, 46. n. 1.
macer, decl., 112. a.
mactē virtūte, use and constr., 340. c and n.
magis, as sign of compar., 128; compus. of, w. quam, 434.
māgnī, gen. of value, 417.
māgnus, comparison, 129.
māiestātis, w. words of accusing etc., 352. a.
Main clause, defined, 278. b.
māior nātū, 131. c.
māiorēs, signification of, 101. 3 (cf. 102. 2), 291. c. n. 3.
Making, vbs. of, constr., 393.
male, compar., 218; compounds of, w. dat., 368. 2.
māžō, conj., 199.
malus, compar., 129.
māndo, constr., 563.
māne, defect. noun, 76. n. 1, 103 b. 5.
māneō, w. abl., 431.
Manner, advs. of, 217. c; abl. of, 412 and b; hard to distinguish from abl. of specification, 418. a. n; manner implied in participle, 496.
mānsūtūs, 266. c.
manus, decl., 89; gend., 90. Exc.
mare, decl., 76. a. 3, 78.
māri, loc., 427. a.
INDEX OF WORDS AND SUBJECTS

mas, decl., 71. 6.
Masculine, rule for gender, 31.
Masculine adj., 122. d.
Masculine castr., 615. c. n.
Material, adjectives denoting, 247; gen. of, 344; abl. of, 403 and b, c. d.
maximi, as sign of superl., 128.
May, how expressed in Latin, 157. b.
mi deus fides, 397. d. n. 2.
Means, nouns denoting, 239; abl. of, 408, 409; participle implying means, 496.
Measure, gen. of, 345. b (cf. 425. a).
Measures in Prosody, 608-610; names of, 609; contracted or resolved, 610.
Measures of value, 632-635; of length, 636; of weight, 637; of capacity, 638.
meaer, w. dat. or acc., 367. b.
medicos, decl., 115. a. n. 1.
Meditative verbs, 263. 2. b.
medius (middle part of), 293.
melior, decl., 120. a.
melius est, w. infin. 486. f.
memini, conj., 205; in pres. sense, id. b, 476; imperative of, 449. a; memini w. acc. or gen., 350. a, b; w. pres. inf., 384. a and n.
memor, decl., 121. a. 3.
Memory, adjs. of, 349. a; ybs. of constr., 350.
men-, primary suffix, 234. II. 14.
-men-mentum, noun endings, 239.
mensis, decl., 78. 2.
meriides, gend., 97.
-met (entlicit), 143. d.
Metathesis, 640 (cf. 177. a. n.).
Metre, see Prosody.
metuo, w. dat. or acc., 367. c; w. subjv., 564.
meus, voc. mi, 110. a. n.; syntax of, 302. a, 343. a.
Middle voice, 397. c, 410. n.
Mile, 636.
miles, decl., 57.
Military expressions, dat. in, 382. 2; abl. of means instead of agent, 405. b. n. 1; abl. of accomp. without cum, 413. a.
militiae (locative), 427. a.
mile (milia), decl. and constr., 134. d.
-mini, as personal ending, p. 76. ftn. 1.
minime, compar., 218. a; use, 291. c. n. 2; w. neg. force, 392. a; in answer (no), 336.
-a. 2.
ministrô, w. infin., 460. a.
nominâri, 131. c.
nominis, gen. of value, 417 and c.
nominis, signification, 291. c. n. 3.
-minus, -mus, verbal adjective endings, 253. c.
minus, compar., 218. a; use, 291. c. n. 2.
w. si and quô = not, 329. a; constr. without quam, 407. c.
miror si, 572. b. n.
mirum quam (quantum), w. indicative, 575. d.
mis, tis, 143. a. n.
misceô, w. abl. or dat., 388. 3. n., 413. a. n.
miser, decl., 111; compar., 125.
miserë, compar., 218.
miserë, w. gen., 354. a.
miserëcô, w. gen., 354. a.
miseret, 208. b; w. gen. and acc., 354. b; other constr., id. n.
miseror, w. acc., 354. a. n.
Mixed i-stems, 70-72.
-mus, see -minus.
mó (mâ-), primary suffix, 234. II. 7.
Modesty, subjunctive of, 447. 1.
Modification of subj. or pred., 276.
Modifiers, position of, 596-599; of negative, 399. a.
modo (modo n) with subjv. of proviso, 528.
modo ... modo, 323. f.
omod as abl. of manner, 412. b.
omiâris, decl., 76. a. 2.
monoë, conj., 185; constr., 351, 390. d. n. 1.
-mnium, -mônia, noun endings, 239.
Monoptotes, 103. b.
Monosyllables, quantity, 604. a-c.
Months, gend. of names of, 31 and n.; decl. of names of in -ber, 115. a; names of, 630; divisions of in Roman Calendar, 631.
Moods, names and uses of, 154, 157; note on origin and nature of, 436; syntax of, 624-625, 437-463.
Moods in temporal clauses, how distinguished, 545, 546 and notes.
Mora, in Prosody, 608. a.
môrgerus, decl., 111. a. n.
môs est ut, 568.
Mother, name of, w. prep., 403. a. n. 1.
Motion, how expressed, 363, 381. a, 402; indicated by compounds, 388. b; implied, 428. j. n.
Motion, end of, see End of Motion.
Motive, how expressed, 404. b.
Mountains, names of, gend., 31 and b.
Mulciber, decl., 50. c.
muliebris, decl., 115. a. n. 1.
mûtâ nocte, 293. n.
Multiplication by distributives, 137. c.
Multiplicatives, 139.
multum (-ô), compar., 218. a.
multus, compar., 129.
mûnus, decl., 105. g; mûnus est ut, 568.
mûs, decl., 71. 6.
mûsica (-ô), decl., 44.
Musical accent, 611.
mûtâre, constr., 417. b.
Mutes, 4; mute stems, decl. III, 56-64.
ymôdos, decl., 52.
INDEX OF WORDS AND SUBJECTS

N, 4; as final letter of stem (león), 61. 1; preceding stem vowel of vb., 176. b. 1; inserted in verb root (tangō), 176. c. 2, 177. b. n.
náis, decl., 82.
-nam (enclitic), in questions, 333. a.
nam, namque, use, 324. h. k.
Names of men and women, 108.
Naming, vbs. of, w. two accs., 393.
Nasals, 4; 6; inserted in verb root, 176. c. 2.
nátālis, decl., 76. b. 2.
nātū (mātor, minor), 131. c.
nātus etc., w. abl. of source, 403. a.
návis, decl., 76. b. 1.
-na (enclitic), use in questions, 332. a-c; w. force of nāmne, 332. c; orig. meaning, id. n. 1; in double questions, 333; in exclamatory questions, 462. a; quantity, 604. a. 1.
nē, neg. of hortatory subjv., 439; in prohibitions, 450. 3; in concessions, 527. a; w. subjv. of proviso, 528. b; in final clauses, 531; = nēdum, 532. n. 1; in substantive clauses, w. vbs. of hindering, 558. b; of fearing, 564; omitted after cavē, 565. n. 1.
nēnō, w. vbs. of fearing, 564.
nē ... quidēm, use, 322. f; after nōn, 327. 1; after nōn modo, 217. e; position of, 599. b.
Nearness, adjs. of, w. dat., 384; w. gen., 385. c.
nec enim, 324. h.
necessē, indecl., 103. n. 1; necessē est ut, 568, 569. 2. n. 2.
Necessity, vbs. of, w. perf. pass. inf., 466. d; in apod., 517. c, 522. a; w. ut-clause, 569. 2.
necte in double questions, 335 and n.
nēdum, 532. n. 1. 2.
nēfās, indecl., 103. a; w. supine in-ū, 510.
Negation, perfect preferred in, 475. a.
Negative answers, 332. b, 336 and a. 2.
Negative particles, list of, 217. e; use of, 325; two negatives, 326; neg. form different from English, 328; neg. condition, 525. a; neg. proviso, 528; neg. purpose, 531; neg. result, 538, 568; position of, 599. a.
neqō, better than diō ... nōn, 323, 580. b.
nequitāmus, dō ut, 563. fn. 2.
nēmō, use of, 314; gen. and abl. sing. replaced by nūllus and nūlō, 314. a; nēmō nōn, 326. b; nēmō est qui, 535. a. n. 1.
neque (nec), and not, 328. a; neque enim, use, 324. h; neque after a neg., 327. 2, 3.
nequam, indecl., 122. b; compar. of, 129.
nequeō, conj., 206. d.
nēquis, decl., 310. a.
nesciō an, 575. d.
nesciō quis, as indefinite without subjv., 575. d.
-neus, adj. ending, 247.
Neuter acc. as adv., 214. d, cf. b. n.
Neuter adjs., special uses of, 289.
Neuter gender, general rule for, 33; cases alike in, 38. b; endings of decl. III, 87.
Neuter pron. as cognate acc., 390. c.
Neuter verbs, see Intransitive Verbs.
Neve, connective in prohibitions, 450. n. 5.
nex, decl., 103. g. 2.
nīr, primary suffix, 234. II. 5.
nī, nisi, 512. n; use of, 525. a.
nī-a, -niu-m, noun endings, 241. c.
niger, decl., 112; distinct from ātēr, 131. d. n.
nihil, indecl., 103. a; contr. to nīl, 603. c.
nihil, gen. of value, 417. a.
nihil and nihilō, 103. a. n. 2.
nimirumquam, as indefinite without subjv., 575. d.
ningit, 208. a.
nisi and sī nōn, 525. a; nisi sī, id. 3; nisi vērō (forte), id. b.
nitor, w. abl., 451.
nīx (stem and decl.), 79. d; plur., 100. b.
No, in answers, how expressed, 336. a. 2.
nō- (nā-), primary suffix, 234. II. 4.
nō-, verb suffix, 176. b. 1.
nō-lī, in prohibitions, 460. (1) and n. 1.
nō-lō, conj., 199; part. w. dat. of the person judging, 378. n.; w. perf. act. inf. in prohibitions, 486. c.; w. perf. pass. inf. (or part.), id. d and n.
Nōmen, denoting gens, 108.
nōmen, decl., 64.
nōmen est, w. pred. nom. or dat., 373. a; w. gen., id. n.
Nominal adjs., 243-254.
Nomīnativus defined, 35. a; nom. suffix, 338; neut. plur. nom. and acc. alike, 38. b; in decl. II, 45. a; in decl. III, 56, 58, 61, 66, 79; of neuters, i-stems, 68. a; in u-stems, decl. IV, 88; in e-stems, decl. V, 95.
Nomīnativus, Syntax (see 338): in predicat., 238, 234; verb-agreement with, 316; as subject, 339; in exclamations, 339. a (cf. 397. d); used for vocative, 340. a; w. opus in predicat., 411. b; nom. of gerund supplied by inf., 502. n.
nōn, derivation, 215. 1; compounds of, 326. a, b; in answers, 336. a. 2.
nōn dubitō quīn, 558. a; nōn dubitō w. inf., id. n. 2; w. indir. quest., id. n. 1.
nōn modo, after a negative, 327. 1.
nōn modo ... nē ... quidēm, 217. e.
nōn nēmō, nōn nūllus, etc., 326. a.
nōn quia (quod, quō, quín) etc., 540. n. 3.
nón satis, 291. c. n. 2.
Nones (nónae), 631. c.
nónne, in questions, 332. b.
nós, decl. 143; for ego, 143. a.
noster, for poss. gen., 302. a.
nóstri, as objective gen., 143. c, 295. b.
numen, as partitive gen., 143. b, 295. b; as objective gen., 295. b. n. 1.
Noun and adj. forms of vb., 166.
Nouns defined, 20. a; indecl., gend., 33; decl. of, 37-95; derivative forms of, 235-241; used as adjectives, 321. c; rule of agreement, 281; w. part. gen., 346. a. 1; w. obj. gen., 348; governing acc., 388.
d. n. 2; noun as protasis, 521. a.
Nouns of agency, 235; formation, 236.
novemdecim, 133. n. 2.
ox, decl., 72.
ns, nf, gn, quantity of preceding vowel, 10. d, 603. d.
-pas, as adjective ending, 118; participles in, decl., 119, 121. b. 2; w. gen., 349. b; w. acc., id. n. 1, 2.
nt- (nt-, -nt-), primary suffix, 234. II. 18.
nt-, stems in, decl., 121. a. 4.
nu-, primary suffix, 234. II. 6.
nübes, decl., 72.
năbō, w. dat., 368. 3.
nūllos, decl., 113; use, 314. a.; cf. nēmo.
num, force of, 332. b; in indirect questions, id. n.
Number, 35; nouns, defect. in, 99, 100, 101, 103. f, g; variable in, 107; peculiar uses, 101. n. 1, 317. d. n. 2; number in vbs., 154. c; agreement in, 280; w. appositives, 282. a; w. adj., 286 and b; w. vbs., 318, 317. d.
Numerals adv., 138.
Numerals, 132-139; cardinals and ordinals, 132, 133; distributives, 136, advs., 138; others, 193. Position of numeral advs., 508. b.
numquias, 149. b, 310. a.
nuc, compared w. iam, 322. b.
nuc . . . nuc, 323. f.
nurus, gend., 90.
-nus, adj. ending, 250.
O for u after u or v, 6. a, b; in decl. II, 46. n. 1.
o- (o-), primary suffix, 234. I. 1.
o- in nom., 61. 1; gend., 86; in fem. abl. of Greek adj., 111. b. n.
o-, -onis, noun ending, 236. c, 255.
ô, w. subjv. of wish, 442. 2 and n. 1.
o-stems, decl. II, 45; in adj., 111-113; vbs. from o-stems, 268. 2.
ob, use, 220. a, 221. 15; in comp., 267. a; in comp. w. vbs., w. dat., 370; to express cause, 404. b; w. gerund, 506 and n. 1.
obeō, constr., 370. b.
Obeying, vbs. of, 367; w. acc., id. a.
Object cases, 274. a.
Object clauses, infin., 452; subjv., 561-568.
Object defined, 274; becomes subj. of pass., 275, 387. b; acc. of direct w. dat. of indir. obj., 362; secondary obj., 394; obj. of anticipation, 576.
Objective case expressed in Latin by gen., dat., acc., or abl., 274. a.
Objective compounds, 265. 3.
Objective genitive, mei etc., 143. c; defined, 348. n.; w. nouns, 348; w. adj., 349.
Obliion, unfulfilled, hortatory subjv., 439. b.
Oblique cases, 35. g; origin of names of, 338.
olivisor, w. acc. or gen., 350. a, b.
obitus (obivan), derivation, 216 and n.; obivam as apparent adj., 321. d; w. dat., 370. c.
Occasion, expressed by participle, 496.
ôcior, compar., 130.
octodecim, 133. n. 2.
ôdi, conj., 205; w. meaning of present, 476.
-ôe, for -i in nom. plur., decl. II, 52. d.
ôfendô, constr., 370. b.
ôius, names in, 49. f.
Old forms of pronouns: mis, tis, 143. a. n.; méd, téd, id.
olus (ille), 146. n. 4.
-ôlus, diminutive ending, 243.
Omission, of possessive, 302. c; of antecedent, 307. c.
omnes; nôs omnes (instead of omnès nostrum), 346. c.
o-, stem-ending, 83. c.
-ôn, Greek ending, decl. II, 52.
o-, stem-ending, 61. 1, 234. II. 13.
o-, nom. ending, 83. c, d.
o-, nom. -ôn, 83. d.
or-, nominative, 83. c, d.
Open syllables, 7. n. 2.
operâ, w. gen., 405. b.
operam dô, w. dat. of gerund etc., 505; w. subjv., 563.
Operations of nature, 208. a.
opinione, w. compar., 406. a.
opinor, position of, 599. c.
oporet, 208. c; w. acc., 388. c; in apod., 517. c; imperfect refers to present, plupf. to past, 522. a. n. 1; w. subjv. or inf., 565 and n. 3.
opruit, w. pres. inf., 486. a; w. perf inf., id. b.
oppidum, ad, 428. b.
oppugnô, w. acc., 370. b.
ops, defect., 103. f. 1.
Optative, derivation, and comparison w. subjv., 436.
Optative forms in the vb., 168. e. n. 2, 169. d.
Optative subjv. (wish), 441; w. utinam etc., 442; velim etc. w. subjv., equiv. to, id. b.
optimâts, 71. 5, 101. 3.
opus, indecl., 103. a; opus and ãsus, w. abl., 411; as pred. nom., id. b; w. participle, 497. a; w. supine in -6, 510.
or-, stem-ending, decl. III, 63. Exc. 2.
or, noun ending, 293. a.
-or or -6s, nom. ending, 62. n. 2; gend., 85.
Orâtio obliqua, see Indirect Discourse.
Order of words, 593-601.
Ordinal Numbers, 132-135; decl., 134. e; use of et with, 135. a, b.
õre, constr., 563.
Orpheus, decl., 52. e.
os-, stem of comparatives, 120. b.
-os for -as, in nom. sing., decl. II, 46. n. 1; as Greek ending, 52; as gen. ending in Greek nouns, decl. III, 81. 1.
os, ossis, stem, 79.
-os, nom. ending, 62. n. 2; gend., 85.
ös, õris, decl., 103. g, 2.
-õsus, -õns, -õntus, adj. endings, 245.
OVAT (defective), 206. f.
Ovis, decl., 76. b, 1.
P, parasitic after m (súmpsi), 15. 11.
pactó, as abl. of manner, 412. b.
paene, in apod., 517. b, n. 2.
pænitet, 206. b; constr., 354. b, c.
Paeon, 609. d.
palam, as apparent adj., 321. d; w. abl., 432. c.
Palatals, 4.
palûster, decl., 115. a.
Panthus, vocative of, 52. b.
pâr, decl., 119, 121. a, 3; w. gen., 385. c; w. dat. of gerund etc., 506. ftm. 2.
Parallel verb forms, 189.
Parataxis, 268.
parátus, w. ininio, 460. b.
Pardoning, vbs. of, w. dat., 367.
Paroxyemic nouns of decl. III, 65. a.
pariter, use, 384. n. 2.
parte, locative use, without prep., 429. 1.
partem, adverbal use, 397. a.
particeps, decl., 121. a, 4, b.
PARTICIPLES, defined, 20. b, n. 1; comparison of, 124. a; number of, 155. a; how used, 158.
PARTICIPLES, Syntax, 483-500; agreement, 286 and n.; clause equivalent to part., 308. c; parts. in -ns, used as adjs., w. gen., 349. b; parts. in abl. absolute, 419; meaning and form, 488; tenses, 489-493; present in special use, 490; pres. pass. part., how supplied, 492; perf. act., how supplied, 493; parts. of deponent vbs., 190. a, b, 491, 493; adjective use, 494; as nouns, id. a; predicate use, 495, 496; w. opus, 497. a; perf. w. habeó, id. b; present w. fació, id. c; future part., 498; w. past tenses of esse, 498. b; poetic and late use, 499; gerundive, use as part. or adj., 500; part. as protasis, 521. a.
Particles defined, 23; forms and classification, 213; note on formation, 215, 216; interrogative, 217. d; negative, id. e, 325; in comp., 267. Syntax, 321-336; use of interrogative particles, 332. a-c; conditional particles, 512. a and n., 525; particles of comparison, 524.
Particular conditions defined, 613.
partir, conj., 190.
Partitive apposition, 282. a.
Partitive genitive, 316; nostrum etc., 143. b; neut. adj. with, 346. 3 and n. 1.
Partitive numerals, 139. c.
Parts of Speech, 20.
pars, decl., 92. c.
parum, compar., 218. a; meaning, 291. c, n. 2.
parvi, gen. of value, 417.
parvus, compar., 129.
Passive voice, 154. a; origin, 163. ftm. 2, 208. d, n.; signification, 156; reflexive meaning, id. a; deponents, 156. b; completed tenses, how formed, 179. g; passive used impersonally, 203. a, 208. d, 372 (cf. 506, 582. a).
pater, decl., 43. b.
patieáns, compar., 124. a.
pator, constr., 563. c.
Patrials in -ís, decl., 71. 5, 121. a, 4.
Patronymics (-ades, -ádes, -eus, etc.), 244.
pauper, decl., 121. a, 4.
páx, decl., 103. g, 2.
pecá, gend., 91; decl., 105. f.
peciónae, gen., w. vbs. of accusing, 352. a and n.
pedester, decl., 115. a.
pelagó (plur. pelágē), gend. of, 48. a.
pelvis, decl., 76. b, 1.
Penalty, gen. of, 352 and n.; abl. of, 353. 2.
Penitís, decl., 71. 5 (cf. 101. 3).
penes, following noun, 435.
Pentameter verse, 616.
Penult, defined, 12.
penus, gend., 90. Exc.; decl., 105. c.
per, prep., 220. a; use, 221. 16; w. acc. of agent, 405. b; Adverbal prefix, w. adjs., 267. d, 1 (cf. 291. c, n. 1); w. vbs., 267. d, n.
Perceiving, vbs. of, constr., 459.
peréndi (loc.), 98. b, 215. 5.
Perfect participle, two uses, 158. c, 1, 2; of deponents, 190. b; used as noun,
INDEX OF WORDS AND SUBJECTS

retains adv., 321. b; dat. of agent w., 375; abl. w. opus and usus, 411. a, 497. a.

Perfect Tense distinguished from imperfect., 161, 471; perf. def. and perf. hist., 161, 473; personal endings, 163. a, 169. a; origin of i and i in 163. ftn. 3; stem, how formed, 177, 179; perf. subjv., suffixes of, 169. d; of conj. I, 179. a. 2; contracted perf., 181. a, b; perf. subjv. in -sim, 183. 3; irreg. forms of conj. I, 209. a; of conj. II, 210. e; various, of conj. III, 211; of conj. IV, 212.

Perfect Tense, Syntax. Perf. Ind., use, 473; in general conditions, id. a, 518. b; gnomic perf., 475; in fut. conditions, 516. e. Perf. Subjv., hortatory, 439 and n. 1; optative, 441. a; potential, 446; in prohibitions, 450 (3); in future conditions, 516. c. Perf. Inf., in exclamations, 462 and n. 2; w. debé or indebé etc., 486. b. w. nóō or nóo in prohibition, id. c; pass. w. veló etc., id. d; instead of the pres. inf., id. e; w. of feeling etc., id. f; in ind. disc., 584. a and n. Sequence of Tenses, perf. ind., 485. a; perf. subjv., id. b, c, 555. a.

Pericles, decl., 82.

Period, 600, 601.

Periphrastic conjunctions, 158. b, n., d. n.; paradigms, 156, 196; periphrastic forms in conjunction, 193; use in contrary to fact apodosis, 517. d; in ind. questions, 575. a.

Permission, vbs. of, constr., 563. c.

permitto, w. abl., 417. b.

pernox, decl., 122. c.

perplex, decl., 121. a. 3.

Person, 154. d; agreement, 280; of vbs., 316 and a; w. different persons, 317. a; order of the three persons, id.

Personal constr. of passive w. infinitive, 582.

Personal endings, 163 and ftn. 1.

Personal pronouns, 142, 143, 294, 295; reduplicated forms, 143. e; Syntax, 295; omitted, id. a, 318. a; gen. plur., 295. b; 3d pers., id. c; position of personal and demonstrative, 599. f.

persuádeo, constr., 563.

Persuading, vbs. of, w. dat., 367.

pertásum est, 354. b.

pēs, comp. of, decl., 121. b. 1.

Pet names, gen., 30. a, n. 2.

petó w. ab, 396. a; w. subjv., 563.

ph only in Greek words, 4. 1. ftn. 2; sound of, 8.

Phalaecean verse, 625. 11.


Phonetic variations, 14-19; phonetic decay, id.; vowels, 15, 17; consonants, 15. 4-17.

Phrase, defined, 277.

Phrases, neut., 33; phrases and clauses grown into advs., 216; adverbial phrases, 277; phrases limited by gen., 343. c; phrase or clause in abl. abs., 419. b.

Physical qualities, abl., 415. a.

piger, decl., 112. a.

piger, constr., 354. b.

Pity, vbs. of, constr., 354. a.

plus, compar., 128. n., 131. a.

pix, decl., 103. g. 2.

Place, advs. of, 217. a; relations of, require prep., 381. a, 426; place of birth, abl., 403. a. n. 2; place where, 426. a, 427. 3; place to or from which, 426. 1, 2; prep., when omitted, 426. ftn., 427. 1, 2. a, 429. a; locative case, 427. 3. a, 428. k.

Placing, vbs. of, constr., 450.

Plants, gend. of names of, 32 and b; decl. of plant names in -us, 105. a.

plaudó, w. dat., 368. 3.

Plautus, absque mé etc., 517. f; use of quom w. indic., 546. n. 4, 549. n. 3; prosodial forms, 620. a, 628. b, 629.

Pleasing, vbs. of, constr., 367.

piébés, decl., 98. d.

Plenty, vbs. of, constr., 356, 409. a.

plerus, constr., 409. n.

-plex, numeral adj. in, 139.

pluit (imper.), 208. a; used personally, id. n.

Pluperfect Indicative, suffixes of, 169. b; use of, 477; epistolary, 479; pluperf. indic. in conditions cont. to fact, 517. b; in general conditions, 518. b. Pluperf. Subjv., suffixes of, 169. e; hortatory, 439. b; optative, 441; potential, 446; in conditions, 517 (sequence, 485. g).

Plural, wanting in decl. V, 98. a; used in sense different from sing., 100. a-c, 107; plur. alone used, 101. n. 1; plur. acc. used as advs., 215. 3; neut. plur. of adj., 289. b.

Plürálla tantum, 101.

plúris, gen. of value, 417 and c.

plús, decl. 120 and c; compar., 129; without quam, 407. c.

poéma, decl., 60. a.

poenitet, see paenitet.

pondó, defect., 103. b. 5.

pônó, w. abl., 430.

por, prefix, 267. b.

porticus, gend., 90. Exc.

portus, decl., 92. c.

Position, expressed by ab, ex, 429. b.

Position in Prosody, 11. b, 603. f; does not affect final vowel, 603. f. n. 1.

posse, as fut. inf., 584. b.

Possession, how expressed, 302. a; dat. of, 373; compared w. gen., id. n.
Possessive compounds, 265. a.
Possessive genitive, 343 and a-c; dat. of reference used instead, 377.
Possessive pronouns, 145; agreement, 302; instead of gen., id. a; special meanings, id. b; omission, id. c; used substantively, id. d; w. gen. in app., id. e; used for gen., 343. a; for obj. gen., 348. a.
Possibility, vbs. of, in apodosis, 517. c.
possum, in apodosis, 517. c.
post, adverbial use of, 433. 1; with quam, 434.
post, vbs. comp. w., with dat., 370.
postera, defect., 111. b; compar., 130. b;
posteri, id.
posterior, 130. b.
Postpositive conjunctions, 324. j.
postquam (postēquam), in temporal clauses, 543.
postrēmō, in enumerations, 322. d. n.
postridē, w. gen., 359. b; w. acc., 432. a;
w. quam, 434.
postulāb, 396. a; postulāt ut, 563.
Potential subjunctive, 445-447.
potior (adj.), compar., 130.
potior (verb), w. gen., 357. a, 410. a; w. abl., 410; w. acc., id. n. 1; gerundive, 503. N. 2.
potis, pote, 122. b.
potius, compar., 218. a.
potuī, w. pres. infin., 486. a.
Practice, vbs. of, 263. b.
prae, 220. b; use, 221. 17; in comp., 291. c.
N. 1; in comps., w. dat., 370; in compar., w. quam, 434; quantity of, in comps., 603. b. Exc.
praecēsō, constr., 370.
praecēs, decl., 119, 121. a. 3.
praecipio, constr., 563.
Prænomen, 108; abbreviations, id. c.
praepes, decl., 121. b. 1.
praestōlor, constr., 367. b.
praesum, w. dat. of gerund etc., 505.
praeter, use, 220. a, 221. 18.
praeterit, w. acc., 388. c.
pref. defect., 103. f. 2.
perecor, constr., 563.
Predicate, defined, 270; modified, 276; pred. noun or adj., 272, 283; case, 284; pred. noun referring to two or more sing. nouns, id. a; adjective, 285. 2, 286. a; agreement in, 287. 1-3; in rel. clause, 306; pred. adj. in neut. plur., 287. a; pred. adj. in relative clause, 307. f; pred. gen., 343. b, c; pred. acc., 392, 339; adj. as pred. acc., id. n.; pred. acc. becomes pred. nom. in the pass., id. a; predicate use of participles, 496.
Predicate noun or adj. after inf., 452. n. 2,
455. a and n., 458. 581. n. 8.
Prepositions, assimilation of, 16; defined, 20. j; derivation of, 219; list of preps. w. acc., 220. a; w. abl., id. b; w. either, id. c; idiomatic uses, 221; comp. w. vbs. and adjs., 267. a, c; noun w. prep., instead of obj. gen., 348. c; in comp. w. vbs., w. dat., 370, 381; acc. in comp., 395; w. abl. of separation, 401; prep. omitted in relations of place, 427. 1, 2, 429 and a; use of, 220, 221, 429. b, 430, 432-435; preps. following the noun, 435; usual position of, 599. d. (See 338.)
Present participle, decl., 119; use, 158. a.
Present stem, how formed, 168, 174; from root, 176.
Present subjunctive in -im, 183. 2.
Present tense, w. iam dīi etc., 466; conative, 467; for fut., 468; historical, 469; annalistic, id. a; w. dum, 556; in quotations, 465. a; sequence, 483, 485. e, i; pres. inf. w. potūi etc., 486. a; participle, 489, 490, 492, 494, 496. Pres. inf. in ind. disc. referring to past time, 584. a and n.
Preteritive verbs, 205. N. 2, 476.
Preventing, vbs. of, constr., 364. n. 2.
Price, abl. or gen., 416.
prōdī, form, 98. b; w. gen., 359. b; w. acc.,
432. a; w. quam, 434.
Primary suffixes, defined, 233.
Primary tenses, 482. 1, 483.
primiēlāris, decl., 76. a. 2.
Primitive verbs, 256.
primō, primum, meanings, 322. d and n.
primōris, defect., 122. c.
primus, form, 130. ftm. 2.
principes, decl., 121. a. 4.
Principal parts of verb, 172, 173.
prior, compar., 130. a.
prius, w. quam, 434; prīusquam in temporal clause, 550, 551; in ind. disc., 585. b. n.
Privation expressed by abl., 400.
prō, 220. b; use, 221. 19; in comps., w. dat., 370; to express for, 379. N.
probē, w. dat., 368, 375. b. N.
Procelesmatic, 690. N.
procrēus, decl., 111. a. N.
procul, w. abl., 432. c.
prohibē, constr. of, 364. N. 3.
Prohibitions, 450; in ind. disc., 588. N. 3.
Promising etc., vbs. of, 580. c.
Pronominal roots, 228, 232; as primary suffixes, id.
PRONOUNS defined, 20. c; decl. of, 140–151; personal, 142, 143; reflexive, 144; gen., how used, 143. c, 302. a; demonstrative, 146; relative, 147; interrogative and indef., 148–151; pron. contained in verb ending, 163. ftm. 1, 271. a.
INDEX OF WORDS AND SUBJECTS

PRONOUNS, Syntax, 294–315; Personal, 295; Demonstrative, 296–298; idem, 298. a; ipse, id. c-f; Reflexive, 299; Possessive, 302; Relative, 303–308; Indefinite, 309–314. Prons. w. part. gen., 346. a. 1. Relative in protasis, 519. Position of prons., 508. e, l.

Pronunciation, Roman method, 8; English method, 8. n.

propunnti, constr., 563.

prope, compar., 130; use, 220. a; in apod., 517. b. n. 2.

prope est ut, 568.


Proper nouns, 20. a.

properus, decl., 111. a. n.

propinquus, w. gen., 385. c.

propior (propius), compar., 130. a; constr., 432. a and n.

Proportional numerals, 139. a.

Propriety, vbs. of, in apod., 517. c, 522. a.

proprius, w. gen., 385. c.

propter, use, 220. a, 221. 20; position, 435; denoting motive, 494. b.

Prosody, 602; rules and definitions, 603–606; early peculiarities, 629.

proser(-us), decl., 111. a.

proscipis, w. dat. or acc., 367. c.

Protasis (see Conditional Sentences), 512 ff.; loose use of tenses in Eng., 514. C. n.; relative in prot., 519; temporal particles in, 542; antequam, priusquam, in, 551. c. n. 2; prot. in ind. disc., 589. 1.

Protecting, vbs. of, constr., 364. n. 2.

Protraction of long syllables, 608. c.

providēt, w. dat. or acc., 367. c.

Proviso, subjv. used in, 528. a and b; introduced by modo etc., 528; hortatory subjv. expressing, id. a; subjv. w. ut (or ne), id. b; characteristic clause expressing, 535. d.

proximē, constr., 432. a.

proximus, constr., 432. a.

-pse, -pte (enclitic), 143. d. n., 145. a, 146. n. 7, 8.

pubēs, decl., 105. e, 121. d.

pudet, 208. b; constr., 354. b, c, and n.

puer, decl. 47 (cf. 50. a).

pulcher, decl., 112. a.

Punishment, abl. of, 363. 1.

pupillus, decl., 75. b, 76. b. 1.

Purpose, dat. of, 382; infin. of, 460; expressed by gerundive after certain vbs., 500. 4; by gerund or gerundive as predicate gen., 504. a. n. 1; ways of expressing, 533. Clauses of, 279. d; defined and classified, 529 ff.; use of quō in, 531. a; main clause omitted, 532; nēsum, id., n. 1, 2. Substantive clauses of, used after certain vbs., 563 of wishing, id. b; of permitting, id. c; of determining, id. d; of caution etc., id. e; of fearing, 564.

Purpose or end, dat. of, 382.

puter, decl., 115. a.

qua . . quā, 323. f.

quadripēs, decl., 121. b. 1.

quae res (or id quod), 307. d.

quaerē, constr. (ex or dē), 396. a; w. subjv., 563.

quaeō, conj., 206. e.

quālis, 151. i.

Qualities (abstract), gend., 32.

Qualities of an object compared, 292.

Quality, adjvs. of, 251; gen. of, 345, 415. a; to denote indef. value, 417 and a; abl. of, 415 (cf. 345. n.).

quam, derivation of, 215. 2; with superlative, 291. c; w. compar. and positive or w. two positives, 292. a. n.; correlative w. fām, 323. g; w. compar., 407. a; e; after alius, id. a; w. compar. of advs., 494; w. ante, post, id.; w. subjv. after compar., 533. c; followed by result clause, 571. a; in indirect questions, 573. d; in ind. disc., 581. n. 2, 583. c.

quam diū, 535. n. 2.

quam ob causam, 398.

quam qui, quam ut, w. subjv., 535. c.

quam si, 524.

quamquam, use, 527. d; introducing a proposition = and yet, id. N.; w. subjv., id. e.

quamvis, use, 527. a; subjv. or. ind. w., 440. n., 527. a, e.

quandō (interrog.), derivation and meaning, 215. 6, 539; causal (since), 540. a and n.; indef., id.; temporal, 542.

quantō, gen. of price, 417.

Quantity, gen. of adjvs. of, denoting price, 417.

Quantity in Prosody, marks of, 10. e; nature of, 602; general rules of, 9–11, 603; final syllables, 604; perf. and perf. parts., 605; derivatives, 606.

quantō, w. tantō, 414. a.

quantum (with mirum), in indirect questions, 575. d.

quantus, 151. i.

quasi, with primary tenses, 524. n. 2.

quassō (intensive), 263. 2.

-que (enclitic), added to indefinites, 151. g; as conj., use, 323. c. 3, 324. a; quantity, 604. a. 1.

queō (defective), 206. d.

quēs, old nom. plur., 150. c.

Questions, direct, in indic., 157. a, 330–335; indirect, 330. 2, 331. n.; double questions, 334; question and answer, 336; result clause in exclam. questions,
INDEX OF WORDS AND SUBJECTS

462. a; mood in indir. question, 574; in ind. disc., 586; in informal ind. disc., 592. 1.
quia (adverbial), 150. b.
quia (relative), decl., 147; (interrog. and indef.), 148 and b; in compounds, 151;
quius = ut is, w. subjv., 531. 2. n., 557. 2; quia causal and concessive, 535. e.
quia, derivation etc., 539; use, 540. n. 1; causal, id.; w. vb's. of feeling, 572. b; in intermediate clauses, 592. 3.
quicum, 150. b.
quiquemque, decl., 151. a.
quid, in exclamations, 597. d. n. 1.
quidam, decl., 151. c; meaning of, 310; w. ex, 346. c.
quidem, use, 322. e; w. is or idem, 298. a.; position of, 599. b.
quilibet, decl., 151. c; use, 312.
quina, w. indic. equiv. to command, 449. b; in result clause (=qui non), 558, 559; w. vb's. of hindering, 558; non dubitó quin, 558. a.
Quinary or hemiolic measures, 609. d.
quínquátrús, gender, 90; plural only, 101. 2.
quippe, w. relative clause, 535. e. n. 1; w. cum, 549. n. 1.
Quirités, 101. 3.
quis, decl., 148, 149; distinguished from quia in use, id. b and n.; compounds of (aliquis etc.), 151. d-f, 310 and b; quis w. si, num, nē, 310. a; indef. use of, 310.
quis est qui, 535. a.
quis, dat. or abl. plur., 150. c.
quismam, 148. e.
quispiam, 151. d; use of, 310 and b.
quismum, decl., 151. d; use, 311, 312.
quisque, form and decl., 151. g; use in general assertions, 313; in dependent clause, id. a; w. superlativé, id. b; w. plur. vb, 317. e.
quiesquis, decl., 151. b.
quívís, decl., 151. c; use, 312.
quò, stems in, 46. n. 2.
quó, approaching abl. of cause, 414. a. n.
quó in final clauses (=ut eō) w. subjv., 531. ; nān quá, 540. n. 3
quit ... eō, 414. a; to denote deg. of difference, id.
quod (intention etc.), 553; (fact), 554; (as long as), 555.
quod for id quod, 307. d. n.
quod (conj.), 540. n. 1; mood with, 540; in ind. disc., id. b; subst. clause with, 572; as acc. of specification, id. a; w. vb's. of feeling, id. b; quod in intermediate clauses, 592. 3 and n.
quod sciám (proviso), 535. d.
quod si, use, 324. d, 307. a.
quom (see cum), 6. b, 539. n.
quóminus (=ut eō minus), w. vb's. of hindering, 558. b.
quoniam, origin, 539; meaning and use, 540. 1. n. 1 and a.
quoque, use, 322. a; position, 599. b.
quó, indeclinable, 122. b; correl., 152.
Quotation, forms of, w. apud and in, 428. d. n. 2; direct and indir., 578.
quotus quisque, 313. b. n. 2.
quu- (cu-), 6. b.
quum (conj.), 6. b (see cum).

R substituted for s between two vowels, 15. 4 and n.; r- in adj. stems, 117. a.; rr- in noun stems, 62. n. 1.
rádix, decl., 57.
rástrum, plur. in -a and -i, 106. b.
ratióne, as abl. of manner, 412. b.
ratus, as pres. part., 491.
rávis, decl., 75. a. 2.
re- or re- (prefix), 267. b.
reápse, 146. n. 7.
Receiving, vb's. of, w. gerundive, 500. 4.
Reciprocal (each other), how expressed, 145. c, 301. f.
recordor, w. acc., 350. d; w. gen., id. n.; w. dē, id. n.
réctum est ut, 568.
red-, see re-.
Reduplication, 177. c, 231. c; list of vb's., 211. b; lost in fādi etc., id. f. ftn. 3; rule for quantity, 605. a.
Reference, object of, 349.
Reference, pronouns of, 297. f; commonly omitted, id. n; dative of, 376; gen. of specification, 349. d.
rēfert, w. gen. or possessive adj., 355 and a; other constr., id. b.
Reflexive pronouns, 144; Syntax of, 298. c. n. 2, 299-301; of 1st and 2d persons, 299. a.
Reflexive verbs (deponent or passive), 190. c, 208. d. n.; use of passive, 156. a; w. object acc., 397. c.
Refusing, vb's. of, w. quóminus, 558. b.
Regular verbs, 171-189.
Relationship, nouns of, 244.
Relative adverbs, used corelatively, 152; demon. for rel., 308. b; used to connect independent sentences, id. f; referring to loc., id. g = pronoun w. prep., 321. a; used in relative clauses of purpose, 531. 2; result, 537. 2.
Relative clauses, defined, 279. a; w. rel.
advrs., 308. i; conditional, 519; final, 531, 533; characteristic, 535; consecutive, 537; causal, 540. c; temporal, 541, 542; rel. clauses in ind. disc., 591; position of rel. clause, 539. e.
Relative pronouns, decl., 147; forms, how distinguished from interrogative and
Roman method of pronunciation, 8.
Root, defined, 25, 228; consciousness of roots lost in Lat., 25. n.; of vbs., 117. 1; noun stem treated as root, 176. d; roots ending in vowel, id. e; root used as stem, id. d. n. 1 and e, 251.

rōs, decl., 103. g. 2.
r- or as stem ending, 62. n. 1.
rt-, stems in, decl., 121. a, 4.
ruber, decl., 112. a.
rūrī, locative, 80, 427. 3.
rūs, decl., 103. g. 1; constr., 427. 1, 2, 3.
S changed to r, 15. 4 and n., 62. n. 2; substituted for d or t, 15. 5; s- as stem ending, 79. e; of adj., 119. n.; of compar., 120. b; of perf. stem, 177. b; list of vbs. of conj. III, w. perf. in s, 211. a; s suppressed in verb forms, 181. b. n. 2; in early Lat., 629. a.
-s as sign of nom., 45, 46, 56, 95, 117. a, 338; s omitted in inscriptions, 46. n. 1;
s, noun ending, decl. III, gend., 86.
sacer, decl., 112. a; comp., 131. a.
saepe, compar., 218. a.
sāl, decl., 103. g. 2.
Salamis, decl., 83. a.
salüber, decl., 115. a.
salūtem, 397. d. n. 2.
salvē, defect., 206. g.
sāne quām, 575. d.
Sanskrit forms, see 25. ftn. 2, 170. b. n.
sapiēns, decl., 76. b. 2.
Sapphic verse, 625. 7, 8.
satiās, decl., 98. d.
satis, compar., 218. a; compounds of, w. dat., 368. 3; nōn satis, 291. c. n. 2; satis est (satis habeō), w. perf. infin., 486. f.
satur, genitive of, 50. b; decl., 111. a; compar., 131. b.
Saturnian verse, 628. d.
Saying, vbs. of, constr., 459; in passive, 582.
Sc preceding stem-vowel of verb, 176. b. 1.
sclub, decl., 112. a.
Scanning, 612. d, 609. e. n.
scilicet, derivation, 216. n.
scīn, contracted form for scīsne, 13. n.
scīō, imperative of, 449. a.
Scipiādes, 44. b. n.
scīsī, constr., 563.
scītō, scītē, inv. forms, 182. a, 449. a.
-scō (inceptive), vbs. ending in, 263. 1.
se- or se-, inseparable prefix, 267. b.
se, reflexive, decl., 144. b; use, 209-301; inter se, 145. c.
Second Conjugation, prin. parts, 173; pres. stem, how formed, 176. a; formation of, 179. b; paradigm, 185; vbs. of, 210; from noun stems, 260.

INDEX OF WORDS AND SUBJECTS

469

ind., 148. b and n.; coms. of, 151, 301 and a, b. Syntax, 303-308; rules of agreement, 305, 306; w. two antecedents, 305. a; rel. in agreement w. app., etc., 306; use of the antecedent, 307; special uses of rel., 308; never omitted in Lat., id. a; relatives as connectives, id. f; pers. of vb. agreeing w., 316. a; abl. of rel. after compar., 407. a. n. 3; position, 599. e.

relinquitur ut, 568.

reliquum est ut, 568.

reliquis, use, 293; reliqui, use, 315.

REM, verb ending, 168. f.

Remembering, vbs. of, w. acc. or gen., 350; w. inf., 456.

Reminding, vbs. of, constr., 351.

reminiscor, w. acc. or gen., 350. c.

Removing, vbs. of, w. abl., 401.

Repeated action as general condition, 518. c.

repetundārum, 332. a.

Repraesentatio, 469. n.; in ind. disc., 538. b and n.

requīēs, decl., 98. d, 105. e.

rēs, decl., 96.

Resisting, vbs. of, constr., 367, 558.

Resolution of syllables in Prosody, 610.

Resolving, vbs. of, constr. (subjv. or inf.), 563. d.

restāt, w. ut, 569. 2.

restis, decl., 75. b.

Restriction in subjunctive clause, 533. d.

Result, clauses of, 279. e, 534; sequence of tenses in, 485. c; inf. of, 461. a. Subjunctive w. reals or ut, 537; negative result w. ut non etc., id. a, 538; result clause equivalent to proviso, 537. b; w. quīn, 558; w. quōminus, id. b.

Subst. clauses of result after faciō etc., 568; as subject, 569; in app. w. noun, 570; as pred. nom., 571; after quam, id. a; tantum abest ut, id. b; thought as result, id. c.

Result, nouns denoting, 239.

rēte, decl., 76. a. 3.

rēx, decl., 57.

Rhetorical questions in ind. disc., 586.

Rhetoric, 15. 4.

Rhythm, development of, 607; nature of, 608.

Rhythmical reading, 612. d. n.

ri-, adj. stems in, 115. a.

ritū, abl. of manner, 412. b.

rīvālis, decl., 76. b. 2.

Rivers, gender of names of, 31. 1 and a.

ro-(rā-), primary suffix, 234. II. 9.

ro-stems, decl. II, 45. b; adj. stems, 111, 112.

rogō, constr. of, 396 and b. n., c. n. 2; w. subjv., 563.
Second Declension, nouns, 45-47; accent of gen. and voc. of nouns in -ius, 12.
Exc. 2.
Secondary object, 394.
Secondary suffixes, defined, 232.
Secondary tenses, 482. 2; rule for use of, 483; perf. def. more commonly secondary, 485. a; perf. subj. in clauses of result used after, id. c; hist. pres., id. e; imperf. and pluperf. subj. id., g; present used as if secondary, by
synesis, id. i.
secundum, prep., 220. a; use, 221. 21.
secundus, derivation, 132. ftm.
secúris, decl., 75. b, 76. a. 1.
secus (adv.), compar., 218. a.
secus, indecl. noun, 103. a; use, 397. a.
secútus (as pres. part.), 491.
sec-, see sé-
sed compared with vérum etc., 324. d.
sédés, decl., 78. 1.
sédile, decl., 69.
Selling, vbs. of, 417. c.
sémantis, decl., 75. b, 76. b. 1.
Semi-deponents, 192.
sémineci, defect., 122. c.
Semi-vowels, i and v (u), 5.
senáti, senátus, forms of gen. in decl.
IV, 92. a, e.
sexen, decl., 79 and c; adj. masc., 122. d; comparison, 131. c.
Sentence, development, 268; defined, 269; simple or compound, 278; incomplete, 318, 319.
Separation, dat. of, after comps. of ab, de, ex, and a few of ad, 381; abl. of, 400; gen. for abl., 356. n., 357. b.
Sequence of tenses, 482-483; in ind. disc., 585; in conditional sentences in ind. disc., 589. b.
sequestrer, decl., 105. b.
sequitur, w. ut, 569. 2.
sequer, conj., 190.
séra nocte, 293. n.
séries, decl., 98. a.
Service, adjs. of, w. dat., 384.
Service, dat. of, 382. n. 1.
Serving, vbs. of, w. dat., 367.
servus (servos), decl., 46.
séstertium, séstertius, 632-634; how written in cipher, 635.
seu (sive), 324. f, 525. c.
Sharing, adjs. of, w. gen., 349. a.
Should (auxiliary), how expressed in Lat., 157. b. ftm. 2.
Showing, vbs. of, w. two accs., 393.
si, 511; w. subj. of wish, 442. a and n. 1; si and its compounds, use, 512. a. n., 525; si non distinguished from nisi, id., a. 1; miror si, 572. b. n.; si = whether, 576. a.
Sibilants, 4.
sic, correl., w. ut, 323. g, 537. 2. n. 2; w. si, 512. b.
siem (sim), 170. b. n.
Significant endings, 235-253.
Signs of mood and tense, 169. ftm.
silentiō, without preposition, 412. b.
silis, adj. ending, 252.
silvester, decl., 115. a.
sim, old form of perf. subjv., 183. 3.
similis, comparison, 126; w. gen. and dat., 385. c. 2.
similiter, use, 384. n. 2.
Simois, decl., 82.
Simple sentences, 278. 1.
simul, simul atque (ac), 543.
simul . . . simul, 323. f.
simul w. abl., 432. c.
sin, 512. a. n.
Singular, nouns defect. in, 103. f.
Singularia tantum, 99.
sinister, decl., 112. a.
sis, constr., 363. c.
sis, noun ending, 238. b.
sis-, dropped in perf., 181. b. n. 2.
sítis, decl., 67 (cf. 75. a. 2).
sive (su) . . . sive, use, 324. f, 525. c.
Smell, vbs. of, w. acc., 390. a.
sé, old form of fut. perfect, 183. 3.
sé, vbs. in, 293. 2.
socrus, gend., 90. Exc.
sédés (si audés), 13. n., 192. a.
séi, decl., 103. g. 2.
sóleó, semi-dep., 192.
solitó, w. comparis., 406. a.
sólitus, as pres. part., 491.
sólus, decl., 113; w. relative clause of characteristic, 533. b.
Sonants, 3.
sóns, as participle of esse, 170. b.
-sor, see -tor.
Sórate, decl., 76. b. n. 2.
sordem, defect., 103. f. 3.
-sória, noun ending, 254. 4; -sórium, noun ending, 254. 5; -sórius, adj. ending, 290. a.
Sóspita, fem. adj. form, 121. e.
Sounds, see Pronunciation.
Source, expressed by abl., 403.
Space, extent of, expressed by acc., 425.
Sparing, vbs. of, with dat., 367.
spé, w. comparis., 406. a.
Special verb forms, 181, 182.
speciés, decl., 98. a.
Specification, gen. of, w. adjs., 349. d; acc. of, 397. b and n.; abl. of, 418.
specus, gend., 90. Exc.
Spelling, variations of, 6.
spēs, 98. a and ftm.
Spirants, 4.
Spondaic verse, 615. b.
INDEX OF WORDS AND SUBJECTS

Spondees, 609. b. 3.
spontis, -e, defect., 103. c. 2.
Stanza or Strophe, 614.
statuō, w. vbs. of placing, 430; w. inf. or subjv., 563. d.
Statutes, fut. inv. in, 449. 2.
ste for iste etc., 146. N. 6.
stella, decl., 41.
Stem building, 25. n.
Stems, defined, 24; classified, 229; how formed from root, 26, 230-232; how found in nouns, 37. a; a-stems, decl. I, 40; adjs., 110; o-stems, decl. II, 45; adjs. 110; in decl. III, mute stems, 56-60; liquid and nasal stems, 61-64; i-stems, 65-69; mixed i-stems, 70-72; u-stems, decl. IV, 88, 89; in tu-, 94; of vb., 165. 1; present, perfect, and supine, 164. Pres. stem, how formed, 175, 176; perf. stem, 177; supine stem, 178. Tenses arranged by stems, synopsis, 180.
sto, w. abl., 431.
strigilis, decl., 76. b. 1.
strix, decl., 71. 6.
Structure of Latin sentences, 600, 601.
struō, decl., 78, 2.
studeō, w. dat., 368. 3.
suadeō, w. dat., 367.
sub, in comp., w. adjs., 267. d. 1, 291. c. n. 2; w. vbs., 267. a and d. n.
sub, use, 220. c, 221. 22; in comp., w. dat., 370; of time, 424. e.
subeō, w. acc., 370. b.
Subject, 268; defined, 270; how expressed, 271 and a; modified, 276; vb. agrees w., 316; two or more subjus., 317; subj. omitted, 318; accusative, 469; in ind. disc., 580; position of subject, 596.
Subject clauses (inf.), 452. 1; (subjv.), 569, 597, 599, 571. b.
Subjective gen., defined, 343. n. 1; use, 543.
Subjunctive mood, 154. b; how used and translated, 157. b. ftm. 2; tenses how used, 162; vowel of pres. subjv., 179. a, 1, b, 1, c. 1, d. Classification of uses, 436; hortatory subjv., 439, 440; optative subjv., 441, 442; deliberative, 443, 444; potential subjv., 445, 446; subjv. of modesty, 447. 1; tenses of subjv., 480-485; dependent clauses, 481; subjv. in ind. disc., 580; in informal ind. disc., 592; of integral part, 593.
subōles, decl., 78. 2.
Subordinate clauses, defined, 278. b; use, 519-593; in ind. disc., 579-593.
Subordinate conjs., 223. b, 224. II. a-f.
Substance, gen. of, 344; abl. of, 403.
Substantive clauses, 560-572; nature and classes of, 560 (cf. 561, 562); clauses of purpose, 563-566; of result, 567-571; indic. w. quod, 572; indirect questions, 573-576; adj. w. subst. clauses, 289. d; inf. clauses, 452.
Substantive use of adjs., 288; of possessive prons., 302. d.
Substantive verb (esse), 272, 284. b.
subter, use, 220. c, 221. 23.
suētus, w. inf., 490. b.
Suffixes, 232; primary, list of, 233, 234; significant, 235-235.
suí, decl., 144. b; use, 299, 300; w. gen. of gerund, 504. c.
sum, conj., 170; as copula, 284; as substantive verb, id. b; omitted, 319. b; w. dat. of possession, 373; position, 598. c, j.
summus, form, 130. a. ftm. 2; (top of), 293.
sunt qui, 535. a.
svovetauria, 263. 1.
supellēx, decl., 79. c.
super, use, 220. c, 221. 24; in comps., 267. a; in comps., w. dat., 370.
supera, defect., 111. b (cf. 130. a. n. 2); comp., 130. b; superf, id.
superior, compar., 130. b.
Superlative, suffix, 124. ftm.; in -rimus, 125; of adjs. in -lis, 126; w. maxim, 128; takes gend. of partitive, 286. b. n. of eminence, 291. b; w. quam, vel, or unus, id. c; denoting order, succession, 293; w. quisque, 313. b.
superstes, decl., 121. a. 4.
Supine, noun of decl. IV, 94. b, 159. b; stem, 164. 3; formation, 178, 179. a-d (cf. 164. ftm.); irregular forms of conj. I, 209; conj. II, 210; allied with forms in -tor, 236. a. n. 1; Supine in -um, use of, 509; in -i, 610; as abl. of specification, 510. n. 1.
supplex, decl., 121. b. 1.
supplīcō, w. dat., 308. 3.
suprā, use, 220. a, 221. 25.
-sūra, noun ending, 298. b.
Surds, 3.
-surīō, vbs. in, 263. 4.
-sus, phonetic form of -tus, 94; noun ending, 238. b.
sūs, use, 299.
Swearing, vbs. of, constr., 388. d, 580. c.
Syllables, rules for division of, 7; open etc., id. n. 2; long and short, 603. e, f and notes.
Synaeresis, 603. c. n., f. n. 4, 642.
Synacope, 612. e. n., 642.
Synchysis, 598. h, 641.
Syncope, 640.
Synecdoche, defined, 641.
Synecdochical acc., 397. b.
INDEX OF WORDS AND SUBJECTS

Synesis, 280. a; in gend. and number, 280. b; in sequence of tenses, 485. i.
Synesthesia, 603. c. n., 642.
Synopsis of tenses (amò), 180; of impersonal vbs., 207.
Syntactic compounds, 267.

T changed to s, 15. 5, 178; t preceding stem-vowel of vb., 176. b. 1; t- (s-), supine stem-ending, 178, 179. a. 2, b. 2, c. 2, d.
taedet, impersonal, 208. b; constr., 354. b, c and n.
taeter, decl., 112. a.
Taking away, vbs., of, 381.
Talent, value of, 637.
tālis, 151. i, 152.
tālis ut etc., 537. n. 2.
tam, correl. w. quam, 323. g; correl. w. ut, 537. n. 2.
tamen, as correl., 527. c; position of, 324. f.
tametsi, concessive use, 527. c and n. 1.
tamquam, in conditional clauses, 524; w. primary tenses, id. n. 1.
tandem, in questions, 333. a and n.
tanti, gen. of value, 417 and c; tanti est ut, 508.
tantō following quantō, 414. a.
tantum, w. subj. of proviso, 528.
tantum abest ut, 571. b.
tantus, 151. i, 152; tantus ut, 537. n. 2.
tātis, -tia, noun endings, 241.
Taste, vbs. of, w. acc., 390. a.
tē (enclitic), 143. d and n.
Teaching, vbs. of (two accs.), 396.
tēgō, conj., 186.
Telling, vbs. of, constr., 459.
Temporal clauses, defined, 279. b, 541–556; as protasis, 542; w. postquam etc., 543; w. cum, 544–549; w. antequam and priusquam, 550, 551; w. dum, dōnec, quod, 552–556; replaced by abl. abs., 420.
Temporal numerals, 139. b; conjunctions, 224. II. d.
tempos est abire, 504. n. 2.
Tendency, adj., denoting, 251.
ter, decl., 111. a.
TENSES, 154. c; of passive voice, 156; of participles, 158; classification, meaning, and use, 160–162; of the ind., 160, 161; of the subjv., 162; endings, 166; of completed action, formation of, 179. f, g; synopsis of, 180.

TENSES, Syntax, 464–466; classified, 464; of ind., 465–470; Present tense, 465–469; Imperfect, 470, 471; Future, 472; of Completed action, 473–473; Epistolary tenses, 479; of subjv., 480, 481; sequence of, 482–485; tenses of the inf., 486; tense emphatic, 598. d. (3); tenses of inf. in ind. disc., 584; tenses of subjv. in ind. disc., 585; affected by repraesentatio, id. b and n.; in condition in ind. disc., 589. Notes on origin of syntax, 436, 464.
tenus, constr., w. gen., 359. b; w. abl., 221. 26; position, 435, 599. d.
ter- (tor-), decl., 214. b, c.
Tereence, absque mē etc., 517. f; prosodial forms, 628. b, 629.
teres, decl., 121. a. 3; compar., 131. b.
ter-ti-ri-or, ending, p. 56. ftm. 2.
Terminations of inflection, meaning of, 21. b; terminations of nouns, 39; of verbs, 166. (See Endings.)
termār, as adj. ending, 250.
terrā marique, 427. a.
terrester, decl., 115. a.
ter-tus, ending, p. 56. ftm. 2.
Tetrameter, iambic, 619. a.
Than, how expressed, 406.
That of, not expressed in Lat., 297. f. n.
The, as correlative, 414. a and ftm.
Thematic verbs, 174. 1.
Thematic vocalic %', 174. 2. 1.
Thesis and Arsīs, 611.
Thinking, vbs. of, constr. w. acc. and inf., 459.
Third conj., of vbs., prim. parts, 173; pres. stem, how formed, 176; formation, id., 179. c; paradigm, 186; in -ā, paradigm, 188; list of vbs., w. principal parts, 211; derivation of vbs. in -ās, 261.
Third declension, of nouns, 53–57; mute stems, 56–60; liquid stems, 61–64; i-stems, 65–78; pure i-stems, 66–69; mixed i-stems, 70–78; peculiar forms, 79; loc., 80; Greek nouns, 81–83; rules of gend., 84–87.
Though, see Although.
Thought, considered as result, 571. c.
Threatening, vbs. of, 367, 580. c.
ti- , primary suffix, 224. II. 2.
ti-tiēs, noun ending, 241.
ti-cus, adj. ending, 247.
tigris, decl., 82.
ti-lis, adj. ending, 232.
ti-tim, advs. in, 75. a. 3, 215. 2.
Time (see Temporal Clauses), 465 ff., 481, 545, 546.
Time, abl. abs. to denote, 419, 420. 1; time when, 423; duration of time, 424. b; time during or within which, w. ordinal, id.; w. of, w. of, w. of; distance of time, id. f; corresponding to Eng. place, id. d.
Time, advs. of, 217. b.
Time, mode of reckoning, 630.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INDEX OF WORDS AND SUBJECTS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>timeō</strong>, w. dat. or acc., 367. c; w. subjv., 504.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>-timus</strong>, adj. ending, 130. a, ftm. 2, 250.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>-tiō</strong>, noun ending, 233. 2, 238. b.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>-tiō</strong> (-siō), -tūra, -tūs (-tūtis), noun endings, 233. b.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>-tium</strong>, verbal adj. ending, 251.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to (-tā), primary suffix, 234. II. 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>-tī</strong>, -tīō, intensive or iterative vbs. in, 263. 2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Too ... to, 535. c. n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-tor (-sor), -trix, nouns of agency in, 236. a; used as adj., 321. c.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-tōria, noun ending, 254. 4.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-tōrium, noun ending, 233. 2, 254. 5.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-tōrius, adj. ending, 233. 2; as noun ending, 250. a.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tot, indeclinable, 122. b; correl., 152.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>totidem, indeclinable, 122. b.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tōtus, decl., 113; nouns w., in abl. without prep. (place where), 429. 2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Towns, names of, gend., 32 and a, 48. <strong>Exc.</strong>; names of towns in -e, decl., 76. n. 2; locative of, 427. 3; as place from which, id. 1; as place to which, id. 2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tr-, stems in (pater etc.), 61. 4.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trāciā, constr., 395. n. 1 3; trāctēctorūra, id. n. 3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trāns, 220. a; use, 221. 27; comps. of, w. acc., 388. b; w. two accus., 395.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transposition of vowels, 177. a. n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trees, names of, gend., 32.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trēs, decl., 134. 6.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tri-, stem-ending of nouns, 66; of adj., 115. a.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tribe, abl. of, 403. a. n. 3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tribarch, 609. a. 3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tribālis, decl., 76. a. 2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tribus, gend., 90. <strong>Exc.</strong>; decl., 92. c.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>triēs, decl., 76. b. 2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trimeter, iambic, 618.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Triptotes, 103. d.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trīrēmis, decl., 76. b. 2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-trīs, adj. ending, 250.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>triumφo, w. abl., 404. a.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-trix, see -tor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tro-, primary suffix, 234. 16.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-trō, advs. in, 215. 4.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trochale verse, 613, 620.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trochee, 609. a. 1; irrational, id. e, 623 and n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-trum, noun ending, 240.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trusting, vbs. of, constr., 367.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu-, primary suffix, 234. II. 3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-tūs, supine endings, 159. b.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tū, decl., 143 (see tūtē, tūtīmet).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-tūds, -tūs, noun endings, 241.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tuī (tetuī), 200; derivation, id. ftm. 2; quantity, 605. <strong>Exc.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-tum, -sum, supine endings, 159. b.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tum, tūc, meaning, 217. b; correl. w. cum, 323. g.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tum ... tum, 323. f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-tūra, -tūs, noun ending, 238. b.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-turiō, desiderative vbs. in, 263. 4.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-turnus, adj. ending, 250.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-turris, decl., 67 (cf. 75. b).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-tus, adj. ending, 246; noun ending, 94, 241.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-tus, adv. ending, 215. 6.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tussis, decl., 75. a. 2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tūte, 143. d; tūtīmet, id.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Two accusatives, 391.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Two datives, 382. 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U (v), as consonant, 5; after g, q, s, id. n. 2; not to follow u or v, 6. a, b; u for e in conj. III, 179. c. 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u-, primary suffix, 234. I. 3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u-stems, of nouns, decl. III, 79 and a; decl. IV, 38; of vbs., 174, 176. d, 250. 3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>über, decl., 119.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ulbus, derivation, 215. 5; in temporal clauses, 542, 543.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ulis, in dat. and abl. plur., decl. IV, 92. c.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-uis (-uos), in gen., decl. IV, 92. e.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ūlis, adj. ending, 248.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ulus, decl., 113; use, 311, 312.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ulcer, compar., 130. a.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ultrā, 220. a; use, 221. 28; following noun, 435.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ulus, diminutive ending, 243; verbal adj. ending, 251.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-um for -ūrum, 43. d; for -ūrum, 49. d;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-um in gen. plur. of personal prons., 295. b; -um for -ūrum, decl. III, 78; in gen. plur. of adj., 121. b; for -um, decl. IV, 92. b.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Undertaking, vbs. of, w. gerundive, 500. 4.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ūnt-, stem-ending, 93. e.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ūnis, decl., 113; meaning, 134. a; w. superl., 291. c.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ūnus qui, w. subjv., 535. b.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ūnus quisque, decl., 151. g; use, 313.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ūs, suffix, see vo-.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ūs, vbs. in, 261.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ūs, see -uis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ur, nouns in, 87.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>urb, decl., 72; use in relations of place, 428. b.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urging, vbs. of, with ut, 563.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ūrī, desiderative vbs. in, 263. 4.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-urnus, adj. ending, 250.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ūrus, fut. part. in, 158. b, 498; w. fuli, 498. b, 517. d; in ind. questions, 575. a;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ūrus fuisse, in ind. disc., 589. b. 3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-us, nom. ending, in decl. II, 46; -us for -er in Greek nouns, decl. II, 52. b; -us, nom.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ending in decl. III, 63. Exc. 2; gend., 87; decl. IV, 88; gend., 90; neut. ending, 328. a.

-ūs, Greek nom. ending, 83. e.

Use, adj.s. of, constr., 388. a.

ūsque, w. acc., 432. b.

ūsus (need), w. abl., 411.

ut (uti), correlative w. ita, sic, 323. g; to denote concession, 440, 527. a; ut (as) w. ind. equiv. to concession, 527. f; w. optative subjv., 442. a; used elliptically in exclamations, 462. a; in clauses of purpose, 531; ut nē, id., 563. e. n. 2; ut nōn, 531. 1. n. 2; of result, 537; ut nōn etc., 538; ut temporal, 542, 543; vbs. foll. by clauses w. ut, 563, 568; omission after certain vbs., 565 and notes, 569. 2. n. 2; w. vbs. of fearing, 564 and n. ut, utpote, quippe, w. relative clause, 535.

e. n. 1; w. cum, 549. n. 1.

ut primum, 543.

ut semel, 543.

ut sī, constr., 524.

ütter, decl., 66.

uterque, form and decl., 151. g; use, 313; constr. in agreement and as partitive, 346. d.

ūtilis, w. dat. of gerund etc., 505. a.

utinam, w. subjv. of wish, 442.

ütter etc., w. abl., 410; w. acc., id. a. n. 1.

gerundive use of, 500. 3, 503. n. 2.

utpote qui, 535. e. n. 1.

utrum . . . an, 335 and d.

-ūtus, adj. ending, 246.

-us, verbal adj. ending, 251.

V (u), 1. b, 5 and n. 1; suffix of perf., 177. a, 179. a. 2, b. 2, d; suppressed in perf., 181; list of vbs. in conj. III w. v in perf., 211. c; v often om. in perf. of ēō and its comps., 203. b.

vafer, decl., 112. a; compar., 131. a.

valdē, use, 291. c. n. 1; valdē quam, 575. d.

Value, gen. of indefinite, 417.

Value, measures of, 632-638.

vannus, gend., 48. Exc.

vāpūō, neutral passive, 192. b.

Variable nouns, 104-106 (cf. 98. c, d); adj.s., 122. a.

Variations, see Phonetic Variations.

Variations of spelling, 6.

vās, decl., 103. g. 2.

vās, decl., 79. e, 105. b.

vātēs, decl., 78. 1.

-ve, vel, use, 324. e, 335. d. n.

vel (see -ve), w. superl., 291. c.

Velars, p. 2. ftn. 3.

velim, vellem, subjv. of modesty, 447. 1. n.

velim, vellem, subjv. (= opt.), 442. b, (=inv.), 449. c.

velut, velut sī, 524.

vēneō (vēnum eō), 192. b, 428. i.

vēnerat = aderat, 476.

Verba sentiendi et declarandī, 397. e; 459, 579; passive use of, 532; in poets and later writers, id. n.

Verbal adj.s., 251-253; in -āx, w. gen., 349. c.

Verbal nouns w. dat., 367. d.

Verbal nouns and adj.s. w. reflexive, 301. d.

Verbal roots, 228. 1.

Verses, defined, 20. d; inflection, 153, 154; noun and adj. forms of, 155; significance of forms, 156-162; personal endings, 163; the three stems, 164; forms of the vb., 164-166 (notes on origin and hist. of vb. forms, 164. ftn., 168, 169); table of endings, 166; influence of imitation, 169. ftn.; regular vbs., 171-189; the four conjugations, 171-173; prim. parts of, 172; mixed vbs., 173. a; deponents, 190, 191; semi-deponents, 192; periphrastic forms, 193-196; irregular vbs., 197-204; defective, 205, 206; impersonal, 207, 208. Classified lists of vbs., 209-212.

Derivation of vbs., 236-238; comp. vbs., 267; voms in comp. vbs., id. a. n. 2. Index of vbs., pp. 437 ff.

Verbs, Syntax. Subject implied in ending, 271. a; rules of agreement, 316-319; vb. omitted, 319; rules of syntax, 437-593. Cases w. vbs., see under Accusative etc. Position of vb., 596, 598. d, j. (See under the names of the Moods etc.)

vereō, w. gen., 357. b. 1; w. subjv., 564.

veritus, as pres. part., 491.

verē, 324. d, j; in answers, 336. a. 1; position of, 599. b.

Verse, 612.

Versification, 612-629; forms of verse, 613.

versus, position of, 599. d.

vertō, constr., 417. b.

verū, gend., 91.

vērum or vērō, use, 324. d, j.

vescōr, w. abl., 410; w. acc., id. a. n. 1; gerundive, 500. 3, 503. n. 2.

vesper, decl., 50. b.

vesperī (loc.) 50. b, 427. a.

vester, decl., 112. a, 145.

vestī as obj. gen., 143. c, 295. b.

vestrum as part. gen., 143. b, 295. b (cf. n. 2).

vetō, w. acc. and inf., 563. a.

vetus, decl., 119, 121. d; compar., 125.

viā, abl. of manner, 412. b.

vicem, adverbial use of, 397. a.

vicinus, w. gen., 385. c.

vicis, decl., 103. h. 1.
INDEX OF WORDS AND SUBJECTS

INDEX OF WORDS AND SUBJECTS

vidēātus, 563.
videor, 375.
vin' (visne), 13.
vir, decl., 47.
virgo, decl., 62.
virus, gender of, 48.
vis, stem, 71.
viscera, 101.
visō, 263.
vōcālis, decl., 76.
Vocative, defined, 35.
volātus, 48.
voluecr, decl., 115.
volucris, decl., 127.
vōs, 143.
vōter etc., see vester.
Vowel changes, 15.
Vowel roots of verbs, 17.
Vowel stems of verbs, 259.
Vowel suffixes (primary), 234.
Vowels, 1.

INDEX OF SUBJECTS

W, not in Latin alphabet, 1; sound of, 1.
Wanted, of w. abl., 401; w. gen., 356.
Way by which (abl.), 429.
Weight, measures of, 637.
Whole, gen. of, 346; numbers expressing the whole, id.
Wills, fut. inv. in, 449.
Winds, gender of names of, 31.
Wish, expressed by subjv., 441; as a condition, 521.
Wishing, of w. inf., 486.
Wills, names of, 108.
Words and Forms, 1-267.
Would (Eng. auxiliary), how expressed in Lat., 157.

X, nom. ending, 56; gend., 86; from s, in vbs., 211.

Y, of Greek origin, 1.
Year, 630; months of, 630, 631; date, 424.

Yō-(vā-), primary suffix, 234.

Z, of Greek origin, 1.
LATIN AUTHORS AND THEIR WORKS
CITED IN THIS BOOK

Note.—In the citations the names Cæsar, Cicero, Sallust (with Iugurtha), and Virgil are not generally given. Thus, "B. G." refers to Cæsar's Bellum Gallicum; "Fam." to Cicero's letters ad Familiares; "Iug." to Sallust's Iugurtha; "Aen." to Virgil's Aeneid, etc.

Ap., Apuleius (A.D. 125–?):
  Met., Metamorphoses.
  ——, B. Afr., Bellum Africam.
Cæsar (b.c. 100–44):
  B. C., Bellum Civile.
  B. G., Bellum Gallicum.
Cato (b.c. 234–149):
  de M., de Moribus.
  R. R., de Re Rustica.
Catull., Catullus (b.c. 87–54).
Cic., Cicero (b.c. 106–43):
  Acad., Academica.
  Ad Her., [ad Herennium].
  Arch., pro Archia.
  Att., ad Atticum.
  Balb., pro Balbo.
  Brut., Brutus de Claris Oratoribus.
  Caec., pro Caecina.
  Caecil., Divinatio in Caecilium.
  Cæl., pro M. Cælio.
  Cat., in Catilinam.
  Cat. M., Cat. Maior (de Senectute).
  Clu., pro Cluentio.
  Deiot., pro Deiotarō.
  De Or., de Oratore.
  Div., de Divinatione.
  Dom., pro Domō Sua.
  Fam., ad Familiares.
  Fat., de Fato.
  Fin., de Finibus.
  Flacc., pro Flacco.
  Font., pro M. Fonteio.
  Har. Resp., de Haruspicum Respons.
  Inv., de Inventione Rhetorica.
Cic. Lael., Laelius (de Amicitia).
  Leg. Agr., de Lege Agraria.
  Legg., de Legibus.
  Lig., pro Ligario.
  Manil., pro Lege Manilia.
  Marc., pro Marcello.
  Mil., pro Milone.
  Mur., pro Murenà.
  N. D., de Natura Deorum.
  Off., de Officiis.
  Or., Orator.
  Par., Paradoxa.
  Part. Or., de Partitione Oratoria.
  Phil., Philippicae.
  Planc., pro Plancio.
  Pison., in Pisonem.
  Prov. Cons., de Provincia Consularibus.
  Q. Fr., ad Q. Fratrem.
  Quinct., pro Quinctio.
  Rabir., pro Rabirio.
  Rab. Post., pro Rabirio Postumo.
  Rep., de Re Publica.
  Rosc. Am., pro Roscio Amerino.
  Rosc. Com., pro Roscio Comedio.
  Scaur., pro Scæuro.
  Sest., pro Sestio.
  Sull., pro Sulla.
  Tim., Timaeus (de Universo).
  Top., Topica.
  Tull., pro Tullio.
  Tusc., Tusculanae Disputationes.
  Vat., in Vatiniunm.
  Claud., Claudianus (abt. A.D. 400):
    iv C. H., de Quarto Consulatu Honorii.
  Enn., Ennius (b.c. 239–169).
  Gell., A. Gellius (d. A.D. 175).
  Hirtius (d. b.c. 43):
    ? B. Al., Bellum Alexandrinum.
  Hor., Horace (b.c. 65–8):
    A. P., de Arte Poetica.
    C. S., Carmen Saeculare.
  Ep., Epistles.
  Epod., Epodes.
  Od., Odes.
  S. Satires.
  Iuv., Juvenal (abt. A.D. 60–140).
  Liv., Livy (b.c. 59–A.D. 17).
  Lucr., Lucilius (b.c. 96–55).
  Mart., Martial (A.D. 43–101):
    Ep., Epigrams.
  Nep., Nepos (b.c. 99–24):
    Ages., Agesilau̇s.
    Alc., Alcibiades.
    Att., Atticus.
    Dat., Datames.
    Dion., Dion.
    Epam., Epaminondas.
    Eum., Eumenes.
    Hann., Hannibal.
    Milt., Miltiades.
    Paus., Pausanias.
    Them., Themistocles.
    Timoth., Timotheus.

476
Ov., Ovid (b.c. 43–a.d. 17):
   A. A., Ars Amatoria.
   F., Fasti.
   H., Heroides.
   M., Metamorphoses.
   Pont., Epistulae ex Ponto.
   Trist., Tristia.
Pers., Persius (a.d. 34–62):
   Sat., Satires.
Phaed., Phaedrus (a.d. 40).
Pl., Plautus (b.c. 254–184):
   Am., Amphitruo.
   Asin., Asinaria.
   Aul., Aulularia.
   Bac., Bacchides.
   Capt., Captivi.
   Cist., Cistellaria.
   Curc., Curculio.
Epid., Epidicus.
Men., Menæchmi.
Merc., Mercator.
Mil., Miles Gloriosus.
Most., Mostellaria.
Pers., Persa.
Poen., Poenulus.
Ps., Pseudolus.
Rud., Rudens.
Stich., Stichus.
Trin., Trinummus.
Truc., Truculentus.
Plin., Pliny, senior (a.d. 25–79):
   H. N., Historia Naturalis.
Plin., Pliny, junior (a.d. 62–113):
   Ep., Epistles.
Prop., Propertius (b.c. 49–15).
Q. C., Q. Curtius (a.d. 50).
Quint., Quintilian (a.d. 35–95).
Sall., Sallust (b.c. 86–34):
   Cat., Catilina.
   Ing., Iugurtha.
   —, S. C. de Bac., Senatus Consultum de Bacchanalibus (b.c. 186).
Sen., Seneca (b.c. 4–a.d. 65):
   Dial., Dialogues.
   Ep., Epistles.
   Herc. Fur., Hercules Furens.
   Herc. Oet., Hercules Octaeus.
   Med., Medea.
Sen. Q. N., Quaestiones Naturales.
Suet., Suetonius (a.d. 75–160):
   Aug., Augustus.
   Dom., Domitianus.
   Galb., Galba.
Tac., Tacitus (a.d. 55–120):
   Agr., Agricola.
   Ann., Annales.
   H., Historiae.
Ter., Terence (d. b.c. 159):
   Ad., Adelphi.
   And., Andria.
   Eun., Eunuchus.
   Haut., Hautontimoromenos.
   Hec., Hecyra.
   Ph., Phormio.
Val., Valerius Maximus (a.d. 26).
Varr., Varro (b.c. 116–27):
   R. R., de Re Rustica.
Verg., Virgil (b.c. 70–19):
   Aen., Æneid.
   Ecl., Eclogues.
   Georg., Georgics.
## Parallel References

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Old</th>
<th>New</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. a</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2-4</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 (p. 4)</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>25. e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8-11</td>
<td>25. f-i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. b</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. a. 1</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. a. 2</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. c</td>
<td>28. a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. e</td>
<td>28. b. n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. e. 3 and n.</td>
<td>29. 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>29. 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. a-c</td>
<td>29. a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>29. b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. b, c</td>
<td>29. c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. b</td>
<td>30. a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. c</td>
<td>30. b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. d</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. e</td>
<td>31. h. n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>32. ftm. 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15 (p. 10)</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. n. 4</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17. a-c</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17. n.</td>
<td>40-42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18. a-c</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18. d</td>
<td>37. a, b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18. e</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18. f</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19. a, b</td>
<td>39. a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19. c</td>
<td>39. b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19. d. 1-3</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>40. d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>40. e-g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>49. c and n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>49. d, g, e</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

479
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Old</th>
<th>New</th>
<th>Old</th>
<th>New</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>41. d, e</td>
<td>50. c</td>
<td>70. b</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>70. c</td>
<td>92. b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43</td>
<td>52</td>
<td>70. d</td>
<td>92. c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
<td>53-55</td>
<td>70. e</td>
<td>92. d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>56-64</td>
<td>70. f</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46</td>
<td>56, 58</td>
<td>70. g</td>
<td>93. n.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47</td>
<td>56. a</td>
<td>70. h</td>
<td>92. f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47. b</td>
<td>57. a</td>
<td>71</td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47. c</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>71. a</td>
<td>94. b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48</td>
<td>57.</td>
<td>71. b</td>
<td>94. c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48. a</td>
<td>58</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48. b</td>
<td>59</td>
<td>73</td>
<td>95. 96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48. c</td>
<td>60. a</td>
<td>74</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48. d</td>
<td>60.</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>97 and a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48. e</td>
<td>62. n.3</td>
<td>76</td>
<td>98. n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49, 50</td>
<td>61</td>
<td>77</td>
<td>98. c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51-54</td>
<td>62.</td>
<td>78</td>
<td>98. b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51. b</td>
<td>63.</td>
<td>79</td>
<td>98. a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51. c</td>
<td>64</td>
<td></td>
<td>98. d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52</td>
<td>65</td>
<td>79. 1-4</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53. a, b</td>
<td>66. 1. a</td>
<td>79. 2</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53. c</td>
<td>66. 1. b</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54</td>
<td>67-72</td>
<td>79. 3</td>
<td>101. 1-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54. 1, 2</td>
<td>71. 1-4, 6</td>
<td>80. 4</td>
<td>101. 3, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54. 3</td>
<td>71. 5</td>
<td>80. 5</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54. ftn. 2</td>
<td>73</td>
<td>80. 6-a-c</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55</td>
<td>74</td>
<td>80. 7-a-c</td>
<td>103. a-d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>80. 8</td>
<td>103. b-1-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57</td>
<td>76</td>
<td>80. 9</td>
<td>103. c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57. c-e</td>
<td>76. n.1-3</td>
<td>80. 10</td>
<td>103. d-1-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58</td>
<td>77</td>
<td>80. 11</td>
<td>103. f-1-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59</td>
<td>78</td>
<td>80. 12</td>
<td>103. g-1-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60, 61</td>
<td>79</td>
<td>80. 13</td>
<td>103. h-1, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>80. 14</td>
<td>104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62. a</td>
<td>p. 34. fttn.</td>
<td>80. 15</td>
<td>105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62. n.</td>
<td>80. fttn.</td>
<td>80. 16</td>
<td>105. e, f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63, 64</td>
<td>81-83</td>
<td>80. 17</td>
<td>105. g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63. a-e</td>
<td>83. a-e</td>
<td>80. 18</td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63. f</td>
<td>81</td>
<td>80. 19</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63. g-i</td>
<td>82</td>
<td>80. 20</td>
<td>317. d. n.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64</td>
<td>82</td>
<td>80. 21</td>
<td>101. n.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65</td>
<td>84-87</td>
<td>80. 22</td>
<td>101. n.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66, 67</td>
<td></td>
<td>80. 23</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>68</td>
<td>88, 89</td>
<td>80. 24</td>
<td>108. a-c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>68. n.</td>
<td></td>
<td>80. 25</td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>69</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>80. 26</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>69. b</td>
<td>91</td>
<td>80. 27</td>
<td>111, 112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td>92</td>
<td>80. 28</td>
<td>111. a. n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70. a</td>
<td>92. a, c</td>
<td>80. 29</td>
<td>111. a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>80. 30</td>
<td>112. a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>80. 31</td>
<td>111. b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>80. 32</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>80. 33</td>
<td>113. b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>80. 34</td>
<td>113. a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>80. 35</td>
<td>113. c-e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Old</td>
<td>New</td>
<td>Old</td>
<td>New</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>84</td>
<td>114-116</td>
<td>98</td>
<td>140-145</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>84. a</td>
<td>115. a</td>
<td>98. a</td>
<td>142</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>84. a. N.</td>
<td>115. a. N. 1</td>
<td>98. b</td>
<td>143. a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>84. b</td>
<td>116. n.</td>
<td>98. c</td>
<td>143. a. n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>84. c</td>
<td>115. n. 2</td>
<td>98. 2</td>
<td>144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>85</td>
<td>117-119</td>
<td>98. 3</td>
<td>145</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>85. b</td>
<td>119</td>
<td>99. a</td>
<td>302. a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>85. c</td>
<td>121. e</td>
<td>99. b, c</td>
<td>143. b, c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>86</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>99. d.</td>
<td>145. c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>86. a</td>
<td>120. b</td>
<td>99. e</td>
<td>143. f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>86. b</td>
<td>120. c</td>
<td>99. f</td>
<td>143. d and n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>87</td>
<td>121</td>
<td>100, 101</td>
<td>146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>87. b</td>
<td>121. a. 4</td>
<td>100. ftn.</td>
<td>146. n. 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>87. c, d</td>
<td>121. b, c</td>
<td>100. a.</td>
<td>146. n. 4, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>87. e</td>
<td>121. d</td>
<td>100. b</td>
<td>146. n. 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>87. f</td>
<td>122</td>
<td>100. c</td>
<td>146. n. 7-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>88</td>
<td>122</td>
<td>P. 67, top</td>
<td>146. a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>88. a</td>
<td>288, 289</td>
<td>101. a.</td>
<td>146. n. 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>88. b</td>
<td>122. d</td>
<td>101. b</td>
<td>146. n. 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>88. c</td>
<td>321. c</td>
<td>101. c</td>
<td>146. n. 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>88. d</td>
<td>214. d, e</td>
<td>101. d.</td>
<td>146. a. n. 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>89</td>
<td>123, 124</td>
<td>P. 67. ftn.</td>
<td>146. a. n. 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>89. a</td>
<td>125 and a</td>
<td>102</td>
<td>297, 298</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>89. b</td>
<td>126</td>
<td>102. e.</td>
<td>298. c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>89. c</td>
<td>127</td>
<td>102. e. n.</td>
<td>298. c. n. 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>89. d</td>
<td>128</td>
<td>102. f.</td>
<td>297. e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>89. e</td>
<td>124. a</td>
<td>103</td>
<td>147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>89. f</td>
<td>243</td>
<td>104</td>
<td>148-150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90</td>
<td>129</td>
<td>104. N.</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>91</td>
<td>130, 131</td>
<td>104. b-e</td>
<td>150. a-d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>91. c</td>
<td>131. c</td>
<td>104. f.</td>
<td>544</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>91. d. 1</td>
<td>130. a</td>
<td>105</td>
<td>151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>91. d. 2</td>
<td>131. a</td>
<td>105. d</td>
<td>149, 151. e, f, 310. a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>91. d. 3</td>
<td>131. b</td>
<td>105. d. n.</td>
<td>310. b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>91. d. n.</td>
<td>131. d</td>
<td>105. e</td>
<td>151. g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>92</td>
<td>218 and a</td>
<td>105. e, quotus quisque</td>
<td>313. b. n. 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>93. a, b</td>
<td>291. a-c</td>
<td>105. f, g</td>
<td>151. h, i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>93. c</td>
<td>313. b</td>
<td>105. h.</td>
<td>311</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>93. d-g</td>
<td>291. c. n. 1-3</td>
<td>105. i.</td>
<td>148. c, 151. f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>94</td>
<td>132-134</td>
<td>106</td>
<td>152</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>94. N.</td>
<td>133. n. 1</td>
<td>106. b.</td>
<td>308. h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>94. a</td>
<td>134. a</td>
<td>106. c</td>
<td>414. a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>94. b, c</td>
<td>134. b and n.</td>
<td>107</td>
<td>323. g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>94. c 2d par.</td>
<td>135. n. 2</td>
<td>108</td>
<td>154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>94. d-f</td>
<td>134. c-e</td>
<td>109</td>
<td>155</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>95</td>
<td>136, 137</td>
<td>110</td>
<td>154. c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>95. a-d</td>
<td>137. a-d</td>
<td>110. a</td>
<td>480, 484. c, 575. a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>96</td>
<td>138</td>
<td>110. b</td>
<td>164. 3. a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>96. N.</td>
<td>138. a</td>
<td>110. c</td>
<td>154. c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>97</td>
<td>139</td>
<td>110. d</td>
<td>164. 3. b, c and n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>97. d</td>
<td>135. e</td>
<td>111</td>
<td>166</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OLD</td>
<td>NEW</td>
<td>OLD</td>
<td>NEW</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>112</td>
<td>157</td>
<td>130</td>
<td>209</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>112. b. n.</td>
<td>157. b. fttn.</td>
<td>2d conj.</td>
<td>185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>113</td>
<td>158</td>
<td>131</td>
<td>210</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>113. b. 2</td>
<td>499. 2</td>
<td>3d conj.</td>
<td>186</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>113. e-g</td>
<td>494, 495</td>
<td>Verbs in -io</td>
<td>188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>114</td>
<td>159</td>
<td>132</td>
<td>211</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115</td>
<td>160–162</td>
<td>132. f. n.</td>
<td>211. fttn. 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115. a. 1</td>
<td>472. b</td>
<td>4th conj.</td>
<td>212</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115. a. 2</td>
<td>466, 467. b</td>
<td>133</td>
<td>212</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115. b</td>
<td>471</td>
<td>134</td>
<td>189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115. c</td>
<td>161</td>
<td>135</td>
<td>190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115. d</td>
<td>162</td>
<td>135. h</td>
<td>191</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>116</td>
<td>163</td>
<td>135. i</td>
<td>191. a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>117</td>
<td>165</td>
<td>136</td>
<td>197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>117. n. 2</td>
<td>p. 81. fttn.</td>
<td>137</td>
<td>198</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>118</td>
<td>166</td>
<td>137. a</td>
<td>p. 109. fttn.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>118. n.</td>
<td>p. 76. fttn.</td>
<td>137. n.</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119, 120</td>
<td>170</td>
<td>138</td>
<td>200. fttn. 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119. a</td>
<td>170. b</td>
<td>139</td>
<td>203</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119. b</td>
<td>170. b. n.</td>
<td>139. fttn.</td>
<td>203. d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119. b. n.</td>
<td>170. a</td>
<td>140</td>
<td>205</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120. n.</td>
<td>170. n.</td>
<td>141</td>
<td>205. b. n. 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121</td>
<td>164</td>
<td>141. c</td>
<td>206. e-g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121. a-c</td>
<td>164. 1–3</td>
<td>141. d</td>
<td>208</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>122</td>
<td>171–173</td>
<td>142</td>
<td>209</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>122. a</td>
<td>171</td>
<td>143</td>
<td>209. d. n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>122. b</td>
<td>172</td>
<td>143. n.</td>
<td>203. a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>122. c</td>
<td>173</td>
<td>143. d-f</td>
<td>p. 119. Note. 1. b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>122. d</td>
<td>173. a</td>
<td>144. g</td>
<td>P. 119. Note. 1. c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>122. n.</td>
<td>174</td>
<td>145</td>
<td>P. 120. Note. 1. d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>123</td>
<td>175, 176</td>
<td>146</td>
<td>P. 120. Note. 1. e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>123. a</td>
<td>176. a</td>
<td>146. d. fttn.</td>
<td>P. 120. Note. 1. f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>123. b</td>
<td>174. 1</td>
<td>147</td>
<td>P. 120. Note. 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>123. c</td>
<td>176. c</td>
<td>147. c. 1</td>
<td>P. 121. Note. 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>123. d</td>
<td>176. d</td>
<td>147. c. 2</td>
<td>P. 122, top</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>123. e</td>
<td>176. d. n. 1</td>
<td>147. c. 3</td>
<td>214</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>123. f</td>
<td>176. e</td>
<td>P. 119. Note. 1. a</td>
<td>148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>124</td>
<td>177</td>
<td>P. 119. Note. 1. b</td>
<td>148. n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>125</td>
<td>178</td>
<td>P. 119. Note. 1. c</td>
<td>148. n. a-eta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>125. n. 1</td>
<td>178. n. 2</td>
<td>P. 120. Note. 1. d</td>
<td>216. a and n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>125. n. 2</td>
<td>178. n. 3</td>
<td>P. 120. Note. 1. e</td>
<td>148. n. theta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>126</td>
<td>179</td>
<td>P. 120. Note. 2</td>
<td>149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>127</td>
<td>180</td>
<td>P. 121. Note. 3</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>128</td>
<td>181</td>
<td>P. 122, top</td>
<td>151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>128. a. 1</td>
<td>181. a</td>
<td>148. n.</td>
<td>209</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>128. a. 2</td>
<td>181. b</td>
<td>148. n. a-eta</td>
<td>210</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>128. b</td>
<td>181. b. n. 2</td>
<td>148. n. theta</td>
<td>186</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>128. c</td>
<td>182</td>
<td>148. n. a-eta</td>
<td>188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>128. d</td>
<td>182. a</td>
<td>148. n. theta</td>
<td>211</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>128. e</td>
<td>183</td>
<td>149</td>
<td>212</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1st conj.</td>
<td>184</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>129</td>
<td>193–196</td>
<td>151</td>
<td>190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OLD</td>
<td>NEW</td>
<td>OLD</td>
<td>NEW</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>151. d</td>
<td>322. d and n.</td>
<td>164. h</td>
<td>250. a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>151. e</td>
<td>322. e, f</td>
<td>164. i</td>
<td>254</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P. 127. ftn.</td>
<td>210</td>
<td>164. k</td>
<td>245</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>152</td>
<td>220</td>
<td>164. l</td>
<td>251</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>153</td>
<td>221. 1-28</td>
<td>164. m</td>
<td>252</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>154</td>
<td>223</td>
<td>164. n</td>
<td>253. c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>154. N. 1</td>
<td>222</td>
<td>164. o</td>
<td>253. a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>154. N. 2</td>
<td>224</td>
<td>164. p</td>
<td>253. b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>155</td>
<td>224.</td>
<td>164. q, r</td>
<td>255 and a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>156</td>
<td>324. b</td>
<td>165</td>
<td>256</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>156. a</td>
<td>324. a, b</td>
<td>166</td>
<td>257</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>156. a. 3d par.</td>
<td>324. c</td>
<td>166. a. 1</td>
<td>259. 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>156. a. 4th par.</td>
<td>324. d</td>
<td>166. b</td>
<td>260</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>156. b</td>
<td>324.</td>
<td>166. c</td>
<td>261</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>156. c</td>
<td>324. e-g</td>
<td>166. d</td>
<td>262. a, b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>156. d, e</td>
<td>324. h, i</td>
<td>167</td>
<td>263</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>156. f</td>
<td>540. N. 1-3</td>
<td>167. a</td>
<td>263. 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>156. g</td>
<td>539, 540. a. n.</td>
<td>167. b and n.</td>
<td>263. 2 and a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>156. h. 1</td>
<td>325. g</td>
<td>167. c</td>
<td>263. 2. b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>156. h. 2</td>
<td>325. e</td>
<td>167. d, e</td>
<td>263. 3. 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>156. i</td>
<td>325. c, d</td>
<td>168</td>
<td>264</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>156. k</td>
<td>325. j</td>
<td>168. a-c</td>
<td>265. 1-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interjections</td>
<td>225, 226</td>
<td>168. d</td>
<td>265. a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P. 140. Note</td>
<td>227</td>
<td>169</td>
<td>266</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>157</td>
<td>228</td>
<td>170</td>
<td>267</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>158</td>
<td>250, 231</td>
<td>170. c</td>
<td>267. d. 1, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>158. 1. a, b</td>
<td>231. a, b</td>
<td>170. d</td>
<td>267. c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>158. 1. c</td>
<td>231. c</td>
<td>P. 163</td>
<td>268</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>159</td>
<td>232</td>
<td>171</td>
<td>269</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>160</td>
<td>233</td>
<td>172</td>
<td>270</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>160. a, b</td>
<td>233. 1, 2</td>
<td>172. N.</td>
<td>272</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>160. c</td>
<td>234</td>
<td>172. N. 2d par.</td>
<td>284. b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>160. c. 2. a-e</td>
<td>234. II. 1-18</td>
<td>173. 1</td>
<td>339</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>161</td>
<td>235</td>
<td>173. 2</td>
<td>397. e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>162</td>
<td>236</td>
<td>174</td>
<td>271</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>163</td>
<td>237</td>
<td>174. 2</td>
<td>271. a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>163. 1. a</td>
<td>238. a</td>
<td>175</td>
<td>273</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>163. c</td>
<td>239</td>
<td>175. a</td>
<td>273. 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>163. d</td>
<td>240 and a</td>
<td>175. b</td>
<td>273. 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>163. d. N.</td>
<td>240. N.</td>
<td>176</td>
<td>283</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>163. 2</td>
<td>241. 1, 2 and a</td>
<td>176. b</td>
<td>284</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>163. f, g</td>
<td>241. b, c</td>
<td>177</td>
<td>274</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>164</td>
<td>242</td>
<td>177. a</td>
<td>275</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>164. a</td>
<td>243</td>
<td>177. b</td>
<td>274. a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>164. a. R.</td>
<td>243. a</td>
<td>177. c</td>
<td>274. b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>164. b</td>
<td>244</td>
<td>177. c</td>
<td>274. b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>164. c</td>
<td>249</td>
<td>178</td>
<td>276</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>164. d</td>
<td>248</td>
<td>179</td>
<td>277</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>164. e</td>
<td>250</td>
<td>180</td>
<td>278. 1, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>164. f</td>
<td>248</td>
<td>180. c-e</td>
<td>279. a-e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>164. g</td>
<td>247</td>
<td>180. f</td>
<td>308. f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Old</td>
<td>New</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>181, 182</td>
<td>280</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>183</td>
<td>281</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>184</td>
<td>282</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>184. b</td>
<td>282. c</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>184. c</td>
<td>282. d</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>184. d, e</td>
<td>302. e</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>185</td>
<td>283, 284</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>186. a, b</td>
<td>285. 1, 2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>186. b, 2, 3</td>
<td>285. n.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>186. c</td>
<td>282. b, c</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>186. d</td>
<td>286. a</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>187</td>
<td>287</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>187. a</td>
<td>287. 1, 2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>187. b</td>
<td>287. 3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>187. b. n.</td>
<td>287. 4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>187. c</td>
<td>287. 4. a</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>187. d, e</td>
<td>286. b, n.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>188. a-c</td>
<td>288. a-c</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>188. r.</td>
<td>288. n.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>188. d, e</td>
<td>321. c, d</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>189</td>
<td>289</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>190</td>
<td>343. a</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>190. a</td>
<td>302. d</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>191</td>
<td>290</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>192</td>
<td>292</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>192. b</td>
<td>292. a. n.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>193</td>
<td>293</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P. 178. Note</td>
<td>294</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>194</td>
<td>295</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>194. b. n.</td>
<td>295. b. n. 2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>195</td>
<td>296 and 2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>195. 2</td>
<td>296. 1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>195. a</td>
<td>297. f</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>195. b</td>
<td>297. b. n.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>195. c</td>
<td>298. a</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>195. d</td>
<td>298. a</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>195. e, f</td>
<td>298. b, c</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>195. f. r.</td>
<td>298. c. n. 1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>195. g</td>
<td>298. d. 1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>195. h, i</td>
<td>298. d. 2, 3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>195. k</td>
<td>298. e</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>195. l</td>
<td>298. f</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>196</td>
<td>299</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>196. a</td>
<td>300</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>196. a. 2. n.</td>
<td>300. b</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>196. b</td>
<td>301. a</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>196. c</td>
<td>301. b</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>196. d-f</td>
<td>301. d-f</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>196. g</td>
<td>301. c</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>196. h</td>
<td>299. a</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>196. i</td>
<td>300. b</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>197</td>
<td>302</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Old</th>
<th>New</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>197. f</td>
<td>P. 186. Note</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P. 186, bottom</td>
<td>198</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>199</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200. d</td>
<td>200. e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201. a, b, c</td>
<td>201. d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201. e,h</td>
<td>202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>202. a</td>
<td>202. b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>202. c</td>
<td>202. d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>202. e</td>
<td>202. f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nullus</td>
<td>203</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>203. a</td>
<td>203. c. n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>204</td>
<td>205</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>205. c and 1</td>
<td>205. c. 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>205. d</td>
<td>206</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>206</td>
<td>206. c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>206. c. 1</td>
<td>206. c. 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>207</td>
<td>207. n. 2, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>207. b</td>
<td>207. c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>207. d</td>
<td>208</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>208</td>
<td>208. b. 1-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>208. c</td>
<td>208. d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>208. e</td>
<td>208. f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>209</td>
<td>209. a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>209. b</td>
<td>209. c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>209. d</td>
<td>209. e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>210</td>
<td>210. a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>210. b-d</td>
<td>210. d. r.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>210. e</td>
<td>210. e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>210. f-i</td>
<td>209</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>211</td>
<td>212</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>213</td>
<td>213. a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>214</td>
<td>215. a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>215</td>
<td>216</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>217</td>
<td>217. d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>217. e</td>
<td>217. c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>218</td>
<td>219</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>219. a</td>
<td>219. b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>221</td>
<td>220</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>221. a</td>
<td>432. a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>221. b</td>
<td>221. c. n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>223</td>
<td>223. c. 1-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>223. d</td>
<td>223. e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>223. f</td>
<td>223. k</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>225</td>
<td>226, 327</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>228</td>
<td>226. c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>229</td>
<td>229. a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>230, 331</td>
<td>232. a-c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>232</td>
<td>332. c. N. 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>333</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Old</td>
<td>New</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>210. c. R.</td>
<td>333. n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>210. f</td>
<td>333. a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>210. f. R.</td>
<td>331. n., 332. b. n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>211</td>
<td>334, 335</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>211. R.</td>
<td>335. n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>212</td>
<td>336</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>212. b</td>
<td>337</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>212. b. R.</td>
<td>335. d. n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P. 205. Note</td>
<td>338</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P. 206. Note</td>
<td>341</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>213</td>
<td>342</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>213. 1, 2 and n.</td>
<td>343</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>214 and a. 1</td>
<td>343</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>214. a. 2</td>
<td>343. a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>214. b</td>
<td>343. n. 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>214. c</td>
<td>343. b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>214. c. R.</td>
<td>343. b. n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>214. d</td>
<td>343. c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>214. d. R.</td>
<td>343. c. n. 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>214. d. n.</td>
<td>343. c. n. 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>214. e</td>
<td>344</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>214. f</td>
<td>343. d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>214. g</td>
<td>359. b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>215</td>
<td>345</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>216</td>
<td>346</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>216. R.</td>
<td>346. n. 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P. 211, top</td>
<td>347</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>217</td>
<td>348</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>218</td>
<td>349</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>218. b</td>
<td>349. c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>218. c</td>
<td>349. d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>218. c. R.</td>
<td>358</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>219</td>
<td>350</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>219. b</td>
<td>350. d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>219. c</td>
<td>351</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>220</td>
<td>352</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>220. b</td>
<td>353</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>220. b. 3</td>
<td>353. 2. n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>220. b. n.</td>
<td>352. n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>221</td>
<td>354</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>221. d</td>
<td>354. c. n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>222</td>
<td>355</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>223</td>
<td>356</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>223. a</td>
<td>357</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>223. c</td>
<td>358</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>223. d</td>
<td>359</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>223. e</td>
<td>359. b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P. 218. Note</td>
<td>360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>224</td>
<td>361</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>225</td>
<td>362</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>225. b, c</td>
<td>363, 369</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>225. d</td>
<td>364</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Old</td>
<td>New</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>239. r.</td>
<td>395. N. 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>239. 2</td>
<td>394</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>239. 2. b</td>
<td>395 and r.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>239. c</td>
<td>396</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>239. c. N. 1, 2</td>
<td>396. a, b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>239. c. R.</td>
<td>396. b. N.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>239. d</td>
<td>396. c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>240. a</td>
<td>390. c, d and N. 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>240. b</td>
<td>397. a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>240. c, d</td>
<td>397. b, d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>240. c. N.</td>
<td>397. c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>240. e</td>
<td>423, 425</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>240. f, g</td>
<td>397. e, f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>241</td>
<td>340</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>241. c</td>
<td>339. a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>241. d</td>
<td>340. c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>242</td>
<td>399</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>242. N.</td>
<td>398</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>243</td>
<td>400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>243. a</td>
<td>401</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>243. b</td>
<td>402</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>243. d</td>
<td>402. a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>243. e</td>
<td>411</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>243. e. N.</td>
<td>411. a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>243. e. R.</td>
<td>411. b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>243. f</td>
<td>356</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>243. f. R.</td>
<td>356. N.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>244</td>
<td>403</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>244. a. R.</td>
<td>403. a. N. 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>244. b</td>
<td>403. a. N. 2, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>244. c-e</td>
<td>403. b-d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>245</td>
<td>404</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>245. a. 1 and N. 2</td>
<td>418. b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>245. a. 2</td>
<td>404. a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>246</td>
<td>405</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>246. R.</td>
<td>405. N. 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>246. b. N.</td>
<td>405. b. N. 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>247</td>
<td>406</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>247. a, c-e</td>
<td>407 and a, c-e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>247. a. R.</td>
<td>407. a. N. 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>247. b</td>
<td>406. a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>247. e</td>
<td>406</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P. 253. Note</td>
<td>408</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>248</td>
<td>412</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>248. N.</td>
<td>412. a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>248. R.</td>
<td>412. b and N.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>248. a</td>
<td>413</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>248. a. N.</td>
<td>413. a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>248. a. R.</td>
<td>413. N.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>248. c. 1</td>
<td>409</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>248. c. 2</td>
<td>409. a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>248. c. 2. R.</td>
<td>409. a. N.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Old</td>
<td>New</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>-------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>260</td>
<td>220</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>260. a</td>
<td>430</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>260. b</td>
<td>429. b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>260. c</td>
<td>221. 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>260. d</td>
<td>221. 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>260. e</td>
<td>221. 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>261</td>
<td>432</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>261. a. n.</td>
<td>432. b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>261. b</td>
<td>432. c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>261. c</td>
<td>452. d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>261. d</td>
<td>433</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>262 and n. 1</td>
<td>434</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>263. n.</td>
<td>435</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P. 274. Note</td>
<td>436</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>264</td>
<td>437</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>264. a</td>
<td>465 ff.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>264. b</td>
<td>437. a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>265</td>
<td>438</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>266 and r.</td>
<td>438</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>266. b</td>
<td>450. (3) and n. 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>266. c</td>
<td>440</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>266. d</td>
<td>528. a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>266. e</td>
<td>439. b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>266. e. r.</td>
<td>439. b. n. 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>266. e. n.</td>
<td>439. b. n. 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>267</td>
<td>441</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>267. b</td>
<td>442</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>267. b. n. 1</td>
<td>442. a and n. 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>267. c</td>
<td>442. b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>268</td>
<td>444</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>268. r.</td>
<td>444. n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>269</td>
<td>448</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>269. n.</td>
<td>450. a, b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>269. a</td>
<td>450</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>269. a. 2. n.</td>
<td>450. n. 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>269. a. 3. n.</td>
<td>450. n. 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>269. b. n.</td>
<td>450. n. 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>269. c</td>
<td>448. a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>269. d. 1, 3</td>
<td>449. 1, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>269. e-g</td>
<td>449. a-c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>269. h</td>
<td>588</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>269. i</td>
<td>521. n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P. 283. Note</td>
<td>461</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>270</td>
<td>452</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>270. a. 1, 2</td>
<td>452. a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>270. b</td>
<td>454</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>270. b. n. 1</td>
<td>454. n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>270. c</td>
<td>453</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>271</td>
<td>456</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>271. a</td>
<td>457</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>271. a. n. 1</td>
<td>563. b. 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>271. b</td>
<td>563. a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Old</td>
<td>New</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P. 306, mid.</td>
<td>487</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>289</td>
<td>488</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>290</td>
<td>489</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>290. a</td>
<td>490</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>290. b</td>
<td>491</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>290. c</td>
<td>492</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>290. d</td>
<td>493</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>291</td>
<td>494</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>291. b</td>
<td>495</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>291. b. r.</td>
<td>495. N.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>292</td>
<td>496</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>292. R.</td>
<td>496, N. 1, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>292. N. 1, 2</td>
<td>496, N. 3, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>292. a</td>
<td>497</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>292. b–e</td>
<td>497, a–d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>292. b. N.</td>
<td>411, a. N. 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>293</td>
<td>498</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>293. b</td>
<td>499</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>293. c</td>
<td>498. b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>294</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>294. a–d</td>
<td>500, 1–4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>295</td>
<td>502</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>295. R.</td>
<td>502. N.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>296</td>
<td>503</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>296. R.</td>
<td>503, N. 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>297</td>
<td>501, 502</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>298</td>
<td>504</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>298. N.</td>
<td>504, N. 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>298. R.</td>
<td>504, a. N. 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>298. a</td>
<td>504. c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>298. b</td>
<td>504. N. 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>298. c</td>
<td>504. b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>299</td>
<td>505. a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>299. a</td>
<td>505</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>300</td>
<td>506 and N. 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>300. N.</td>
<td>506, N. 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>301</td>
<td>507</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>301. R.</td>
<td>503, a. N. 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>302. headn.</td>
<td>508</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>302</td>
<td>509</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>302. R.</td>
<td>509, N. 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>303</td>
<td>510</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>303. N. R.</td>
<td>510, N. 1–3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P. 320. Note</td>
<td>511</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>304</td>
<td>512</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>304. d</td>
<td>513</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>305</td>
<td>514</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>305. R.</td>
<td>514. C. N.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>306</td>
<td>515</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>307</td>
<td>516</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>307. b. R. C. R.</td>
<td>516, b. N. C. N.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OLD</td>
<td>NEW</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>320</td>
<td>535</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>320. f. n.</td>
<td>535. f. n. 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P. 348, mid. n.</td>
<td>539</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>321</td>
<td>540</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>321. N. 3</td>
<td>540 a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>321. r.</td>
<td>540 N. 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>321. a-c</td>
<td>540 b-d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P. 349, bottom n.</td>
<td>541</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>322</td>
<td>542</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>322. r.</td>
<td>535 a N. 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>323</td>
<td>545</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>324</td>
<td>543</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>325</td>
<td>545-548</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>325. a</td>
<td>545</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>325. a N.</td>
<td>540 N. 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>325. b</td>
<td>546 a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>325. c</td>
<td>547</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>326 and r.</td>
<td>549</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>326. a R.</td>
<td>549 a N.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>327</td>
<td>550-551</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>327. a</td>
<td>551 c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>327. b</td>
<td>551 c N. 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>328</td>
<td>552, 553</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>328. 2</td>
<td>554, 555</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>328. 2 N. 1</td>
<td>555 N. 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>329</td>
<td>556</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>328. a N.</td>
<td>556 a N. 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>328. r.</td>
<td>556 a N. 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>328. r.</td>
<td>556 a N. 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>329</td>
<td>560, 561</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>329. n.</td>
<td>561 N. 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>329. r.</td>
<td>561 N. 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>329 (classification)</td>
<td>562</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>330</td>
<td>563 a b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>330. b</td>
<td>563 a b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>330. b 2, 3</td>
<td>563 a, b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>330. r.</td>
<td>562 N.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>330. a, b</td>
<td>562</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>330. a 2</td>
<td>566 b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>330. b 2</td>
<td>566 c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>330. c</td>
<td>582 a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>330. d</td>
<td>582 N.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>330. e</td>
<td>579 ftm. 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>330. f</td>
<td>580 c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>331 and b. n.</td>
<td>563 and b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>331. e 2</td>
<td>558 b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>331. f</td>
<td>564</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>331. f ftm.</td>
<td>564 N.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>331. f R.</td>
<td>565 a, 569. 2 N. 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>331. g</td>
<td>563 N.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>331. h</td>
<td>566</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>331. i</td>
<td>565</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Old</td>
<td>New</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>342</td>
<td>593</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>342. ftn. 2d par.</td>
<td>593. n. 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P. 381 ff.</td>
<td>594</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P. 386, top. Note</td>
<td>595</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>343</td>
<td>596 and a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>344</td>
<td>597</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>344. r.</td>
<td>597. a. n. 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P. 389, top. r.</td>
<td>597. b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P. 389, top. a</td>
<td>598. a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>345</td>
<td>599</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>345. a</td>
<td>599. d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>345. d</td>
<td>599. a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P. 392. Note</td>
<td>600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>346</td>
<td>601</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P. 394. Note</td>
<td>602</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>347</td>
<td>603</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>347. d</td>
<td>603. f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>347. d. n. 1, 2</td>
<td>603. f. n. 2, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>347. d. r.</td>
<td>603. f. n. 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>347. e. r.</td>
<td>603. f. n. 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>348</td>
<td>604</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>348. 1–10</td>
<td>604. a–j</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>348. 9. Exc.</td>
<td>604. i. 1–6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>349–351</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>351. b</td>
<td>605</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>352, 353</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>354</td>
<td>606</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>354. d</td>
<td>606. c. n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P. 402. Note</td>
<td>607</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>355. r.</td>
<td>608. n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>356</td>
<td>609</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>356. e</td>
<td>609. n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>356. f</td>
<td>609. e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>357</td>
<td>610</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>357. b</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>357. c</td>
<td>610. b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>358</td>
<td>611</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>359</td>
<td>612</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>359. b, c</td>
<td>612. d, e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>359. b. r.</td>
<td>612. d. n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>359. c. r.</td>
<td>612. c. n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>359. d and r.</td>
<td>612. f. n. 1, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>359. e</td>
<td>612. g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>359. f, g</td>
<td>612. b, c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Author(s)</td>
<td>Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allen</td>
<td>Germania and Agricola of Tacitus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allen and Greenough</td>
<td>Caesar, Books I-VII (Revised Edition)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allen and Greenough</td>
<td>Caesar, Books I-IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allen and Greenough</td>
<td>Cicero. Orations and Letters (Edited by Greenough and Kittredge)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allen and Greenough</td>
<td>Cicero. Select Orations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allen and Greenough</td>
<td>Cicero. Six Orations (Edited by Greenough and Kittredge)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allen and Greenough</td>
<td>Cicero de Senectute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allen and Greenough</td>
<td>New Latin Grammar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allen and Greenough</td>
<td>Ovid, with Vocabulary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allen and Greenough</td>
<td>Gallus's Catiline (Revised by Greenough and Daniell)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Browne</td>
<td>A Memory-Test Latin Word-List</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Collar</td>
<td>Gate to Caesar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Collar</td>
<td>New Gradatim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Collar</td>
<td>Practical Latine Composition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Collar</td>
<td>Via Latina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Collar and Daniell</td>
<td>Beginner's Latin Book</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Collar and Daniell</td>
<td>First Latin Book</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Collar and Daniell</td>
<td>First Year Latin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Teachers' Manual to Accompany First Year Latin</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>College Series of Latin Authors</td>
<td>(see circulars for details)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crowell</td>
<td>Selections from the Latin Poets</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crowell and Richardson</td>
<td>History of Roman Literature</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D'Ooge</td>
<td>Easy Latin for Sight Reading</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D'Ooge</td>
<td>Latin Composition for Secondary Schools</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D'Ooge</td>
<td>Latin Composition to Accompany Greenough, D'Ooge, and Daniell's Second Year Latin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ginn and Company</td>
<td>Classical Atlas . cloth, $2.00, $2.30; boards</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gleason</td>
<td>Gate to Vergil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greenough, D'Ooge, and Daniell</td>
<td>Second Year Latin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greenough and Kittredge</td>
<td>Bucolics and Aeneid, I-VI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greenough and Kittredge</td>
<td>New Virgil. Aeneid, I-VI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Latin and Greek School Classics</td>
<td>(see circulars for details)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lothman</td>
<td>Latin Lessons</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moulton</td>
<td>Preparatory Latin Composition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part I. Based on Cesar and Cicero with Supplementary Sight Tests</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part II. A Systematic Drill in Syntax</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Post: Latin at Sight</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Richardson</td>
<td>Helps to the Reading of Classical Latin Poetry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stickney</td>
<td>Cicero de Natura Deorum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terence</td>
<td>Adelphoe, Phormio, Heauton Timorumenos. 1 vol.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>White</td>
<td>English-Latin Lexicon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>White</td>
<td>Latin-English Lexicon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>White</td>
<td>Latin-English and English-Latin Lexicon</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
VIRGIL

REVISED EDITION

Edited by JAMES B. GREENOUGH, late Professor of Latin in Harvard University, and GEORGE L. KITTREDGE, Professor of English in Harvard University, formerly Professor of Latin in Phillips Exeter Academy

AENEID, BOOKS I-VI, with a special Vocabulary. 12mo. Half morocco. xlv + 709 pages. Illustrated. List price, $1.50; mailing price, $1.65.

AENEID, BOOKS I-VI, BUCOLICS, with a special Vocabulary. xlv + 807 pages. Illustrated. List price, $1.60; mailing price, $1.75.

IN this edition Virgil's "Aeneid" is treated more as a piece of inspiring literature than as so much Latin that must be perfunctorily studied. The Introduction discusses the Augustan Age, Virgil's life, his fame, and the manuscripts by means of which his writings have come down to us. The directions for translation and metrical reading are suggestive and adequate. The Notes contain frequent quotations from Chaucer, Shakespeare, Milton, Spenser, Pope, and other English authors who have drawn inspiration from the "Aeneid." The text is profusely illustrated.

This volume is regarded by critical and competent Latin teachers as the most attractive as well as the most scholarly edition of "Virgil" for secondary schools yet issued in this country.

GREENOUGH'S VIRGIL

Edited by JAMES B. GREENOUGH, late Professor of Latin in Harvard University.

GEORGICS AND AENEID, BOOKS VII-XII. 12mo. Cloth. 333 pages. Illustrated. List price, $1.12; mailing price, $1.25.

TEXT EDITIONS

AENEID, BOOKS I-VI, AND BUCOLICS. 12mo. Paper. 181 pages. List price, 40 cents; mailing price, 45 cents.

AENEID, BOOK VII-XII. 12mo. Cloth. 157 pages. List price, 35 cents; mailing price, 40 cents.

COMPLETE TEXT OF VIRGIL, BUCOLICS, AENEID, AND GEORGICS. 12mo. Cloth. 228 pages. List price, 75 cents; mailing price, 85 cents.

GINN & COMPANY PUBLISHERS
ALLEN AND GREENOUGH’S
CAESAR: GALLIC WAR
REVISED EDITION

Edited by James B. Greenough, late Professor of Latin in Harvard University
B. L. D’Ooge, Professor of Latin and Greek in Michigan State Normal
College, Ypsilanti, and M. Grant Daniell, recently
Principal of Chauncy-Hall School, Boston

BOOKS I-IV. 12mo. Half leather. lix + 268 + 162 pages. Illustrated. List price, $1.00; mailing price, $1.10.


THIS new edition of Caesar’s “Gallic War” keeps prominently in view the needs of the beginner, on the ground that a large majority of those who read Caesar take it up immediately after finishing their first lessons. It is believed that all this class of students’ needs have been fully met in the present edition.

Professor Greenough has specially qualified himself for editing this edition by traveling and making recent investigations in France. Not only the Notes but the illustrations have profited greatly. A considerable number of the pictures in this edition are from photographs made especially for it. In other cases, pictures not previously seen in this country have been obtained. The museums have been visited and many new illustrations drawn from them. At the same time all the standard and essential illustrations are used. It is believed that this part of the editing will be found of signal excellence and practical value.

Several reading courses are suggested, each one of which, while embracing an amount of text equal to the first four books, contains choice selections of narrative and adventure from the various books. It is believed that this feature will be especially acceptable to teachers who have found the monotony of Caesar irksome but have seen no way to vary the course.

Except in amount of Latin text, the four-book edition is practically identical with the new edition of the complete Caesar’s “Gallic War.” It contains the Introduction, with the exception of two irrelevant pages, the groups of related words, and the full Vocabulary. Many of the illustrations of Books V, VI, and VII are inserted at the close, in order to explain graphically a number of the references in the Introduction and in the Notes. Quantities of long vowels are marked.
ALLEN & GREENOUGH'S CICERO

Revised Edition

Revised by J. B. GREENOUGH, late Professor of Latin in Harvard University, and GEORGE L. KITTREDGE, Professor of English in Harvard University, formerly Professor of Latin in Phillips Exeter Academy

With a SPECIAL VOCABULARY by Professor Greenough

12mo. Half morocco. lvo + 478 + 194 pages. Illustrated. List price, $1.40; mailing price, $1.55

This new edition of Cicero has been treated with special reference to the use of the orations as models of classic oratory. The Introduction is made to help in this study of applied logic and rhetoric. There is a full life of Cicero, describing his education and development as an orator, as well as his political career. There is a chapter connecting the style of the orations with ancient formal rhetoric. There is also a chapter on Roman oratory and the place of the orator in ancient civilization.

The text includes the following orations: The Manilian Law; four orations against Catiline; Archias; Milo; Marcellus; Ligarius; the fourteenth Philippic; and copious extracts from the Defence of Roscius and the Actio Secunda against Verres.

Almost everything admitting of graphic presentation has an illustration, and no little study has been expended in finding the most suitable pictures. Views of places, scenes of Roman life, and portraits have been specially sought. Many coins are shown. The illustrations are fully explained in the Index, with criticisms.

GINN & COMPANY Publishers
Deacidified using the Bookkeeper process.
Neutralizing agent: Magnesium Oxide
Treatment Date: July 2006

Preservation Technologies
A WORLD LEADER IN PAPER PRESERVATION
111 Thomson Park Drive
Cranberry Township, PA 16066
(724) 779-2111